



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

EduCT 1000.885.902.3



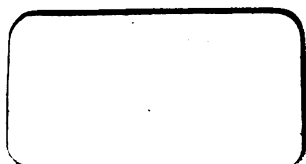
Harvard College Library

FROM

Edward H. Atherton

.....

.....





3 2044 097 076 897

E. H. Alherton
Roxbury

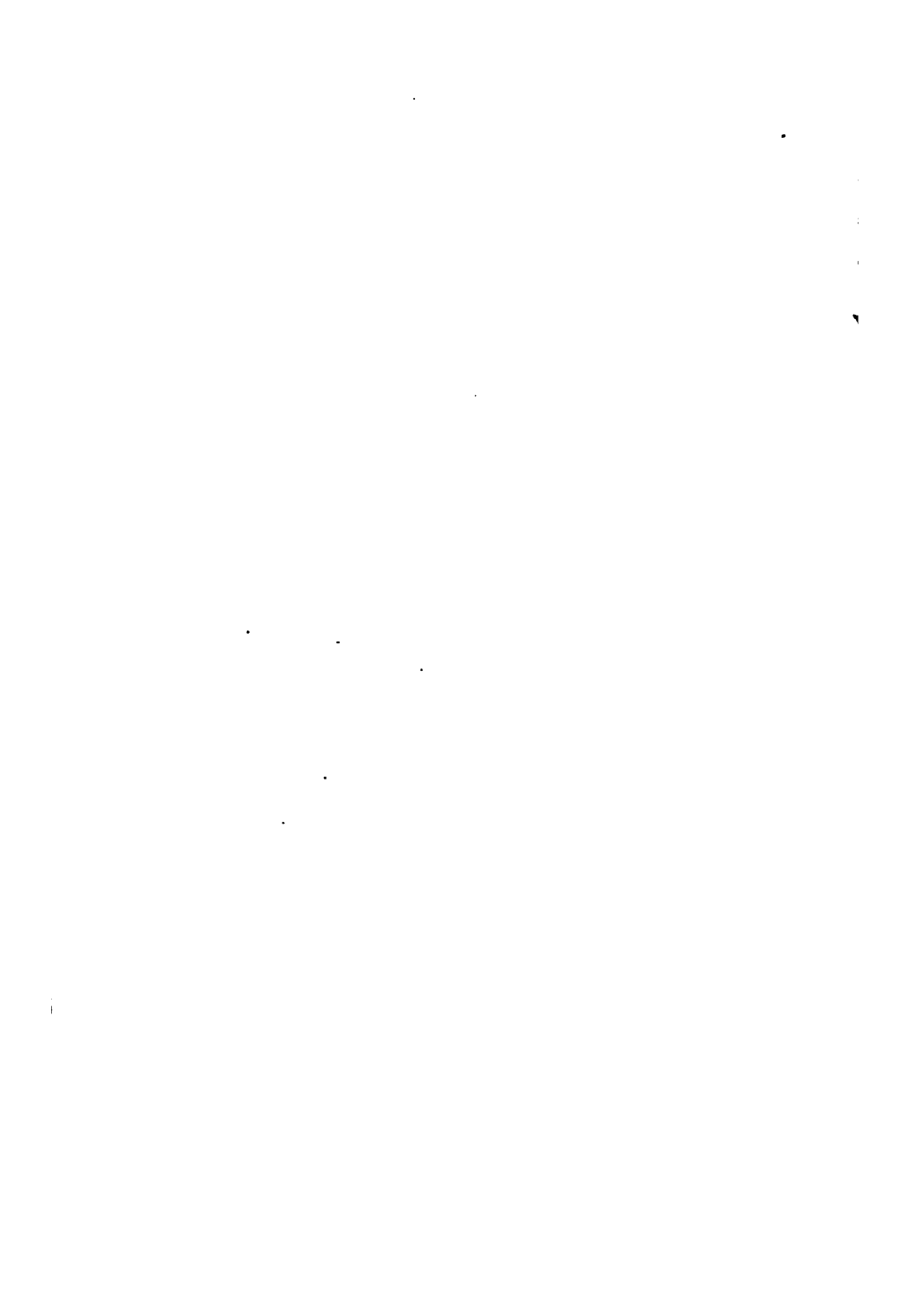
Sept. 17, 1902

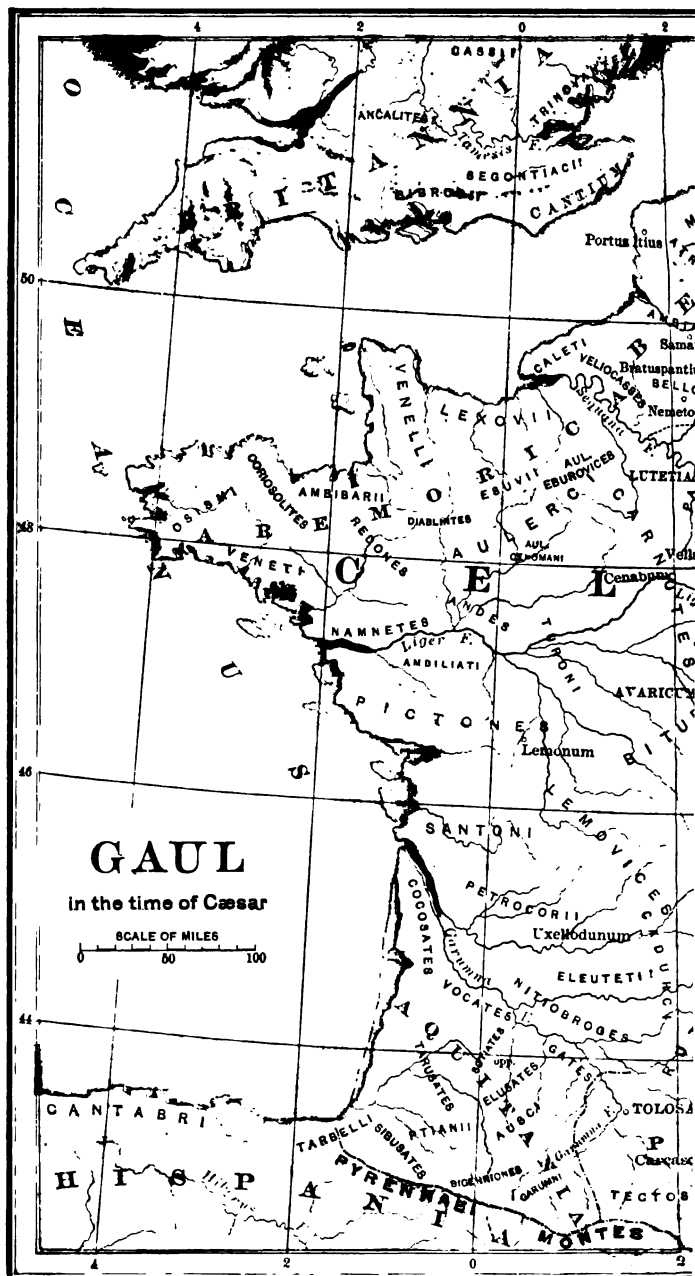
TWENTIETH CENTURY TEXT-BOOKS

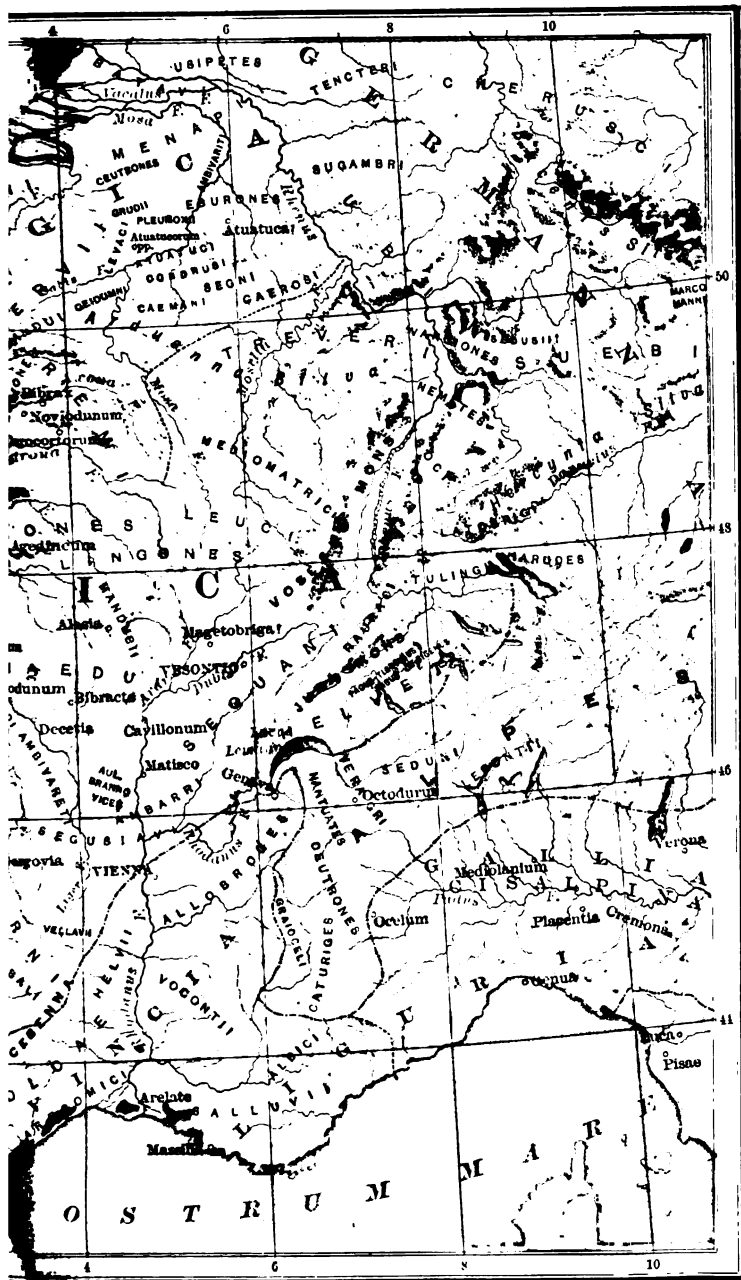
CLASSICAL SECTION

EDITED BY

JOHN HENRY WRIGHT, HARVARD UNIVERSITY
BERNADOTTE PERRIN, YALE UNIVERSITY
ANDREW FLEMING WEST, PRINCETON UNIVERSITY







TWENTIETH CENTURY TEXT-BOOKS

C. IVLI CAESARIS
DE BELLO GALLICO LIBRI VII

CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR

WITH INTRODUCTION, NOTES
AND VOCABULARY

BY

J. H. WESTCOTT

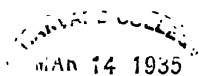
PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN PRINCETON UNIVERSITY



NEW YORK
D. APPLETON AND COMPANY
1902

Education, 1902.3

✓



Edward H. Atherton

COPYRIGHT, 1902

BY D. APPLETON AND COMPANY

Published August, 1902

PREFACE

IF Caesar is to be read with profit in schools, one thing at least is certain—the school edition should be as simple and elementary as it can be made. In the introduction, notes, and vocabulary of this volume I have tried to avoid all matter that is not strictly relevant at the stage of development which we may expect to find in the school-boy at about fourteen years of age. I have not greatly emphasized the matter of indirect discourse, for if the boy is to regard that as anything else than an inscrutable mystery, the result will depend chiefly upon the intelligence of his teacher. On the other hand, I have in the notes to the earlier books laid great stress upon the ordinary noun and verb constructions, emphasizing them by frequent repetition of explanation and grammar reference, for I am old-fashioned enough to believe a good deal in the method of “line upon line, precept upon precept, here a little and there a little,” inculcated in a certain ancient book. In general I have tried to keep before the reader’s mind the fact that the text is not merely an exercise in Latin, but an historical narrative of great events. This explains the large number of cross-references backward and forward in the story. The introduction aims to present Caesar as the

greatest political person of antiquity, and to show his immense significance as the principal founder of modern civilization; and also to furnish enough information about the Roman military organization and operations to make the narrative intelligible. The text is that of Meusel, without changes, except some orthographic ones in conformity with ideas now prevalent in regard to the proper spelling of Latin in elementary text-books.

J. H. W.

PRINCETON, N. J.

LIST OF FULL-PAGE MAPS AND ILLUSTRATIONS

	FACING PAGE
Gaul in the time of Caesar (colored map)	<i>Frontispiece</i>
The bust of Caesar in the museum at Naples	I
The Rhone from Geneva to Pas de l'Écluse (colored map).	6
The campaign of 58 B. C. (colored map)	10
Defeat of the Helvetii (colored map)	17
Besançon, the ancient Vesontio	27
The battle with Ariovistus (colored map)	38
The battle on the Aisne (colored map)	46
The battle with the Nervii (colored map)	51
The vicinity of Octodurus (colored map)	62
Campaign against the Veneti, 56 B. C. (colored map)	70
Campaigns of 55 and 54 B. C. (colored map)	81
Pons a Caesare in Rheno factus	91
The cliffs of Dover	95
The Rhine from Koblenz to Andernach (colored map)	146
The siege of Avaricum (colored map)	178
A Gallic wall.	182
View of Gergovia from the south	190
The siege of Gergovia (colored map)	197
The campaign of Labienus against the Parisii (colored map)	204
Views of Mont Auxois, the site of Alesia	210
The siege of Alesia (colored map)	215
Details of Caesar's siege-works at Alesia	217

AFTER CONSTRUING

LORD CÆSAR, when you sternly wrote
The story of your grim campaigns,
And watched the ragged smoke-wreath float
Above the burning plains,

Amid the impenetrable wood,
Amid the camp's incessant hum,
At eve, beside the tumbling flood
In high Avaricum,

You little recked, imperious head,
When shrilled your shattering trumpet's noise
Your frigid sections would be read
By bright-eyed English boys.

Ah me! who penetrates to-day
The secret of your deep designs?
Your sovereign visions as you lay
Amid the sleeping lines?

The Mantuan singer pleading stands;
From century to century
He leans and reaches wistful hands,
And can not bear to die.

But you are silent, secret, proud,
No smile upon your haggard face,
As when you eyed the murderous crowd
Beside the statue's base.

I marvel: that Titanic heart
Beats strongly through the arid page,
And we self-conscious sons of art
In this bewildering age,

Like dizzy revelers stumbling out
Upon the pure and peaceful night,
Are sobered into troubled doubt,
As swims across our sight

The ray of that sequestered sun,
Far in the illimitable blue—
The dream of all you left undone,
Of all you dared to do.

A. C. BENSON.

INTRODUCTION

A BOY was once asked who Cæsar was. He answered that he was a man who wrote a school-book for boys in Latin. I should like to make some American boys realize that writing the Commentaries was one of the least things done by one of the greatest men that ever worked in this world—a man who had a great share in making history. Yet this little book that he wrote, telling about one of his wars, is one of the world's great books—a book which has deeply interested most of the able and active men of the last two thousand years.

CHAPTER I

CÆSAR

i. ROME IN THE TIME OF CÆSAR

IN Cæsar's time the Roman republic had in fact been dead for years. The real governing power had long before passed out of the hands of the body of the citizens. Periods of anarchy alternated with periods of despotism, when all actual authority was exercised either by a demagogue who had gained influence over the minds of the rabble in the capital, or by a military hero returning from foreign wars at the head of victorious legions.

Rome's prime had been in the early days when she was straining every nerve in the ceaseless struggle for suprem-

acy over the nations of Italy. It was a fatal day for her character when her last enemy in Italy submitted, and the lust of foreign dominion entered into her heart. **Decline had begun** Thenceforward there was a decline of the sturdy middle classes in the country districts. The small farmers disappeared before the growing estates of large proprietors and the frequent grants of land to discharged veterans. The free country people sank to a half-slavish condition, or went to swell the numbers of the pauper mob in the city, which called itself the Roman People and cast the majority of the votes in the political assemblies.

The landed aristocracy of the senators and the moneyed aristocracy of the knights directed the foreign policy of the state, while at home there was a series of contests and compromises, in which the populace was alternately terrorized and humored.

The result toward which all this was tending for two hundred years was control by the strong hand of force. **Tendency to Monarchy** After a rapid series of experiments in revolution the state was destined to settle at last into repose under a military monarchy, disguised in republican forms.

It was fortunate for Rome that the strongest of her citizens was also the wisest, a man who was able to govern "an age unable to govern itself." It was Julius Cæsar who laid the foundations of what is known as the Roman Empire. Though imperialism ruined Rome, it was the means of civilizing ancient Europe and, through it, the modern world. **Cæsar the Founder of the Empire** Though this empire, like all human works, came in time to its fall, it was, and in its effects still continues to be, the most important and the most permanent political institution in the world's history.

The real master of Rome at the time of Cæsar's birth was Marius, the idol of the common people; a brave and

able soldier, but totally incompetent as a statesman. He had won renown by conquering Jugurtha, king of Numidia, and had saved Rome by annihilating the vast hosts of the northern barbarians, the Cimbri and Teutons, who had defeated several Roman armies and threatened to destroy the city, as the Gauls had done nearly three centuries before.

Marius's younger rival, the champion of the nobles, was Sulla, who had managed to get a large share of the credit of the Jugurthine War, and who won fresh fame by his conquests in the East. Equal to Marius as a soldier, he surpassed him infinitely in political sagacity. He had the clearest notions of what he wished to accomplish, indomitable energy, and no scruples to interfere with his relentless policy.

These two men, their political followers, and their ruffian troops for several years were by turns in power, and repeatedly drenched Rome with the blood of thousands of her citizens.

Marius died in his seventh consulship, worn out by toil, by age, by excitement. Then Sulla ruled with an iron hand until he finally laid aside his power and retired into private life. After his death his political arrangements were mostly swept away, and things went on much as before.

There were, however, no more civil struggles marked by the ferocity of the contest of Marius and Sulla. The nation was somewhat tamed by loss of blood. One cause of trouble had been removed: the discontented allies in Italy, by their successes in the "Social War,"* had forced Rome, though finally victorious in the field, to grant them citizenship.

* A war between Rome and her Italian "allies" (*Socii*), B. C. 90-89. The latter demanded independence or else equal rights as citizens of Rome.

TWENTIETH CENTURY TEXT-BOOKS

C. IVLI CAESARIS
DE BELLO GALLICO LIBRI VII

CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR

WITH INTRODUCTION, NOTES
AND VOCABULARY

BY

J. H. WESTCOTT

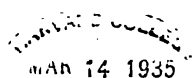
PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN PRINCETON UNIVERSITY



NEW YORK
D. APPLETON AND COMPANY
1902

EducT1000,005,902.3

✓



Edward H. Atherton

COPYRIGHT, 1902

BY D. APPLETON AND COMPANY

Published August, 1902

P R E F A C E

IF Caesar is to be read with profit in schools, one thing at least is certain—the school edition should be as simple and elementary as it can be made. In the introduction, notes, and vocabulary of this volume I have tried to avoid all matter that is not strictly relevant at the stage of development which we may expect to find in the school-boy at about fourteen years of age. I have not greatly emphasized the matter of indirect discourse, for if the boy is to regard that as anything else than an inscrutable mystery, the result will depend chiefly upon the intelligence of his teacher. On the other hand, I have in the notes to the earlier books laid great stress upon the ordinary noun and verb constructions, emphasizing them by frequent repetition of explanation and grammar reference, for I am old-fashioned enough to believe a good deal in the method of “line upon line, precept upon precept, here a little and there a little,” inculcated in a certain ancient book. In general I have tried to keep before the reader’s mind the fact that the text is not merely an exercise in Latin, but an historical narrative of great events. This explains the large number of cross-references backward and forward in the story. The introduction aims to present Caesar as the

"First Triumvirate," with Pompey, the most powerful, and Crassus, the wealthiest, man of the time.

It was agreed that Cæsar should be made consul for 59 B. C., and thereafter receive the government of a province.

Pompey's arrangements in Asia in connection with the Mithridatic War were to be confirmed, and he was to be enabled to distribute lands to his soldiers. These matters had been the subject of vexatious disputes between Pompey and the Senate for years. The Senate disliked Pompey, and worried him as much as it dared. What was promised to Crassus is not definitely known.

In 58 B. C. (May), after his consulship, Cæsar started for his provinces (assigned for five years), Cisalpine and Transalpine Gaul and Illyricum, and immediately began the campaigns which form the subject of the Commentaries.

In 56 B. C. the triumvirs had a second meeting, at Lucca in Etruria, inside the limits of Cæsar's province of Cisalpine Gaul, renewing their former agreement, and arranging that Pompey was to have the consulship and then the government of the Spains, Crassus the consulship and then the province of Asia, while Cæsar's powers were to be prolonged to 49 B. C., when, after ten years' interval, he could again be elected consul. This arrangement gave the time necessary to complete the conquest of Further

Death of Crassus

Gaul.

Crassus was killed in battle against the Parthians at Carrhæ in 53; this ended the triumvirate. Pompey grew jealous of Cæsar's influence and fame rising higher every year. Pompey's wife Julia, Cæsar's daughter, had died in 54 B. C., and her child did not long survive. The estrangement which had been growing up between Pompey and Cæsar now became complete. The nobles, taking advantage of this state of things, attempted to end Cæsar's term of office, and deprive him of the

Estrangement of Pompey and Cæsar

support of his army before the date arrived when he could lawfully become consul again. Their object was to destroy Cæsar. They distrusted Pompey, but were obliged to make him their leader. Cæsar, forced to choose between ruin and a civil war, preferred the latter,

Civil War

and promptly crossed the Rubicon * in December, 50 B. C. His enemies fled before him, and he marched in triumph the whole length of Italy. By midsummer 49 B. C. he had subdued Pompey's lieutenants and armies in Spain. Master of Spain, Gaul, and Italy, and of the legal powers † of the government at Rome, he followed the Pompeians across the Adriatic, and after a long campaign in Epirus won a decisive victory over more than double odds at Pharsalus in Thessaly, in June, 48 B. C. Pompey fled to Egypt, where he was treacherously murdered, and in the following year Cæsar made himself master of Egypt and Asia. Meanwhile the senatorial party had rallied in the province of Africa. Cæsar's victory at Thapsus and the suicide of Cato ‡ in 46 B. C. put an end to resistance in that quarter;

Triumph of Cæsar

but there was still another struggle in Spain, the old stronghold of the Pompeys, which terminated in the desperate battle at Munda in 45 B. C. After this victory Cæsar's supremacy was no longer disputed, and all power, but under republican forms, was placed in his hands.*

Apparently the time had at last come when the con-

* The boundary between his province of Cisalpine Gaul and Italy. His act was an armed invasion of his country.

† The magistrates of B. C. 49 became private citizens at the end of the year. Cæsar was in due form elected consul for 48, and the other offices were filled with his partisans. The nobles and senators with Pompey no longer represented the legal authority of the government.

‡ Cato "of Utica" committed suicide in order to avoid the necessity of submitting to Cæsar and of beholding him master of the state.

* He was made consul for ten years, *dictator* and *præfectus morum* for life, and received the title of *imperator* for life. His person was declared sacred; the tribunician power had been conferred on him for life in 48 B. C.

conquest of Furi

of a battle against the
the ended the triumvirate.
the influence and fame rising
Pompey's wife, Julia

ive him of the

iii. CÆSAR'S CHARACTER

Cæsar was tall and elegant in figure, of a fair complexion, with dark hair and keen, dark eyes. His sculptured portraits give the impression at once of commanding intellectuality and tremendous practical force.*

Personal Appearance He was very careful in his dress, and in his youth was something of a dandy. His long-sleeved tunic, with fringes at the wrists, his loose girdle and the careful arrangement of his hair, which he sometimes adjusted with one finger, caused his opponents to charge him with foppishness, and the less intelligent of them to underrate his abilities and his ambition. Even when advanced in life he is said to have prized the privilege, voted him by the Senate, of always appearing with a wreath of laurels on his head, chiefly because it enabled him more effectually to conceal the baldness about which he was extremely sensitive.

Habits of Life But when on a campaign he allowed himself no luxury in dress or style of living, except that he always had the finest horses. Though not by nature very strong, he had, by the severest discipline, trained himself to excel in military and athletic exercises, and to endure the utmost hardship and fatigue. His tastes were elegant but simple. In matters of eating and drinking he was so temperate that his bitterest foe, Cato, said, with characteristic sarcasm, that of all who came to overthrow the republic, Cæsar alone came sober.

Simple Tastes He had remarkable strength and skill in swimming, and could ride a spirited horse with his arms folded behind his back. His ability to use weapons served

* The best portraits of Cæsar are two busts, one in the Louvre which seems to represent the soldier, one in the British Museum in London which gives the idea of a statesman and thinker.

AFTER CONSTRUING

LORD CÆSAR, when you sternly wrote
The story of your grim campaigns,
And watched the ragged smoke-wreath float
Above the burning plains,

Amid the impenetrable wood,
Amid the camp's incessant hum,
At eve, beside the tumbling flood
In high Avaricum,

You little recked, imperious head,
When shrilled your shattering trumpet's noise
Your frigid sections would be read
By bright-eyed English boys.

Ah me! who penetrates to-day
The secret of your deep designs?
Your sovereign visions as you lay
Amid the sleeping lines?

The Mantuan singer pleading stands;
From century to century
He leans and reaches wistful hands,
And can not bear to die.

But you are silent, secret, proud,
No smile upon your haggard face,
As when you eyed the murderous crowd
Beside the statue's base.

I marvel: that Titanic heart
Beats strongly through the arid page,
And we self-conscious sons of art
In this bewildering age,

Like dizzy revelers stumbling out
Upon the pure and peaceful night,
Are sobered into troubled doubt,
As swims across our sight

The ray of that sequestered sun,
Far in the illimitable blue—
The dream of all you left undone,
Of all you dared to do.

A. C. BENSON.

INTRODUCTION

A BOY was once asked who Cæsar was. He answered that he was a man who wrote a school-book for boys in Latin. I should like to make some American boys realize that writing the Commentaries was one of the least things done by one of the greatest men that ever worked in this world—a man who had a great share in making history. Yet this little book that he wrote, telling about one of his wars, is one of the world's great books—a book which has deeply interested most of the able and active men of the last two thousand years.

CHAPTER I

CÆSAR

i. ROME IN THE TIME OF CÆSAR

IN Cæsar's time the Roman republic had in fact been dead for years. The real governing power had long before died out of the hands of the body of the citizens. Periodic anarchy alternated with periods when all actual authority was in the hands of a demagogue who had gained the favor of the rabble in the capital by leading them from foreign wars at the expense of the early days when she was a free and untrammelled power for suprem-

AFTER CONSTRUING

LORD CÆSAR, when you sternly wrote
The story of your grim campaigns,
And watched the ragged smoke-wreath float
Above the burning plains,

Amid the impenetrable wood,
Amid the camp's incessant hum,
At eve, beside the tumbling flood
In high Avaricum,

You little recked, imperious head,
When shrilled your shattering trumpet's noise
Your frigid sections would be read
By bright-eyed English boys.

Ah me! who penetrates to-day
The secret of your deep designs?
Your sovereign visions as you lay
Amid the sleeping lines?

The Mantuan singer pleading stands;
From century to century
He leans and reaches wistful hands,
And can not bear to die.

But you are silent, secret, proud,
No smile upon your haggard face,
As when you eyed the murderous crowd
Beside the statue's base.

I marvel: that Titanic heart
Beats strongly through the arid page,
And we self-conscious sons of art
In this bewildering age,

Like dizzy revelers stumbling out
Upon the pure and peaceful night,
Are sobered into troubled doubt,
As swims across our sight

The ray of that sequestered sun,
Far in the illimitable blue—
The dream of all you left undone,
Of all you dared to do.

A. C. BENSON.

INTRODUCTION

A BOY was once asked who Cæsar was. He answered that he was a man who wrote a school-book for boys in Latin. I should like to make some American boys realize that writing the Commentaries was one of the least things done by one of the greatest men that ever worked in this world—a man who had a great share in making history. Yet this little book that he wrote, telling about one of his wars, is one of the world's great books—a book which has deeply interested most of the able and active men of the last two thousand years.

CHAPTER I

CÆSAR

i. ROME IN THE TIME OF CÆSAR

IN Cæsar's time the Roman republic had in fact been dead for years. The real governing power had long before passed out of the hands of the body of the citizens. Periods of anarchy alternated with periods of despotism, when all actual authority was exercised either by a demagogue who had gained influence over the minds of the rabble in the capital, or by a military hero returning from foreign wars at the head of victorious legions.

Rome's prime had been in the early days when she was straining every nerve in the ceaseless struggle for suprem-

peopled with giants, monsters of land and sea. No wonder that the longest thanksgivings ever decreed were voted as the news came, year after year, how Cæsar was not merely defeating but subjugating the terrible Gauls, and even carrying his victorious banners into the shadowy realms of the Germans and Britons.

Thus Cæsar waxed while Pompey waned; faces turn rather to the rising than the setting sun. Pompey's chief victories had been won in the unwarlike East, the land whence Cæsar afterward sent his contemptuous report, *Veni, vidi, vici*; and his laurels were faded now, while Cæsar's were fresh every season. So it was natural that the party of the aristocrats with growing alarm realized that their day of power would be over when the conqueror of Gaul came home to reward his friends and reckon with his enemies.

Long ago he reckoned with his enemies and then passed away to his own account, but the thoughts of men have been busy with him ever since. His name has become an imperial title, and the greatest princes of the earth have been called Cæsar or Kaiser. Soldiers have pored over his story of warfare, and thought:

"Truly a wonderful man was this Caius Julius Cæsar."

The wisest men have best realized his greatness. Dante, who put all the thoughts of the Middle Ages into the greatest of all poems, makes Cæsar the representative of law and government. Shakespeare's notion of him is in the words that Cassius utters so bitterly:

"Why, man, he doth bestride the narrow world
Like a Colossus: and we petty men
Walk under his huge legs . . ."

Jul. Cæs., act i, scene 2.

Generation after generation of schoolboys have been made to read the story of Cæsar's wars in Gaul, chiefly in order

that they might learn something of the wonderful language which Cæsar wrote and spoke with his countrymen. It has generally been thought that we can not be well educated without some knowledge of Latin. I fear, however, that most of these boys have had so much trouble with their Latin that they have forgotten Cæsar, and I wish it might not be so with those who read these pages.

V. CÆSAR AS AN AUTHOR

As a writer of Latin prose Cæsar was equal to Cicero, and as an orator he was second to Cicero alone in the time that is called the Ciceronian age. And no third
Cæsar as an Author is to be named with these two.

Cæsar's various writings relate to a wide range of subjects, for he wrote on divination, on astronomy, and on grammar; he edited a collection of Roman witticisms; composed a political pamphlet and several poems; wrote letters, and delivered orations, which were collected and published;
His various Works besides his most important works, the ten books of Commentaries—seven * on the Gallic and three on the Civil War. These last are all that are now extant, except a few sentences from his speeches, a few short letters, a few witty remarks, an anecdote or two, and six lines of verse about the Latin comic poet Terence.

We have reason to be thankful that it is the military memoirs that survive, because we think of Cæsar as a man who did things rather than as a man who said things, though few ever said things so well.
The Commentaries alone are extant But it is of value beyond price that we have his own account of what he was doing in the most eventful years of his life, and of how and why he did it.

* The eighth book of the Gallic War was written, not by Cæsar, but by Aulus Hirtius, one of his officers. It is therefore not included in this volume.

The Commentaries on the Gallic War may be considered as a report rendered to the Senate and the public of the author's conduct of his campaigns carried on while governor of Gaul; those upon the Civil War were perhaps primarily intended for a defense of his conduct as a citizen in that revolutionary period.

**What are
the Com-
mentaries?**

They are memoirs—that is, they stand half-way between private notes and formal history. Cicero said that while Cæsar “wished to give others the materials out of which to construct a history, he may have done a kindness to conceited writers, but has deterred all men of sound taste from touching them. For in history a pure and brilliant conciseness is the highest attainable beauty. They are worthy of all praise, for they are simple, straightforward, and elegant, with all rhetorical ornament stripped from them as a garment.”

The seven books of the Gallic War are each the account of a year's campaigning. They were written apparently in the winters. An account of the contents of each book is given in the summaries prefixed to the notes on the several books, and in the headlines prefixed to the chapters of the text.

**Story of
the Conquest
of Gaul**

They tell how the governor of Gaul drove back an invasion of the Helvetian nation and then defeated another intruder, Ariovistus, a German king; how he conquered the Belgians in the northeast, and the Veneti in the northwest; how he twice invaded Germany and twice Britain; and, last of all, how in the seventh year he had to fight desperately to maintain the conquests of the six years preceding, and how the united effort of all the nations of Central Gaul to regain their freedom almost resulted in the destruction of the conqueror. When that supreme effort had failed there never was another like it. After that Gaul was safely Roman for centuries.

The Commentaries are apparently a simple narrative of

events, in which the author, speaking of himself in the third person, tells his story in a quiet, moderate tone that convinces us of his truthfulness and fairness. We feel that

**How Cæsar
appears in
his Book**

the Cæsar about whom he tells could hardly have acted otherwise than he did. We are fascinated by the power of the man—a power marvelously balanced and perfectly controlled.

Nothing was too delicate for his exquisite tact, and nothing so difficult but we always feel he might have done even more, had it been necessary. Usually his means seemed insufficient to accomplish his purposes, but then it was Cæsar that was using them.

The chief interest, then, of the Commentaries is that they show us this man at his work—organizing armies,

**Many-sided
Greatness**

making alliances, outwitting his foes by wily diplomacy, or fighting like a hero of romance in the front of battle; as an efficient administrator, a strategist bold to audacity, a tactician never at a loss for an expedient in novel circumstances, an engineer of infinite inventiveness, an unerring judge of men.

But he never boasts of his own doings; he does not abuse or underrate his foes. His lieutenants he praises

Generosity

generously where praise is due; of their faults he speaks with charity. Humbler members of

his own army and unknown Gauls have had their gallant deeds immortalized by his pen.

It was next to impossible to deceive him. He seemed

Sagacity

always to understand men's hearts. He tells of his enemies' acts without apparent indignation, and generally makes us feel that they were in the wrong.

**His Mind
Greater than
his Heart**

With all his calm generosity toward other men, we do not find in him a moral greatness corresponding to his mighty mind. He was not

good in the same sense that he was wise. It is impossible to admire him too much, but also it is impossible to trust

him entirely. His mind was so clear that his heart was somewhat cool.* Many men worshiped him, none really knew and loved him. He used men as instruments in the far-reaching plans which he alone understood, and though he rewarded them justly, even generously, he could not have real associates, real friends. A man so great must always live alone in the world. Thus Cæsar stands, in solitary eminence, the supreme representative man of action in the world's history.

Such is the man who still speaks to us from these pages. What is his manner of speaking? Some men, without much

Style of Writing to say, write for the sake of saying things in a fine style. He had much to say, and does not seem to trouble himself much about his man-

ner of saying it. He had the same natural command of language as of everything else he needed to use. His narrative is like clear glass: we see through it and are hardly conscious of it—after we learn to read Latin, of course—and just for that reason we may easily make a great mistake, and fail to see that this is the finest possible style, for he shows us his thoughts perfectly without making us think of his words. There is in Cæsar's writing that

Why it is so Admirable kind of beauty that does not depend on ornament, which depends rather on perfect proportion—that is, perfect fitness or suitableness of

manner to matter. The language is so plain that we might almost call it bald; it is always quiet and temperate; the descriptions are spirited, but never strained; the speeches are brief, manly, businesslike; the arguments calm and convincing; everywhere it is the language of a man writing with the easy grace—one might almost say the carelessness—of perfect skill.

* He even seems insensible to the grandeur of nature, lacking the poet's soul and the artist's eye.

CHAPTER II

CÆSAR'S ARMY

A. ORGANIZATION.

1. The Legions—infantry.
 - a. Who were the soldiers?
 - b. Legion, cohorts, maniples.
 - c. Centurions.
 - d. Numbers.
 - e. Term of enlistment.
 - f. Pay.
 - g. Dress and arms.
 - h. Discipline.
 - i. Rewards and decorations.
 - k. Supernumerary soldiers of privileged character.
2. The Auxiliary forces—infantry and cavalry.
3. The officers of the Line and Staff.
4. The Commissariat.

B. TACTICS.

5. Battle, including standards and music.
6. March.
7. Camp.
8. Siege.
9. Other engineering operations.
10. Naval operations.

A. ORGANIZATION

1. *The Legions*

The Roman army in Cæsar's time was composed of the legions of regular infantry and of the auxiliary forces, both infantry and cavalry. There was also what would correspond to siege artillery, but very little field artillery. There was a small body of engineers (*fabri*), but most mechanical labor was done by legionary troops detailed for the purpose. The citizen cavalry attached to the legions

in earlier times had nearly passed out of existence, and the numerous cavalry employed by Cæsar consisted almost entirely of foreign allies and mercenaries, Spaniards, Gauls, and Germans.

a. Only Roman citizens* regularly had the right to serve in the legions. In the good old times this service had been considered a privilege as well as a duty. In those days wars had lasted but one or two seasons, and the enlistments but for a short time. But foreign conquests and civil wars had resulted in keeping up large permanent armies, and the soldier had become more and more a professional. Especially had this been true since the time of Marius, who had not only introduced many changes and improvements into the service, but had opened the ranks to the lowest class of the citizens not previously allowed to enlist, and in general had done more than any other man to encourage the growth of a military class separate in feelings and interests from the mass of the citizens. The soldier was no longer a patriotic citizen serving a few years in the army as a part of his civic duty and privilege, but a professional who had taken up arms as a career. He expected to spend the prime of his life in the ranks, and at his discharge after twenty years to have a provision made for his old age. His interests were no longer mainly those of the state, but those of his commander, on whom depended all his personal hopes. Thus the military system of Cæsar's time was very similar to the "spoils system" in our politics.

b. Like the regiments in modern standing armies, the legions were distinguished by numbers in the order of their enlistment. Thus, under Cæsar's command in Gaul, we

* Citizenship had been extended to most of Italy in 90 and 89 B. C. It was extended to Cisalpine Gaul in B. C. 88. The (fifth) legion *Alauda* was enrolled by Cæsar in Further Gaul at his own expense. Citizenship was afterward given to its members by him.

find the 1st, 6th, 7th, 8th, 9th, 10th, 11th, 12th, 13th, 14th, and 15th legions.*

A legion was more like a brigade than a regiment of a modern army. It was divided into ten cohorts (battalions), each of which consisted of three maniples (companies). The maniple was the smallest separate unit of organization, but it was divided for tactical purposes into two centuries, called *ordinēs* (platoons). The maniple was a permanent body, but the men in each *ordō* might vary from day to day. Thus, in inverse order:

2 centuries = 1 maniple ;

6 centuries = 3 maniples = 1 cohort ;

60 centuries = 30 maniples = 10 cohorts = 1 legion.

The men of the first maniple of each cohort were called *triarii* (or *pilāni*); those of the second maniple, *principēs*; those of the third, *hastāti*. These names had formerly signified three kinds of legionaries, who formed the rear line, the second line, and the foremost line respectively, in battle order. Now they were merely names for the three maniples of each cohort and for their centurions. The centurions were the "non-commissioned" officers who had risen from the ranks.

c. The senior centurion of each maniple commanded the whole maniple; the junior was his subordinate—they did not have independent commands, each of a century. The senior centurion of the first maniple of each cohort, in like manner, commanded the whole cohort.

Thus, there were sixty centurions in a legion, with a regular order of rank. The senior centurion of the first maniple of the first cohort, called *primus pilus prior* (or *primipilus*), not only commanded his own maniple and cohort, but directed the movements of the entire legion.

* Later, under the Empire, the legions had names as well as numbers.

The bearer of the eagle, the standard of the legion, attended him, and he was responsible for its safety and honor.

The junior centurion of the same maniple and cohort was called *primus pilus posterior*.

Similarly the two centurions of the second maniple of the first cohort were called *primus princeps prior* and *primus princeps posterior*.

Those of the third maniple of the first cohort were *primus hastatus prior* and *primus hastatus posterior*, and so on throughout each of the ten cohorts. Thus, those of the third maniple of the tenth cohort were the *decimus hastatus prior* and *decimus hastatus posterior*.

It is clear that the highest of the 60 centurions was the *primus pilus prior* (or *primipilus*), and that the lowest was the *decimus hastatus posterior*; but the order of promotion from rank to rank is not known.

Each centurion was assisted by a subordinate, called an *optiō* because he was appointed, chosen (*opto*) by the centurion.

Certain of the centurions highest in rank, called *centuriōēs primōrum ordinum*, or briefly *primi ordinēs*, took part in councils of war. These may have been either the ten first centurions of the respective cohorts, or the six centurions of the first cohort. Probably centurions who had attained this rank and, after being discharged, had returned to serve as volunteer veterans (*evocātī*) were also included in the *primi ordinēs*.

d. As to the regular number of soldiers in a legion, we can not speak with certainty. Cæsar's legions at the battle of Pharsalus in the Civil War, in 48 B. C., after all the campaigns in Gaul, averaged 2,750 men each; two, in particular, a little later had dwindled to about 1,600 men each; for the losses of war were not often made good by incorporating

Order of
their Rank

Primi
Ordines

Number of
Soldiers in
a Legion

re-enforcements into old legions. Recruits were rather enrolled in new legions, so there was the greatest difference in the experience as well as the numbers of different legions. It was several years before a legion was called "veteran." New recruits were called *tirōnēs*. In Cæsar's time a newly raised legion numbered 5,000* or 6,000 men. Taking 3,600† as the average number available for duty through the seven years of the Gallic War, we should then have cohorts of 360, maniples of 120, centuries of 60 men each. The effective strength was of course continually lessening by losses through battle and sickness, though this was partly offset by the increase in skill and experience.

e. The enlistment was for twenty years, at the end of which the veteran expected to be rewarded with a bounty in money, or a small piece of land, or both. **Term of Service** Sometimes colonies of veterans were founded in conquered territory, as outposts of Roman authority. Some of these colonies developed into cities which are important to-day.

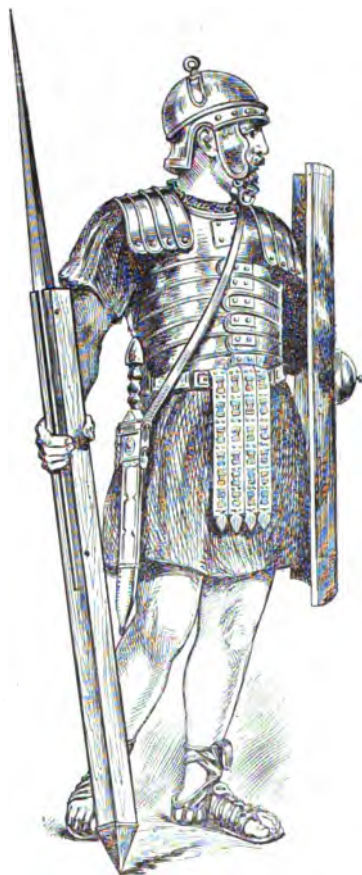
Service was by law compulsory on all citizens, but the well-to-do classes no longer served in the ranks, and those of the lower orders who volunteered in view of the compensations to be earned, more than sufficed to fill the legions. **Volunteers abundant**

f. The pay of a legionary, about equal to the earnings of a laborer, was fixed by Cæsar at 225 *dēnārii* a year,‡ with deductions for food and equipment. The soldier was better off than the laborer, in that his shelter was furnished him. **Pay**

* Some authorities say 6,000, which would make each century contain, as its name implies, 100 men. But it seems as if in fact the number was not generally so large.

† Many writers upon the tactics of fighting and marching take these numbers as the basis of their calculation.

‡ Marquardt-Mommsen, vol. v, p. 95 (1884). A *dēnārius* = about 16 cents.



Legionary soldier.

A centurion's pay was probably double that of a private soldier.

Pay was furnished from the public treasury, and the military chest was in charge of a paymaster (*quæstor*).

A soldier received 4 *modii* of grain (a *modius* = about a peck) per month, at a maximum rate of three fourths of a *dēnārius* per *modius*; this would amount, therefore, at most to 36 *dēnarii* a year. In the provinces food and equipments were supplied at very low rates, sometimes perhaps for nothing.

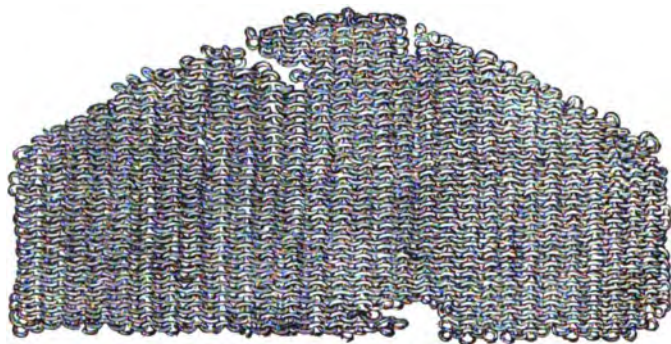
Shares of the plunder captured (*præda*), which was the property of the state, were sometimes given to the soldiers to reward them for exceptional exertions. Occasional gifts (*præmia*, *dōna*) were made by commanders to their troops.

g. The head of the legionary was protected in battle by a helmet of metal (*cassis*), or of leather strengthened with metal (*galea*); this had a crest or plume (*crista*), generally red, which was detachable. On a march the helmet was carried hanging in front of the shoulder.

Next to the body was worn a short-sleeved tunic, or shirt, of undyed wool, extending half-way down the thighs.

Over it was worn the coat of mail (*lōrica*), which in the case of private soldiers was made of a breastplate and backplate, with strips of metal running round the waist and over the shoulders, all sewed on a kind of leather shirt. The shoulder and waist pieces were flexible, and the garment was fastened somewhat in the manner of a corset. From the waist hung a kind of apron or skirt of leather or cloth, strengthened with strips of metal. This kind of cuirass was called *lōrica segmentāta*. The centurions and officers wore a better kind of coats of mail, lighter and more flexible, made of rings (*lōrica hāmāta*) or scales (*lōrica*

squāmāta).^{*} Those of the higher officers were often gilded.



Lorica hamata.

The sandal or shoe (*caliga*) was a heavy leather sole fastened over the foot and round the ankle by leather
 thongs or straps, or by a kind of shoe-upper, laced, which usually left the toes bare.

Shoes.

Greaves and

Breeches

Greaves (*ocrea*) and breeches (*braccae*) worn by the soldiers of the Empire, were probably not used in Cæsar's army.

The shield of the legionary (*scutum*) was in shape a part of a cylinder, and being four feet high by two and a half feet
 wide it protected the greater part of the body. It was of wood, covered with hide, and strengthened with metal, having a sharp metal boss in the center which could be thrust at an enemy. On the march it was covered to protect it from

Shield



Scutum.

the weather. The name of the general was inscribed on the outside, and the name of the owner on the inside. It was adorned (at least a little later) with the device of the particular legion. In battle it was carried on the left arm.

^{*} The picture of the eagle-bearer, p. xlv, shows a coat of scale armor.

The special offensive weapon of the legionary was the heavy javelin (*pilum*). The two cuts represent the *pilum* of

The *Pilum* the time of the Punic Wars (left) and that of the Empire (right) respectively. That of

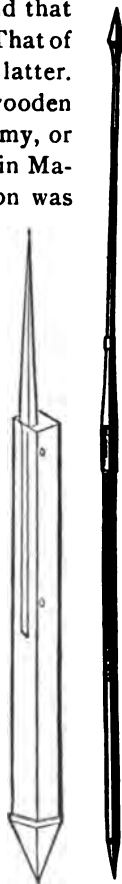
Cæsar's time was more like the former than the latter. The long iron head was inserted into the heavy wooden shaft in such a way that when it struck an enemy, or his shield, or the ground, it was apt to break off (in Marius's time the upper pin was wooden), or the iron was soft enough to bend in the process of pulling it out from the place where it had struck. Thus it was impossible to throw the weapon back. The cast varied probably from twenty to forty yards, according to the weight of the *pilum*, the strength and skill of the thrower, and the nature of the ground. As the early weapon weighed ten or eleven pounds (about as much as a modern musket), the force was sometimes enough to pierce both shield and body armor. Where the enemy stood in close order, with shields overlapping, a *pilum* sometimes pierced two or more shields and pinned them together.



Gladius.

On the right side, in order that it might not interfere with the shield, was worn the short, heavy Spanish sword (*gladius*), hanging in a sheath (*vagina*) from a belt (*balteus*) over the left shoulder. It was double-edged and pointed, and was thus adapted to cutting and thrusting at very close quarters.

Over his shoulders the soldier might wear a short cloak (*sagum* or *sagulum*), a square piece of cloth of undyed wool. This was fastened by a kind of clasp-pin (*fibula*) on the right shoulder. At night the *sagum* served as a blanket. In winter and in



Pila.

stormy weather a larger and heavier cloak (*pænula*) was often worn. The general's *sagum* was an ample mantle of purple or scarlet (*palūdamentum*), sometimes embroidered with gold. The other higher officers also had cloaks of red cloth.

h. The manœuvres of actual fighting were practised in time of peace. So also were various gymnastic exercises, intended to keep the men's muscular activity
Training at its best. Horsemanship must have been one of the numerous accomplishments of these wonderful soldiers, for Cæsar tells, in Book I, chapter xlii, how he mounted the tenth legion on the horses of his four thousand Gallic cavalry to serve as a more reliable body-guard in his interview with Ariovistus. When the troops were not otherwise employed they were often put to work on the construction of public works—such as canals, highways, bridges, amphitheaters, and the like.* Tiles or bricks still exist bearing the stamps of different legions.

Discipline was severe. Corporal punishment was often inflicted. The centurion carried a rod of vine (*vitis*) with which he flogged offenders. Other penalties
Discipline were loss of pay, canceling some years of a soldier's term of service and thus postponing the date of his discharge, exposure on the pillory in the camp, and expulsion from the ranks. Whole bodies of troops were sometimes punished by giving them barley (*hordeum*) instead of wheat for their food; by obliging them to spend the night outside the camp; by sending them on the most undesirable service abroad; and, in extreme cases, by decimation; that is, choosing by lot one man in every ten and scourging him to death.

i. Soldiers who distinguished themselves by energy and
Reward of gallantry received various rewards: money,
Valor promotion, or decorations (*dōna*)—such as bracelets (*armillæ*), chains (*catellæ*, *torquēs*), brooches (*fibulæ*), medals (*phaleræ*), or, much higher in distinction,

* This applies mostly to the legions of the Empire.

wreaths of honor (*corônæ*). The *corôna triumphâlis* or *ovâlis* was for the general only; but any soldier might win a *corôna civica* for saving the life of a citizen in battle, or a *corôna murâlis* or *castrênsis* for being first to mount the wall of an enemy's city or fortified camp.

As already indicated, a share of the plunder or the captives was often given to the troops to reward them for the toils and hardships of a difficult siege. Traders (*mercâtôrês*) with the army made a business of buying from the soldiers the booty or slaves, which they were, of course, glad to turn into cash.

k. There was one class of men standing between the soldiers and the officers—veterans whose time had expired, and who were serving voluntarily in the legions—**Veterans** *êvocâti** and *beneficiârii*.† They were prized for their courage and experience, were a kind of natural leaders of the men, and were exempt from guard duty and labor in the trenches. They also received higher pay than the legion-

aries, and it appears that sometimes, at least, they had horses to ride on the march. The *êvocâti* were sometimes formed into special companies, as in the case of the *prætôria cohors*.‡ *Beneficiârii* were attached to the persons of high officers for special duties, and were something like "orderlies."



Light-armed foot soldier.



Light-armed foot soldier.

2. Auxiliary Troops

These consisted of the contingents of light-armed

* So called because they were *called out* again into the army.

† So called because, by the favor of their commanders, they were *privileged*—exempt from certain duties.

‡ See page xl.

troops (*levis armātūræ*) furnished by the allies (*socii*) or subjects of Rome, and of bodies of mercenaries hired from foreign nations or princes.

Archers and Slingers Bowmen (*sagittarii*) were usually Cretans or Numidians. Slingers (*funditōrēs*) generally came from the Balearic islands.

The citizen cavalry attached to the legions in the earlier times had long ceased to serve in war. Men of equestrian rank served now only as officers (*tribūni*). The

Cavalry cavalry in Cæsar's time consisted of auxiliary or mercenary troops. He employed large numbers of friendly Gauls, and later, when he learned their excellence, of Germans. There may have been a small number of troopers regularly enlisted in the legions—not large enough, however, to be of much importance in battle.

When organized in the Roman manner, cavalry was formed into regiments (*ālæ*). Each *ālæ*, commanded by a *præfectus*, consisted normally of twelve troops (*turmæ*), each *turma* of three squads (*decuriæ*) of eleven—i. e., ten men and their commander (*decuriō*). Thus, an *ālæ* would contain (12×33) 396 troopers.

Not very much value was attached to cavalry in the actual shock of battle; but it was used by Cæsar with immense effect for scouting and out-post duty, for reconnoitering, for protecting the flanks of the infantry in battle or on a march, and, most of all, in completing the destruction of a defeated enemy by a prompt and energetic pursuit. In this use of mounted troops Cæsar and Napoleon were alike.



Slinger.

The auxiliary infantry was not organized into legions, but only into cohorts, which, owing to the ancient practice of stationing them on the wings of an army in line of battle, were commonly called *cohortēs ālārīæ*. Each cohort had a Roman commander (*præfectus*). The auxiliary infantry plays but an insignificant part in Cæsar's campaigns. It was useful, however, in impressing the mind of the enemy with the appearance of larger numbers and in relieving the legionaries of many duties of a campaign other than those of actual fighting.

Besides the regular auxiliary infantry there were from time to time separate bodies of allies, the contingents of friendly states, or mercenaries, serving under their native chiefs and organized in their native manner.

3. *Officers of the Line and Staff**

Besides the company officers, *centuriōnēs* and *optiōnēs*, there were the legion officers (*tribūnī*), six to each legion.

The tribunes had formerly been in command of the legion by turns—two at a time—but their duties were now mainly administrative. They were of equestrian rank—Roman knights—and most of them were merely serving in the army for a short time to advance their political fortunes, so that they were of little real value to the general. Cæsar's legions were, as a rule, each commanded by lieutenants (*lĕgātī*) of senatorial rank—men of experience, and mostly efficient officers. A *lĕgātus* was sometimes given an independent command (*imperium*) over several legions, forming

* Officers of the "line" are connected with and command particular bodies of troops or parts of them. Staff-officers, on the other hand, are attached to the commanding general to assist him, and are not permanently connected with definite portions of the army.

for the time a separate army. He was then called *légatus prō prætore*—i. e., lieutenant acting with the authority of a general.

Præfectus is an ill-defined term, and generally means an officer of the auxiliary infantry or of the cavalry. The army also had a *præfectus castrorum*, who had charge of the location, surveying, and policing of the camp.

The commander-in-chief (*dux*) was after a victory saluted by his soldiers as *imperātor*, and thereafter so styled by all who addressed him. Cæsar had gained this title while pro-prætor of Spain in 60 B. C., and he gained it again by his victory over the Helvetians in the first campaign in Gaul.

Cæsar was *prō-cōsul* of the provinces of Illyricum, Cisalpine Gaul, and Transalpine Gaul, the latter commonly called the "Province." He thus had not merely civil jurisdiction as a governor, but military authority (*imperium*) to raise troops, command armies, and carry on war. His wars were begun by way of defending the "Province." His defensive operations were very energetic, and soon developed into an undisguised effort for the conquest of all barbarian Gaul.

The commander-in-chief usually had a small body of picked troops attached closely to him as a kind of body-guard. This was called his prætorian cohort. It consisted of veteran soldiers (*evocātī*) who were serving as volunteers after winning their discharge, and privileged soldiers (*beneficiārīi*) who had been rewarded for special services, together with a kind of staff of personal aides, young men of good families, living in the headquarters with the general (*contubernālēs*) for the purpose of learning the profession of arms.

Attached to the governor of a province or the commander of an army was a financial officer elected by the

people—the *quæstor* (see foot-note, page xii). He supervised the revenues of the province; and in the army, if there was one, acted as paymaster, quartermaster, and commissary—that is, he had charge of the pay, the equipment, and the provisions of the troops, and also attended to the safe keeping and sale of the booty which was captured. In Cæsar's army the *quæstor* also commanded one of the legions.

Councils of war were sometimes held. When these were of special importance, they were attended not only by the *lĕgātī* and *tribūnī*, but also by the higher centurions (*prīmī ōrdinēs* *), who were all men of tried valor and long experience—thoroughly practical soldiers. The council could only advise the general; it had no power to compel him to follow its judgment. The final responsibility, as the final authority, rested entirely with him.

4. The Commissariat

The ordinary food of the Roman soldiers was wheat (*frūmentum*), served out once in fifteen days. When in the form of coarse meal it was called *cibāria molita*. The soldiers did their own grinding and cooking, and hand-mills formed part of the *impedimenta* carried by the baggage-train. Reserve supplies of food were transported in the same way.

Fresh meat was obtained frequently from the country through which the army passed, but the Romans ate comparatively little meat. The staple and only regular rations were the grain referred to above.

It is commonly supposed that one tent and one pack-mule were assigned to every ten legionaries (eight men

* See page xxx.

sleeping in the tent at night while two were on guard duty). Thus a legion of 5,000 men would have a train of 500 pack-animals besides the riding-horses and baggage-mules of the officers. But wagons were used sometimes, if not always, to carry forage and the sick and wounded soldiers. The commissary department was in charge of the *quæstor*. In some of its duties he was assisted by the tribunes.

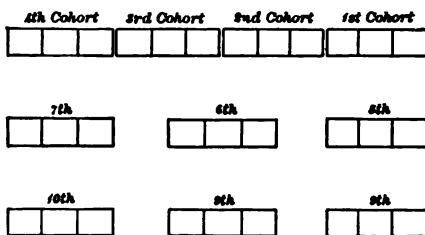
Besides the baggage-train there must have been a siege-train, for the transportation of the engines used in attacking fortified places. But in regard to this we are left without definite information.

B. TACTICS

5. *In Battle*

The battle tactics of the legion have never been thoroughly understood, and the information we have upon the subject is insufficient. The most usual method of drawing up an army in battle array was to arrange it in three lines (*triplex acies*), with

four cohorts of each legion in the first, three in the second, and three in the third line. If there were but two lines (*duplex acies*) there would be five cohorts in each. Often, however, one cohort of each legion

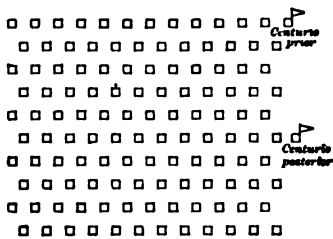


Triplex acies.

would be detached before battle to guard the camp or the baggage, leaving but nine to be drawn up for battle. The maniples of each cohort stood side by side; the centuries (*ordinēs*) of each maniple stood one behind the other.

Counting 120 to the maniple, we should have 10 ranks of 12 men each, 5 ranks in each century, or 12 files of 10 men each.

Allowing 3 feet in breadth and depth for each man, the maniple would occupy a space about 40 feet in breadth by 30 in depth. The front of a cohort so arranged would be 120 feet, of a legion 480 feet.



It can not be true that intervals were left between the cohorts of the first line wide enough for those of the second line to march into. This would have exposed every cohort to destruction by the enemy's attacking its flanks. Likewise there was no interval between legions standing side by side. The second line was far enough behind the first (200 to 250 feet) to be out of reach of the enemy's missiles, but near enough to afford prompt support when it was needed.

Maniple in battle order.

(Front is at the top.)

On approaching the enemy in battle the first line quickened its pace to a run, and, when near enough, the men in the front rank hurled their *pila* in a volley, drew their swords, and rushed forward to close with the enemy while they were still suffering from the effect of the volley. The men of the rear ranks threw their *pila* over the heads of those in front. Then as the fight proceeded, whenever the foremost man in a file fell, he was pulled back to the rear while the man behind him stepped into his place. One slightly wounded or exhausted would retire and give place to the man behind him. If the battle was long and hard, the fighting line would grow thin in some places and the cohorts of the second line would be called forward to reinforce the first. We can not suppose that whole cohorts were withdrawn and fresh ones put in their places; rather the men were re-

The Charge

How the Fighting Line was Reinforced

placed one at a time, or single files pushed forward between the tired or weakened ones hitherto engaged. Thus gradually the fresh troops would relieve those of the first line, who could then retire, rest, and form again as a second line. The third line could be used if necessary to support the other two, as the second had supported the first, or it could be used to lengthen the front of the army or execute a flank movement against the enemy.

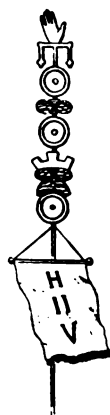


Aquilifer.

Standards, Flags, Signals

Each legion had its standard, a silver eagle (*aquila*) on a staff, which was a sacred object by

Eagles which the soldiers swore allegiance to their commanders. In camp it was kept in a shrine or sanctuary at headquarters; in battle it was under the special care of the first centurion; its loss was regarded as a dire calamity and disgrace. The bear-



Signum.

er of the eagle (*aquilifer*) was always a man chosen for his strength and courage. The standards of the cohorts or maniples were called *signa*. Each cohort or manipule had its own special standard* (*signum*), often in

* Authorities differ as to whether the *signa* were cohort or manipule standards.

the form of some animal. The bearer of a *signum* was called a *signifer*.

Possibly each maniple had its standard. This was certainly so in early times, before the formation of cohorts. It had been originally a handful (*manipulus*) of hay tied to a pole—hence a company was called a “maniple.” If the manipular standards were retained after the organization in cohorts, the standard of the first maniple doubtless served also as the standard of the whole cohort.

The figure of an open hand, which often formed part of a standard, was a symbol of fidelity.

The round disks or medallions (*phaleræ*), crowns, etc., were trophies of valor awarded to the cohort or maniple.

The little flag (*vexillum*) was probably marked, as, e. g. :

H = *hastati*, (or P = *principēs*), (or T = *triarii*).

II = 2d cohort.

V = 5th legion.

Detached bodies of troops, separated from their proper organizations, served under a flag (*vexillum*), and the detachment itself was spoken of as a *vexillum* or *vexillatiō*. The standards of the auxiliary cohorts and of the cavalry were also *vexilla*. But

the most important banners thus named were the white flag displayed at the commander's tent, with his name inscribed in red letters, and the great red banner which he hoisted as the signal for battle.

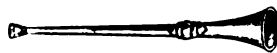
There was nothing corresponding to modern military bands, but there were several kinds of wind instruments used for giving signals in battle and in camp. The *tuba*, the

**Signal
Trumpets**

only one mentioned in the Gallic War, was a long, straight trumpet of deep tone, with flaring,



Vexillum.



Tuba.

bell-shaped end. Others were the *cornū*, an actual horn of ox or buffalo, or a brass instrument of that general form; the *būcina*, a large curved instrument; and the *lituus*, a curved trumpet used by the cavalry.



Bucina.

The orders of the commander, to pack baggage, to break camp, to attend an assembly, etc., were conveyed by trumpet signals; in battle the trumpets made plain to the ears of the soldiers the



Lituus.

commands which they could not have heard from the officers' lips, and the various standards expressed them to their eyes.

6. The March

The severest test of the soldiers was the endurance of their long marches, when fully burdened with baggage.

Marches. The heavy pieces of baggage (*impedimenta*)—
Baggage spare arms, leather tents, clothing, and food supply—were transported in wagons or on pack-animals (*iūmenta*) driven by the servants (*cālōnēs*). But there was still a great deal left to be carried by the individual soldier. The personal pack was called **Personal Kit** *sarcina*. It consisted of food for three to fifteen days, and each man's share of cooking utensils (*vāsa*), large stakes for the camp palisade (*vālli* or *sudēs*), saws, baskets, spades, axes, and other tools. Each man's burden amounted to about sixty Roman pounds. (Roman pound = .72 English pound.) The kit of the modern soldier weighs about the same as that of the Roman soldier.

Marius had invented a method of making a bundle of the articles to be carried, and fastening it to a forked stick, which was carried over the shoulder—this stick, or the soldier thus loaded, was called *mūlus* **Marius's** *Mariānus* ("Marius's mule"). The soldiers were trained in time of peace by practise marches. The

Marius's
Mules

were trained in time of peace by practise marches. The

day's march in war was regularly about sixteen miles (*iustum iter*). Forced marches (*magna itinera*) were sometimes as long as twenty-five miles, or even a little more. The start was usually made at daybreak, and the march ended at noon or soon after. This gave the rest of the day for entrenching the camp and the collection of wood and forage.

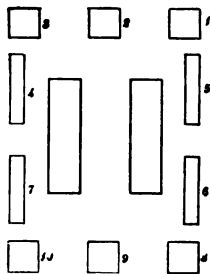
An army on the march (*agmen*) was usually preceded by cavalry and light troops (*primum agmen*, vanguard), whose duty it was to watch for the enemy and guard against surprises, and also to choose and mark out the places of encampment before the arrival of the main body. Scouting was performed by parties of cavalry and by certain picked men, specially trained for the duty, called *exploratores* or *speculatores*. The main body, consisting of the legions, had several methods of marching. When no attack from an enemy was feared, the legions marched in single column, each with its own baggage-train following—the hindmost legion detaching one or two cohorts to come last of all, behind its baggage, and form the rear-guard (*novissimum agmen*).

When there was some reason to expect attacks by the enemy, the greater part of the legions went first without their baggage-trains (*expeditæ*); then followed the baggage of the whole army, and last came as rear-guard the remainder of the legions. This order, reversed, was followed upon a retreat. The march in battle array was the only one where the individual men were ready for immediate fighting and were (*expediti*) without their packs (*sarcinæ*). This method was adopted when an immediate encounter with the foe was expected. It could be made either for-



Soldier in marching order.

ward in the direction faced in battle, or to either flank by facing each man to the right or left.



Agmen quadratum.

Sometimes it was necessary to march in a hollow square (*agmen quadratum*), with the baggage in the center so as to protect it in all directions and to face an enemy instantly, on front, rear, or either flank.

A small body attacked on a march by large numbers was obliged to form a circle (*orbem facere*) facing outward in all directions.

7. The Camp

A peculiar practice of Roman armies was never to spend a night without forming a fortified camp to guard against surprise by an enemy. The rule was strictly followed, even when no enemy was to be feared. No matter how hard and long the march, it was followed by the digging of a trench (*fossa*) and the raising of a rampart of earth (*vallum*), on the outer edge of which a line of stakes or palisades (*valli* or *sudēs*) was often planted.

Fortified Camps

Sometimes these were wattled with green boughs and sometimes they were in battlemented form, as shown in the illustration. There was a fixed

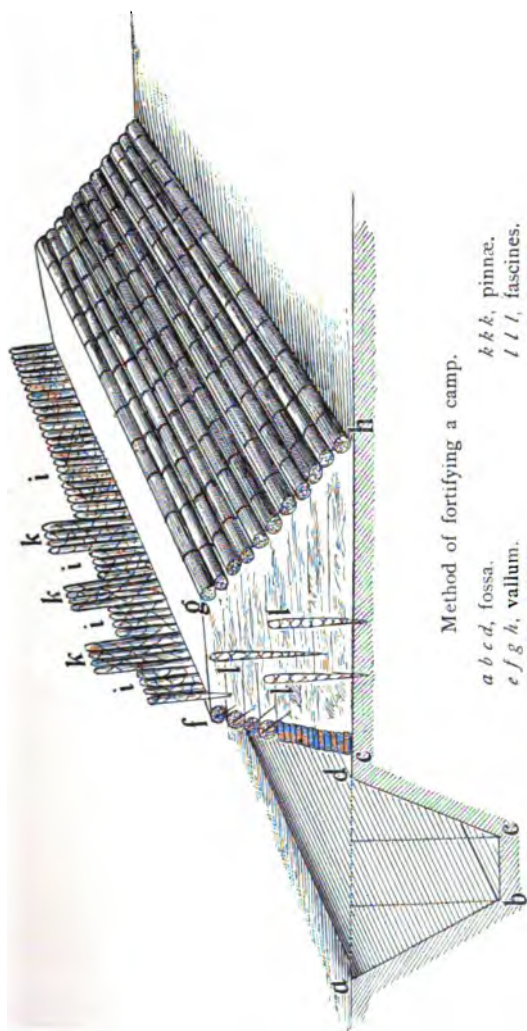
proportion between wall and ditch, the height of the former being two thirds of the width of the latter at the top. Ordinary dimensions for a night's camp were: ditch, nine feet wide, seven feet deep; wall, six feet high and six feet wide on top. These measurements were increased in the case of permanent camps or where there was especial danger. We are told of ditches twelve, fifteen, eighteen, and one of

Wall and Ditch

twenty feet wide; of walls eight, ten, and twelve feet high. The wall might be strengthened

with fascines—i. e., bundles of brush,—and faced with sods, or even stone; it was provided with steps made of logs or

Towers



Method of fortifying a camp.

a b c d, fossa.

e f g h, vallum.

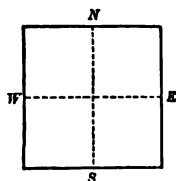
i i i i, valli or sudes.

k k k, pinnæ.

l l l, fascines.

fascines on the inside. Sometimes, as a further means of defense, wooden or wattled towers were erected on the wall at short intervals.

The art of laying out camps, called castrametation, was really a department of religious ritual, a branch of the augural science, just as was the laying out of new cities and the planting of colonies. The camp, being a place where the auspices were taken, was itself a *templum*, a consecrated space of ground with fixed limits. The *cardō* and *decumānus*, the cross lines of a templum, were found in the two main streets of the



Templum.

N S, *cardō*.

W E, *decumānus*.

camp, meeting in its center,* where the *augurāculum* was situated at the commander's quarters, the *prætōrium*. There was the altar on which the general sacrificed for the army, and the *forum* in which the soldiers assembled when he addressed them. Thus the religious and the political side of the life of the community were represented, and the camp was a symbol in miniature of the home city—a

temporary provisional fatherland for the citizens during their foreign service.

The choice of a site depended, however, on purely military considerations. A place was selected by men sent in advance, where, if possible, water, forage, and

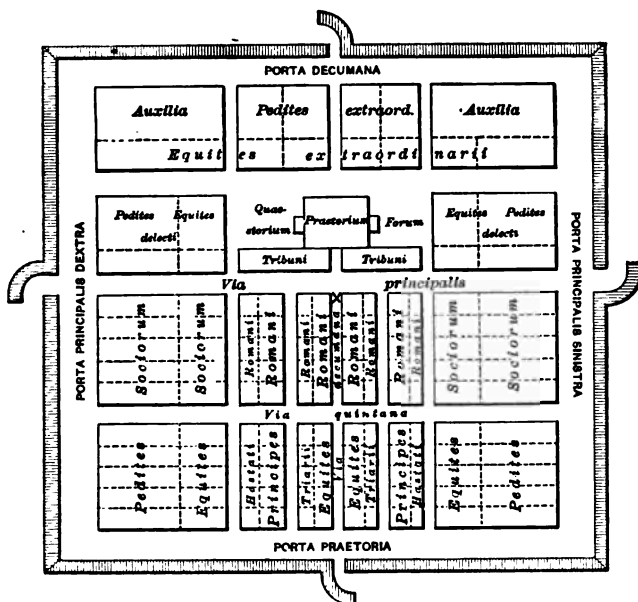
Site

wood † were easily obtainable, preferably on a slight elevation, where the rear of the camp could be at

* The city of Chester, England, is perhaps the most conspicuous example of a town preserving the outlines of a Roman camp. Its walls are nearly complete, and it is divided into quarters by two main streets at right angles, with gates at their ends.

† Getting water (*aquātio*) and fodder for the horses and mules (*pabulatio*) were among the duties that could ordinarily be assigned to the cavalry and the auxiliaries. Wood was used also, not only for fuel but in the construction of the ramparts.

the top and the front facing the enemy down a gentle slope of open ground, where there was clear space to form in battle array, and charge down hill. It was considered undesirable to encamp on a level, and dangerous to do so close by a forest or higher hills, for the former could con-



Plan of a Roman camp.

N. B.—The front is at the bottom.

ceal an enemy's approach, the latter give him a commanding position for attack.

We have two accounts of the plan of a Roman camp—one of the time of the Punic Wars, the other under the Empire, four or five centuries later. Cæsar's camps may be supposed to have had all the features which are common to the earlier and later ones, but in many points we can not be sure about the internal

arrangements. The diagram shows the general plan that was adhered to as far as circumstances allowed.

The general's and officers' quarters were placed toward the rear, where the ground was ordinarily higher and whence a view could be had over the whole camp. Moreover, the principal force of soldiers would be needed for defense, if at all, usually on the side toward the enemy.

The tents (*tabernacula*, *tentōria*) were made of leather, hence "*sub pellibus*" corresponds to the English "under canvas." In a permanent winter camp (*statiua*, *hiberna castra*), instead of tents wooden huts (*casæ*) with roofs of thatch (*stramentum*) were erected.

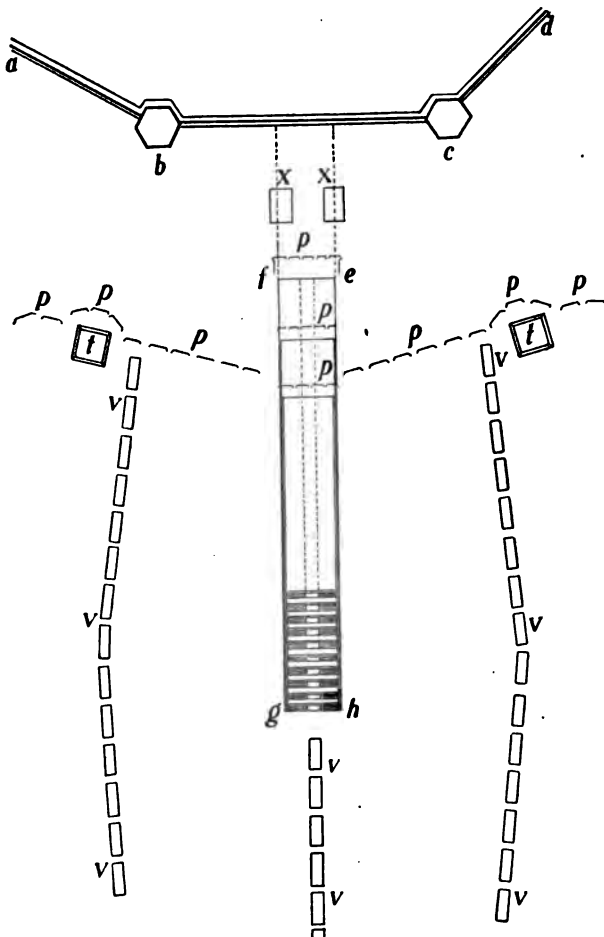
The camp was guarded constantly by outposts (*stationēs*, *excubiæ*) outside the gates, and at night by sentries also (*vigiliæ*), both at the gates and at short intervals along the whole wall. These were relieved four times during the night, so that "watch" (*vigilia*) came to mean a period of time, the fourth part of the time from sunset to sunrise, varying, of course, with the season of the year, in actual length. *Ex tertiā vigiliā*, for instance, means at or soon after the beginning of the third watch—that is, midnight.*

8. Sieges

The attacking and defending of fortified camps and towns forms an important part of the campaigns in Gaul.

If a town could be captured offhand by assault (*oppugnātiō repentina*), its ditches were quickly filled, its walls scaled, its gates forced, and its capture (*expugnātiō*) was immediate. But if it was strong enough to resist for a long or short time a regular siege became necessary, combining a blockade (*obsidiō*)

* Similarly *hōra*, an hour, was the twelfth part of the time from sunrise to sunset, varying with the season. But *sexta hōra*, e. g., means not the beginning, but the end of the sixth hour—i. e., noon, unless the context shows that it refers to the whole duration of the hour.



Plan of siege works.

a b c d, part of city wall.

x x, testudines.

e f g h, agger.

v v v, lines of vineæ, forming covered ways.

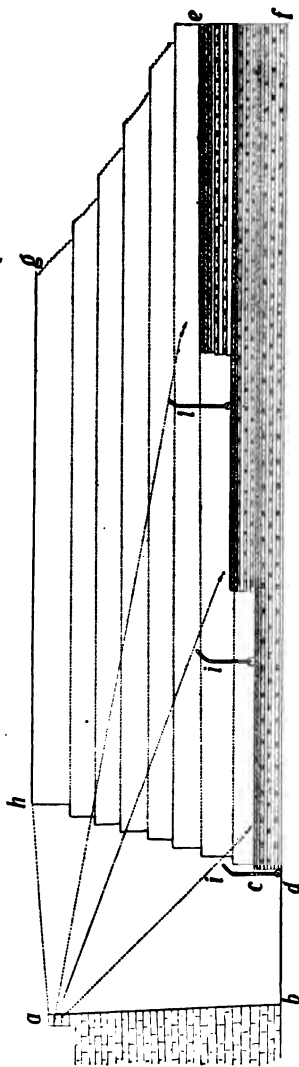
p p p p, plutei, protecting workmen on the agger, and lines of slingers and archers to right and left.

t t, movable towers.

for the purpose of cutting off supplies, with active operations to force an entrance (*oppugnātiō*).

In Cæsar's time the Roman military engineers had become very skilful, and **Roman Engineers** their operations, whether for attack or defense, were upon a great scale. There is no instance in which the Gauls were able to defeat even a small force of Romans fighting behind entrenchments. All this is best shown in the account of the siege of Alesia in the seventh book, where Cæsar was at once besieging the town and himself assailed from without by the huge relieving host of the Gauls. The spade was quite as important as the sword all through the story—on that occasion a good deal more so.

Information about siege operations is here given in the form of an illustrated vocabulary.

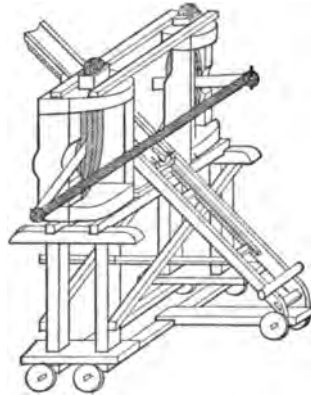


Section of agger, showing possible method of construction.

a b, city wall.
d c e f, part of agger already built.
i i i, plutei, to protect workmen against missiles thrown from the city wall.
a b d h, space to be filled hastily with rubbish at the moment of assault.
c h g e, part of agger to be built.

Agger : an embankment of earth and timber raised against a city wall, starting on the ground just out of range of the enemy's missiles, and gradually rising till, as it approached the wall, it was on a level with its top. The diagrams explain the construction and the use of the *agger*.

Ariës : a battering-ram, a long, heavy piece of timber (60 to 100 feet) with a metal head, suspended by chains and swung endwise against a wall to shatter it. Also a buttress to the pier of a bridge.



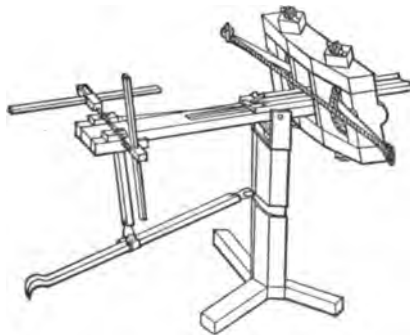
Ballista.

Arx : a citadel, a fortress within a city, usually in a high position.

Ballista : an engine which hurled large stones in a high curve. See *Tormentum*.

Catapulta : an engine which shot great arrows or bolts nearly horizontally. See *Tormentum*.

Cervus : an obstruction of brush or forked stakes, like the antlers of a stag ; *cheval - de-frise*. See cut after p. 216 of the text.

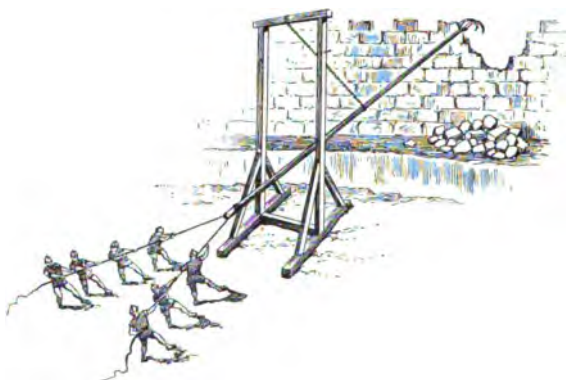


Catapulta.

Cippus : another name for the same.

Circumvallatiō : a continuous line of entrenchments enclosing a besieged town. When used in distinction from

contrāvallatiō, it means a line of defenses for the besiegers, facing outward, as at Alesia, while *contrāvallatiō*



Falx muralis.

means the line of works facing inward against the town.

See plan after p. 214 of the text.

Clāvus : a spike or large nail.

Crātes : hurdles of wickerwork, or fascines.

Ēruptiō or *Excursiō* : a sally, *sortie*, of besieged forces.

Falx muralis : a heavy iron hook for tearing down walls.

Fax : a torch, firebrand, used to set besiegers' works on fire.

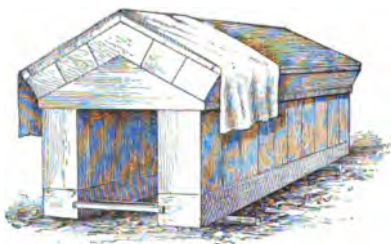
Festūca : a rammer, pile-driver.

Fossa : the ditch of a fortification, a moat.

Fovea : a pitfall.

Lilium : a short, sharp stake set in a pitfall.

Lōrica : in fortification, a wattled breastwork on a rampart of earth.



Musculus.

Musculus : a massive, low, long shed to shelter besiegers when close to walls.

Oppidum : a fortified town or post.

Pilum murāle : a heavy javelin thrown from a wall.



Plutei.

Pinna : a battlement. See p. xlix.

Pluteus : a screen, often on wheels, to shelter besiegers from light missiles.

Scāla : a scaling ladder, to mount walls.

Scorpiō : a light engine for shooting arrows or bolts, worked by one man.

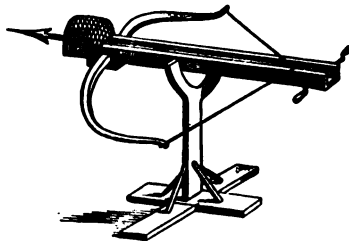
Scrobis : a funnel-shaped pit.

Stimulus : a barbed iron spike set in the ground, point upward.

Sublica : a pile, a piece of timber driven into the bed of a river.

Sudis : a stout stake, part of a palisade.

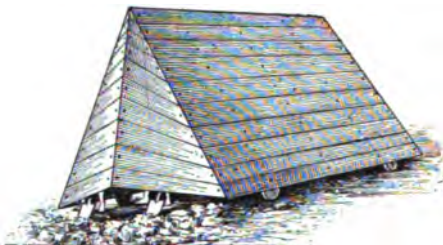
Testūdō : a heavy shed (turtleback) for protection of besiegers ; also a body of soldiers in close order, holding their shields over their heads lapping over each other like the shingles of a roof.



Scorpio.

Tormentum: an engine ("torsion hurler"), of which the force was supplied by the elastic power of twisted (*torquēō*, to twist) ropes. The name includes the ballista, the catapult, etc.

Turris: a tower; *turris ambulātoria*, a wooden siege-tower on rollers, moved



Testudo.

with levers along the level ground or up the inclined surface of the *agger* to the walls of a besieged town.

Vinea (arbor): a light shed, easily moved, affording protection against light missiles, and protected against fire by a covering of rawhides.

9. Other Engineering Operations

Equally admirable were the other constructive works carried out by the engineers, especially the building of effective fleets and bridges out of rude materials in a marvelously short space of time. Instances to be noted are the account of the first bridge over the Rhine in the fourth book, and of the fleets prepared for the campaign against the *Veneti* in the third book, and the campaigns against Britain in the fourth and fifth.

10. Naval Operations

These were exceptional. There was no separate navy, as a distinct arm of the service. If necessary a commander put his army on board a fleet, and a naval battle was fought by soldiers. Seamanship was rude and naval tactics were simple. There was an effort to sink the enemy's vessel by striking it with the ram or beak (*rostrum*). If that failed, the attempt was to cut the rigging

Ship and
Bridge
Building

No Navy

of the enemy, and to grapple the two ships fast and, boarding the enemy, to decide the battle by a hand-to-hand fight.

Decay of the Roman Fleet There were no longer such fleets as there had been—e. g., in the first Punic war, when the war-galleys were counted by the hundred. A

galley propelled by oars, corresponding to a modern steam war-ship, was called *nāvis longa*. The rowers, who were slaves chained to their benches, were arranged in one or more banks or tiers. They worked in shifts, probably four

Galleys hours at a time. A large galley most commonly had three banks of oars (*nāvis trirēmis*) one

above another, and the rowers were protected by the deck extending the whole length of the vessel. The working crew consisted of a few seamen, needed to manage the sails and the steering. The latter was done by means of two

long sweeps or oars projecting backward one on each side of the stern. The fighting crew was a detachment of soldiers temporarily drafted from a legion. Transports (*nāvēs*

Transports *onerariæ*) for men or merchandise were shorter and broader, and depended on sail-power alone.

A galley also had masts and sails, but they would be cleared away on going into action (*expedire nāvem*).

Aes: copper used for sheathing the beak, or for rivets.

Aerāta: copper fastened, or having a bronze beak.

Antenna: a yard; a spar hung across the mast from which the sail was hung.

Armāmenta: the rigging of a vessel.

Classis: a fleet.

Clāvus: a tiller or helm.

Gubernātor: a steersman or pilot.

Harpagō: a grappling-hook.

Scapha: a skiff, a small rowboat.

Subductiō: pulling up ships on the shore; they were thus beached for any long stay in one place, and always for the winter.

Trānstrum: a cross timber, a thwart, a bench for rowers.

CHAPTER III

CÆSAR'S PROVINCES

The word *prōvincia* in Latin meant the field of duty or activity assigned to a particular magistrate. When in the third century B. C. Rome began to conquer and govern foreign territories, these lands were organized as regular dependencies of the Republic under magistrates sent out to rule them, and were called "provinces"—*prōvinciæ*. The earliest governors were prætors, whose number was increased in order to provide provincial governors. Later, from the time of Sulla, all the prætors were needed at Rome to preside over the various courts. It then became customary to prolong the *imperium* of magistrates after their year of office at Rome expired, and to send them out as pro-consuls or pro-prætors to govern a province for a year. The more important provinces were assigned to pro-consuls, the less important to pro-prætors.

In Cæsar's time the Republic had about a dozen provinces.* They were ruled by governors with military authority, but in accordance with a special law enacted at Rome regulating the affairs of each province, and thus forming its constitution or charter. The people were subjects of Rome, without any

* Sicily, organized 241 B. C.; Sardinia and Corsica, 231; Hispania Citerior, 197; Hispania Ulterior, 197; Gallia Narbonensis, 120; Illyricum, after 167; Macedonia, 146; Asia, 133; Bithynia and Pontus, 74 and 65; Cilicia, 102 and 64; Syria, 64; Cyrene and Crete, 74 and 67; Africa, 146.

legal or political rights except such as the conquering Republic might choose to allow them. In fact, however, the administration of local affairs and minor matters of law was generally left in the hands of the native authorities. For the administration of higher justice the provinces were divided into circuits or districts in which the governors periodically held court. Free and allied cities or Roman colonies, if there were any within the limits of a province, were independent in most respects of the governor's jurisdiction.

It was usual for the Senate to assign, a year in advance, two provinces to the two consuls who might be elected for the year about to begin. After their election they cast lots to determine which province each should take; after their year of office at Rome was over they proceeded to their provincial governments. The assignment of Cæsar's provinces was exceptional. It had been agreed by the members of the Triumvirate that Pompey was to have the Spains, Crassus Syria, and Cæsar the Gauls for five years, and their arrangement was afterward legally ratified.

The provinces finally assigned to Cæsar by a special law, first for five years, afterward for five more (58-49 B. C.), were:

1. Cisalpine Gaul, the northern part of Italy, but not yet politically incorporated with it, a prosperous and peaceful country with a large and vigorous population, from which Cæsar drew most of the troops needed during the Gallic War. Gallic conquerors had long ago settled in this region, and had been subdued by the Romans about 200 B. C., and since that time many flourishing Roman cities have been planted in the country.

2. Transalpine Gaul, the "Province" as it was called, a name which survives in the French *Provence*, or *Gallia Narbonensis*, so called from the capital *Narbō*, now *Nar-*

bonne. This country had been a province for sixty years, was peaceful, and largely Romanized. Besides the Roman colonies there were some ancient Greek settlements, especially the important city of *Massilia* (*Marseilles*), within its borders.

3. Illyricum, adjoining Cisalpine Gaul on the east and extending down the eastern coast of the Adriatic. This was a source of strength to Cæsar, and gave him no trouble during the term of his office.

The military forces under his command at the beginning consisted of four veteran legions; * the number was increased from time to time until it reached ten or eleven. As to the auxiliary troops employed we have little information. The raising of additional troops when needed was included in the powers of a provincial governor by virtue of his *imperium*. Moreover, the territories bordering on his province were considered a fair field for his ambition, and his reasons for entering upon a foreign conquest which extended the frontiers of Rome's empire were not often very closely scrutinized.

Gaul meant at different times Cisalpine Gaul, Transalpine Gaul, the "Province," or Free Gaul, not yet subdued, or in a narrower sense the central division of the latter, the land of the *Galli* or *Celtæ* proper, excluding Aquitania on the south and Belgic Gaul on the north.

The Gauls were not one nation in the modern sense of the word, but rather a large number † of small nations or

* Seventh, eighth, ninth, and tenth; of these only the tenth was in the Province when Cæsar arrived; the others were brought from Aquileia; two new legions were raised the first year, the eleventh and twelfth; the next year the thirteenth and fourteenth; after the fourteenth was destroyed in 54 B. C., a new fourteenth and a fifteenth were raised, and the first was borrowed from Pompey. There is some doubt in regard to a sixth legion.

† There were about sixty of these nations in free Gaul in Cæsar's time.

tribes in various degrees of independence, some occupying commanding positions among their neighbors, others in the position of clients or dependents of the larger communities, thus forming various groups within the limits of the country. But there was a great religious assembly every year under the presidency of the Druids, the priestly order, for the regulation of the affairs of all the Gallic peoples, held in the land of the Carnutes, which was considered the geographical center of the whole country. From time to time there were likewise gatherings of several tribes for military purposes, and in the seventh year of the war there was a congress representing nearly all the nations of Gaul, when they combined to make a final effort for national independence, and elected a common leader, the hero Vercingetorix. In general, however, their lack of harmony, their mutual jealousies, their unsteadiness of purpose made them the victims of Cæsar's invariable policy, which was the carrying out of Rome's ancient maxim, *Divide et impera*, "Divide and conquer."

The Gauls were the chief representatives of that great race known in history as the Celts, which the Greeks and Romans had only begun to distinguish from the Teutonic race. They had been active in Europe for some centuries; they had settled all over what is now France, including Belgium, much of Holland, Switzerland, and western Germany; they were found in the British Islands, where they still appear in the Irish, the Welsh, and the Scottish Highlanders; they had settled in the north of Italy, had overrun the peninsula, and had destroyed Rome itself in 390 B. C.; they had invaded Greece; a large number had settled in Asia under the name of Galatians; and, finally, forming part of the great host of Cimbri and Teutones, they had threatened the existence of Rome again just at the time of Cæsar's birth, until the peril was averted by the great victories of Marius.

In Aquitania the proportion of Celtic conquerors to the former inhabitants was small, and the Aquitanians took little part in the contest against Cæsar. The great central portion of the country between the Garonne and the Seine was the proper land of the *Galli* or *Celtae*, where their nationality and their civilization predominated over all others, and gave the essential character to the whole country. Belgic Gaul, beyond the Seine, was filled with tribes less purely Celtic, some with a strong mixture of German blood, some apparently entirely Teutonic.

In the southern and central regions the people had long ago left off their earlier wild and warlike character, had become used to a settled life, had built large towns, developed trade and commerce,* and in general had made much progress in civilization. This was especially true of the nations which had most intercourse with the Greeks and Romans in the Province. Monarchy as an institution had nearly passed away; the governments were usually in the hands of nobles, who were in the habit of electing annual magistrates called *Vergobrets*. All social and political power was in the hands of two superior orders—the knights or nobles, and the Druids or priestly class. The former were strong through their large landed estates, their numerous retainers, their military power; the latter exercised the influence always exercised by priests in an imperfectly civilized community, especially when they are the ministers of a religion that is mysterious and terrible. We suspect that Cæsar found the Druids more formidable foes than the nobles, and that one of his reasons for invading Britain was to strike at the center of Druidism, where the system was still flourishing in full strength, while it had already begun to wane in Gaul.

The tribes of Belgic Gaul were later comers than their southern brethren; they had made less progress and re-

* The nations of the northwest coast had even become shipbuilders and maritime traders. There were mines in Aquitania.

tained more of their fierce and barbaric character. They were still largely ruled by kings or military chiefs, had no important cities, and had made less progress in the arts of civilized life. As soldiers they were dangerous enemies, but in politics they were still children.

Belgic Gaul

The Romans at this time were just beginning to make the acquaintance of the Germans. Hitherto they had confused in their minds all the barbarians of northern Europe.

The Germans

Now they came into collision with a more terrible race behind the Celts—a race which was threatening to come in and dispossess the Gauls. The turn of the Romans would have come next. In the very year when Cæsar took command, 350,000 Helvetians attempted to migrate into Gaul, no doubt pressed in the rear by German tribes; 150,000 Germans had settled west of the Rhine, and 100,000 more were about to follow. Cæsar at once came forward as the defender of the Gauls against the Germans. The immediate danger was averted by the destruction of the Helvetian host and the defeat of the German king Ariovistus; but twice in the course of the war Cæsar thought it necessary to invade the Germans in their own land—not for conquest, but to teach them that even beyond the Rhine's broad stream they were not to be safe from Rome's heavy hand. As his countrymen were unacquainted with Germany and its people, Cæsar gives in the sixth book an account of both—the earliest in Roman literature—based upon his own observation and upon what he could learn by inquiry. This, and the fuller account by Tacitus a century and a half later, are the two most valuable sources of information about our ancestors while they were still barbarians in the German forests. The country was mostly uncultivated, full of great marshes, covered with vast forests; to an Italian the climate seemed bleak, the country inexpressibly dreary. The inhabitants lived by hunting or upon the milk and flesh of their flocks; their agriculture

was in its rude beginnings, and they frequently changed their abodes; there was no private ownership of the soil; the nomadic stage of civilization was hardly passed. But the people were tall and strong, exciting the admiration of strangers; the nation was in its youthful vigor, life was simple and virtuous. The progress of these fine barbarians was stopped by Cæsar's victories, until, some centuries later, the time came for them to build up modern nations on the ruins of the Roman Empire. To the Romans Germany was a vague expression; its limits to the west and south were the Rhine and Danube; their notions of its extent to the north and east were of the dimmest kind. Roman armies afterward marched as far as the Elbe, but the permanent conquests embraced no more than the frontier along the Rhine and Danube.

Cæsar was the first of the Romans to land on the shore of Britain, the first author to give any account of that country. There were no substantial results from his two invasions, but they had a great moral effect, and opened the way for the conquest of the island in the following century. Britain was a Roman province for four hundred years, during which it prospered greatly, and reached a higher state of material comfort and civilization than it was to see again until very recent times. When Cæsar was in the island the people were what the Gauls had been a little earlier in their history, before they had come under Greek and Roman influence.

The Celtic character has always been an attractive one. Its main qualities are seen in the Gauls whom Cæsar knew.

The Celtic Character They were warm-hearted, enthusiastic, high-spirited, brave, impulsive, and eloquent; they were fond of display in dress, of parade and ceremony. Their weakness was shown by their inability to coöperate for any length of time in carrying out a common plan in war or politics. They were brave, but they were not persevering. They were quick to observe

and to learn, and readily adopted new arts and customs, imitating the productions of their more civilized southern neighbors. Thus in a comparatively short time Gaul and Britain became thoroughly Roman countries.

Our information about the dress of the Gauls is imperfect. The men wore short tunics and trousers (*bracca*), and free Gaul was called *Gallia Braccāta* (in trousers) or *Comāta* (long-haired), to distinguish it from the "Province," *Gallia Togāta*, the toga being the Roman garment of ceremony. They were fond of bright colors in their garments, and went into battle half naked, their bodies decorated with war-paint. Both sexes wore jewelry, the most characteristic ornament being the heavy collar or necklace of twisted gold or cheaper metal. Their weapons were various: long iron swords, poorly tempered and ill adapted for thrusting, various kinds of spears, lances and javelins, bows and slings. Most of them had no defensive armor except helmets and shields. The former had tall crests in the form of horns or heads of animals, and were more imposing than useful; the latter were blazoned with rude devices of a kind of savage heraldry.

The most important part of their armies was the cavalry, and in Britain the war-chariots. The common people formed the infantry, which was arranged in great phalanxes, close masses of men, holding their shields in front and over their heads. The charge of such a solid body was formidable, but the phalanx was unwieldy in action, for only the soldiers on the outer edges could take an active part in fighting, and when the formation was once broken the army became a mere mob of fighters.

Over these gallant but ill-disciplined hosts the steady, highly trained Roman legions, under one of the world's greatest captains, prevailed year after year. When the hopelessness of the struggle for separate existence at last became manifest, Gaul accepted her destiny as part of the

Roman Empire, and soon became one of the most important members of that body. Italians flocked in large numbers into the country, Roman cities grew up

Gaul

Romanized

and prospered, Roman ways of life were adopted, and, most important of all, the Latin language was introduced, which has been spoken from that time to this, and gradually developed into the language we call French. Gaul produced eloquent Latin orators, authors, and poets, and Gauls even became Roman emperors. In the fifth century, at the fall of the Western Empire, various German nations came in and established their supremacy. Most important of these were the Franks, who gradually extended their power over the country, and gave it their own name, the "Realm of the Franks,"

Cæsar the

Founder of

France

France. But the language of France is Latin still, and the people are mainly Celtic. In the brilliant history of this great country we can trace the Gallic character, but through it all runs the strong, deep impression of Roman influence. French cities bear the names of ancient Gallic tribes, and the dioceses of French bishops largely preserve the ancient boundary-lines of those tribes. But French civilization is Latin rather than Celtic, and the French are right when they begin with Cæsar in the text-books of their history. Behind Napoleon and Louis XIV, behind Charlemagne and Clovis, twenty centuries away stands Cæsar, first and greatest of their rulers, the creator of France.

It is not given to many mortals to do a work that shall last a thousand years, but it is two thousand years this very day since Cæsar was born. These words are written on the 12th of July, in the first year of the twentieth Christian century, in a State of which the Latin name is *Neo-Cæsarēa*, and at the university which bore for a hundred and fifty years the title *Collégium Neo-Cæsariense*.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

The following are a few of the works interesting to students of Caesar :

FROUDE, J. A. *Caesar, a Sketch.* New York, 1879.

(Intensely interesting, but inaccurate and not impartial.)

FOWLER, W. W. *Julius Caesar and the Foundation of the Roman Imperial System.* New York, 1892.

(In the Heroes of the Nations series.)

DODGE, Col. TH. A. *Julius Caesar.* Boston and New York, 1892.

(In the Great Captains series. Written entirely from the military point of view.)

TROLLOPE, A. *The Commentaries of Caesar.* London and Philadelphia, 1880.

(One of the Ancient Classics for English Readers.)

MERIVALE, C. *The Roman Triumvirates.* London, 1892.

(One of the Epochs of Ancient History.)

All the histories of Rome which deal with this period have much to say of Caesar.

NAPOLÉON III. *Histoire de Jules César.* Paris and New York, 1865, 1866.

(2 vols. and atlas, the latter especially of the greatest value.)

HOLMES, T. R. *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul.* London, 1899.

(Invaluable for the ethnology and geography of Gaul in Caesar's time.)

Among many English and German editions of the Gallic War may be mentioned :

- LONG, GEORGE. London, 1880.
 STOCK, ST. GEORGE. Oxford, 1898.
 PESKETT, A. G. Cambridge, 1878-'82.
 MOBERLY, C. E. Oxford, 1878.
 MEUSEL, H. Berlin, 1894.
 HOLDER, A. Tübingen, 1882.
 KRANER, F. Berlin, 1886.
 DOBERENZ, A. Leipzig, 1886.
 RHEINHARD, H. Stuttgart, 1886.

LEXICONS

- MEUSEL. *Lexicon Caesarianum*, 2 vols. Berlin, 1887-'93.
 MENGE UND PREUSS. *Lexicon Caesarianum*. Leipzig, 1890.
 MERGUET. *Lexicon zu den Schriften Cäsars und seiner Fortsetzer*. Jena, 1886.

MISCELLANEOUS

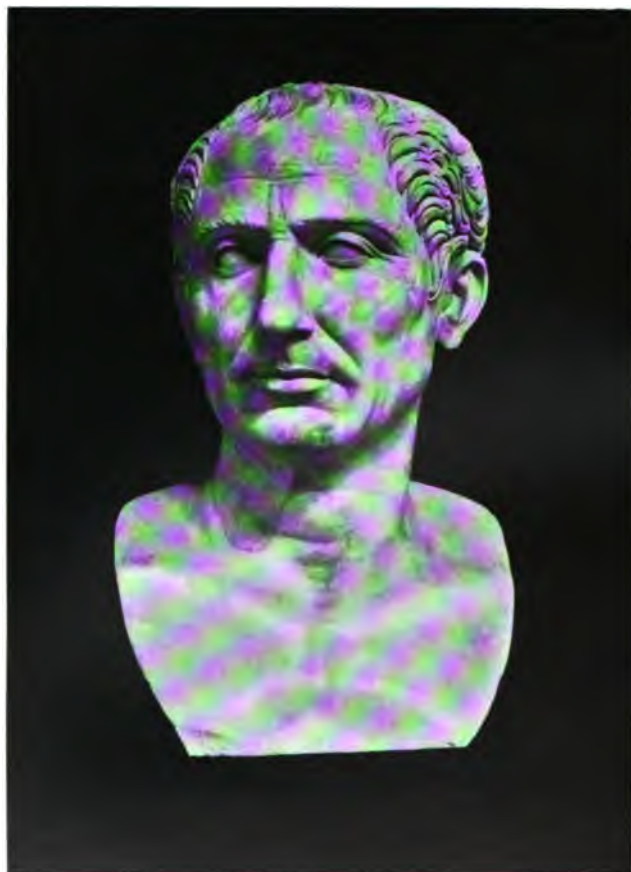
- JUDSON, H. P. *Caesar's Army*. Boston, 1888.
 FRÖHLICH, F. *Das Kriegswesen Cäsars*. Zürich, 1891.
 STOFFEL, Col. E. G. H. C. *Guerre de César et d'Arioviste*. Paris, 1890.
 VON GÜLER, A. *Cäsars Gallischer Krieg*. Tübingen, 1880.
 RÜSTOW, F. W. *Heerwesen und Kriegführung Cäsars*. Nordhausen, 1862.
 Atlas zu *Cäsars Gallischem Krieg*. Stuttgart, 1868.
 JAL, A. *La Flotte de César*. Paris, 1861.
 OEHLER, R. *Bilderatlas zu Cäsars de Bello Gallico*. Leipzig, 1890.
 DESJARDINS, E. E. A. *Géographie historique et administrative de la Gaule romaine*. Paris, 1876-'93.

READING COURSES

It is usual to read the first four books of the Gallic War. Some will prefer to select from the seven books the more interesting portions of the story. The following table will help one to choose portions equal in amount to the first four books, and to vary the selections from time to time:

In this edition the first four books amount to	103 pages
General description of Gaul, I, 1	1 page
Campaign against the Helvetii, I, 2-29	18 pages
Campaign against Ariovistus, I, 30-54	20 pages
War against the Belgian confederacy, II, 1-35	21 pages
Campaign against the Veneti, III, 7-16	6 pages
Campaign against the Usipetes and Tencteri, and first invasion of Germany, IV, 1-19	12 pages
First invasion of Britain, IV, 20-36	10 pages
Second invasion of Britain, V, 1-23	15 pages
Revolt of Ambiorix, V, 24-53	19 pages
Second invasion of Germany, and customs of the Gauls and Germans, VI, 9-29	12 pages
Uprising of Gaul under Vercingetorix, VII, 1-15	10 pages
Siege and destruction of Avaricum, VII, 16-30	9 pages
Siege of Alesia, VII, 68-90	15 pages
	<u>168 pages</u>
The seven books amount to	226 pages





THE BUST OF CAESAR IN THE MUSEUM AT NAPLES.

C. IULII CAESARIS
BELLI GALLICI

LIBER PRIMUS.

THE CAMPAIGNS AGAINST THE HELVETIANS AND ARIOVISTUS, B. C. 58.

The nations of Gaul. Their characters and territories.

Gallia est omnis dīvisa in partēs trēs; quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, institūtis, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquitānis Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Mātrona et Sēquana dīvidit.

Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant atque ea, quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent, important; proximīque sunt Germānis, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētīi quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecedunt, quod ferē cotidiānis proeliis cum Germānis contendunt, cum aut suis finibus eōs prohibent aut ipsī in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt.

Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō, continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, finibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab

Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentrionēs. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae finibus oriuntur, pertinent ad inferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēni, spectant in septentrionem et orientem sōlem. Aquitania ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pŷrēnaeōs montēs et eam partem Ōceanī, quae est ad Hispāniam, pertinet, spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septentrionēs.

Orgetorix persuades the Helvetians to migrate into Gaul.

2 Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorix. Is, M. Messālā, [et] M. Pisōne cōsulibus, rēgnī cupiditāte inductus coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fecit et civitātī persuāsit, ut dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiis exirent: perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus praestārent, tōtius Galliae imperiō potiri. Id hōc facilius eis persuāsit, quod undique loci nātūrā
15 Helvētiū continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germanīs dividit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram
20 ab Helvētiīs dividit.

His rēbus fiēbat, ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile finitimīs bellum inferre possent; quā ex parte hominēs bellandī cupidī māgnō dolōre adficiēbantur. Prō multitūdine autem hominum et prō
25 glōriā bellī atque fortitūdinis angustōs sē finēs habere arbitrābantur, quī in longitudinem milia passuum CCXL, in lātitudinem CLXXX patēbant.

Their preparations. Conspiracy of Orgetorix.

3 His rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorigis permōti cōstituērunt ea, quae ad proficiscendum perti-

nērent, comparāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam māximum numerum coēmere, sēmentēs quam māximas facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppeteret, cum proximis civitātibus pācem et amicitiam cōfirmāre.

Ad eās rēs cōficiendās biennium sibi satis esse 5 dūxērunt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōfirmant. [Ad eās rēs cōficiendās] Orgetorix dux dēligitur. Is [sibi] lēgatiōnem ad civitātēs suscipit. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Catamantāloedis filiō, Sēquanō, cūius pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs 10 obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amicus appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in civitāte suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerit; itemque Dumnorigī Haeduō, frātrī Diviciāci, quī eō tempore principātum in civitāte obtinēbat ac māximē plēbī acceptus erat, ut idem cōnā- 15 rētur persuādet, eīque filiam suam in mātirimōnium dat.

Perfacile factū esse illis probat cōnāta perficere, propterea quod ipse suae civitātis imperium obtentūrus esset: nōn esse dubium quān tōtius Galliae plūrimum Helvētiī possent; sē suis cōpiīs suōque exercitū illis 20 rēgna conciliātūrum cōfirmat. Hāc ōrātiōne adductī inter sē fidem et iūs iūrandum dant et rēgnō occupātō per trēs potentissimōs ac firmissimōs populōs tōtius Galliae sēsē potiri posse spērant.

His trial, escape, and death.

Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium ēnūtiāta. Mōri- 4 bus suis Orgetorigem ex vinculis causam dicere coēgērunt; damnātum poenam sequi oportēbat ut igni cremārētur. Diē cōstitutā causae dictiōnis Orgetorix ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum milia decem, undique coēgit, et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque 3,

suos, quorum magnum numerum habebat, eodem conduxit; per eos, ne causam diceret, se eripuit. Cum civitas ob eam rem incitata armis ius suum exsequi conareretur multitudinemque hominum ex agris magis tratus cogerent, Orgetorix mortuus est; neque abest suspicio, ut Helvetii arbitrantur, quin ipse sibi mortem consciverit.

The Helvetians burn their homes. They are joined by other tribes

5 Post eius mortem nihil minus Helvetii id, quod constituerant, facere conantur, ut e finibus suis exeant.
 10 Ubi iam se ad eam rem paratos esse arbitrati sunt, oppida sua omnia, numero ad duodecim, vicos ad quadringentos, reliqua privata aedificia incendunt; frumentum omne, praeter quod secum portaturi erant, comburunt, ut, domum reditionis spe sublata, paratiores
 15 ad omnia pericula subeunda essent; trium mensium molita cibaria sibi quemque domo effere iubent.

Persuadent Rauracis et Tulingis et Latobrigis finitimis, uti eodem usi consilio, oppidis suis vicisque existis, una cum eis proficiscantur; Boiosque, qui trans
 20 Rhenum incoluerant et in agrum Noricum transierant Noriamque oppugnarent, receptos ad se socios sibi adsciscunt.

Of two routes they choose the one through the Province.

6 Erant omnino itinera duo, quibus itineribus domo exire possent: unum per Sequanos, angustum et
 25 difficile, inter montem Iuram et flumen Rhodanum, vix qua singuli carri ducerentur; mons autem altissimus impendebat, ut facile perpauci prohibere possent; alterum per provinciam nostram, multo facilius atque expeditius, propterea quod inter fines Helvetiorum et Allo-

brogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōn nullīs locīs vadō trānsitur.

Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiōrum finibus Genāva. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs, 5 quod nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidērentur, existimābant, vel vī coāctūrōs, ut per suōs finēs eōs ire paterentur. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātis diem dicunt, quā diē ad ripam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant. Is diēs erat a. d. V. Kal. Apr., 10 L. Pisōne A. Gabiniō cōsulibus.

Caesar hurries to Geneva. They ask his permission. He gives an evasive answer.

Caesari cum id nūntiātum esset eōs prōvinciam 7 nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficiscī, et quam māximīs potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genāvam pervenit. Prōvinciae 15 tōtī quam māximum potest militum numerum imperat, —erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna,—pontem, quī erat ad Genāvam, iubet rescindī. Ubi dē ēius adventū Helvētīi certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs civitātis, cūius lēgatiōnis Nammēius 20 et Verucloetius prīncipem locum obtinēbant, quī dicerent sibi esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, proptereā quod aliud iter habērent nūllum; rogāre, ut ēius voluntāte id sibi facere liceat.

Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium cōnsu- 25 lem occisum exercitumque ēius ab Helvētīis pulsum et sub iugum missum, concēdendum nōn putābat; neque hominēs inimicō animō, datā facultāte per prōvinciam itineris faciundī, temperātūrōs ab iniuriā et maleficiō

existimābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset, dum militēs, quōs imperāverat, convenirent, lēgātis respondit diem sē ad dēliberandum sūmptūrum: si quid vellent, ad Id. Aprīl. reverterentur.

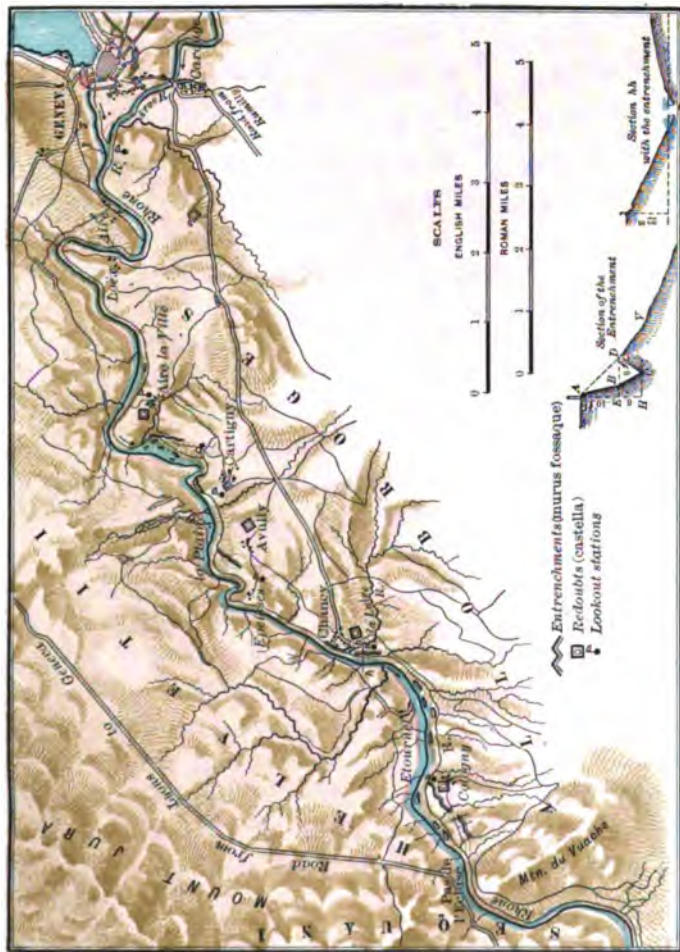
He stops their progress by fortifications along the Rhone.

- 8 Intereā eā legiōne, quam sēcum habēbat, militibusque, quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Iūram, quī finēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiis dividit, mīlia passuum XVIII mūrū in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim
10 fossamque perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit, quō facilius, si sē invītō trānsire cōnārentur, prohibēre posset.

Ubi ea diēs, quam cōstituerat cum lēgātīs, vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē mōre et exemplō
15 populī Rōmānī posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare, et si vim facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum ostendit. Helvētīi eā spē dēiectī, nāvibus iūctīs ratibusque complūribus factīs, aliī vadīs Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, nōn numquam interdiū, saepius noctū,
20 si perrumpere possent cōnātī, operis mūnitiōne et militum concursū et tēlis repulsī hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

They are allowed to proceed through the land of the Sequani.

- 9 Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs invītīs propter angustias ire nōn poterant. His cum suā sponte persuādere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dum-
25 norīgem Haeduum mittunt, ut eō dēprecātōre ā Sēquanīs impetrārent. Dumnorix grātiā et largitiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimū poterat et Helvētiis erat amicus, quod ex eā civitāte Orgetorīgis filiam in mātrimonium dūxerat, et cupiditate rēgnī adductus novīs



THE RHONE FROM GENEVA TO PAS DE L'ÉCLUSE.

rēbus studēbat et quam plūrimās cīvitatēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat ut per finēs suōs Helvētiōs ire patiantur, obsidēsque utī inter sēsē dent perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant, Helvētiī, ut 5 sine maleficiō et iniūriā trānseant.

Caesar gets reinforcements, and crosses the Rhone.

Caesarī nūntiātur Helvētiīs esse in animō per agrum 10 Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in Santonum finēs facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium finibus absunt, quae cīvitas est in Prōvinciā. Id sī fieret, intellegēbat 15 māgnō cum periculō Prōvinciae futūrum, ut hominēs bellicōsōs, populī Rōmānī inimicōs, locīs patentibus māximēque frūmentāriīs finitimōs habēret. Ob eās causās ei mūnitiōnī, quam fēcerat, T. Labiēnum lēgātum praeficit; ipse in Ītaliā māgnīs itineribus con- 15 tendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscribit, et trēs, quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant, ex hibernīs ēdūcit, et, quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs erat, cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus ire contendit. Ibi Ceutrones et Grāioceli et Caturīges locīs superiōribus oc- 20 cupātis itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Complūribus hīs proeliīs pulsīs ab Ocelō, quod est oppidum citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in finēs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit; inde in Allobrogum finēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exerci- 25 tum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum primī.

The Haedui and other tribes ask his aid against the Helvetians.

Helvētiī iam per angustiās et finēs Sēquanōrum 11 suās cōpiās trādūxerant, et in Haeduōrum finēs per-

venerant eorumque agrōs populābantur. Haedui, cum
 sē suaque ab eis dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Cae-
 sarem mittunt rogātum auxilium: Ita sē omnī tempore
 dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse, ut paene in cōspectū
 5 exercitūs nostrī agrī vastārī, liberī [eōrum] in servitū-
 tem abdūcī, oppida expūgnārī nōn dēbuerint. Eōdem
 tempore [Haedui] Ambarri, necessariī et cōsanguineī
 Haeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faciunt sēsē dēpopu-
 lātis agrīs nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre.
 10 Item Allobroges, quī trāns Rhodanum vicōs possessiō-
 nēsque habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt et dē-
 mōnstrant sibi praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliquī.
 Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn exspectandum sibi
 statuit, dum, omnibus fortunīs sociōrum cōsumptis,
 15 in Santonōs Helvētiī pervenirent.

He destroys one division of the Helvetians at the Saône.

12 Flūmen est Arar, quod per finēs Haeduōrum et Sē-
 quanōrum in Rhodanum influit, incrēdibili lēnitāte, ita
 ut oculīs, in utram partem fluat, iūdicārī nōn possit.
 Id Helvētiī ratibus ac lintribus iūctis trānsībant.
 20 Ubi per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est trēs iam
 partēs copiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse, quar-
 tam ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē
 tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus
 ad eam partem pervēnit, quae nōndum flūmen trānsie-
 25 rat. Eōs impeditōs et inopināntēs adgressus māgnam
 partem eōrum concīdit; reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunt
 atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt.

Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus; nam omnis cīvi-
 tās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvisa est. Hīc pāgus
 30 ūnus, cum domō exisset, patrum nostrōrum memoriā

L. Cassium cōsulem interfēcerat et ēius exercitum sub iugum mīserat. Ita sive cāsū sive cōnsiliō deōrum immortalīum, quae pars cīvitātis Helvētiaē insīgnem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea prīnceps poenās persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn solum pūbli- 5 cās sed etiam prīvātās iniūriās ultus est, quod ēius socerī L. Pīsōnis avum, L. Pīsōnem lēgātum, Tigurinī eōdem proeliō, quō Cassium, interfēcerant.

A Helvetian embassy visits Caesar.

Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut 13 cōsequī posset, pontem in Ararī faciendum cūrat 10 atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētīi repentinō ēius adventū commōtī, cum id quod ipsī diēbus xx aeger- rimē cōnfēcerant, ut flūmen trānsirent, illum ūnō diē fēcisse intellexerent, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cūius lēgatiōnis Divicō prīnceps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dux 15 Helvētiōrum fuerat.

Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: Sī pācem populus Rō- mānus cum Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs, ubi eōs Caesar cōstituis- set atque esse voluisset; sīn bellō persequī persevērāret, 20 reminiscerētur et veteris incommodi populī Rōmānī et prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum eī, quī flūmen trānsis- sent, suis auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut suae māgnopere virtūtī tribueret aut ipsōs dēspi- 25 ceret. Sē ita ā patribus māiōribusque suis didicisse, ut magis virtūte contenderent, quam dolō aut insidiīs nīterentur. Quārē nē committeret, ut is locus, ubi cōn- stitissent, ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen caperet aut memoriā prōderet. 30

Caesar's reply is unsatisfactory.

- 14 His Caesar ita respondit: Eō sibi minus dubitā-
tīōnis darī, quod eās rēs, quas lēgātī Helvētiī com-
memorāssent, memoriā tenēret, atque eō gravius ferre,
quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī accidissent; quī sī
5 alicūius iniūriae sibi cōnsciū fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile
cavēre; sed eō dēceptum, quod neque commissum ā sē
īntellegeret, quārē timēret, neque sine causā timendum
putāret. Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblīvīscī vellet,
num etiam recentium iniūriarū, quod eō invitō iter
10 per prōvinciam per vim temptāssent, quod Haeduōs,
quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogas vexāssent, memo-
riam dēpōnere posse? Quod suā victoriā tam īnso-
lenter glōriārentur, quodque tam diū sē impūne iniūriās
intulisse admirārentur, eōdem pertinēre. Cōnsuēsse
15 enim deōs immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex com-
mūtatiōne rērū doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ul-
cīscī velint, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniō-
rem impūnitatem concēdere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen,
sī obsidēs ab eīs sibi dentur, utī ea, quae polliceantur,
20 factūrōs intellegat, et sī Haeduīs dē iniūriīs, quas ipsīs
sociīsque eōrum intulerint, item sī Allobrogibus satis-
faciant sēsē cum eīs pācem esse factūrū.

Divicō respondit: Ita Helvētiōs ā māiōribus suis īn-
stitūtōs esse, utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare cōsuērīnt;
25 eius rei populū Rōmānū esse testem. Hōc re-
spōnsō datō discessit.

The Helvetians march on, followed by Caesar.

- 15 Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit
Caesar, equitātūmque omnem, ad numerum quattuor
mīliū, quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Haeduīs atque



eōrum sociis coactum habēbat, praemittit, quī videant, quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. Quī cupidius novissimum agmen insecūtī aliēnō locō cum equitatū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt; et pauci dē nostris cadunt.

5

Quō proeliō sublātī Helvētiī, quod quīngentis equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere nōn numquam et novissimō agmine proeliō nostrōs lacessere coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat, ac satis habēbat in praesentiā hostem rapinīs [pābulātiōnibus] populātiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs circiter xv iter fēcērunt, utī inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum primum nōn amplius quīnis aut sēnis milibus passuum interesset.

The Haedui, neglecting to furnish grain, are upbraided by Caesar.

Interim cotidiē Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum, quod essent pūblicē pollicitī, flāgitāre. Nam propter frīgora [quod Gallia sub septentriōnibus, ut ante dictum est, posita est,] nōn modo frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant, sed nē pābulī quidem satis māgna cōpia suppetēbat; eō autem frūmentō, quod flūmine Ararī nāvibus subvēxerat, proptereā utī minus poterat, quod iter ab Ararī Helvētiī āverterant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat. Diem ex diē dūcere Haeduī: cōferri, comportārī, adesse dicere.

20

Ubi sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit et diem īnstāre, quō diē frūmentum militibus metīri oportēret, convocātis eōrum prīncipibus, quōrum māgnam cōpiam in castris habēbat, in hīs Diviciācō et Liscō, quī summō magistrātui praeerat, quem vergobretum appellant Haeduī, quī creātur annuus et vītae necisque in suōs habet po-

30

testātem, graviter eōs accūsāt, quod, cum neque emī neque ex agris sūmī possit, tam necessariō tempore, tam propinquis hostibus, ab eis nōn sublevētur, praesertim cum māgnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus
5 bellum suscepērit; multō etiam gravius, quod sit dēstītūtus, queritur.

The Haedui are not all loyal to the Romans.

17 Tum dēnum Liscus ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus, quod antea tacuerat, prōpōnit: Esse nōn nullōs, quōrum auctōritas apud plēbem plūrimum valeat, quī prīvātīm plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs. Hōs sēditiosā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitudinem dēterrere, nē frūmentum cōferant, quod dēbeant: praestāre, sī iam prīncipātum Galliae obtinere nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; neque dubi-
15 tāre dēbere, quīn, sī Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Haeduīs libertātem sint ēreptūrī. Ab īsdem nostra cōnsilia quaeque in castrīs gerantur hostibus ēnūntiārī hōs ā sē coērcērī nōn posse. Quīn etiam, quod necessariam rem coāctus Caesarī
20 ēnūntiārīt, intellegere sēsē, quantō id cum periculō fēcērit, et ob eam causam, quam diū potuerit, tacuisse.

Treachery of Dumnorix revealed.

18 Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Liscī Dumnorīgem, Diviciaci frātre, dēsīgnārī sentiēbat; sed, quod plūribus praesentibus eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dī-
25 mittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex sōlō ea quae in conventū dixerat. Dicit liberius atque audācius.

Eadem sēcrētō ab aliīs quaerit; reperit esse vērā: Ipsum esse Dumnorīgem, summā audaciā, māgnā apud plēbem propter liberālitātem grātiā, cupidum rērum

novārum. Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaue omnia Haeduōrum vectigālia parvō pretiō redēpta habēre, propterea quod illō licente contrā licērī audeat nēmō. His rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxisse et facultātēs ad largiendum māgnās comparāsse; māgnū 5 numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alere et circum sē habēre, neque solum domī, sed etiam apud finitimās cīvitatēs largiter posse; atque hūius potentiae causā mātrem in Biturigibus hominī illic nōbilissimō ac potentissimō conlocāsse; ipsum ex Helvētiis uxōrem 10 habēre, sorōrem ex mātre et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās cīvitatēs conlocāsse. Favēre et cupere Helvētiis propter eam adfinitātem, ōdisse etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia ēius dēminūta et Diviciācus frāter in antiquum locum grā- 15 tiae atque honōris sit restitūtus. Sī quid accidat Rōmānīs, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī venīre; imperiō populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā, quam habeat, grātiā dēspērāre.

Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō Caesar, quod proe- 20 lium equestre adversum paucīs ante diēbus esset factum, initium [ēius] fugae factum ā Dumnorīge atque ēius equitibus — nam equitātui, quem auxiliō Caesari Haedui mīserant, Dumnorix praeerat —; eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitātum perterritum. 25

Caesar consults Diviciacus about punishing Dumnorix.

Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs, cum ad hās suspiciōnēs cer- 19 tissimae rēs accēderent, quod per finēs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrāset, quod ea omnia nōn modo iniūssū suō et cīvitatīs, sed etiam īnscentibus īpsīs fēcisset, quod ā ma- 30

gistrātū Haeduōrum accusārētur, satis esse causae arbitrabātur, quārē in eum aut ipse animadverteret aut civitātem animadvertere iubēret.

Hīs omnibus rēbus ūnum repūgnābat, quod Diviciāci frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, summam in sē voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, iūstitiam, temperantiam cōgnōverat; nam, nē ēius suppliciō Diviciāci animum offenderet, verēbātur. Itaque prius quam quicquam cōnārētur, Diviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet, et, 10 cotidiānis interpretibus remōtis, per C. Valerium Troucillum, prīncipem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum, cui summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō conloquitur; simul commonefacit, quae ipsō praesente in conciliō [Gallōrum] dē Dumnorige sint dicta, et 15 ostendit, quae sēparātīm quisque dē eō apud sē dixerit; petit atque hortātur, ut sine ēius offēnsiōne animī vel ipse de eō, causā cōgnitā, statuatur vel civitātem statuere iubeat.

Dumnorix is pardoned for Diviciacus's sake.

20 Diviciācus multis cum lacrimīs Caesarem complexus obsecrāre coepit, nē quid gravius in frātre statueret: Scīre sē illa esse vēra, nec quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē dolōris capere, proptereā quod, cum ipse grātiā plūrimum domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adulescēntiam posset, per sē crēvisset; 25 quibus opibus ac nervīs nōn solum ad minuendam grātiā, sed paene ad perniciem suam ūterētur. Sēsē tamen et amōre frāternō et exīstimātiōne vulgī commovērī. Quod sī quid ei ā Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amīcitiae apud eum tenēret, nē 30 minem exīstimātūrum nōn suā voluntāte factum; quā

ex rē futūrum, utī tōtius Galliae animī ā sē āverte-
rentur.

Haec cum plūribus verbīs flēns ā Caesare peteret, Caesar ēius dextram prendit; cōsōlātus rogat, finem ōrandī faciat; tantī ēius apud sē grātiā esse ostendit, 5 utī et rēi pūblicae iniūriā et suum dolōrem ēius voluntāti āc precibus condōnet. Dumnorīgem ad sē vocat, frātrem adhibet; quae in eō reprehendat, ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae civitās querātur, prōpōnit; monet, ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspī- 10 cionēs vitet; praeterita sē Diviciācō frātri condōnāre dicit. Dumnorīgī custōdēs pōnit, ut quae agat, quibuscum loquātur, scīre possit.

Caesar prepares to attack the Helvetians.

Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus hostēs 21 sub monte cōsēdisse mīlia passuum ab ipsius castris 15 octō, quālis esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēsus, quī cōgnōscerent, mīsīt. Renūntiātum est facilem esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā T. Labiēnum, lēgātum prō praetōre, cum duābus legiōnibus et eis ducibus, quī iter cōgnōverant, summum iugum montis ascendere 20 iubet; quid suī cōsiliī sit, ostendit. Ipse dē quartā vigiliā eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant ad eōs contendit equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, quī rēi militāris perītissimus habēbātur et in exercitū L. Sullae et postea in M. Crassī fuerat, cum explōrā- 25 tōribus praemittitur.

The battle is delayed by the error of a Roman officer.

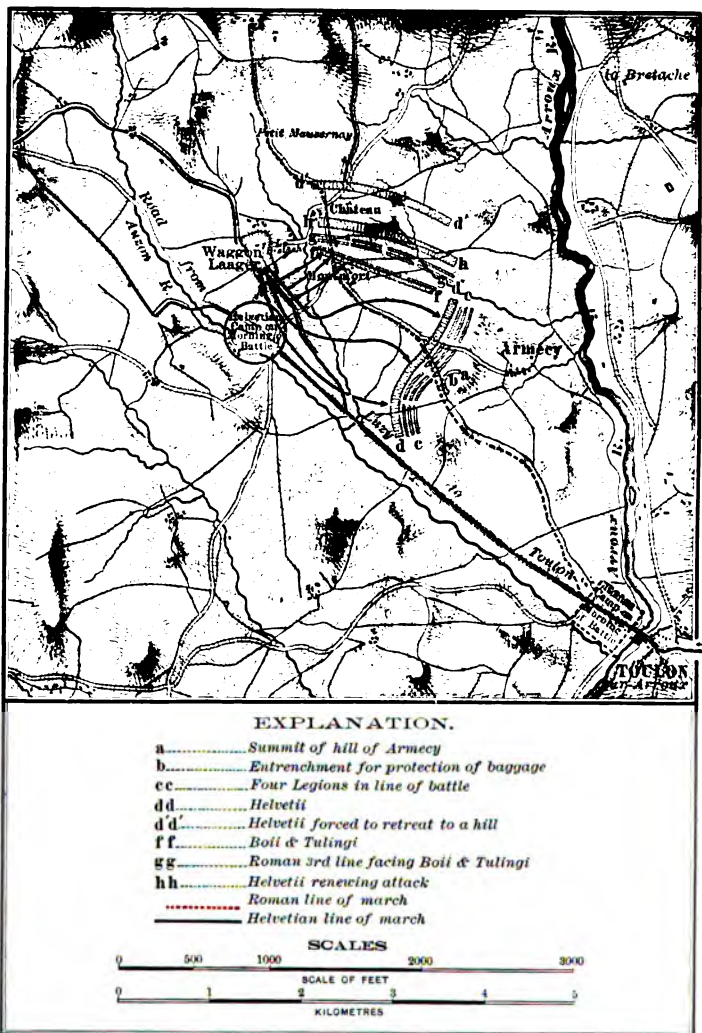
Primā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērē- 22 tur, ipse ab hostium castris nōn longius mille et quīngentis passibus abesset, neque, ut postea ex captivis

comperit, aut ipsius adventus aut Labiēni cōgnitus esset, Cōsidius equō admissō ad eum accurrit; dīcit montem, quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit, ab hostibus tenērī; id sē ā Gallicis armīs atque īnsignibus cōgnōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem subducit, aciem īnstruit. Labiēnus, ut erat eī praeceptum ā Caesare, nē proelium committeret, nisi ipsius cōpie prope hostium castra vīsae essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret, monte occupātō nostrōs exspectābat proeliōque abstinēbat. Multō dēnique diē per explōrātōrēs Caesar cōgnōvit et montem ā suis tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōsidium timōre perterritum, quod nōn vīdisset, prō vīsō sibi renūntiāvisse. Eō diē, quō cōnsuērāt intervāllō, hostēs sequitur et milia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit.

Caesar, turning toward Bibracte, is followed by the Helvetians.

23 Postridiē eius diēi, quod omnīnō bīduum supererat, cum exercitui frūmentum metīrī oportēret, et quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Haeduōrum longē māximō et cōpiōsissimō, nōn amplius mīlibus passuum XVIII aberat, reī frūmentāriae prōspiciendum existimāvit; itaque iter ab Helvētiis āvertit āc Bibracte ire contendit. Ea rēs per fugitivōs L. Aemilī, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētīi, seu quod timōre 25 perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē existimārent, eō magis, quod pridīē superiōribus locis occupātis proelium nōn commīsissent, sive eō, quod rē frūmentāriā interclūdī posse cōfīderent, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō nostrōs ā novissimō agmine īnsequi 30 āc lacessere coepērunt.





DEFEAT OF THE HELVETII.

Both armies prepare for battle.

Postquam id animum advertit, cōpiās suās Caesar 24
 in proximum collem subdūxit equitātumque, quī sus-
 tinēret hostium impetum, mīsit. Ipse interim in colle
 mediō triplicem aciem instrūxit legiōnum quattuor ve-
 terānārum; [ita utī suprā, sed] in summō iugō duās 5
 legiōnēs, quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōscripse-
 rat, et omnia auxilia conlocārī, [āc tōtum montem
 hominibus complērī, et intereā] sarcinās in ūnum lo-
 cum cōferri et eum ab eīs, quī in superioriōre aciē cōn-
 stiterant, mūniri iussit. Helvētiī cum omnibus suis 10
 carrīs secūtī impedīmenta in ūnum locum contulērunt;
 ipsī cōfertissimā aciē, rēiectō nostrō equitātū, pha-
 lange factā, sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt.

The battle.

Caesar primum suō, deinde omnium ex cōspectū 25
 remōtis equīs, ut aequātō omnium periculō spem fugae 15
 tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commisit. Militēs
 ē locō superioriōre pilis missis facile hostium phalangem
 perfrēgērunt. Eā disiectā, gladiis dēstrictis in eōs im-
 petum fēcērunt. Gallis māgnō ad pūgnam erat im-
 pedimentō, quod, plūribus eōrum scūtis ūnō ictū pilō- 20
 rum trānsfixis et conligātis, cum ferrum sē inflēxisset,
 neque ēvellere neque sinistrā impeditā satis commodē
 pūgnāre poterant, multī ut diū iactātō brachiō prae-
 optārent scūtum manū ēmittere et nūdō corpore pūg-
 nāre. 25

Tandem vulneribus dēfessī et pedem referre et,
 quod mōns aberat circiter mille passūs, eō sē recipere
 coepērunt. Captō monte et succēdentibus nostris Bōi
 et Tulingī, quī hominum milibus circiter xv agmen

hostium claudēbant et novissimīs praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs ab latere apertō adgressī circumvenīre; et id cōspicātī Helvētīi, quī in montem sēsē recēperant, rursus instāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. Rōmānī conversa signa bipertitō intulērunt: prīma et secūnda aciēs, ut victis āc submōtis resisteret; tertia, ut venientēs sustinēret.

Rout of the Helvetians. Retreat of the survivors.

26 Ita ancipitī proeliō diū atque ācriter pūgnātum est. Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedimenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pūgnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pūgnātum est, 15 proptereā quod prō vāllō carrōs obiēcērant et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientēs tēla cōiciēbant, et nōn nūllī inter carrōs raedāsque matarās āc trāgulās subiciēbant nostrōsque vulnerābant. Diū cum esset pūgnātum, impedimentīs castrisque nostrī potitī sunt. Ibi 20 Orgetorigis filia atque ūnus ē filiīs captus est.

Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum mīlia cxxx superfuērunt, eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt [nūllam partem noctis itinere intermissō]; in finēs Lingonum diē quartō pervēnērunt, cum et propter vulnera 25 militum et propter sepultūram occisōrum nostrī [trīduum morātī] eōs sequī nōn potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas litterās nūntiōsque misit, nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent; quī si iūvissent, sē eōdem locō, quō Helvētiōs habitūrum. Ipse trīduō intermissō cum 30 omnibus cōpiīs eōs sequī coepit.

They offer to surrender.

Helvëtiî omnium rërum inopiâ adductî lëgâtôs dë 27
 dëditionë ad eum misërunt. Quî cum eum in itinere
 convënissent sëque ad pedës prôiëcissent suppliciter-
 que locûtî flentës pâcem petissent atque eôs in eô locô
 quô tum essent suum adventum exspectâre iussisset, 5
 pâruërunt. Eô postquam Caesar pervënit, obsidës,
 arma, servôs quî ad eôs perfûgissent poposcit. Dum
 ea conquîruntur et cōferuntur, [nocte intermissâ]
 circiter hominum mîlia vi êius pâgî, quî Verbigenus
 appellâtur, sive timôre perterritî, në armîs trãditis sup- 10
 pliciô adficerentur, sive spë salûtis inductî, quod in
 tantâ multitudinē dëditiciôrum suam fugam aut occul-
 târî aut omnînô ignôrârî posse existimãrent, primâ
 nocte ë castrîs Helvëtiôrum ëgressî ad Rhënum finës-
 que Germânôrum contendërunt. 15

They are required to return to their own country.

Quod ubi Caesar rescîit, quôrum per finës ierant, 28
 hîs utî conquîrerent et redücerent, sî sibi pûrgâtî esse
 vellent, imperãvit; reductôs in hostium numerô habuit;
 reliquôs omnës, obsidibus, armîs, perfugîs trãditis, in
 dëditionem accëpit. Helvëtiôs, Tulingôs, Latobrigôs 20
 in finës suôs, unde erant profectî, revertî iussit; et quod
 omnibus frûgibus âmissis domî nihil erat quô famem
 tolerãrent, Allobrogibus imperãvit, ut eis frûmenti cō-
 piam facerent; ipsôs oppida vicôsque, quôs incende-
 rant, restituere iussit. 25

Id eâ mǎximë ratiōne fëcit, quod nōluit eum locum,
 unde Helvëtiî discesserant, vacãre, në propter bonitã-
 tem agrôrum Germânî, quî trãns Rhënum incolunt, ex
 suis finibus in Helvëtiôrum finës trãnsîrent et finitimî

Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Bōiōs pe-
tentibus Haeduīs, quod ēgregiā virtūte erant cōgnitī,
ut in finibus suis conlocārent, concessit; quibus illi
agrōs dedērunt, quōsque postea in parem iūris libertā-
5 tisque condiōnem, atque ipsī erant, recēpērunt.

Number of the Helvetians before and after the expedition.

- 29 In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt litte-
rīs Graecīs cōfectae et ad Caesarem relatae, quibus in
tabulīs nōminātim ratiō cōfecta erat, quī numerus
domō exisset eōrum quī arma ferre possent, et item
10 sēparātim quot puerī, senēs mulierēsque. [Quārum
omnium rērum] summa erat capitum Helvētiōrum
mīlium CCLXIII, Tulingōrum mīlium XXXVI, Lato-
brigōrum XIII, Rauracōrum XXIII, Bōiōrum XXXII;
ex hīs, quī arma ferre possent, ad mīlia nōnāgintā duo.
15 Summa omnium fuērunt ad mīlia CCCLXVIII. Eōrum,
quī domum rediērunt, cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperā-
verat, repertus est numerus mīlium c et x.

*Caesar receives the congratulations of the Gallic chiefs, who ask
for a general council.*

- 30 Bellō Helvētiōrum cōfectō tōtius ferē Galliae lē-
gātī, principēs cīvitatū, ad Caesarem grātulātum con-
20 vēnērunt: Intellegere sēsē, tametsī prō veteribus Hel-
vētiōrum iniūriīs populī Rōmānī ab hīs poenās bellō
repetisset, tamen eam rem nōn minus ex ūsū [terrae]
Galliae quam populī Rōmānī accidisse; propterea quod
eō cōnsiliō flōrentissimīs rēbus domōs suās Helvētīi
25 reliquissent, utī tōtī Galliae bellum inferrent imperiō-
que potirentur locumque domiciliō ex māgnā cōpiā
dēligērent, quem ex omnī Galliā opportunissimum ac

fructuosissimum iudicassent, reliquasque civitates stipendiarias haberent.

Petierunt, uti sibi concilium totius Galliae in diem certam indicare idque Caesaris voluntate facere liceret: sese habere quasdam res, quas ex communi consensu ab eo petere vellent. Ea re permissa diem concilio constituerunt et iure iurando, ne quis enuntiaret, nisi quibus communi consilio mandatum esset, inter se sanxerunt.

They describe the encroachments of the Germans, and beg Caesar to defend Gaul against Ariovistus.

Eo concilio dimisso idem principes civitatum, qui ante fuerant, ad Caesarem revertērunt petieruntque uti sibi secretō [in occultō] de sua omniumque salute cum eo agere liceret. Ea re impetrata sese omnes flentes Caesarī ad pedes proiecērunt: Nōn minus se id contendere et laborāre, ne ea, quae dixissent, enuntiarentur, quam uti ea, quae vellent, impetrarent, propterea quod, si enuntiātum esset, summum in cruciatum se venturos viderent.

Locutus est pro his Diviciacus Haeduus: Galliae totius factiones esse duas; harum alterius principatum tenere Haeduos, alterius Arvernōs. Hi cum tantopere de potentatū inter se multos annos contenderent, factum esse, uti ab Arvernīs Sequanisque Germani mercede arcesserentur. Horum primō circiter milia xv Rhenum transisse; posteaquam agros et cultum et copias Gallorum homines feri ac barbari adamassent, tractos plures; nunc esse in Galliā ad c et xx milium numerum. Cum his Haeduos eorumque clientes semel atque iterum armis contendisse; magnam calamitatem

pulsōs accēpisse, omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum amīsisse. Quibus proeliis calamitātibusque frāctōs, quī et suā virtūte et populī Rōmānī hospitio atque amicitia plūrimum ante in Galliā potuissent, 5 coactōs esse Sēquanīs obsidēs dare nōbilissimōs civitātis, et iūre iūrandō civitātem obstringere sēsē neque obsidēs repetitūrōs neque auxilium ā populō Rōmānō implōrātūrōs neque recūsātūrōs, quōminus perpetuō sub illōrum diciōne atque imperiō essent. 10 Ūnum sē esse ex omnī civitāte Haeduōrum, quī addūcī nōn potuerit, ut iūrāret aut liberōs suōs obsidēs daret. Ob eam rem sē ex civitāte prōfūgissee et Rōmam ad senātum vēnisse auxilium postulātum, quod sōlus neque iūre iūrandō neque obsidibus tenērētur.

15 Sed pēius victōribus Sēquanīs quam Haeduīs victis accidissee, proptereā quod Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, in eōrum finibus cōnsēdisset tertiamque partem agrī Sēquanī, quī esset optimus tōtius Galliae, occupāvisset, et nunc dē alterā parte tertiā Sēquanōs dēcēdere 20 iubēret, proptereā quod paucīs mēnsibus ante Harūdum milia hominum xxiiii ad eum vēnissent, quibus locus ac sēdēs parārentur. Futūrum esse paucīs annīs, utī omnēs ex Galliae finibus pellerentur atque omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānsīrent; neque enim cōferendum 25 esse Gallicum cum Germānōrum agrō neque hanc cōnsuetūdinem victūs cum illā comparandam.

Ariovistum autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō vicerit, quod proelium factum sit ad Magetobrigam, superbē et crūdēliter imperāre, obsidēs nōbilissimī 30 cūiusque liberōs poscere et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque ēdere, sī qua rēs nōn ad nūtum aut ad volūntātem eius facta sit. Hominem esse barbarum, irā-

cundum, temerarium; nōn posse eius imperia diūtius sustinēri.

Nisi quid in Caesare populōque Rōmānō sit auxili, omnibus Gallis idem esse faciendum, quod Helvētī fēcerint, ut domō ēmigrent, aliud domicilium, aliās sē- 5 dēs, remōtās ā Germānīs, petant fortūnamque, quaecumque accadat, experiantur. Haec sī ēnūntiāta Ariovistō sint, nōn dubitāre, quā dē omnibus obsidibus quī apud eum sint gravissimum supplicium sūmat. Caesarem vel auctōritāte suā atque exercitūs vel recentī 10 victoriā vel nōmine populī Rōmānī dēterrere posse nē māior multitudō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcatur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovistī iniuriā posse dēfendere.

Dīviciacus describes the hopeless condition of the Sequani.

Hāc ōrātiōne ab Dīviciācō habitā omnēs, quī ade- 32 rant, māgnō flētū auxilium ā Caesare petere coepē- 15 runt. Animadvertit Caesar ūnōs ex omnibus Sēquanōs nihil eārum rērum facere, quās cēterī facerent, sed tristēs capite dēmissō terram intuēri. Eius rei quae causa esset mirātus ex ipsīs quaesiit. Nihil Sēquanī respondēre, sed in eādē tristitiā tacitī permanēre. 20 Cum ab hīs saepius quaereret neque ūllam omnīnō vōcem exprimere posset, idem Dīviciācus Haedius respondit: Hōc esse miseriōrem et graviōrem fortūnam Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum, quod sōlī nē in occultō quidem querī neque auxilium implōrāre audērent, ab- 25 sentisque Ariovistī crūdēlitātem, velut sī cōram adesset, horrērent, proptereā quod reliquīs tamen fugae facultās darētur, Sēquanīs vērō, quī intrā finēs suōs Ariovistum recēpissent, quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte eius essent, omnēs cruciātūs essent perferendī. 30

Why Caesar opposed Ariovistus.

- 33** Hīs rēbus cōgnītīs Caesar Gallōrum animōs verbīs cōfirmāvit pollicitusque est sibi eam rem cūrae futūram; māgnam sē habēre spem et beneficiō suō et auctōritāte adductum Ariovistum finem iniūriis factūrum.
- 5** Hāc ōrātiōne habitā concilium dīmīsīt. Et secundum ea multae rēs eum hortābantur quārē sibi eam rem cōgitandam et suscipiendam putāret: in primīs, quod Haeduōs, frātrēs cōsanguineōsque saepenumērō ā senātū appellātōs, in servitūte atque in diciōne vidēbat
- 10** Germānōrum tenērī, eōrumque obsidēs esse apud Ariovistum āc Sēquanōs intelligēbat; quod in tantō imperiō populī Rōmānī turpissimum sibi et rei pūblicae esse arbitrabātur.

Paulātim autem Germānōs cōsuēscere Rhēnum

15 trānsīre et in Galliam māgnam eōrum multitudinem venīre populō Rōmānō periculōsum vidēbat; neque sibi hominēs ferōs āc barbarōs temperātūrōs existimābat quīn, cum omnem Galliam occupāvissent, ut ante Cimbri Teutonīque fēcissent, in prōvinciam exīrent

20 atque inde in Ītaliā contenderent [praesertim cum Sēquanōs ā prōvinciā nostrā Rhodanus dīvideret]; quibus rēbus quam mātūrrimē occurrendum putābat. Ipse autem Ariovistus tantōs sibi spīritūs, tantam arrogantiam sūmpserat, ut ferendus nōn vidērētur.

Invited by Caesar to an interview, Ariovistus declines.

- 34** Quam ob rem placuit eī ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs mitteret, quī ab eō postulārent, utī aliquem locum medium utriusque conloquiō dēligeret: velle sēsē dē rē pūblicā et summīs utriusque rēbus cum eō agere. Eī lēgātiōnī Ariovistus respondit: Sī quid ipsī ā Caesare

opus esset, sēsē ad eum ventūrum fuisse; sī quid ille sē velit, illum ad sē venīre oportēre. Praetereā sē neque sine exercitū in eās partēs Galliae venīre audēre, quās Caesar possidēret, neque exercitum sine māgnō comēatū atque mōlimentō in ūnum locum contrahere 5 posse. Sibi autem mīrum vidērī, quid in suā Galliā, quam bellō vīcisset, aut Caesarī aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negōtī esset.

Caesar sends envoys with his demands.

His respōnsīs ad Caesarem relātis iterum ad eum 35 Caesar lēgātōs cum hīs mandātīs mittit: Quoniam 10 tantō suō populīque Rōmānī beneficiō adfectus, cum in cōsulātū suō rēx atque amīcus ā senātū appellātus esset, hanc sibi populōque Rōmānō grātiā referret, ut in conloquium venīre invitātus gravārētur neque dē commūnī rē discendum sibi et cōgnōscendum putāret, 15 haec esse, quae ab eō postulāret: prīmum, nē quam multitudinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūceret; deinde obsidēs, quōs habēret ab Haeduīs, redderet Sēquanīsque permetteret ut quōs illī habērent, voluntāte eius reddere illis liceret; nēve Hae- 20 duōs iniuriā lacesseret, nēve hīs sociīsque eōrum bellum inferret.

Sī [id] ita fēcisset, sibi populōque Rōmānō perpetuam grātiā atque amīcitiā cum eō futūram; sī nōn impetrāret, sēsē, quoniam M. Messālā M. Pīsōne 25 cōsulibus senātus cēnsuisset, utī, quicumque Galliam prōvinciā obtinēret, quod commodō rei pūblicae facere posset, Haeduōs cēterōsque amīcōs populī Rōmānī dēfenderet, sē Haeduōrum iniuriās nōn neglēc-
tūrum.

Ariovistus replies haughtily.

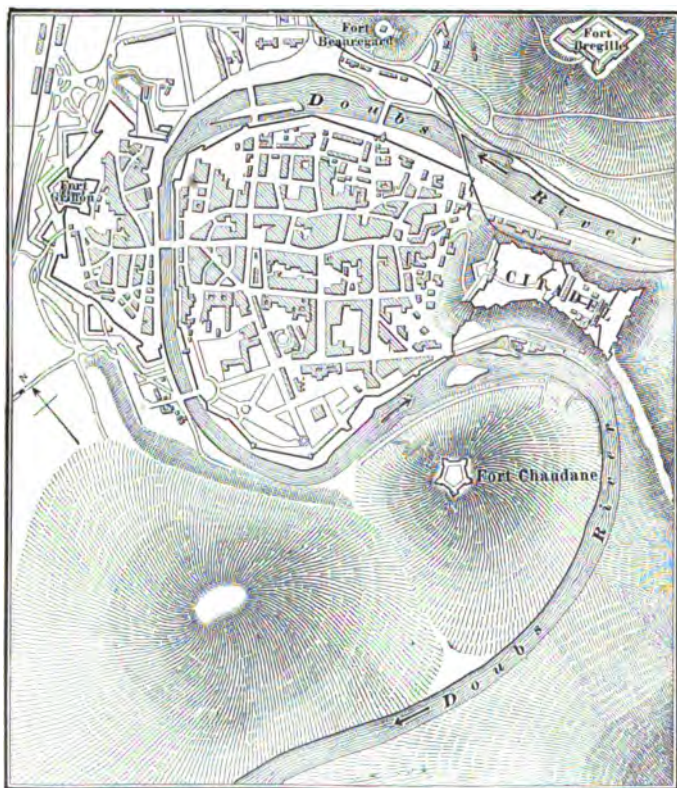
36 Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: Iūs esse bellī ut quī vīcissent eīs quōs vīcissent quem ad modum vellent imperārent; item populum Rōmānum victīs nōn ad alterius praescrīptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre
5 cōnsuēsse. Sī ipse populō Rōmānō nōn praescriberet quem ad modum suō iūre ūterētur, nōn oportēre sē ā populō Rōmānō in suō iūre impediri.

Haeduōs sibi, quoniam bellī fortūnam temptāssent et armīs congressī āc superātī essent, stipendiāriōs esse
10 factōs. Māgnam Caesarem iniūriam facere quī suō adventū vectīgālia sibi dēteriōra faceret. Haeduīs sē obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse neque hīs neque eōrum sociīs iniūriā bellum inlātūrum, sī in eō manērent, quod convēnisset, stipendiumque quotannis penderent; sī id
15 nōn fēcissent, longē eīs frāternum nōmen populī Rōmānī āfutūrum. Quod sibi Caesar dēnūntiāret sē Haeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglētūrum, nēminem sēcum sine suā perniciē contendisse. Cum vellet, congregedrētur: intellētūrum, quid invictī Germānī, exercitā
20 tissimī in armīs, quī inter annōs XIII tēctum nōn subissent, virtūte possent.

Caesar marches rapidly forward,

37 Haec eōdem tempore Caesarī mandāta referēbantur, et lēgātī ab Haeduīs et ā Trēverīs veniēbant: Haeduī questum quod Harūdēs, quī nūper in Galliam
25 trānsportātī essent, finēs eōrum populārentur; sēsē nē obsidibus quidem datīs pācem Ariovistī redimere potuisse; Trēverī autem, pāgōs centum Suēbōrum ad rīpās Rhēnī cōnsēdisse, quī Rhēnum trānsire cōnarentur; hīs praeesse Nasuam et Cimberium frātrēs. Qui-





BESANÇON, THE ANCIENT VESONTIO.

bus rēbus Caesar vehementer commōtus mātūrandum sibi existimāvit, nē, si nova manus Suēbōrum cum veteribus cōpiis Ariovisti sēsē coniūnxisset, minus facile resisti posset. Itaque rē frūmentāriā quam celerrimē potuit comparātā māgnis itineribus ad Ariovistum con- 5 tendit.

And reaches Vesontio before Ariovistus.

Cum trīduī viam prōcessisset, nūtiātum est ei 38 Ariovistum cum suis omnibus cōpiis ad occupandum Vesontiōnem, quod est oppidum māximum Sēquanōrum, contendere [trīduīque viam ā suis finibus prōcessisse]. Id nē accideret māgnopere sibi praecaven- 10 dum Caesar existimābat. Namque omnium rērum, quae ad bellum ūsuī erant, summa erat in eō oppidō facultās; idemque nātūrā loci sic mūniēbātur, ut māgnam ad dūcendum bellum daret facultātem, propterea quod flūmen Dubis, ut circinō circumductum, paene 15 tōtum oppidum cingit; reliquum spatium, quod est nōn amplius pedum DC, quā flūmen intermittit, mōns continet māgnā altitūdine, ita, ut rādicēs eius montis ex utrāque parte rīpae flūminis contingant. Hunc mūrus circumdatus arcem efficit et cum oppidō coniun- 20 git. Hūc Caesar māgnis nocturnis diurnisque itineribus contendit, occupātōque oppidō ibi praesidium conlocat.

Panic of the Roman soldiers.

Dum paucōs diēs ad Vesontiōnem rei frūmentāriae 39 commeātūsque causā morātur, ex percontātiōne nostrōrum vōcibusque Gallōrum ac mercātōrum, quī ingenti māgnitūdine corporum Germānōs, incrēdibili virtūte atque exercitātiōne in armis esse praedicābant, — saepenumērō sēsē cum his congressōs nē vultum

quidem atque aciem oculōrum dicēbant ferre potuisse,
 — tantus subitō timor omnem exercitum occupāvit,
 ut nōn mediocriter omnium mentēs animōsque pertur-
 bāret. Hīc primum ortus est ā tribūnīs militum, prae-
 5 fectis reliquisque, quī ex urbe amicitiae causā Caesarem
 secūtī nōn māgnū in rē militārī ūsum habēbant;
 quōrum alius aliā causā inlātā, quam sibi ad proficis-
 cendum necessariam esse diceret, petēbat ut ēius vo-
 luntāte discēdere liceret; nōn nullī pudōre adductī, ut
 10 timōris suspiciōnem vitārent, remanēbant. Hī neque
 vultum fingere neque interdum lacrimās tenēre pote-
 rant; abditī in tabernāculis aut suum fātum querēban-
 tur aut cum familiāribus suis commūne periculum mi-
 serābantur. [Vulgō tōtīs castrīs testāmenta obsignā-
 15 bantur.]

Hōrum vōcibus āc timōre paulātim etiam eī, quī
 māgnū in castrīs ūsum habēbant, militēs centuriōnēs-
 que quīque equitātū praeerant, perturbābantur. Quī
 sē ex his minus timidōs exīstimārī volēbant, nōn sē
 20 hostem verērī, sed angustias itineris et māgnitūdinem
 silvārum, quae intercēderent inter ipsōs atque Ariovis-
 tum, aut rem frūmentāriam, ut satis commodē suppor-
 tārī posset, timēre dicēbant. Nōn nullī etiam Caesarī
 nūntiābant, cum castra movērī āc signa ferri iussisset,
 25 nōn fore dictō audientēs militēs neque propter timō-
 rem signa lātūrōs.

*Caesar addresses his men, makes light of their fears, and declares
 his intention of advancing immediately.*

40 Haec cum animadvertisset, convocātō cōnsiliō om-
 niumque ōrdinum ad id cōnsilium adhibitīs centuriō-
 nibus vehementer eōs incūsāvit: primum quod aut

quam in partem aut quō cōsiliō dūcerentur sibi quarendum aut cōgitandum putārent. Ariovistum sē cōsule cupidissimē populī Rōmānī amicitiam adpetisse; cūr hunc tam temerē quisquam ab officiō discessurum iūdicāret? Sibi quidem persuādērī cōgnitīs suis 5 postulātīs atque aequitāte condiciōnum perspectā eum neque suam neque populī Rōmānī grātiā repudiāturum. Quod sī furōre atque āmentīā impulsus bellum intulisset, quid tandem verērentur? Aut cūr dē suā virtūte aut dē ipsius dīligentiā dēspērarent? Factum 10 ēius hostis periculum patrum nostrōrum memoriā, cum Cimbris et Teutonīs ā C. Mariō pulsīs nōn minōrem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperātor meritis vidēbātur; factum etiam nūper in Italiā servīli tumultū, quōs tamen aliquid ūsus āc disciplīna quam ā nobīs 15 accēpissent, sublevārent. Ex quō iūdicārī posse quantum habēret in sē bonī cōstantia, propterea quod, quōs aliquamdiū inermēs sine causā timuissent, hōs postea armātōs āc victōrēs superāssent.

Dēnique hōs esse eōsdem Germānōs quibuscum 20 saepenumerō Helvētiī congressī, nōn solum in suis sed etiam in illōrum finibus, plērumque superārint; quī tamen parēs esse nostrō exercituī nōn potuerint. Sī quōs adversum proelium et fuga Gallōrum commovēret, hōs, sī quaererent, reperīre posse diūturnitāte belli 25 dēfatigātīs Gallīs Ariovistum, cum multōs mēnsēs castrīs sē āc palūdibus tenuisset neque suī potestātem fēcisset, dēspērantes iam dē pūgnā et dispersōs subitō adortum magis ratiōne et cōsiliō quam virtūte vīcisse. Cui ratiōnī contrā hominēs barbarōs atque imperītōs 30 locus fuisset, hāc nē ipsum quidem spērāre nostrōs exercitūs capī posse.

Quī suum timōrem in reī frūmentāriae simulātiōnem angustiasque itineris cōferrent, facere arroganter, cum aut dē officiō imperātōris dēspērāre aut praescribere vidērentur. Haec sibi esse cūrae; frūmentum
 5 Sēquanōs, Leucōs, Lingonēs subministrāre, iamque esse in agris frūmenta mātūra; dē itinere ipsōs brevī tempore iūdicātūrōs. Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs neque signa lātūrī dīcantur, nihil sē eā rē commovērī: scīre enim, quibuscumque exercitus dictō audiēns nōn
 10 fuerit, aut male rē gestā fortūnam dēfuisse, aut aliquō facinore compertō avāritiam esse convictam; suam innocentiam perpetuā vitā, fēlicitātem Helvētiōrum bellō esse perspectam.

Itaque sē, quod in longiōrem diem conlātūrus fuisset, repraesentātūrum, et proximā nocte dē quartā vigiliā castra mōtūrum, ut quam primum intellegere posset utrum apud eōs pudor atque officium an timor plūs valeret. Quod sī praetereā nēmō sequātur, tamen sē cum sōlā decimā legiōne itūrum, dē quā nōn dubitāret,
 20 sibi eam praetōriam cohortem futūram. Huic legiōnī Caesar et indulserat praecipuē et propter virtūtem cōfidēbat māximē.

Courage is restored and the Romans advance.

41 Hāc ōrātiōne habitā mirum in modum conversae sunt omnium mentēs summaque alacritās et cupiditās
 25 bellī gerendī inlāta est; prīncepsque x legiō per tribūnōs militum eī grātiās ēgit, quod dē sē optimum iūdicium fēcisset, sēque esse ad bellum gerendum parātissimam cōfirmāvit. Deinde reliquae legiōnēs cum tribūnīs militum et prīmōrum ordinum centuriōnibus
 30 ēgērunt utī Caesarī satisfacerent: Sē neque umquam

dubitāsse neque timuisse neque dē summā bellī suum iūdicium, sed imperātōris esse exīstimāvisse.

Eōrum satisfactiōne acceptā et itinere exquisitō per Diviciācum, quod ex Gallis eī māximam fidem habēbat, ut milium amplius quinquāgintā circuitū locis 5 apertis exercitum dūceret, dē quartā vigiliā, ut dixerat, profectus est. Septimō diē, cum iter nōn intermitteret, ab explōrātōribus certior factus est Ariovistī cōpiās ā nostrīs milia passuum IIII et XX abesse.

At Ariovistus's request a conference is held. Caesar's precautions against treachery.

Cōgnitō Caesaris adventū Ariovistus lēgātōs ad 42 eum mittit: Quod antea dē conloquiō postulāset, id per sē fieri licēre, quoniam propius accessisset, sēque id sine periculō facere posse exīstimāret. Nōn respuit condiōnem Caesar, iamque eum ad sānitātem revertī arbitrābātur, cum id, quod antea petentī dēnegāset, 15 ultrō pollicērētur; māgnamque in spem veniēbat prō suis tantis populīque Rōmānī in eum beneficiis, cōgnitis suis postulātis, fore utī pertināciā dēsisteret. Diēs conloquiō dictus est ex eō diē quīntus.

Interim saepe cum lēgātī ultrō citrōque inter eōs 20 mitterentur, Ariovistus postulāvit, nē quem peditem ad conloquium Caesar addūceret: Verērī sē nē per insidiās ab eō circumvenīrētur; uterque cum equitātū veniret: aliā ratiōne sēsē nōn esse ventūrum. Caesar, quod neque conloquium interpositā causā tollī volēbat 25 neque salūtem suam Gallōrum equitātūi committere audēbat, commodissimum esse statuit, omnibus equis Gallis equitibus detractis, eō legiōnāriōs milites legiōnis x [cui quam māximē cōnfidēbat,] impōnere, ut

praesidium quam amīcissimum, sī quid opus factō esset, habēret. Quod cum fieret, nōn inrīdiculē quīdam ex militibus x legiōnis dixit plūs quam pollicitus esset Caesarem facere; pollicitum sē in cohortis praetōriae
 5 locō x legiōnem habitūrum, ad equum rescribere.

Caesar uses conciliatory language, but repeats his demands.

43 Plānitīēs erat māgna et in eā tumulus terrēnus satis grandis. Hīc locus aequum ferē spatium ā castīs Ariovistī et Caesaris aberat. Eō, ut erat dictum, ad conloquium vērunt. Legiōnem Caesar, quam
 10 equīs dēvēxerat, passibus cc ab eō tumulō cōstituit. Item equitēs Ariovistī parī intervāllō cōstitērunt. Ariovistus ex equīs ut conloquerentur et praeter sē dēnōs ad conloquium addūcerent, postulāvit. Ubi eō ventum est, Caesar initiō ōrātiōnis sua senātūsque in
 15 eum beneficia commemorāvit, quod rēx appellātus esset ā senātū, quod amīcus, quod mūnera amplissima missa; quam rem et paucīs contigisse et prō māgnīs hominum officiīs cōsuēsse tribuī docēbat; illum, cum neque aditum neque causam postulandī iūstam habēret,
 20 beneficio āc liberālitate suā āc senātūs ea praemia cōsecūtum.

Docēbat etiam, quam veterēs quamque iūstae causae necessitudinis ipsīs cum Haeduis intercēderent, quae senātūs cōsulta quotiēns quamque honorifica in
 25 eōs facta essent, ut omnī tempore tōtius Galliae principātum Haedui tenuissent, prius etiam quam nostram amicitiam adpetissent. Populī Rōmānī hanc esse cōsuētudinem ut sociōs atque amīcōs nōn modo suī nihil dēperdere, sed grātiā, dignitāte, honōre auctiōrēs vel
 30 let esse; quod vērō ad amicitiam populī Rōmānī attu-

lissent, id eīs ēripī quis patī posset? Postulāvit deinde eadem, quae lēgātīs in mandātīs dederat: nē aut Haeduīs aut eōrum sociīs bellum inferret; obsidēs redderet; sī nūllam partem Germānōrum domum remittere posset, at nē quōs amplius Rhēnum trānsire paterētur. 5

Ariovistus defiantly reasserts his claims.

Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris pauca respondit, 44
dē suīs virtūtibus multa praedicāvit: Trānsisse Rhēnum sēsē nōn suā sponte, sed rogātum et arcessitum ā Gallīs; nōn sine māgnā spē māgnisque praemiīs domum propinquōsque reliquisse; sēdēs habēre in Galliā 10
ab ipsīs concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stīpendium capere iūre bellī, quod victōrēs victīs impōnere cōsuērint. Nōn sēsē Gallīs, sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse; omnēs Galliae cīvitatēs ad sē oppūgnandū vēnisse āc contrā sē castra habuisse; eās omnēs 15
cōpiās ā sē ūnō proeliō pulsās āc superātās esse. Sī iterum experīri velint, sē iterum parātum esse dēcertāre; sī pāce ūtī velint, inīquum esse dē stīpendiō recūsāre, quod suā voluntāte ad id tempus pependerit. Amīcitiam populī Rōmānī sibi ōrnāmentō et praesidiō, 20
nōn dētrīmentō esse oportēre atque sē hāc spē petisse. Si per populum Rōmānum stīpendium remittātur et dēditiciī subtrahantur, nōn minus libenter sēsē recūsātūrum populī Rōmānī amīcitiam quam adpetierit.

Quod multitudinem Germānōrum in Galliam trā- 25
dūcat, id sē suī mūniendī, nōn Galliae oppūgnandae causā facere; ēius rei testimōnium esse, quod nisi rogātus nōn vēnerit, et quod bellum nōn intulerit, sed dēfenderit. Sē prius in Galliam vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum. Numquam ante hōc tempus exercitum 30

populī Rōmānī Galliae prōvinciae finibus ēgressum
Quid sibi vellet? Cūr in suās possessiōnēs venīret?
Prōvinciam suam hanc esse Galliam, sicut illam nos-
tram. Ut ipsī concēdī nōn oportēret, si in nostrōs finēs
5 impetum faceret, sic item nōs esse inīquōs, quod in suō
iūre sē interpellārēmus.

Quod frātrēs ā senātū Haeduōs appellātōs dīceret,
nōn sē tam barbarum neque tam imperitū esse rērum,
ut nōn scīret neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Hae-
10 duōs Rōmānīs auxiliū tulisse, neque ipsōs, in hīs con-
tentiōnibus quās Haeduī sēcum et cum Sēquanīs ha-
buissent, auxiliō populī Rōmānī ūsōs esse.

Dēbēre sē suspicārī simulātā Caesarem amīcitiā
quem exercitum in Galliā habeat suī opprimendī causā
15 habēre. Quī nisi dēcēdat atque exercitum dēdūcat ex
hīs regiōnibus, sēsē illum nōn prō amīcō, sed prō hoste
habitūrum. Quod sī eum interfēcērit, multīs sēsē nō-
bilibus prīncipibusque populī Rōmānī grātum esse fac-
tūrum, — id sē ab ipsīs per eōrum nūntiōs compertum
20 habēre, — quōrum omnium grātiā atque amīcitiā
ēius morte redimere posset. Quod sī dēcēssisset et
liberam possessiōnem Galliae sibi trādidisset, māgnō sē
illum praemiō remūnerātūrum et quaecumque bella
gerī vellet sine ūllō ēius labōre et periculō cōfectūrum.

Caesar remains firm.

45 Multa ā Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt
quārē negōtiō dēsistere nōn posset: Neque suam neque
populī Rōmānī cōsuētūdinem pati utī optimē meritōs
sociōs dēsereret, neque sē iūdicāre Galliam potius esse
Ariovistī quam populī Rōmānī. Bellō superātōs esse
30 Arvernōs et Rutēnōs ā Q. Fabiō Māximō, quibus

populus Rōmānus ignōvisset neque in prōvinciam redēgisset neque stipendium imposuisset. Quod sī anti-quissimum quodque tempus spectārī oportēret, populī Rōmānī iūstissimum esse in Galliā imperium; sī iūdicium senātūs observārī oportēret, liberam debēre esse 5 Galliā, quam bellō victam suis lēgibus utī voluisset.

A treacherous attack by the Germans is baffled.

Dum haec in conloquiō geruntur, Caesarī nūntiā- 46 tum est equitēs Ariovistī propius tumulum accēdere et ad nostrōs adequitāre, lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs cōicere. Caesar loquendī finem fēcit sēque ad suōs recēpit 10 suisque imperāvit nē quod omnīnō tēlum in hostēs reicerent. Nam etsī sine ūllō periculō legiōnis dēlēctae cum equitātū proelium fore vidēbat, tamen committendum nōn putābat, ut pulsīs hostibus dīcī posset eōs ab sē per fidem in conloquiō circumventōs. Posteaquam 15 in vulgus militum ēlātum est quā arrogantīā in conloquiō Ariovistus ūsus omnī Galliā Rōmānīs interdixisset, impetumque ut in nostrōs eius equitēs fēcissent eaque rēs conloquium dirēmisset, multō māior alacritās studiumque pūgnandī māius exercitū iniectum est. 20

Ariovistus seizes two envoys of Caesar.

Bīduō post Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīsīt: 47 Velle sē dē eis rēbus, quae inter eōs agī coeptae neque perfectae essent, agere cum eō; utī aut iterum conloquiō diem cōstitueret, aut, sī id minus vellet, ex suis lēgātīs aliquem ad sē mitteret. 25

Conloquendī Caesarī causa vīsa nōn est; et eō magis quod prīdiē eius diēī Germānī retinērī nōn potuerant quīn tēla in nostrōs cōicerent. Lēgātum [ex suis] sēsē māgnō cum periculō ad eum missūrum et homini-

bus feris obiectūrum existimābat. Commodissimum
 vīsum est C. Valerium Procillum, C. Valerī Caburī
 filium, summā virtūte et hūmānitāte adulescentem,
 cuius pater ā C. Valeriō Flaccō civitāte dōnātus erat,
 5 et propter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae scientiam,
 quā multā iam Ariovistus longinquā cōsuētūdine ūtē-
 bātur, et quod in eō peccandī Germānis causa nōn esset,
 ad eum mittere, et ūnā M. Mētium, quī hospitio Ario-
 vistī ūtēbātur. Hīs mandāvit ut quae diceret Ariovis-
 10 tus, cōgnōscerent et ad sē referrent. Quōs cum apud
 sē in castrīs Ariovistus cōspēxisset, exercitū suō prae-
 sente conclāmāvit: Quid ad sē venīrent? an specu-
 landī causā? Cōnantēs dicere prohibuit et in catē-
 nās coniēcit.

Ariovistus avoids battle. The German tactics.

48 Eōdem diē castra prōmōvit et milibus passuum vi
 ā Caesaris castrīs sub monte cōsēdit. Postridiē eiūs
 diēi praeter castra Caesaris suās cōpiās trādūxit et mili-
 bus passuum duōbus ultrā eum castra fēcit eō cōnsiliō
 utī frumentō commeātūque quī ex Sēquanīs et Haeduīs
 20 supportārētur Caesarem interclūderet. Ex eō diē diēs
 continuōs v Caesar prō castrīs suās cōpiās prōdūxit et
 aciem instrūctam habuit, ut, sī vellet Ariovistus proeliō
 contendere, ei potestās nōn deēset.

Ariovistus hīs omnibus diēbus exercitum castrīs
 25 continuit, equestrī proeliō cotīdiē contendit.

Genus hōc erat pūgnae quō sē Germānī exercu-
 erant: Equitum milia erant vi, totidem numerō peditēs
 vėlōcissimī āc fortissimī, quōs ex omnī cōpiā singulī
 singulōs suae salūtis causā dēlēgerant; cum hīs in proe-
 30 liīs versābantur; ad eōs sē equitēs recipiebant; hī, sī

quid erat dūrius, concurrēbant; sī quī graviōre vulnere acceptō equō dēciderat, circumsistēbant; sī quō erat longius prōdeundum aut celerius recipiendum, tanta erat hōrum exercitātiōne celeritās, ut iubīs sublevātī equōrum cursum adaequārent.

5

Caesar moves his camp.

Ubi eum castrīs sē tenēre Caesar intellēxit, nē diū- 49
tius commeātū prohibērētur, ultrā eum locum, quō in
locō Germānī cōsēderant, circiter passūs DC ab hīs,
castrīs idōneum locum dēlēgit aciēque triplicī instrūctā
ad eum locum vēnit. Prīmam et secundam aciem in ar- 10
mīs esse, tertiam castra mūnīre iussit. Hīc locus ab
hoste circiter passūs DC, utī dictum est, aberat. Eō cir-
citer hominum XVI milia expedita cum omnī equitātū
Ariovistus mīsīt, quae cōpiāe nostrōs terrērent et mū-
nitiōne prohibērent. Nihilō sētius Caesar, ut ante 15
cōstituerat, duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre, tertiam
opus perficere iussit. Mūnitīs castrīs duās ibi legiōnēs
reliquit et partem auxiliōrum, quattuor reliquās in cas-
tra māiōra redūxit.

*Skirmishing. The Germans unwilling to fight before the
full moon.*

Proximō diē institūtō suō Caesar ex castrīs utrīsque 50
cōpiās suās ēdūxit, paulumque ā māiōribus castrīs prō-
gressus aciem instrūxit hostibusque pūgnandī potestā-
tem fēcīt. Ubi nē tum quidem eōs prōdire intellēxit,
circiter merīdiē exercitum in castra redūxit. Tum dē-
mum Ariovistus partem suārum cōpiārum quae castra 25
minōra oppūgnāret mīsīt. Ācritēr utrimque ūsque ad
vesperum pūgnātum est. Sōliș oçcāsū suās cōpiās

Ariovistus multīs et inlātīs et acceptīs vulneribus in castra redūxit.

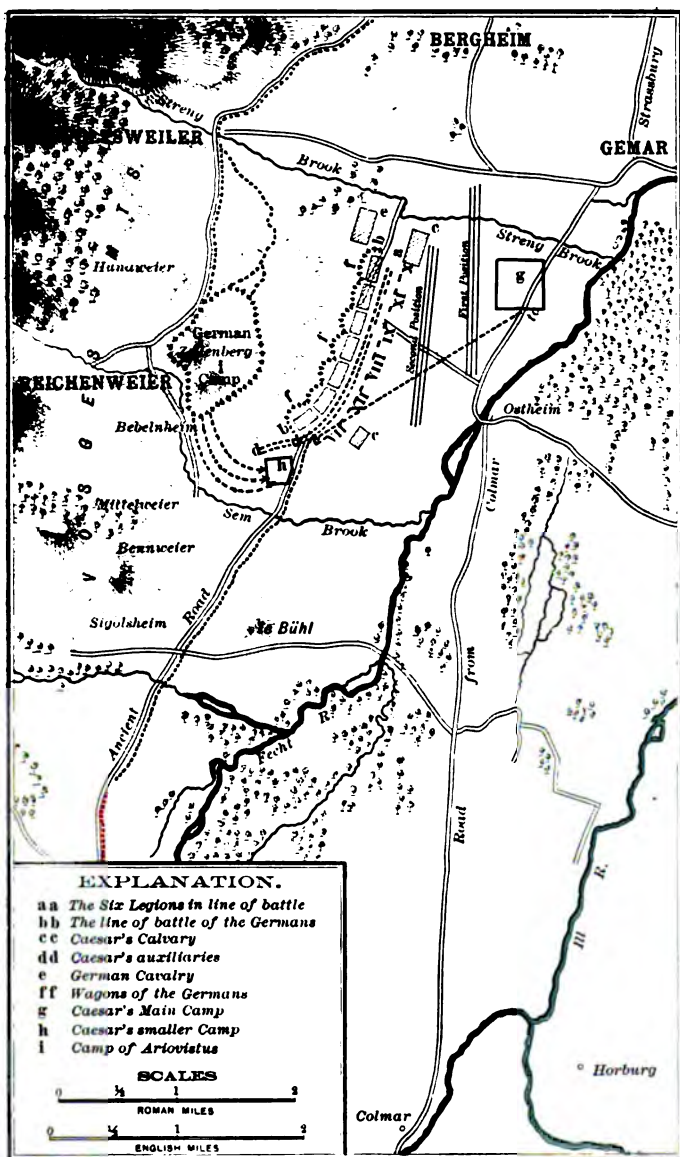
Cum ex captīvīs quaereret Caesar, quam ob rem Ariovistus proeliō nōn dēcertāret, hanc reperiebat causam, quod apud Germānōs ea cōsuētūdō esset ut matrēs familiae eōrum sortibus et vāticinatiōnibus dēclārarent, utrum proelium committī ex ūsū esset, necne; eās ita dicere: Nōn esse fās Germānōs superāre, sī ante novam lūnam proeliō contendissent.

Caesar forces a general engagement.

- 51 Postridiē eius diēi Caesar praesidiō utrīsque castrīs quod satis esse vīsum est reliquit, ālāriōs omnēs in cōspectū hostium prō castrīs minōribus cōstituit, quod minus multitudīne militum legiōnāriōrum prō hostium numerō valēbat, ut ad speciem ālāriīs ūteretur; ipse
15 triplici īnstrūctā aciē ūsque ad castra hostium accessit. Tum dēnum necessariō Germānī suās cōpiās castrīs edūxērunt generātimque cōstituērunt paribus intervallis, Harūdēs, Marcomannōs, Tribocōs, Vangiōnēs, Nemetēs, Sedusiōs, Suēbōs, omnemque aciem suam
20 raedīs et carrīs circumdedērunt, nē qua spēs in fugā relinqueretur. Eō mulierēs imposuērunt, quae ad proelium proficīscētēs militēs, passīs manibus flentēs, implōrābant, nē sē in servitūtem Rōmānīs trāderent.

Details of the battle.

- 52 Caesar singulis legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs et
25 quaestōrem praefēcit, utī eōs testēs suae quisque virtūtis habēret; ipse ā dextrō cornū, quod eam partem minimē firmam hostium esse animadverberat, proelium commisit. Et ita nostrī ācritē in hostēs signō datō impetum fēcērunt, itaque hostēs repente celeriterque prō-



THE BATTLE WITH ARIOVISTUS.



curtērunt, ut spatium pīla in hostēs cōiciendī nōn darētur. Rēiectīs pīlis comminus gladiis pūgnātum est. At Germānī celeriter ex cōsuētūdine suā phalange factā impetūs gladiōrum excēpērunt. Repertī sunt complūrēs nostrī quī in phalanga insilirent et scūta 5 manibus revellerent et dēsuper vulnerārent. Cum hostium acies ā sinistrō cornū pulsa atque in fugam coniecta esset, ā dextrō cornū vehementer multitudīne suōrum nostram aciem premēbant. Id cum animadvertisset P. Crassus adulēscēns, quī equitātui praeerat, 10 quod expeditior erat quam eī, quī inter aciem versābantur, tertiam aciem labōrantibus nostris subsidio mīsīt.

Complete overthrow of the Germans. Recovery of the Roman envoys.

Ita proelium resitūtum est, atque omnēs hostēs 53 terga vertērunt, nec prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad 15 flūmen Rhēnum milia passuum ex eō locō circiter v pervēnērunt. Ibi perpaucī aut vīribus cōnfisī trānāre contendērunt aut lintribus inventīs sibi salūtem reperērunt. In his fuit Ariovistus, quī nāviculam dēligātam ad ripam nactus eā profūgit; reliquōs omnēs cōn- 20 secūtī equitēs nostrī interfēcērunt.

Duae fuērunt Ariovistī uxōrēs, ūna Suēba nātiōne, quam domō sēcum dūxerat, altera Nōrica, rēgis Vocciōnis soror, quam in Galliā dūxerat ā frātre missam; utraque in eā fugā periit; duae filiae: hārum altera oc- 25 cisa, altera capta est.

C. Valerius Procillus, cum ā custōdibus in fugā trīnīs catēnis vinctus traherētur, in ipsum Caesarem hostēs equitātū insequentem incidit. Quae quidem rēs

Caesari nōn minōrem quam ipsa victōria voluptātem attulit, quod hominem honestissimum prōvinciae Galliae, suum familiārem et hospitem, ēreptum ex manibus hostium sibi restitūtum vidēbat; neque eius calamitāte
5 dē tantā voluptāte et grātulātiōne quicquam fortūna dēminuerat. Is sē praesente dē sē ter sortibus cōsultum dicēbat, utrum ignī statim necārētur, an in aliud tempus reservārētur; sortium beneficiō sē esse incolumem. Item M. Mētius repertus et ad eum reductus
10 est.

The army goes into winter quarters, Caesar to Cisalpine Gaul.

- 54 Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō Suēbī, quī ad ripās Rhēnī vēnerant, domum revertī coepērunt; quōs Ubii, quī proximī Rhēnum incolunt, perterritōs sēnsērunt: īsecūtī māgnū ex eis numerum occidērunt.
- 15 Caesar ūnā aestāte duōbus māximis bellis cōfectis mātūrius paulō quam tempus annī postulābat, in hiberna in Sēquanōs exercitum dēdūxit; hibernis Labiēnum praeposuit; ipse in citeriōrem Galliam ad conventūs agendōs profectus est.

LIBER SECUNDUS.

WAR WITH THE BELGIAN CONFEDERATION, B. C. 57.

All the Belgian tribes conspire against the Romans.

Cum esset Caesar in citeriøre Galliā [in hibernis], 1
ita uti suprā dēmōstrāvimus, crēbrī ad eum rŭmōrēs
adferēbantur litterisque item Labiēnī certior fiēbat
omnēs Belgās, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dīx-
erāmus, contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsi- 5
dēsque inter sē dare. Coniūrandī hās esse causās:
prīmum, quod verērentur, nē omni pācātā Galliā ad eōs
exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde quod ab nōn
nūllis Gallis sollicitārentur, partim quī, ut Germānōs
diūtius in Galliā versārī nōluerant, ita populī Rōmānī 10
exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā mo-
lestē ferēbant, partim quī mōbilitāte et levitāte animī
novīs imperiīs studēbant; ab nōn nūllis etiam, quod in
Galliā ā potentiōribus atque eīs quī ad condūcendōs
hominēs facultātēs habēbant vulgō rēgna occupāban- 15
tur, quī minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō cōsequī
poterant.

Caesar marches quickly into their country.

Hīs nūntiis litterisque commōtus Caesar duās le- 2
giōnēs in citeriøre Galliā novās cōscripsit et initā
aestāte, in ulteriōrem Galliam quī dēdūceret Q. Pedi- 20

um lēgātum mīsit. Ipse, cum primum pābuli cōpia esse inciperet, ad exercitum vēnit. Dat negōtium Senonibus reliquisque Gallis quī finitimī Belgīs erant, utī ea quae apud eōs gerantur cōgnōscant sēque dē hīs
 5 rēbus certiōrem faciant. Hī cōstanter omnēs nūntiāvērunt manūs cōgī, exercitum in ūnum locum cōdūcī. Tum vērō dubitandum nōn exīstimāvit, quīn ad eōs proficiscerētur. Rē frūmentāriā prōvisā castra movet diēbusque circiter xv ad finēs Belgārūm pervenit.

Submission of the Remi.

- 3 Eō cum dē imprōvisō celeriusque omnium opīniōne vēnisset, Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae ex Belgīs sunt, ad eum lēgātōs Iccium et Andebrogium, prīmōs civitātis, mīserunt, quī dicerent: Sē suaque omnia in fidem atque
 15 potestātem populī Rōmānī permittere; neque sē cum reliquīs Belgīs cōsēnsisse neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāsse, parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidīs recipere et frūmentō cēterisque rēbus iuvāre; reliquōs omnēs Belgās in armīs esse,
 20 Germānōsque, quī cis Rhēnum incolant, sēsē cum hīs coniūnxisse, tantumque esse eōrum omnium furōrem, ut nē Suessiōnēs quidem, frātrēs cōsanguineōsque suōs, quī eōdem iūre et isdem lēgibus ūtantur, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum cum ipsīs habeant,
 25 dētērrere potuerint, quīn cum hīs cōsentīrent.

The origin and forces of the Belgae as reported by the Remi.

- 4 Cum ab eis quaereret, quae civitatēs quantaque in armīs essent et quid in bellō possent, sic reperiēbat: plērōsque Belgās esse ortōs ā Germānīs Rhēnumque antiquitus trāductōs propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōn-
 30 sēdisse Gallōsque quī ea loca incolerent, expulisse,

sōlōsque esse quī patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omnī Galliā vexatā, Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā suōs finēs ingredi prohibuerint; quā ex rē fieri utī eārum rērum memoriā māgnam sibi auctōritātem māgnōsque spīritūs in rē militārī sūmerent.

5

Dē numerō eōrum omnia sē habēre explorāta Rēmī dicēbant, proptereā quod propinquitātibus adfinitātibusque coniūctī, quantam quisque multitudinem in commūnī Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit cōgnōverint. Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō valēre; hōs posse cōficere armāta mīlia centum, pollicitōs ex eō numerō ēlēcta mīlia LX tōtīusque bellī imperium sibi postulāre. Suessiōnēs suōs esse fīnitimōs; finēs lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēre. Apud eōs fuisse rēgem nostrā etiam memoriā Dīviciācum, tōtīus Galliae potentissimum, quī cum māgnae partis hārum regiōnum tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuerit; nunc esse rēgem Galbam; ad hunc propter iūstitiam prūdentiamque summam tōtīus bellī omnium voluntāte dēferri; oppida habēre numerō XII, pollicērī mīlia armāta L; totidem Nervīōs, quī māximē ferī inter ipsōs habeantur longissimēque absint; xv mīlia, Atrebātēs, Ambiānōs x mīlia, Morinōs xxv mīlia, Menapiōs vii mīlia, Caletōs x mīlia, Veliocassēs et Viromanduōs totidem, Atuaticōs xviii mīlia; Condrūsōs, Eburōnēs, Caerōsōs, Caemānōs, quī ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur, arbitrārī ad xl mīlia.

Caesar marches to the Aisne.

Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus liberālīterque ōrātiōne prōsecūtus omnem senātum ad sē convenīre prīncipumque liberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī iussit. Quae

5

30

omnia ab hīs diligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Diviciacum Haeduum māgnopere cohortātus docet quantō opere rei pūblicae commūnisque salūtis intersit manūs hostium distinērī, nē cum tantā multitudīne ūnō tempore cōnfligendum sit. Id fierī posse, sī suās cōpiās Haedui in finēs Bellovacōrum intrōdūxerint et eōrum agrōs populārī coeperint. Hīs datis mandātis eum ā sē dīmittit.

Postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum coāctās ad sē venīre [vidit] neque iam longē abesse, ab eīs, quōs mīserat, explōrātōribus et ab Rēmīs cōgnōvit, flūmen Axonam, quod est in extrēmīs Rēmōrum finibus, exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae rēs et latus ūnum castrōrum ripīs flūminis mūniēbat et post eum quae erant tūta ab hostibus reddēbat, et commeātūs ab Rēmīs reliquīsque civitātibus ut sine periculō ad eum portārī possent efficiēbat. In eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit; castra in altitudinem pedum XII vāllō fossāque duodēvigintī pedum mūnīri iubet.

The Belgae attack Bibrax.

Ab hīs castrīs oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax aberat mīlia passuum VIII. Id ex itinere māgnō impetū Belgae oppūgnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum est. Gallōrum eadem atque Belgārum oppūgnatiō est haec. Ubi circumiectā multitudīne hominum tōtis moenibus undique in mūrum lapidēs iaci coeptī sunt mūrusque dēfēnsōribus nūdātus est. testūdine factā [portās] succēdunt mūrumque subruunt. Quod tum facile fiēbat. Nam cum tanta multitudō

lapidēs ac tēla cōicerent, in mūrō cōsistendī potestās erat nullī. Cum finem oppugnandī nox fēcisset, Iccius Rēmūs, summā nōbilitāte et grātiā inter suōs, quī tum oppidō praeerat, ūnus ex eis, quī lēgātī dē pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, nūntiōs ad eum mittit: Nisi subsidium sibi submittātur, sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse.

Caesar relieves Bibrax. The Remi advance against his camp.

Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar isdem ducibus ūsus quī nūntiū ab Icciō vōnerant, Numidās et Crētās sagittāriōs et funditōrēs Baleārēs subsidiō oppidānis mittit; quōrum adventū et Rēmīs cum spē dēfēnsiōnis studium prōpugnandī accessit, et hostibus eādem dē causā spēs potiundī oppidī discessit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī, omnibus vicīs aedificiīsque quō adire potuerant, incēnsīs, ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs contendērunt et ā milibus passuum minus duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut fūmō atque ignibus significābātur, amplius milibus passuum VIII in lātitudinem patēbant.

Caesar strengthens his intrenchments.

Caesar primō et propter multitudinem hostium et propter eximiam opīniōnem virtūtis proeliō superseedere statuit; cotidiē tamen equestribus proeliīs, quid hostis virtūte posset et quid nostrī audērent, periclitābātur. Ubi nostrōs nōn esse inferiōrēs intellēxit, locō prō castrīs ad aciem instruendam nātūrā opportūnō atque idōneō, quod j̄s collis, ubi castra posita erant paululum ex plānitiē ēditus, tantum adversus in lātitudinem patēbat, quantum locī aciēs instructā occupāre poterat, atque ex utrāque parte lateris dēiectūs habēbat et in fronte lēniter fastigātus paulā-

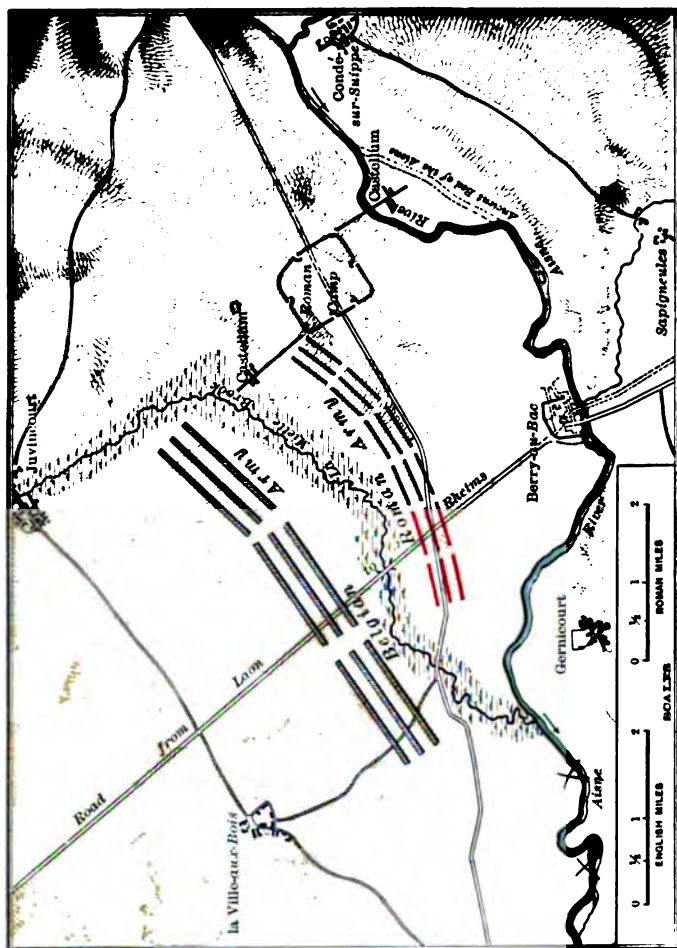
tim ad plānitium redibat, ab utrōque latere ēius
 collis trānsversam fossam obdūxit circiter passuum
 cccc et ad extrēmās fossās castella cōstituit ibique
 tormenta conlocāvit, nē, cum aciem instrūisset,
 5 hostēs, quod tantum multitudīne poterant, ab lateribus
 pūgnantēs suōs circumvenire possent. Hoc factō duā-
 bus legiōnibus quās proximē cōscripserat in castrīs
 relictis, ut, sī quō opus esset, subsidiō dūci possent, reli-
 quās vi legiōnēs prō castrīs in aciē cōstituit. Hostēs
 10 item suās cōpiās ex castrīs ēductās instrūxērunt.

The Belgae try to cross the Aisne and attack Caesar's rear.

9 Palūs erat nōn māgna inter nostrum atque hostium
 exercitum. Hanc sī nostrī trānsirent hostēs exspectā-
 bant; nostrī autem, sī ab illis initium trānseundī fieret,
 ut impeditōs adgrederentur parātī in armīs erant. In-
 15 terim proeliō equestri inter duās aciēs contendebātur.
 Ubi neutrī trānseundī initium faciunt, secundiore equi-
 tum proeliō nostrīs Caesar suōs in castra redūxit.
 Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam conten-
 dērunt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōstrātum est.
 20 Ibi vadīs repertis partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere
 cōnātī sunt, eō cōsiliō ut, sī possent, castellum cui
 praeerat Q. Titūrius lēgātus expūgnārent pontemque
 interscinderent; sī minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum
 populārentur, quī māgnō nōbīs ūsuī ad bellum geren-
 25 dum erant, commeātūque nostrōs prohibērent.

They are defeated and disperse.

10 Caesar certior factus ab Titūriō omnem equitātum
 et levis armātūrae Numidās, funditōrēs sagittariōsque
 ponte trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Acriter in eō
 locō pūgnātum est. Hostēs impeditōs nostrī in flū-



THE BATTLE ON THE AISNE.

mine adgressi māgnū eōrum numerū occīdērunt; per eōrum corpora reliquōs audācissimē trānsire cōnantēs multitudīne tēlōrum reppulērunt, primōsque, quī trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs interfēcērunt.

Hostēs ubi et dē expūgnandō oppidō et dē flūmine 5 trānseundō spem sē fefellisse intellēxērunt neque nostrōs in locū iniquiōrem prōgredi pūgnandī causā vidērunt, atque ipsōs rēs frūmentāria dēficere coepit, conciliō convocātō cōstituērunt optimum esse domum suam quemque revertī, et quōrum in finēs pri- 10 mum Rōmānī exercitū intrōdūxissent, ad eōs dēfendendōs undique convenīrent, ut potius in suis quam in aliēnis finibus dēcertārent et domesticis cōpiis rei frūmentāriae ūterentur. Ad eam sententiā cum reliquīs causis haec quoque ratiō eōs dēdūxit, quod Diviciacum 15 atque Haeduōs finibus Bellovacōrum adpropinquāre cōgnōverant. His persuādērī ut diūtius morārentur neque suis auxiliū ferrent nōn poterat.

Great slaughter of the Belgae on their retreat.

Eā rē cōstitutā secundā vigiliā māgnō cum strepitū 21 ac tumultū castris ēgressi nullō certō ōrdine neque imperiō, cum sibi quisque primum itineris locū peteret et domū pervenīre properāret, fēcērunt ut cōsimilibus fugae profectiō viderētur. Hāc rē statim Caesar per speculātōrēs cōgnitā insidiās veritus, quod quā dē causā discēderent, nōndum perspēxerat, exercitū 25 equitātumque castris continuit. Primā lūce cōfirmatā rē ab explorātōribus, omnem equitātū quī novissimū agmen morārētur praemisit.

His Q. Pedium et L. Aurunculēiū Cottam lēgātōs praefecit; T. Labiēnum lēgātū cum legiōnibus tribus 30

subsequi iussit. Hi novissimos adorti et multa milia passuum prosecuti magnam multitudinem eorum fugientium conciderunt; cum ab extremo agmine, ad quos ventum erat, consisterent fortiterque impetum nostrorum militum sustinerent, priores, quod abesse a periculo viderentur neque ulla necessitate neque imperio continerentur, exaudito clamore perturbatis ordinibus omnes in fuga sibi praesidium ponerent. Ita sine ulla periculo tantam eorum multitudinem nostri interfecerunt, quantum fuit diei spatium; sub occasum solis sequi destiterunt seque in castra, ut erat imperatum, receperunt.

Surrender of the Suessiones.

12 Postridie eius diei Caesar, priusquam se hostes ex terrore ac fuga reciperent, in fines Suessionum, qui
15 proximi Remis erant, exercitum duxit et magno itinere [confecto] ad oppidum Noviodunum contendit. Id ex itinere oppugnare conatus, quod vacuum ab defensoribus esse audiebat, propter latitudinem fossae muri-
que altitudinem paucis defendentibus expugnare non
20 potuit. Castris munitis vineas agere quaeque ad oppugnandum usui erant comparare coepit. Interim omnis ex fuga Suessionum multitudo in oppidum proximam nocte convenit. Celeriter vineis ad oppidum actis, ag-
gere iacto turribusque constitutis, magnitudine ope-
25 rum, quae neque viderant ante Galli neque audierant, et celeritate Romanorum permoti legatos ad Caesarem de deditioe mittunt et petentibus Remis ut conservarentur impetrant.

The Bellovaci also submit.

13 Caesar obsidibus acceptis primis civitatis atque
30 ipsius Galbae regis duobus filiis armisque omnibus ex

oppidō trāditis in dēditiōnem Suessiōnēs accipit exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. Quī cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent atque ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter milia passuum v abesset, omnēs māiōrēs nātū ex oppidō ēgressi 5 manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significāre coepērunt sēsē in eius fidem ac potestātem venīre neque contrā populum Rōmānum armis contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passis manibus suō mōre 10 pācem ab Rōmānis petiērunt.

Intercession of Diviciacus for the Bellovaci.

Prō hīs Diviciācus—nam post discessum Belgārum 14 dimissis Haeduōrum cōpiis ad eum reverterat—facit verba: Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē atque amicitia cīvītatis Haeduae fuisse; impulsōs ab suis principibus, 15 quī dicerent Haeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs omnēs indignitātēs contumēliāsque perferre, et ab Haeduīs defēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Quī eius cōsiliī principēs fuissent, quod intellexerent, quantam calamitātem cīvītātī intulissent, in Britanniam 20 prōfūgis. Petere nōn solum Bellovacōs sed etiam prō hīs Haeduōs ut suā clēmētiā ac mānsuētūdine in eōs ūtātur. Quod si fēcerit, Haeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās amplificātūrum, quōrum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua bella inciderint, sustentāre cōsuērunt. 25

The Ambiani submit to Caesar. He learns about the Nervii.

Caesar honōris Diviciāci atque Haeduōrum causā 15 sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōservātūrum dixit, et quod erat cīvītās māgnā inter Belgās auctōritāte atque hominum multitudine praestābat, dc obsidēs

poposcit. His trāditis omnibusque armīs ex oppidō conlātis, ab eō locō in finēs Ambiānōrum pervēnit; quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdidērunt.

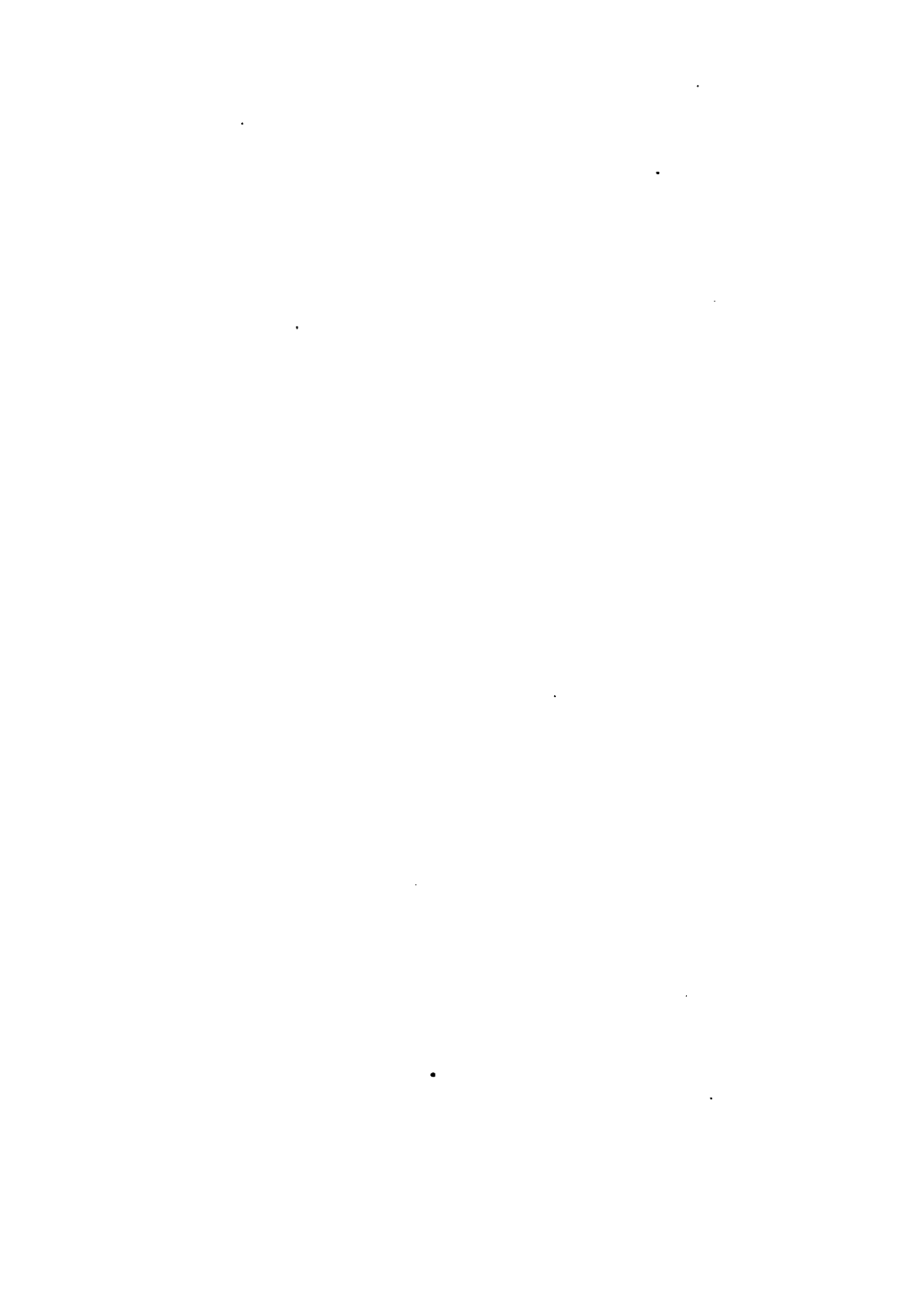
Eōrum finēs Nervii attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā
 5 mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sīc reperiēbat: Nūllum esse aditum ad eōs mercātōribus; nihil patī vinī reliquārumque rērum ad luxūriam pertinentium inferri, quod hīs rēbus relanguēscere animōs [eōrum] et remitti virtutem existimārent; esse hominēs ferōs māg-
 10 naeque virtūtis; increpitāre atque incūsāre reliquos Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent patriamque virtutem prōiēcissent; cōfirmāre sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condiciōnem pācis acceptūrōs.

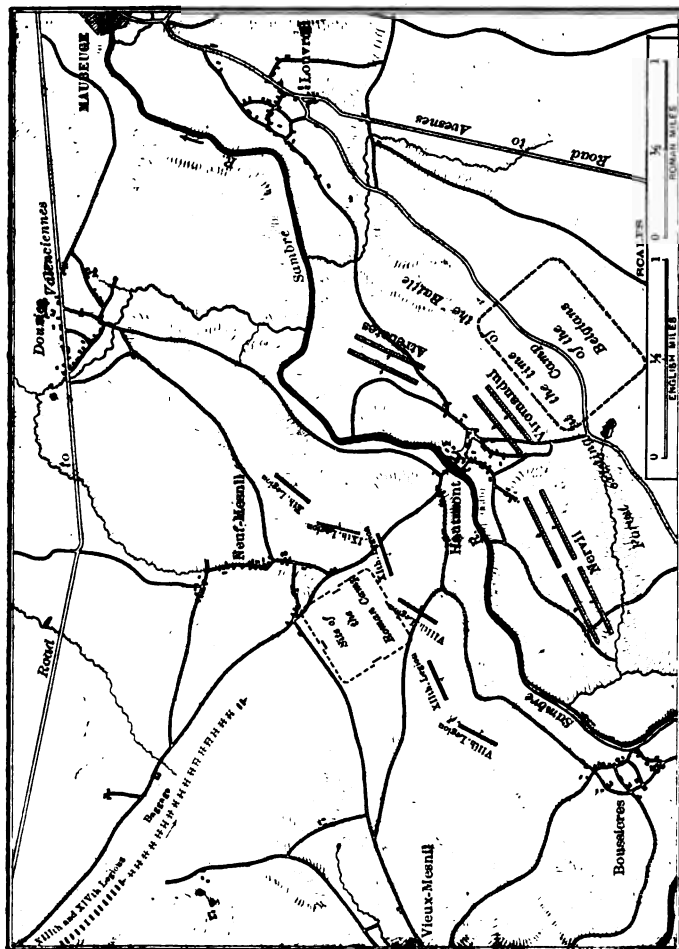
The Nervii await Caesar beyond the Sambre.

16 Cum per eōrum finēs trīdium iter fēcisset, inveniē-
 15 bat ex captivīs Sabim flūmen ā castrīs suis non amplius milia passuum x abesse; trāns id flūmen omnēs Nervios cōnsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum exspectāre ūnā cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduis, finitimīs suis — nam hīs utrīsq̄ persuāserant uti eandem bellī
 20 fortūnam experīrentur —; exspectārī etiam ab eis Atuatucōrum cōpiās atque esse in itinere; mulierēs, quīque per aetātem ad pūgnam inūtilēs vidērentur in eum locum cōniēcisse, quō propter palūdēs exercitui aditus nōn esset.

They decide to attack him while encamping.

17 His rēbus cōgnitis explōrātōrēs centuriōnēsque praemittit quī locum castrīs idōneum dēligant. Cum ex dēditiciīs Belgīs reliquisque Gallis complūrēs Caesarem secūtī ūnā iter facerent, quīdam ex hīs, ut postea ex captivīs cōgnitum est, eōrum diērum cōsuētūdine





THE BATTLE WITH THE NERVIL.

itineris nostrī exercitūs perspectā, nocte ad Nerviōs pervēnērunt, atque hīs dēmōnstrārunt inter singulās legiōnēs impedimentōrum māgnūm numerum intercēdere, neque esse quicquam negōtī, cum prīma legiō in castra vēnisset reliquaeque legiōnēs māgnūm spatium 5 abessent, hanc sub sarcinīs adorīrī; quā pulsā impedimentīsque direptis futūrum ut reliquae contrā cōsistere nōn audērent.

Adiuvābat etiam eōrum cōnsiliū quī rem dēferēbant, quod Nervii antiquitus, cum equitātū nihil pos- 10 sent,—neque enim ad hōc tempus eī rei student, sed quicquid possunt, pedestribus valent cōpiīs,—quō facilius finitimōrum equitātum, si praedandī causā ad eōs vēnissent, impedīrent, teneris arboribus incīsīs atque inflexīs, crēbrisque in lātitudinem rāmīs enātīs 15 et rubīs sentibusque interiectīs effēcerant, ut instar mūrī hāc saepēs mūnimentum praeberent, quō nōn modo nōn intrārī sed nē perspicī quidem posset. Hīs rēbus cum iter agminis nostrī impedirētur, nōn omit- tendum sibi cōnsiliū Nervii exīstimāvērunt. 20

Character of the ground.

Locī nātūra erat haec quem locum nostrī castrīs 18 dēlēgerant. Collis ab summō aequālīter dēclivis ad flūmen Sabim, quod suprā nōmināvimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine parī acclivitate collis nāscēbātur adversus huic et contrārius, passūs circiter cc infimus aper- 25 tus, ab superiōre parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset. Intrā eās silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secundum flūmen paucae stationēs equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō pedum circiter trium. 30

Fierce attack of the Nervii and confusion of the Romans.

19 Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequēbātur omnibus
 cōpiis; sed ratiō ōrdōque agminis aliter sē habēbat āc
 Belgae ad Nervios dētulerant. Nam quod hostibus
 adpropinquābat, cōsuētūdine suā Caesar vi legiōnēs
 5 expeditās dūcēbat; post eās totius exercitūs impedi-
 menta conlocārat; inde duae legiōnēs quae proximē
 cōscriptae erant tōtum agmen claudēbant praesi-
 diōque impedimentis erant. Equitēs nostrī cum fundi-
 tōribus sagittāriisque flūmen trāsgressī cum hostium
 10 equitātū proelium commiserunt. Cum sē illi identi-
 dem in silvās ad suos reciperent āc rursus ex silvā in
 nostrōs impetum facerent, neque nostrī longius quam
 quem ad finem porrecta loca aperta pertinēbant cē-
 dentēs insequi audērent, interim legiōnēs vi quae pī-
 15 mae vēnerant opere dimēnsō castra mūnīre coepērunt.

Ubi prima impedimenta nostrī exercitūs ab eis quī
 in silvis abditī latēbant vīsa sunt, quod tempus inter
 eōs committendī proeli convēnerat, ut intrā silvās aciem
 ōrdinēsq̄e cōstituerant atque ipsī sēsē cōfirmāve-
 20 rant, subitō omnibus cōpiis prōvolāvērunt impetumque
 in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. Hīs facile pulsīs āc prō-
 turbātis, incrēdibili celeritāte ad flūmen dēcucurrērunt,
 ut paene ūnō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine [et
 iam in manibus nostrīs] hostēs vidērentur. Eādem
 25 autem celeritāte adversō colle ad nostra castra atque
 eōs, quī in opere occupātī erant contendērunt.

Discipline of the Romans in the crisis.

20 Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: vēxillum
 prōpōnendum, [quod erat insigne cum ad arma con-
 currī oportēret,] sīgnum tubā dandum, ab opere revo-

candī milītēs, quī paulō longius aggeris petendī causā
 prōcesserant arcessendī, aciēs instruenda, milītēs co-
 hortandī, sīgnum dandum. Quārum rērum māgnam
 partem temporis brevītās et incursus hostium im-
 pediēbat. His difficultātibus duae rēs erant subsidiō, 5
 scientia atque ūsus militum, quod superiōribus proeliis
 exercitātī, quid fierī oportēret nōn minus commodē
 ipsī sibi praescribere quam ab aliis docērī poterant; et
 quod ab opere singulisque legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs
 Caesar discēdere nisi mūnitīs castris vetuerat. Hī prop- 10
 ter propinquitātem et celeritātem hostium nihil iam
 Caesaris imperium exspectābant, sed per sē, quae vidē-
 bantur, administrābant.

Caesar's speech to the Tenth Legion.

Caesar necessariis rēbus imperātis ad cohortandōs 21
 milītēs quam [in] partem fors obtulit dēcucurrit, et ad 15
 legiōnem decimam dēvēnit. Milītēs nōn longiōre ōrā-
 tiōne cohortātus quam utī suae prīstinae virtūtis me-
 moriam retinērent neu perturbārentur animō hosti-
 umque impetum fortiter sustinērent, quod nōn longius
 hostēs aberant quam quō tēlum adigī posset, proeli 20
 committendī sīgnum dedit. Atque in alteram partem
 item cohortandī causā profectus pūgnantibus occurrit.
 Temporis tanta fuit exiguitās hostiumque tam parātus
 ad dīmicanandum animus ut nōn modo ad insīgnia ac-
 commodanda, sed etiam ad galeās induendās scūtisque 25
 tegimenta dētrahenda tempus dēfuerit. Quam quisque
 ab opere in partem cāsū dēvēnit, quaeque prīma sīgna
 cōspēxit, ad haec cōstitit, nē in quaerendis suis pū-
 gnandī tempus dimitteret.

Difficulties of the battle.

22 Instrūctō exercitū, magis ut loci nātūra dēiectus-
 que collis et necessitās temporis quam ut rei militāris
 ratiō atque ōrdō postulābat, cum diversae legiōnēs
 aliae aliā in parte hostibus resisterent, saepibusque
 5 dēnsissimīs, ut ante dēmōnstrāvimus, interiectis prō-
 spectus impedirētur, neque certa subsidia conlocārī
 neque, quid in quāque parte opus esset prōvidērī neque
 ab ūnō omnia imperia administrārī poterant. Itaque
 in tantā rērum inīquitāte fortūnae quoque ēventūs
 10 variī sequēbantur.

*Two legions drive the Atrebates into the river; two rout the
 Viromandui; the Nervii gain Caesar's camp.*

23 Legiōnis VIII et x militēs, ut in sinistrā parte aciē
 cōstiterant, pilis ēmissis cursū ac lassitūdine exani-
 mātōs vulneribusque cōfectōs Atrebātēs — nam his
 ea pars obvenerat — celeriter ex locō superiōre in
 15 flūmen compulērunt, et trānsire cōnantēs insecūtī
 gladiis māgnam partem eōrum impeditam interfēcē-
 runt. Ipsī trānsire flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt, et in
 locum inīquum prōgressi rūsus resistantēs hostēs re-
 dintegrātō proeliō in fugam coniēcērunt. Item aliā in
 20 parte diversae duae legiōnēs, XI et VIII, prōfligātis
 Viromanduis, quibuscum erant congressae, ex locō su-
 periōre in ipsīs flūminis ripīs proeliābantur. At tōtis
 ferē castrīs ā fronte et ā sinistrā parte nūdātis, cum in
 dextrō cornū legiō XII et nōn māgnō ab eā intervallō
 25 VII cōstitisset, omnēs Nervii cōfertissimō agmine
 duce Boduōgnātō, quī summam imperi tenēbat, ad
 eum locum contendērunt; quōrum pars ab apertō la-
 tere legiōnēs circumvenire, pars summum castrōrum
 locum petere coepit.

The situation is alarming, and the Treveri in a panic desert Caesar.

Eòdem tempore equitēs nostrī levisque armātūrae **24**
 peditēs, quī cum eīs ūnā fuerant, quōs primō hostium
 impetū pulsōs dixeram, cum sē in castra reciperent,
 adversīs hostibus occurrēbant ac rūsus aliam in par-
 tem fugam petēbant; et cālōnēs, quī ab decumānā **5**
 portā ac summō iugō collis nostrōs victōrēs flūmen
 trānsisse cōspēxerant, praedandī causā ēgressī, cum
 respēxissent et hostēs in nostrīs castrīs versārī vidissent,
 praecipitēs fugae sēsē mandābant. Simul eōrum quī
 cum impedimentīs veniēbant clāmor fremitusque oriē- **10**
 bātur, aliūque aliam in partem perterritī ferēbantur.

Quibus omnibus rēbus permōtī equitēs Treverī,
 quōrum inter Gallōs virtūtis opīniō est singulāris, quī
 auxiliī causā ā cīvitatē missī ad Caesarem vēnerant,
 cum multitudīne hostium castra [nostra] complērī, **15**
 legiōnēs premi et paene circumventās tenērī, cālōnēs,
 equitēs, funditōrēs, Numidās dispersōs dissipātōsque
 in omnēs partēs fugere vidissent, dēspērātis nostrīs rē-
 bus domum contendērunt; Rōmānōs pulsōs superā-
 tōsque, castrīs impedimentisque eōrum hostēs potītōs **20**
 cīvitatī renūntiāvērunt.

Caesar places himself at the head of his troops.

Caesar ab x legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum **25**
 cornū profectus, ubi suōs urgērī signīsque in ūnum
 locum conlātīs xii legiōnis cōnfertōs militēs sibi ipsōs
 ad pūgnam esse impedimentō vidit, quartae cohortis **25**
 omnibus centuriōnibus occīsīs, signiferō interfectō,
 signō āmissō, reliquārum cohortium omnibus ferē cen-
 turiōnibus aut vulnerātis aut occīsīs, in hīs primipilō

P. Sextiō Baculō, fortissimō virō, multis gravibusque vulneribus cōfectō, ut iam sē sustinēre nōn posset; reliquōs esse tardiōrēs et nōn nūllōs ab novissimis dēsertō locō proeliō excēdere ac tēla vitāre, hostēs neque
5 ā fronte ex inferiōre locō subeuntēs intermittere et ab utrōque latere instāre, et rem esse in angustō vīdit neque ūllum esse subsidium quod submittī posset, scūtō ab novissimis [ūnī] militī dētrāctō, quod ipse eō sine scūtō vēnerat, in primam aciem prōcessit, centuriōnibusque nōminātīm appellātīs reliquōs cohortātus militēs sīgna inferre et manipulōs laxāre iussit, quō
10 facilius gladiīs ūtī possent. Cūius adventū spē inlātā militibus ac redintegrātō animō, cum prō sē quisque in cōspectū imperātōris etiam in extrēmīs suis rēbus
15 operam nāvāre cuperet, paulum hostium impetus tardātus est.

Labienus, after taking the enemy's camp, sends reinforcements to Caesar.

26 Caesar, cum VII legiōnem, quae iūxtā cōstiterat, item urgērī ab hoste vīdisset, tribūnōs militum monuit, ut paulātīm sēsē legiōnēs coniungerent et cōversa
20 sīgna in hostēs inferrent. Quō factō, cum aliīs aliī subsidium ferrent neque timērent nē āversī ab hoste circumvenīrentur, audācius resistere ac fortius pūgnāre coepērunt. Interim militēs legiōnum duārum quae in novissimō agmine praesidiō impedimentīs fuerant, proeliō nūntiātō, cursū incitātō in summō colle
25 ab hostibus cōspiciēbantur; et T. Labiēnus castrīs hostium potītus et ex locō superiōre, quae rēs in nostrīs castrīs gererentur cōspicātus x legiōnem subsidiō nostrīs mīsīt. Quī cum ex equitum et cālōnum fugā
30 quō in locō rēs esset quantōque in periculō et castra

et legiōnēs et imperātor versārētur, cōgnōvissent, nihil ad celeritātem sibi reliquī fēcērunt.

This causes a turn in the tide of battle.

Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtatiō est facta 27
ut nostrī, etiam quī vulneribus cōfectī prōcubuissent,
scūtis innixī proelium redintegrārent, cālōnēs perter- 5
ritōs hostēs cōspicātī etiam inermēs armātis occurre-
rent; equitēs vērō, ut turpitūdinem fugae virtūte dēlē-
rent, omnibus in locis pūgnandō sē legiōnāriis militi-
bus praeferrent. At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salū-
tis tantam virtūtem praestitērunt ut, cum primī eō- 10
rum cecidissent, proximī iacentibus insisterent atque
ex eōrum corporibus pūgnārent; his dēiectis et coacer-
vātis cadāveribus, quī superessent ut ex tumultō tēla in
nostrōs cōicerent et pila intercepta remitterent; ut nōn
nēquiquam tantae virtūtis hominēs iūdicārī dēberet 15
ausōs esse trānsire lātissimum flūmen, ascendere altis-
simās rīpās, subīre inīquissimum locum; quae facilia ex
difficillimis animī māgnitūdō redēgerat.

The Nervii are routed and most of them killed.

Hōc proeliō factō et prope ad interneciōnem gente 28
āc nōmine Nerviorum redāctō māiōrēs nātū, quōs unā 20
cum pueris mulieribusque in aestuāria āc palūdēs
coniectōs dīxērāmus, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā, cum victōri-
bus nihil impeditum, victis nihil tūtum arbitrārentur,
omnium, quī supererant, cōsēnsū lēgātōs, ad Caesarem
misērunt sēque ei dēdidērunt; et, in commemorandā 25
civitātis calamitāte, ex DC ad trēs senātōrēs, ex homi-
num milibus LX vix ad D, quī arma ferre possent, sēsē
redāctōs esse dīxērunt. Quōs Caesar, ut in miserōs
āc supplicēs ūsus misericordiā vidērētur, diligentissimē

cōservāvit suisque finibus atque oppidīs ūtī iussit, et finitimīs imperāvit, ut ab iniuriā et maleficiō sē suōs-que prohibērent.

The Atuatucae withdraw into a stronghold.

29 Atuatucae, dē quibus suprā diximus, cum omnibus
5 cōpiīs auxiliō Nerviīs venīrent, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā ex
itinere domum revertērunt; cūctīs oppidīs castellisque
dēsertīs sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā
mūnitum contulērunt. Quod cum ex omnibus in cir-
cuitū partibus altissimās rūpēs dēiectūsque habēret, ūnā
10 ex parte lēniter acclīvis aditus in lātitudinem nōn am-
plius pedum cc relinquēbātur; quem locum duplici altis-
simō mūrō mūnierant; tum māgnī ponderis saxa et
praeacūtās trabēs in mūrō conlocābant. Ipsī erant ex
Cimbris Teutonisque prōgnātī, quī, cum iter in prō-
15 vinciam nostram atque Italiam facerent, eis impedī-
mentis quae sēcum agere ac portāre nōn poterant, citrā
flūmen Rhēnum dēpositis custōdiam ex suis ac praesidi-
um vi milia hominum ūnā reliquerant. Hī post eōrum
obitum multōs annōs ā finitimīs exagitātī, cum aliās
20 bellum īferrent, aliās inlātum dēfenderent, cōsēnsū
eōrum omnium pāce factā hunc sibi domiciliō locum
dēlēgerant.

They laugh at the siege works of the Romans.

30 Ac primō adventū exercitūs nostrī crēbrās ex
oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant parvulisque proeliīs cum
25 nostris contendēbant; postea vāllō pedum XII, in
circuitū xv milium crēbrisque castellīs circummūnitī
oppidō sēsē continēbant. Ubi vineis āctīs aggere ex-
strūctō turrim procul cōstituī vīdērunt, primum īn-
rīdēre ex mūrō atque increpitāre vōcibus, quod tanta

māchinātiō ā tantō spatiō instituerētur: Quibusnam manibus aut quibus viribus, praesertim hominēs tantulae statūrae, — nam plērumque omnibus Gallīs prae māgnitūdine corporum suōrum brevitās nostra contemptū est, — tantī oneris turrim in mūrō sēsē posse 5 conlocāre cōfiderent?

At length in alarm they offer to surrender.

Ubi vērō movērī et adpropinquāre mūrīs vidērunt, 31 novā atque inūsitatā speciē commōti lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce misērunt, quī ad hunc modum locūtī: Nōn sē existimāre Rōmānōs sine ope deōrum bellum 10 gerere, quī tantae altitūdinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celebritate prōmovēre possent; sē suaque omnia eōrum potestātī permittere dixērunt. Ūnum petere āc dēprecārī: sī forte prō suā clēmentīā āc mānsuētūdine, quam ipsī ab aliīs audīrent, statuisset Atuatucōs esse cōser- 15 vandōs, nē sē armīs dēspoliāret. Sibi omnēs ferē finitimōs esse inimicōs āc suae virtūtī invidēre; ā quibus sē dēfendere trāditīs armīs nōn possent. Sibi praestāre, sī in eum cāsum dēdūcerentur, quamvis fortunam ā populō Rōmānō patī quam ab hīs per cruciātum interficī, 20 inter quōs dominārī cōsuēssent.

They treacherously retain part of their arms.

Ad haec Caesar respondit: Sē magis cōsuētūdine 32 suā quam meritō eōrum civitātem cōservātūrum, sī, prius quam mūrū ariēs attigisset, sē dēdidissent; sed dēditiōnis nullam esse condiōnem nisi armīs trāditīs. 25 Sē id, quod in Nervīis fēcisset factūrum finitimisque imperātūrum nē quam dēditiciīs populī Rōmānī iniūriam inferrent. Rē renūntiātā ad suōs, quae imperārentur facere dixērunt. Armōrum māgnā multitudīne dē

mūrō in fossam quae erat ante oppidum iactā, sic ut prope summam mūrī aggerisque altitudinem acervi armōrum adaequarent, et tamen circiter parte tertiā, ut postea perspectum est, cēlatā atque in oppidō retentā, 5 portis patēfactis eō diē pāce sunt ūsī.

Making a sally, they are repulsed with great loss. Over 50,000 are sold as slaves.

33 Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudī militesque ex oppidō exīre iussit, nē quam noctū oppidānī ā militibus iniūriam acciperent. Illi ante initō, ut intellēctum est, cōnsiliō, quod dēditiōne factā nostrōs praesidia dēduc- 10 tūrōs aut dēnique indiligentius servātūrōs crēdiderant, partim cum eis quae retinuerant et cēlāverant armīs, partim scūtis ex cortice factis aut vīminibus intextis, quae subitō, ut temporis exiguitās postulābat, pellibus indūxerant, tertiā vigiliā, quā minimē arduus ad nos- 15 trās mūnitiōnēs ascēsus vidēbātur, omnibus cōpiis repente ex oppidō ēruptiōnem fēcērunt.

Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperāverat, īgnibus sīgnificātiōne factā, ex proximīs castellis eō concursum est, pūgnātumque ab hostibus ita ācriter est ut ā virīs 20 fortibus in extrēmā spē salutis iniquō locō, contrā eōs quī ex vāllō turribusque tēla iacerent, pūgnārī dēbuit, cum in ūnā virtūte omnis spēs cōsisteret. Occisis ad hominum milibus IIII reliquī in oppidum reiecti sunt. Postridiē eius diē refrāctis portis, cum iam dēfende- 25 ret nēmō, atque intrōmissis militibus nostrīs, sectiōnem eius oppidī ūniversam Caesar vēndidit. Ab eis quī ēmerant capitum numerus ad eum relātus est mīlium LIII.

Crassus subduces several tribes along the coast.

Eōdem tempore ā P. Crassō quem cum legiōne ūnā **34**
mīserat ad Venetōs, Venellōs, Osismōs, Coriosolitas,
Esuviōs, Aulercōs, Redonēs, quae sunt maritimae cīvi-
tātēs Ōceanumque attingunt, certior factus est omnēs
eās cīvitātēs in dīcīōnem potestātemque populī Rō- 5
mānī esse redāctās.

*The army goes into winter quarters. Thanksgiving at Rome
for Caesar's victories.*

Hīs rēbus gestīs, omnī Galliā pācātā, tanta hūius **35**
bellī ad barbarōs opīniō perlāta est, utī ab eīs nātiōni-
bus, quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent, lēgātī ad Caesarem
mitterentur quī sē obsidēs datūrās, imperāta factūrās 10
pollicērentur. Quās lēgātiōnēs Caesar, quod in Īta-
liam Īllyricumque properābat, initā proximā aestāte ad
sē revertī iussit. Īpse in Carnutēs, Andēs Turonōs,
quaeque cīvitātēs propinquae eīs locīs erant, ubi bellum
gesserat, legiōnibus in hīberna dēductīs in Ītaliā pro- 15
fectus est. Ob eāsque rēs ex litterīs Caesaris diērum
xv supplicātiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit
nūllī.

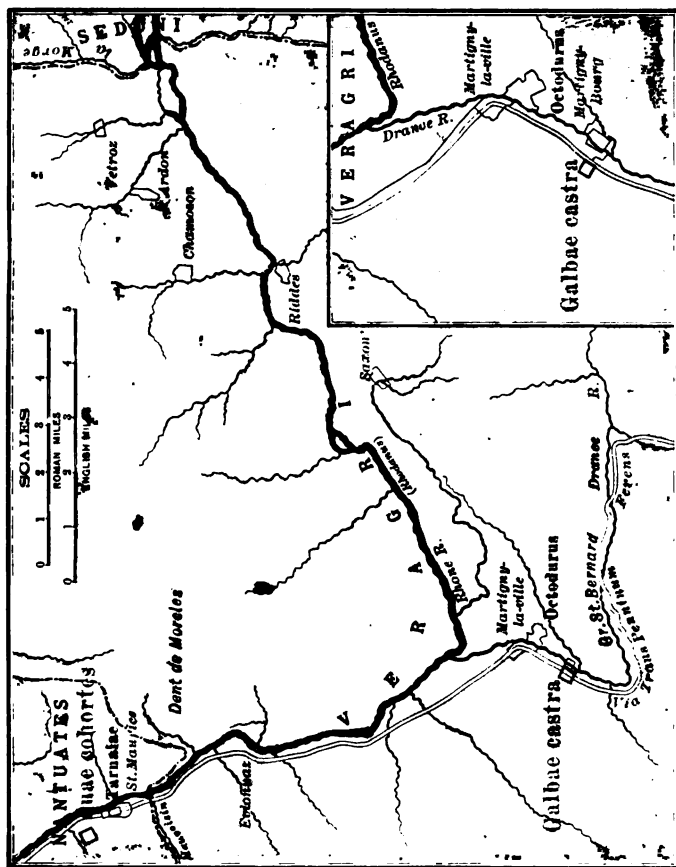
LIBER TERTIUS.

CAESAR'S THIRD CAMPAIGN; OPERATIONS IN VARIOUS PARTS OF GAUL, B. C. 56.

Galba is set to guard the passes of the Alps.

I Cum in Ìtaliā proficiscerētur Caesar, Ser. Galbam cum legiōne XII et parte equitātūs in Nantuātēs, Veragrōs Sedūnōsque mīsit, quī ā finibus Allobrogum et lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō ad summās Alpēs
5 pertinent. Causa mittendī fuit quod iter per Alpēs, quō māgnō cum periculō māgnisque cum portōriis mercātōrēs ire cōsuērānt, patēfierī volēbat. Huic permīsit, sī opus esse arbitrārētur, utī in hīs locīs legiōnem hie-
mandī causā conlocāret.

10 Galba secundīs aliquot proeliis factis castellisque complūribus eōrum expūgnātis, missis ad eum undique lēgātis obsidibusque datīs et pāce factā, cōstituit cohortēs duās in Nantuātibus conlocāre et ipse cum reli-
quīs ēius legiōnis cohortibus in vicō Veragrōrum, quī
15 appellātur Octodūrus, hiemāre; quī vicus positus in valle nōn māgnā adiectā plānitīē altissimīs montibus undique continētur. Cum hīc in duās partēs flūmine dividerētur, alteram partem ēius vicī Gallīs [ad hie-
mandum] concessit, alteram vacuum ab hīs relictam
20 cohortibus attribuit. Eum locum vallō fossāque mū-
nīvit.



THE VICINITY OF OCTODURUS.

Uprising of the mountain tribes.

Cum diēs hibernōrum complūrēs trānsissent frū- 2
mentumque eō comportārī iussisset, subitō per ex-
plorātōrēs certior factus est ex eā parte vicī, quam Gal-
līs concesserat omnēs noctu discessisse, montēsque quī
impendērent ā māximā multitudine Sedūnōrum et 5
Veragrōrum tenērī.

Id aliquot dē causīs acciderat ut subitō Gallī belli
renovandī legiōnisque opprimendae cōnsilium cape-
rent: primum, quod legiōnem—neque eam plēnissi-
mam dētrāctīs cohortibus duābus et complūribus sin- 10
gillatim, quī commeātūs petendī causā missī erant, ab-
sentibus—propter paucitātem dēspiciēbant; tum etiam
quod propter inīquitātem locī, cum ipsī ex montibus
in vallem dēcurrerent et tēla cōicerent, nē primum qui-
dem impetum suum posse sustinērī existimābant. Ac- 15
cēdēbat, quod suōs ab sē liberōs abstrāctōs obsidum
nōmine dolēbant, et Rōmānōs nōn solum iterum
causā sed etiam perpetuae possēssiōnis culmina Alpium
occupāre cōnārī et ea loca finitimae prōvinciae adiun-
gere sibi persuāsum habēbant. 20

Galba holds a council of war.

Hīs nūntiīs acceptīs Galba, cum neque opus hi- 3
bernōrum mūnitiōnēsque plēnē essent perfectae neque
dē frūmentō reliquōque commeātū satis esset prōvi-
sum, quod dēditiōne factā obsidibusque acceptīs nihil
dē bellō timendum existimāverat, cōnsiliō celeriter 25
convocatō sententiās exquirere coepit. Quō in cōnsi-
liō, cum tantum repentinī periculī praeter opiniōnem
accidisset, ac iam omnia ferē superiōra loca multitudine
armātōrum complēta cōspicerentur, neque subsidiō

veniri neque commeatus supportari interclusis itineribus possent, prope iam desperata salute non nullae eius modi sententiae dicebantur ut, impedimentis relictis eruptione facta, isdem itineribus quibus eo pervenissent, ad salutem contenderent. Maiori tamen parti placuit hoc reservato ad extremum casum consilio interrim rei eventum experiri et castra defendere.

Vigorous attack by the natives on the Roman camp.

4 Brevi spatio interiecto, vix ut eis rebus quas constituerent conlocandis atque administrandis tempus daretur, hostes ex omnibus partibus signo dato decurrere, 10 lapides gaesaeque in vallum coicere. Nostris primo integris viribus fortiter propugnare neque ullum frustra telum ex loco superiore mittere, et quaecumque pars castrorum nudata defensoribus premi videbatur, eo 15 occurrere et auxilium ferre; sed hoc superari, quod diuturnitate pugnae hostes defessi proelio excedebant, alii integris viribus succedebant; quarum rerum a nostris propter paucitatem fieri nihil poterat, ac non modo defesso ex pugna excedendi, sed ne saucio quidem 20 eius loci ubi constiterat, relinquendi ac sui recipiendi facultas dabatur.

A hard battle of six hours.

5 Cum iam amplius horis sex continenter pugnaretur ac non solum vires sed etiam tela nostros deficerent, atque hostes acius instarent languidiorebusque nostris 25 vallum scindere et fossas complere coepissent, resque esset iam ad extremum perducta casus, P. Sextius Baculus, primi pilii centurio, quem Nervico proelio compluribus confectum vulneribus diximus, et item C. Volusenus, tribunus militum, vir et consili magni et

virtūtis, ad Galbam accurrunt atque ūnam esse spem salutis docent, sī ēruptiōne factā extrēmum auxilium experirentur. Itaque convocātis centuriōnibus celeriter milites certiōrēs facit paulisper intermitterent proelium ac tantummodō tēla missa exciperent sēque ex labōre reficerent; post datō signō ex castris ērumperent, atque omnem spem salutis in virtūte pōnerent.

Galba finally defeats the enemy with great loss, but is obliged to withdraw to the Province.

Quod iūssī sunt, faciunt ac subitō omnibus portīs ēruptiōne factā neque cōgnōscendī, quid fieret neque suī colligendī hostibus facultātem relinquunt. Ita commūtātā fortūnā eōs quī in spem potiundōrum castrōrum vēnerant undique circumventōs interficiunt; et ex hominum milibus amplius xxx, quem numerum barbarōrum ad castra vēnisse cōnstābat, plūs tertiā parte interfectā reliquōs perterritōs in fugam cōiciunt ac nē in locis quidem superiōribus cōsistere patiuntur. Sic omnibus hostium cōpiis fūsis armisque exūtis sē intrā mūnitiōnēs suās recipiunt. Quō proeliō factō quod saepius fortūnam temptāre Galba nōlēbat atque aliō sē in hiberna cōsiliō vēnisse meminerat, aliīs occurrisse rēbus viderat, māximē frūmentī commeātusque inopiā permōtus posterō diē omnibus eiūs vici aedificiis incēnsis in prōvinciam revertī contendit, ac nūllō hoste prohibente aut iter dēmorante incolumem legiōnem in Nantuātēs, inde in Allobrogēs perdūxit ibique hiemāvit.

Operations on the northwest coast of Gaul.

Hīs rēbus gestis cum omnibus dē causis Caesar pācātam Galliam existimāret [superātis Belgis, ex-

pulsis Germānis, victis in Alpibus Sedūnis,] atque ita
 initā hieme in Illyricum profectus esset, quod eās quo-
 que nātiōnēs adire et regiōnēs cōgnōscere volēbat, su-
 bitum bellum in Galliā coörtum est. Eius bellī haec
 5 fuit causa. P. Crassus adulēscēns cum legiōne VII
 proximus mare Ōceanum in Andibus hiemābat. Is,
 quod in hīs locis inopiā frūmentī erat, praefectōs tri-
 būnōsque militum complūrēs in finitimās civitatēs frū-
 mentī causā dimisit; quō in numerō est T. Terrasidius
 10 missus in Esuviōs, M. Trebius Gallus in Coriosolitas,
 Q. Velānius cum T. Siliō in Venetōs.

*The Veneti seize Roman messengers, and lead a revolt of the
 maritime tribes.*

8 Hūius est civitātis longē amplissima auctōritās
 omnis ōrae maritimae regiōnum eārum, quod et nāvēs
 habent Venetī plūrimās, quibus in Britanniam nāvigāre
 15 cōsuērunt, et scientiā atque ūsū rērum nauticarū
 cēterōs antecēdunt et in māgnō impetū maris vāstī
 atque apertī paucīs portibus interiectīs, quōs tenent
 ipsī, omnēs ferē quī eō marī ūtī cōsuērunt habent
 vectīgālēs. Ab hīs fit initium retinendī Sili atque
 20 Velānī, quod per eōs suōs sē obsidēs quōs Crassō de-
 dissent, recuperātūrōs existimābant. Hōrum auctōri-
 tātē finitimī adductī — ut sunt Gallōrum subita et re-
 pentīna cōnsilia — eādē dē causā Trebium Terrasi-
 diumque retinent; et celeriter missīs lēgātīs per suōs
 25 prīncipēs inter sē coniūrant nihil nisi commūnī cōnsiliō
 actūrōs eundemque omnēs fortunae exitum esse lātū-
 rōs; reliquāsque civitatēs sollicitant ut in eā libertātē
 quam ā māiōribus accēperint permanēre quam Rōmā-
 nōrum servitūtem perferre mālint. Omnī ōrā mari-
 30 timā celeriter ad suam sententiam perductā commū-

nem lēgatiōnem ad P. Crassum mittunt: Si velit suōs recuperāre, obsidēs sibi remittat.

Caesar orders the building of a fleet. The Veneti prepare to fight.

Quibus dē rēbus Caesar ā Crassō certior factus, 9
quod ipse aberat longius, nāvēs interim longās aedifi-
cārī in flūmine Ligerī, quod influit in Ōceanum, rē- 5
migēs ex prōvinciā institui, nautās gubernātōrēsque
comparārī iubet. His rēbus celeriter administrātis ipse,
cum primum per annī tempus potuit, ad exercitum
contendit.

Venetī reliquaeque item cīvitātēs cōgnitō Caesaris 10
adventū, simul quod quantum in sē facinus admīssent,
intellegēbant, lēgātōs, quod nōmen ad omnēs nātiōnēs
sānctum inviolātumque semper fuisset, retentōs ab sē
et in vincula coniectōs, prō māgnitūdine periculī bel-
lum parāre, et māximē ea, quae ad ūsum nāvium per- 15
tinent prōvidēre instituunt, hōc māiōre spē, quod mul-
tum nātūrā locī cōnfidēbant. Pedestria esse itinera
concisa aestuariīs, nāvigatiōnem impeditam propter
īnscientiam locōrum paucitātemque portuum sciēbant,
neque nostrōs exercitūs propter frūmentī inopiam 20
diūtius apud sē morārī posse cōnfidēbant; āc iam ut
omnia contrā opīniōnem acciderent, tamen sē plūri-
mum nāvibus posse, Rōmānōs neque ūllam facultātem
habēre nāvium, neque eōrum locōrum ubi bellum ges-
tūrī essent vada, portūs, insulās nōvisse; āc longē 25
aliā esse nāvigatiōnem in conclusō marī atque in
vāstissimō atque apertissimō Ōceanō perspiciebant.
His initis cōnsiliīs oppida mūniunt, frūmenta ex agrīs
in oppida comportant, nāvēs in Venetiam, ubi Caesarem
primum bellum gestūrum cōnstābat, quam plū- 30

rimās possunt, cōgunt. Sociōs sibi ad id bellum Osis-mōs, Lexoviōs, Namnetēs, Ambiliātōs, Morinōs, Diablintēs, Menapiōs adsciscunt; auxilia ex Britannīā, quae contrā eās regiōnēs posita est, arcessunt.

Caesar's reasons for this campaign. "Divide and conquer."

- 10 Erant hae difficultātēs bellī gerendī quās suprā ostendimus, sed tamen multa Caesarem ad id bellum incitābant: iniūria retentōrum equitum Rōmānōrum, rebellio facta post dēditionem, dēfectiō datīs obsidibus, tot civitātum coniūratiō, in primīs, nē hāc parte ne-
 10 glēctā reliquae nātiōnēs sibi idem licēre arbitrārentur. Itaque cum intellexeret omnēs ferē Gallōs novīs rēbus studēre et ad bellum mōbiliter celeriterque excitārī, omnēs autem hominēs nātūrā libertātī studēre et condi-
 citionem servitūtis ōdisse, priusquam plūrēs civitātēs
 15 cōspirārent, partiendum sibi ac lātius distribuendum exercitum putāvit.

Lieutenants sent to different parts of the country. Brutus commands the fleet.

- II Itaque T. Labiēnum lēgātum in Trēverōs, quī proximī flūminī Rhēnō sunt, cum equitātū mittit. Huic mandat Rēmōs reliquōsque Belgās adeat atque in offi-
 20 ciō contineat, Germānōsque, quī auxiliō ā Gallīs arces-
 sītī dicēbantur, sī per vim nāvibus flūmen trānsire cō-
 nentur, prohibeat. P. Crassum cum cohortibus le-
 gionāriīs XII et māgnō numerō equitātūs in Aquitā-
 niam proficisci iubet, nē ex hīs nātiōnibus auxilia in
 25 Galliam mittantur ac tantae nātiōnēs coniungantur. Q. Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus in Venellōs, Coriosolitas Lexoviōsque mittit, quī eam manum distinendam cūret. D. Brūtum adulēscentem

classi Gallicisque nāvibus, quās ex Pictonibus et Santonis reliquisque pācātis regiōnibus convenire iusserat, praeficit, et cum primum possit in Venetōs proficisci iubet. Ipse eō pedestribus cōpiis contendit.

The strongholds of the Veneti.

Erant eius modi ferē sitūs oppidōrum, ut posita in **12** extrēmīs lingulis prōmuntūriisque neque pedibus aditum habērent, cum ex altō sē aestus incitāvisset; quod [bis] accidit semper hōrārū XII spatiō, neque nāvibus, quod rūsus minuente aestū nāvēs in vadīs afflictārentur. Ita utrāque rē oppidōrum oppūgnātiō **10** impediēbātur. Āc sī quandō māgnitūdine operis forte superātī, extrūsō marī aggere āc mōlibus atque his oppidī moenibus adaequātīs, dēspērāre fortūnis suis coeperant, māgnō numerō nāvium adpulsō, cūius rei summam facultātem habēbant, sua dēportābant omnia **15** sēque in proxima oppida recipiēbant; ibi sē rūsus isdem opportunitātibus loci dēfendēbant. Haec eō facilius māgnam partem aestātis faciēbant, quod nostrae nāvēs tempestātibus dētīnēbantur summaque erat vāstō atque apertō marī, māgnīs aestibus, rārīs āc **20** prope nullīs portibus difficultās nāvīgandī.

Comparison of their ships with Caesar's.

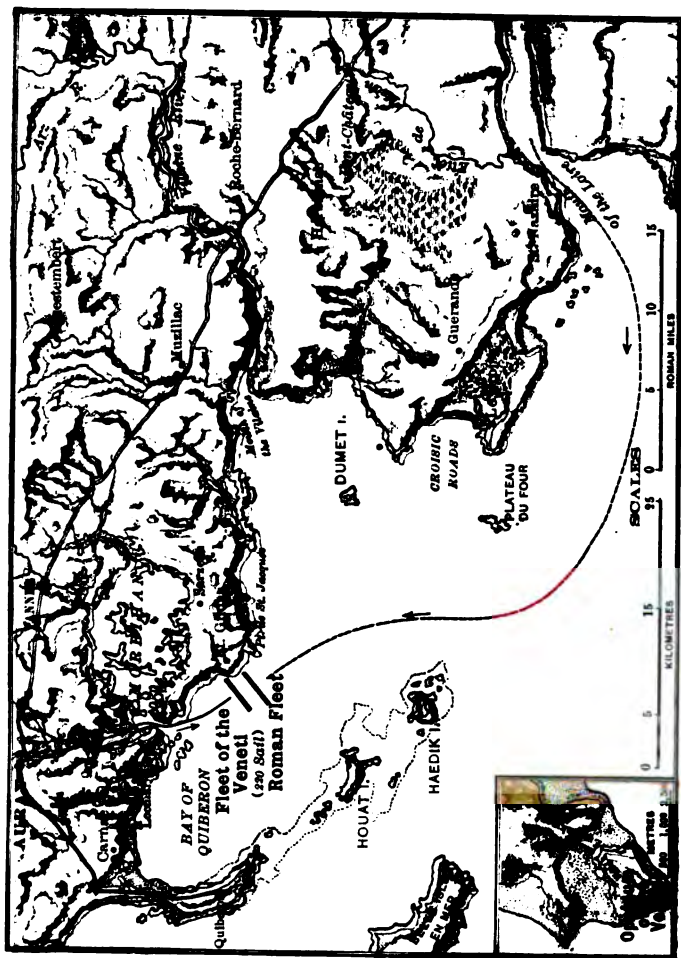
Namque ipsōrum nāvēs ad hunc modum factae **13** armataeque erant: carīnae aliquantō plāniōres quam nostrārū nāvium, quō facilius vada āc dēcēssum aestūs excipere possent; prōrae admodum ērectae **25** atque item puppēs ad māgnitūdinem fluctuum tempestātumque accommodatae; nāvēs tōtae factae ex rōbore ad quamvis vim et contumēliam perferendam; trānstra ex pedālibus in altitūdinem trabibus cōfixa

clāvīs ferreīs digītī pollicis crassitūdine; ancorae prō
fūnibus ferreīs catēnīs revinctae; pellēs prō vēlis alūtae-
que tenuiter cōfectae, [hae] sive proptēr inopiam lini
atque ēius ūsūs īnscientiam sive eō, quod est magis vēri
5 simile, quod tantās tempestātēs Ōceanī tantōsque im-
petūs ventōrum sustinērī ac tanta onera nāvium regī
vēlis nōn satis commodē posse arbitrābantur.

Cūm hīs nāvibus nostrae clāssī ēius modī congres-
sus erat ut ūnā celeritāte et pulsū rēmōrum praestāret;
10 reliqua prō locī nātūrā, prō vī tempestātum, illis essent
aptiōra et accommodātiōra. Neque enim eīs nostrae
rōstrō nocēre poterant, — tanta in eīs erat firmitūdo,
— neque propter altitūdinem facile tēlum adigēbātur
et eādem dē causā minus commodē cōpulīs continē-
15 bantur. Accēdēbat ut, cum saevīre ventus coepisset et
sē ventō dedissent, et tempestātem ferrēt facilius et in
vadis cōsisterent tūtius et ab aestū rēlictāe nihil saxa
et eādem dē causā minus commodē cōpulīs continē-
bus cāsus erat extimēscendus.

The first naval battle on the Atlantic.

14 Complūribus expūgnātis oppidīs Caesar, ubi intel-
lēxit frūstrā tantum labōrem sūmī, neque hostium
fugam captīs oppidīs reprimī neque eīs nocērī posse,
statuit exspectandam classem. Quae ubi convēnit ac
prīmum ab hostibus vīsa est, circiter ccxx nāvēs eōrum
25 parātissimae atque omnī genere armōrum ōrnatissimae
profectae ex portū nostris adversae cōstitērunt; ne-
que satis Brūtō, quī classī praeerat, vel tribūnīs mili-
tum centuriōnibusque, quibus singulae nāvēs erant
attribūtae, cōnstābat, quid agerent aut quam ratiōnem
30 pūgnae īnsisterent. Rōstrō enim nocērī nōn posse



CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE VENETI, B. C. 56.

cōgnōverant; turribus autem excitātis tamen hās altitūdō puppiū ex barbarīs nāvibus superābat; ut neque ex inferiōre locō satis commodē tēla adigī possent et missa ā Gallis gravius acciderent.

Ūna erat māgnō ūsui rēs praeparāta ā nostrīs, falcēs 5 praeacūtāe insertae adfixaeque longuriis, nōn absimili formā mūrāliū falcium. Hīs cum fūnēs quī antemnās ad mālōs dēstinābant comprehēnsi adductique erant, nāvigio rēmīs incitātō praerumpēbantur. Quibus abscīs antemnae necessariō concidēbant; ut, cum 10 omnis Gallicis nāvibus spēs in vēlis armāmentisque cōsisteret, hīs ēreptīs omnis ūsus nāvium ūnō tempore ēriperētur. Reliquum erat certāmen positum in virtūte, quā nostrī militēs facile superābant atque eō magis, quod in cōspectū Caesaris atque omnis exercitūs 15 rēs gerēbātur, ut nūllum paulō fortius factum latere posset; omnēs enim collēs ac loca superiōra, unde erat propinquus dēspectus in mare, ab exercitū tenēbantur.

The Veneti are beaten, and lose most of their ships.

Dēiectīs, ut diximus, antemnīs, cum singulās binae 15 ac ternae nāvēs circumsteterant, militēs summā vī 20 transcendere in hostium nāvēs contendēbant. Quod postquam barbarī fieri animadvertērunt, expūgnātis complūribus nāvibus, cum eī rei nūllum reperirētur auxilium, fugā salutem petere contendērunt. Ac iam conversīs in eam partem nāvibus quō ventus ferēbat, 25 tanta subitō malacia ac tranquillitās exstitit, ut sē ex locō movēre nōn possent. Quae quidem rēs ad negotium cōficiendum māximē fuit opportūna; nam singulās nostrī cōnsectātī expūgnāvērunt, ut perpaucae ex omni numerō noctis interventū ad terram pervēnirent, 30

cum ab hōrā ferē IIII ūsque ad sōlis occāsum pūgnārētur.

Terrible punishment of the Veneti.

- 16 Quō proeliō bellum Venetōrum tōtīusque ōrae maritimae cōnfectum est. Nam cum omnis iuventūs,
 5 omnēs etiam graviōris aetātis, in quibus aliquid cōnsili aut dignitātis fuit, eō convēnerant, tum nāvium quod ubīque fuerat in ūnum locum coēgerant; quibus āmissis reliquī neque quō sē reciperent neque quem ad modum oppida dēfenderent habēbant. Itaque sē suaque
 10 omnia Caesarī dēdidērunt. In quōs eō gravius Caesar vindicandum statuit, quō diligentius in reliquum tempus ā barbaris iūs lēgātōrum cōservārētur. Itaque omnī senātū necātō reliquōs sub corōnā vēndidit.

Sabinus, going among the Venelli, at first avoids a battle.

- 17 Dum haec in Venetis geruntur, Q. Titūrius Sabīnus cum eis cōpiīs quās ā Caesare accēperat, in finēs Venellōrum pervēnit. His praeerat Viridovīx ac summam imperī tenēbat eārum omnium cīvitatū quae dēfēceraut, ex quibus exercitum māgnāsque cōpiās coēgerat; atque hīs paucis diēbus Aulerci Eburovīcēs
 20 Lexovīique senātū suō interfectō, quod auctōrēs bellī esse nōlēbant, portās clausērunt sēque cum Viridovice coniunxērunt; māgnaque praetereā multitudō undique ex Galliā perditōrum hominum latrōnumque convēnerat, et quōs spēs praedandī studiumque bellandī ab agrī
 25 cultūrā et cotidiānō labōre sēvocābat.

Sabinus idōneō omnibus rēbus locō castris sēsē tenēbat, cum Viridovīx contrā eum duōrum milium spatiō cōnsēdisset cotidiēque prōductis cōpiīs pūgnandī potestātem faceret, ut iam nōn solum hostibus in con-

temptiōnem Sabīnus venīret, sed etiam nostrōrum militum vōcibus nōn nihil carperētur; tantamque opīniōnem timōris prae-buit, ut iam ad vāllum castrōrum hostēs accēdere audērent. Id eā dē causā faciēbat, quod cum tantā multitudīne hostium, praesertim eō absente 5 quī summam imperī tenēret, nisi aequō locō aut opportunitāte aliquā datā lēgātō dīmīcandum nōn ex-istimābat.

He induces Viridovix to attack him.

Hāc cōfirmatā opīniōne timōris idōneum quendam 18 hominem et callidum dēlēgit, Gallum, ex eīs quōs auxili 10 causā sēcum hābēbat. Huic māgnīs praemiīs pollicitātiōibusque persuādet utī ad hostēs trānseat et quid fierī velit ēdocet. Quī ubi prō perfugā ad eōs vēnit, timōrem Rōmānōrum prōpōnit; quibus angustīis ipse Caesar ā Venetīs premātur docet; neque longius abesse 15 quīn proximā nocte Sabīnus clam ex castrīs exercitum ēducāt et ad Caesarem auxili ferendī causā proficiscātur. Quod ubi auditum est, conclāmant omnēs occāsiōnem negōtī bene gerendī āmittendam nōn esse; ad castra īrī oportere. 20

Multae rēs ad hōc cōnsilium Gallōs hortābantur; superiōrum diērum Sabīnī cunctātiō, perfugae cōfirmātiō, inopia cibāriōrum, cui rei parum diligenter ab eīs erat prōvīsum, spēs Veneticī bellī, et quod ferē libenter hominēs id quod volunt crēdunt. Hīs rēbus 25 adductī nōn prius Viridovicem reliquōsque ducēs ex conciliō dīmīttunt, quam ab eīs sit concessum, arma utī capiant et ad castra contendant. Quā rē concessā laeti ut explōratā victōriā, sarmentīs virgultisque col-lectīs, quibus fossās Rōmānōrum compleant, ad castra 30 pergunt.

Sabinus wins a decisive victory.

19 Locus erat castrorum editus et paulatim ab imo
 acclivis circiter passus mille. Huc magno cursu con-
 tenderunt, ut quam minimum spatii ad se colligendos
 armandosque Romanis daretur, exanimatique per-
 5 venerunt. Sabinus suos hortatus cupientibus signum
 dat. Impeditis hostibus propter ea quae ferbant onera,
 subito duabus portis eruptionem fieri iubet. Factum
 est opportunitate loci, hostium inscientia ac defatiga-
 tione, virtute militum et superiorum pugnarum exer-
 10 citatione, ut ne primum quidem nostrorum impetum
 ferrent ac statim terga verterent. Quos integris viribus
 milites nostri consecuti magnum numerum eorum oc-
 cidērunt; reliquos equites consecuti paucos, qui ex
 fuga evaserant, reliquerunt.

15 Sic uno tempore et de navali pugna Sabinus et de
 Sabini victoria Caesar est certior factus; civitatesque
 omnes se statim Titurio dederunt. Nam ut ad bella
 suscipienda Gallorum alacer ac promptus est animus,
 sic mollis ac minime resistens ad calamitates ferendas
 20 mens eorum est.

Crassus goes to Aquitania. The Sotiates attack him.

20 Eodem fere tempore P. Crassus, cum in Aquitania
 pervenisset, quae [pars], ut ante dictum est, [et
 regionum latitudine et multitudine hominum] est tertia
 pars Galliae [aestimanda], cum intellexeret in eis locis
 25 sibi bellum gerendum, ubi paucis ante annis L. Valerius
 Praeconinus legatus exercitum pulso interfectus esset,
 atque unde L. Manlius praeconsul impedimentis amissis
 profugisset, non mediocrem sibi diligentiam adhiben-
 dam intellegebat. Itaque rem frumentaria provisa,

auxiliis equitātūque comparātō, multis praetereā viris fortibus Tolōsā et Carcasōne et Narbōne, quae sunt civitatēs Galliae prōvinciae finitimae his regiōnibus, nōminatim ēvocātis, in Sōtiātium finēs exercitum intrōdūxit. Cūius adventū cōgnitō Sōtiātēs magnīs cōpiis 5 coāctis equitātūque, quō plūrimum valēbant, in itinere agmen nostrum adortī primum equestre proelium commīsērunt; deinde equitātū suō pulsō atque īnsequentibus nostris subitō pedestrēs cōpiās, quās in convalle in insidiis conlocāverant, ostendērunt. Hī nostrōs disiectōs adortī proelium renovārunt. 10

But they are defeated and surrender.

Pūgnātum est diū atque ācriter, cum Sōtiātēs superioribus victōriis frētī in suā virtūte tōtius Aquitāniae salutem positam putārent; nostrī autem quid sine imperātore et sine reliquis legiōnibus adulēscutulō duce 15 efficere possent perspicī cuperent; tandem cōfecti vulneribus hostēs terga vertērunt. Quōrum magnō numerō interfectō Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sōtiātium oppūgnāre coepit. Quibus fortiter resistentibus vineās turrēsque ēgit. Illī, aliās ēruptiōne temptātā, aliās 20 cuniculis ad aggerem vineāsque āctis,—cūius rei sunt longē peritissimī Aquitāni, proptereā quod multis locis apud eōs aerariae sectūraeque sunt,—ubi dīligentiā nostrōrum nihil his rēbus prōfici posse intellēxērunt, lēgātōs ad Crassum mittunt, sēque in dēditionem ut 25 recipiat, petunt. Quā rē impetrātā, arma trādere iūssi, faciunt.

The Soldurii, or Comrades.

Atque in eam rem omnium nostrōrum intentis animis, aliā ex parte oppidī Adiatunnus, quī summam im-

perī tenēbat, cum de dēvōtīs, quōs illi solduriōs appellānt, quōrum haec est condiciō, ut omnibus in vitā commodis unā cum eis fruantur, quōrum sē amicitiae dēdiderint; sī quid hīs per vim accidat, aut eundem
 5 cāsum unā ferant aut sibi mortem cōnscīcant; neque adhūc hominum memoriā repertus est quisquam quī, eō interfectō, cūius sē amicitiae dēvōvisset, mortem recūsāret,—cum hīs Adiatunnus ēruptiōnem facere cōnātus, clāmōre ab eā parte mūnitiōnis sublātō, cum
 10 ad arma milites concurrissent vehementerque ibi pūgnātum esset, repulsus in oppidum tamen, utī eādem dēditiōnis condiciōne ūteretur, ā Crassō impetrāvit.

Crassus decides to fight with other Aquilanian tribes.

23 Armīs obsidibusque acceptīs Crassus in finēs Vocātium et Tarusātium profectus est. Tum vērō barbari
 15 commōtī, quod oppidum et nātūrā locī et manū mūnītum paucīs diēbus quibus eō ventum erat expūgnātum cōgnōverant, lēgātōs quōque versus dimittere, coniūrāre, obsidēs inter sē dare, cōpiās parāre coepērunt. Mittuntur etiam ad eās civitatēs lēgātī quae
 20 sunt citeriōris Hispāniae finitimae Aquitāniae; inde auxilia ducēsque arcessuntur; quōrum adventū māgnā cum auctōritāte et māgnā [cum] hominum multitudīne bellum gerere cōnantur. Ducēs vērō ei dēliguntur
 25 quī unā cum Q. Sertōriō omnēs annōs fuerant summamque scientiam rei militāris habere exīstimābantur. Hī cōsuētūdine populī Rōmānī loca capere, castra mūnīre, commeātibus nostrōs interclūdere instituunt.

Quod ubi Crassus animadvertit, suās cōpiās propter
 30 exiguitātem nōn facile dīdūcī, hostem et vagārī et viās

obsidēre et castris satis praesidi relinquare, ob eam causam minus commodē frumentum commeātumque sibi supportārī, in diēs hostium numerum augērī, nōn cunctandum existimāvit, quā pūgnā dēcertāret. Hāc rē ad cōsiliū dēlātā, ubi omnēs idem sentīre intel- 5
lēxit, posterum diem pūgnae cōstituit.

As the enemy remain in their camp, Crassus attacks them there.

Primā lūce prōductis omnibus cōpiis duplici aciē 24
institūtā, auxiliis in mediam aciem coniectis, quid hostēs cōsili caperent exspectābat. Illi, etsi propter multitudinem et veterem bellī glōriam paucitatemque 10
nostrōrum sē tūtō dīmicātūrōs existimābant, tamen tūtius esse arbitrābantur obsessis viis, commeātū interclūsō, sine vulnere victōriā potīri; et, si propter inopiam rei frumentariae Rōmānī sēsē recipere coepissent, im-
peditōs in agmine et sub sarcinis infirmiorēs animō 15
adorīri cōgitābant. Hōc cōsiliō probātō ab ducibus prōductis Rōmānōrum cōpiis sēsē castris tenēbant. Hāc rē perspectā Crassus, cum suā cunctatiōne atque
opiniōne timōris hostēs nostrōs mīlitēs alacriorēs ad
pūgnandum effēcissent, atque omnium vōcēs audīren- 20
tur exspectārī diūtius nōn oportēre quā ad castra irētur, cohortātus suōs omnibus cupientibus ad hostium castra contendit.

They resist successfully at first.

Ibi cum aliī fossās complērent, aliī multis tēlis co- 25
niectis dēfēnsōrēs vāllō mūnitiōnibusque dēpellerent, 25
auxiliārēsque, quibus ad pūgnam nōn multum Crassus cōnfīdebat, lapidibus tēlisque subministrandis et ad aggerem caespitibus comportandis speciem atque opī-

nōnem pūgnantium praebērent; cum item ab hostibus cōstanter ac nōn timidē pūgnārētur tēlaque ex locō superiōre missa nōn frūstrā acciderent, equitēs circumi-
tis hostium castris Crassō renūntiāvērunt nōn eādem
5 esse dīligentiā ab decumānā portā castra mūnīta fa-
cilemque aditum habēre.

But are at last forced to flee from their camp.

26 Crassus equitum praefectōs cohortātus ut māgnis
praemiis pollicitātiōnibusque suōs excitārent, quid fieri
vellet ostendit. Illi, ut erat imperātum, dēvectis eis
10 cohortibus, quae praesidiō castris relictæ intritæ ab
labōre erant, et longiōre itinere circumductis, nē ex
hostium castris cōspici possent, omnium oculis menti-
busque ad pūgnam intentis, celeriter ad eas quās dixi-
mus mūnitiōnēs pervēnērunt atque hīs prōrutis prius
15 in hostium castris cōstitērunt quam plānē ab hīs vidērī,
aut quid rei gererētur cōgnōscī posset. Tum vērō clā-
mōre ab eā parte auditō nostrī redintegrātis viribus,
quod plērumque in spē victōriæ accidere cōsuēvit,
ācrius impūgnāre coepērunt. Hostēs undique circum-
20 ventī dēspērātis omnibus rēbus, sē per mūnitiōnēs dēi-
cere et fugā salutem petere contendērunt. Quōs equi-
tātus apertissimis campis cōsectātus, ex milium L
numerō, quae ex Aquitāniā Cantabrisque convēnisse
cōstābat, vix quartā parte relictā, multā nocte sē in
25 castra recēpit.

Submission of most of the Aquitani.

27 Hāc auditā pūgnā māxima pars Aquitāniæ sēsē
Crassō dēdidit obsidēsque ultrō mīsit; quō in numerō
fuērunt Tarbellī, Bigerriōnes, Ptiāniī, Vocātēs, Taru-
sātēs, Elusātēs, Gatēs, Auscī, Garumnī, Sibusātēs Co-

cosātēs; paucae ultimae nātiōnēs annī tempore cōnfisae, quod hiems suberat, id facere neglēxērunt.

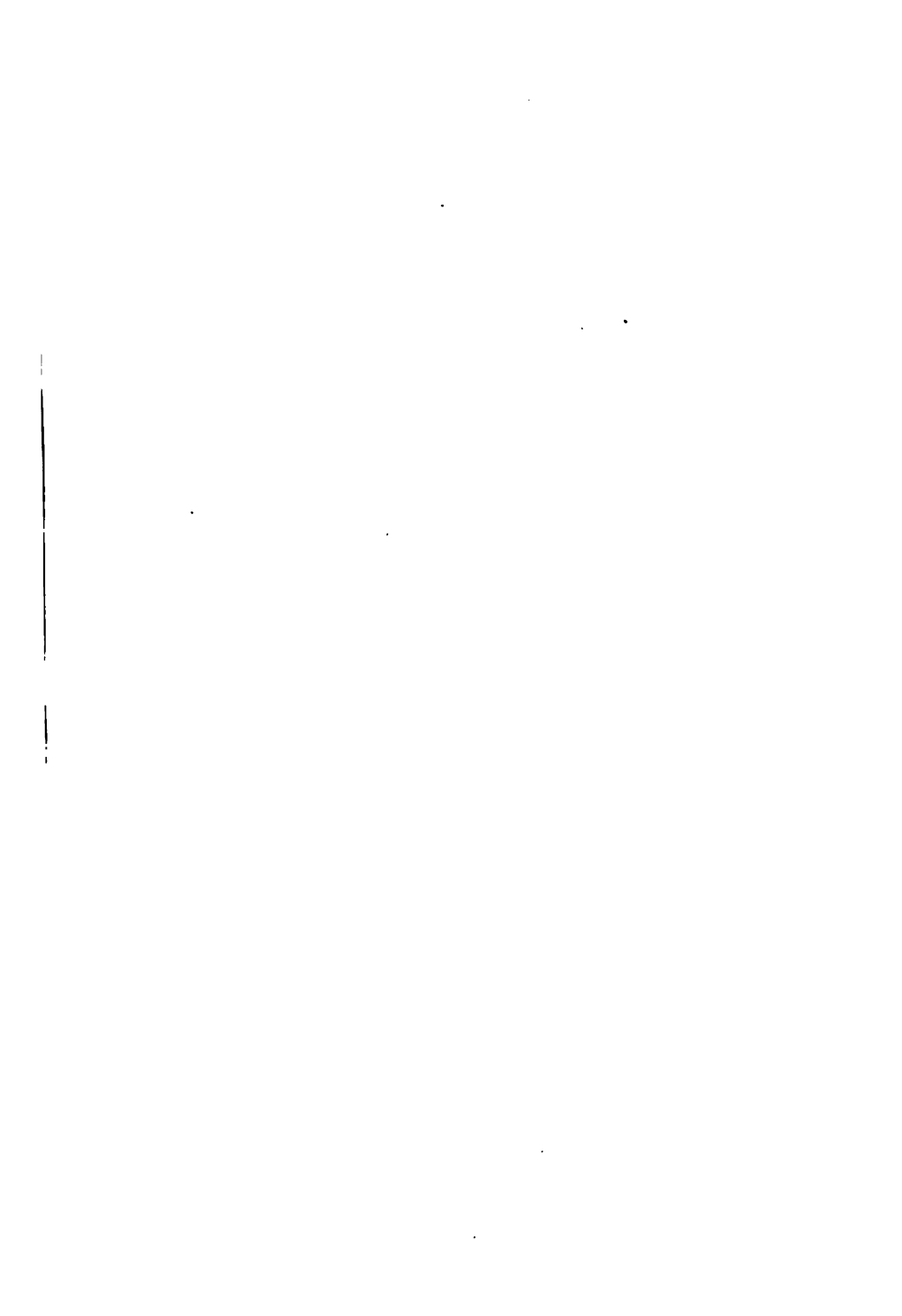
Caesar invades the territories of the Morini and Menapii. They retire into marshes and forests.

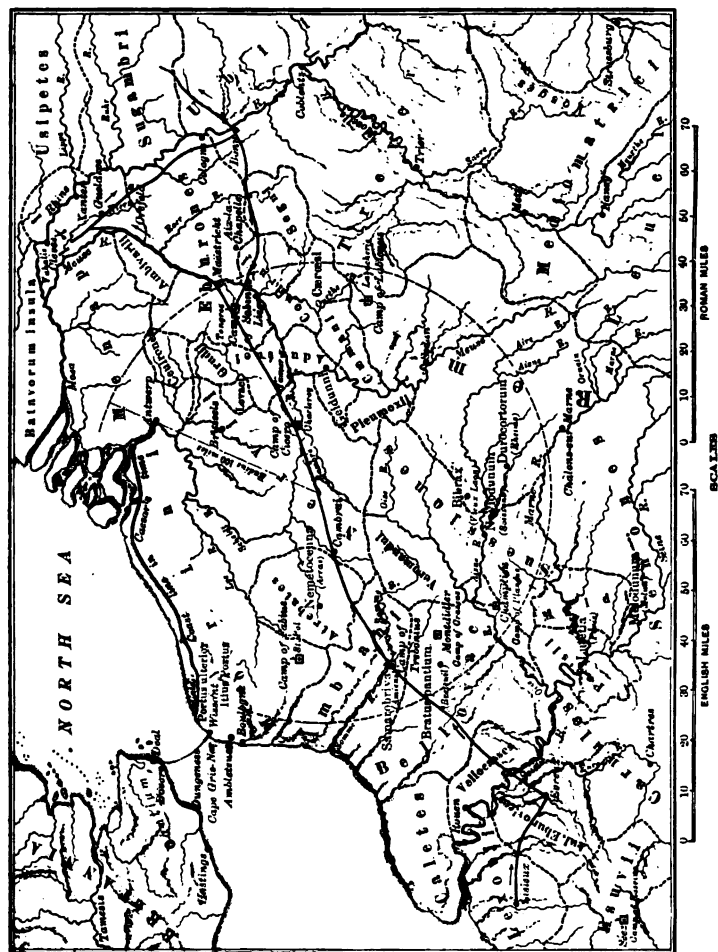
Eōdem ferē tempore Caesar, etsi prope exācta iam **28**
aestās erat, tamen quod omni Galliā pācātā Morinī Menapiūque supererant quī in armīs essent neque ad eum **5**
umquam lēgātōs dē pāce mīsissent, arbitrātus id bellum celeriter cōnficī posse, eō exercitum dūxit; quī longē aliā ratiōne ac reliquī Gallī bellum gerere coepērunt. Nam quod intellegēbant māximās nātiōnēs, quae proeliō contendissent, pulsās superātāsque esse, conti- **10**
nentēsque silvās ac palūdēs habēbant, eō sē suaque omnia contulērunt. Ad quārum initium silvārum cum Caesar pervēnisset castraque mūnīre instituisset, neque hostis interim vīsus esset, dispersis in opere nostris, subitō ex omnibus partibus silvae ēvolāvērunt et in **15**
nostrōs impetum fēcērunt. Nostrī celeriter arma cēpērunt eōsque in silvās repulērunt et complūribus interfectis longius impeditiōribus locis secūtī paucōs ex suis dēperdidērunt.

After laying waste their country, he goes into winter quarters.

Reliquīs deinceps diēbus Caesar silvās caedere in- **29**
stituit et, nē quis inermibus imprudentibusque militibus ab latere impetus fierī posset, omnem eam mātēriam quae erat caesa conversam ad hostem conlocābat et prō vāllō ad utrumque latus exstruēbat. Incrēdibilī celeritāte māgnō spatiō paucis diēbus cōnfectō, cum iam **25**
pecus atque extrēma impedimenta ā nostris tenērentur,

ipsi dēnsiōrēs silvās peterent, ēius modī sunt tempes-
tātēs cōsecūtae utī opus necēssariō intermitterētur et
continuātiōne imbrum diūtius sub pellibus milītēs con-
tinēri nōn possent. Itaque vāstātis omnibus eōrum
s agrīs, vicīs aedificiisque, incēnsis, Caesar exercitum re-
dūxit et in Aulercīs Lexoviisque, reliquīs item cīvitatī-
bus, quae proximē bellum fēcerant, in hibernīs con-
locāvit.





CAMPAIGNS OF 55 AND 54 B. C.

LIBER QUARTUS.

WAR AGAINST THE GERMANS.—FIRST INVASION OF
BRITAIN, B. C. 55.

The Usipetes and Tencteri cross the Rhine. The Suebi.

Eā quae secūta est hieme, quī fuit annus Cn. Pom- **I**
pēiō M. Crassō cōsulibus, Usipetēs Germānī et item
Tencterī māgnā [cum] multitudine hominum flūmen
Rhēnum trānsiērunt, nōn longē ā marī, quō Rhēnus
influit. Causa trānseundī fuit quod ab Suēbīs com- **5**
plūrēs annōs exagitātī bellō premēbantur et agrī cul-
tūrā prohibēbantur.

Suēbōrum gēns est longē māxima et bellicōsissima
Germānōrum omnium. Hī centum pāgōs habēre dī-
cuntur, ex quibus quotannis singula mīlia armātōrum **10**
bellandī causā ex finibus ēdūcunt. Reliquī, quī domī
mānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt; hī rūsus in vicem
annō post in armīs sunt, illī domī remanent. Sīc neque
agrī cultūra nec ratiō atque ūsus belli intermittitur.
Sed prīvātī āc sēparātī agrī apud eōs nihil est, neque **15**
longius annō remanēre ūnō in locō colendī causā licet.
Neque multum frūmentō, sed māximam partem lacte
atque pecore vīvunt, multumque sunt in vēnātiōnibus;
quae rēs et cibī genere et cotidiānā exercitātiōne et
libertāte vitāe, quod ā puerīs nūllō officiō aut disci- **20**
plinā adsuēfactī nihil omnīnō contrā voluntātem faci-

unt, et vīrēs alit et immānī corporum māgnitūdine hominēs efficit. Atque in eam sē cōnsuētūdinem addūxērunt ut locīs frigidissimīs neque vestitūs praeter pellēs habērent quicquam, quārum propter exiguitātem
5 māgna est corporis pars aperta, et lavārentur in flūminibus.

They have little intercourse with foreigners. Their cavalry.

2 Mercātōribus est aditus magis eō, ut quae bellō cēperint quibus vēndant habeant, quam quō ūllam rem ad sē importārī dēsiderent. Quīn etiam iūmentis, qui-
10 bus māximē Gallī dēlectantur quaeque impēnsō parant pretiō, [Germānī] importātis nōn ūtuntur; sed quae sunt apud eōs nāta, parva atque dēformia, haec cotīdiānā exercitātiōne summī ut sint labōris efficiunt. Equestribus proeliīs saepe ex equīs dēsiliunt ac pedibus
15 proeliantur, equōsque eōdem remanēre vestigiō ad- suēfēcērunt, ad quōs sē celeriter, cum ūsus est, recipi- unt; neque eōrum mōribus turpius quicquam aut in- ertius habētur quam ephippiīs ūtī. Itaque ad quemvis numerum ephippiātōrum equitum quamvis paucī adire
20 audent. Vīnum omnīnō ad sē importārī non patiuntur, quod eā rē ad labōrem ferendum remollēscere hominēs atque effēmīnārī arbitrantur.

The Ubii. Their tributaries.

3 Pūblicē māximam putant esse laudem quam lātis- simē ā suis finibus vacāre agrōs: hāc rē significārī mā-
25 gnum numerum cīvītātum suam vim sustinēre nōn posse. Itaque ūnā ex parte ā Suēbīs circiter mīlia pas- suum c agrī vacāre dicuntur. Ad alteram partem succē- dunt Ubīi, quōrum fuit cīvītās ampla atque flōrēns, ut est captus Germānōrum; eī paulō, quamquam sunt eius-

dem generis, sunt cēteris hūmāniōrēs, proptereā quod Rhēnum attingunt, multumque ad eōs mercātōrēs ventitant, et ipsī propter propinquitatem Gallicis sunt mōribus adsuēfactī. Hōs cum Suēbī multis saepe bellis expertī propter amplitūdinem gravitātemque cīvītātis 5 finibus expellere nōn potuissent, tamen vectigālēs sibi fēcērunt ac multō humiliōrēs infirmiōrēsq̃ue redēgērunt.

The Germans conquer the Menapii.

In eādē causā fuērunt Usipetēs et Tencterī, quōs 4 suprà diximus; quī complūrēs annōs Suēbōrum vim 10 sustinuērunt; ad extrēmum tamen agrīs expulsī et multis locīs Germāniae triennium vagātī ad Rhēnum pervēnērunt, quās regiōnēs Menapii incolēbant. Hi ad utramque rīpam flūminis agrōs, aedificia vicōsque habēbant; sed tantae multitudinis adventū perterriti ex 15 eis aedificiis, quae trāns flūmen habuerant, dēmigrāverant et cis Rhēnum dispositis praesidiis Germānōs trānsire prohibēbant.

Illī omnia expertī, cum neque vī contendere propter inopiam nāvium neque clam trānsire propter cūstōdiās 20 Menapiōrum possent, revertī sē in suās sēdēs regiōnēsq̃ue simulāvērunt et tridui viam prōgressī rūsus revertērunt atque, omnī hōc itinere unā nocte equitātū cōnfectō, insciōs inopinantēsq̃ue Menapiōs oppressērunt, quī dē Germānōrum discessū per explōrātōrēs certiōrēs 25 facti sine metū trāns Rhēnum in suōs vicōs remigrāverant. His interfectis nāvibusque eōrum occupātis, priusquam ea pars Menapiōrum, quae citrā Rhēnum erat, certior fieret, flūmen trānsiērunt atque, omnibus eōrum aedificiis occupātis, reliquam partem hiemis sē 30 eōrum cōpiis aluērunt.

The fickleness of the Gauls.

5 His dē rēbus Caesar certior factus et infirmitātem
 Gallōrum veritus, quod sunt in cōsiliis capiendis mō-
 bilēs et novīs plērumque rēbus student, nihil his com-
 mittendum existimāvit. Est enim hōc Gallicae cōn-
 5 suētūdinis, utī et viātōrēs etiam invitōs cōsistere
 cōgant, et, quid quisque eōrum dē quāque rē audierit
 aut cōgnōverit, quaerant; et mercātōrēs in oppidis vul-
 gus circumsistat, quibusque ex regiōnibus veniant
 quāsque ibi rēs cōgnōverint, prōnuntiāre cōgat. His
 10 rēbus atque auditiōnibus permōti dē summīs saepe
 rēbus cōsilia ineunt, quōrum eōs in vestigiō paenitere
 necesse est, cum incertis rūmōribus serviant et plērique
 ad voluntātem eōrum ficta respondeant.

Caesar decides to make war on the invaders.

6 Quā cōsuētūdine cōgnitā Caesar, nē graviōri bellō
 15 occurreret, mātūrius quam cōsuērat ad exercitum pro-
 ficiscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, ea, quae fore suspicātus
 erat, facta cōgnōvit: missās lēgātiōnēs ab nōn nullīs
 cīvitatibus ad Germānōs invitātōsque eōs utī ab Rhēnō
 discēderent; omnia [que] quae postulāssent ab sē fore
 20 parāta. Quā spē adductī Germānī lātius iam vagāban-
 tur et in finēs Eburōnum et Condrūsōrum, quī sunt
 Trēverōrum clientēs, pervēnerant. Principibus Galliae
 ēvocātis Caesar ea quae cōgnōverat dissimulanda sibi
 existimāvit, eōrumque animīs permulsīs et cōfirmātis
 25 equitātūque imperātō bellum cum Germānīs gerere
 cōstituit.

Defiant message of the Germans.

7 Rē frūmentāriā comparātā equitibusque dēlectīs,
 iter in ea loca facere coepit, quibus in locis esse Ger-

mānōs audiēbat. Ā quibus cum paucōrum diērum iter abesset, lēgātī ab eīs vērunt, quōrum haec fuit ōrātiō: Germānōs neque priōrēs populō Rōmānō bellum inferre neque tamen recūsāre, sī lacessantur, quā armīs contendant, quod Germānōrum cōnsuetūdō [haec] sit 5 ā māiōribus trādita, quicumque bellum inferant, resistere neque dēprecārī. Haec tamen dicere: vērunt, sī suam grātiā Rōmānī velint, posse eīs ūtilēs esse amīcōs; vel sibi agrōs attribuant vel patiantur eōs tenēre quōs armīs possēderint; sēsē 10 ūnīs Suēbīs concēdere, quibus nē diī quidem immortālēs parēs esse possint; reliquum quidem in terris esse nēmīnem quem nōn superāre possint,

He commands them to leave Gaul.

Ad haec Caesar quae vīsum est respondit; sed exi- 8 tus fuit ōrātiōnis: Sibi nūllam cum eīs amīcitiā esse 15 posse, sī in Galliā remanērent; neque vērunt, quī suōs finēs tuērī nōn potuerint, aliēnōs occupāre; neque ūllōs in Galliā vacāre agrōs quī darī tantae praesertim multītūdīnī sine iniūriā possint; sed licēre, sī velint, in Ubiōrum finibus considere, quōrum sint lēgātī apud 20 sē et dē Suēbōrum iniūriis querantur et ā sē auxilium petant; hōc sē Ubiīs imperātūrum.

They delay.

Lēgātī haec sē ad suōs relātūrōs dixerunt et rē dē- 9 liberātā post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversūrōs; intēreā nē propius sē castra movēret petiērunt. Nē id 25 quidem Caesar ab sē impetrārī posse dīxit. Cōgnōverat enim māgnam partem equitātūs ab eīs aliquot diēbus ante praedandī frūmentandique causā ad Ambivaritōs

trāns Mosam missam; hōs exspectārī equitēs atque ēius
rei causā moram interpōnī arbitrābātur.

The Meuse and the Rhine.

- 10 Mosa prōfluit ex monte Vosegō, quī est in finibus
Lingonum, et parte quādam ex Rhēnō receptā, quae
5 appellātur Vacalus, insulam efficit Batavōrum neque
longius inde milibus passuum LXXX in Ōceanum in-
fluit. Rhēnus autem oritur ex Lepontiis, quī Alpēs
incolunt, et longō spatiō per finēs Nantuātium, Hel-
vētiōrum, Sēquanōrum, Mediomatricum, Tribocōrum,
10 Trēverōrum citātus fertur; et ubi Ōceanō adpropin-
quāvit, in plūrēs diffluit partēs multīs ingentibusque
insulis effectis, quārum pars māgna ā feris barbarisque
nātiōnibus incolitur, — ex quibus sunt quī piscibus
atque ōvīs avium vīvere exīstimantur, — multisque
15 capitibus in Ōceanum influit.

*Advance of Caesar. Parleys with the enemy, who try to
gain time.*

- 11 Caesar cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum XII mili-
bus abesset, ut erat cōstitutum, ad eum lēgātī rever-
tuntur; quī in itinere congressī māgnopere nē longius
prōgrediretur, ōrābant. Cū id nōn impetrāssent,
20 petēbant, utī ad eōs equitēs quī agmen antecessissent
praemitteret, eōsque pūgnā prohiberet, sibi ut po-
testātem faceret in Ubiōs lēgātōs mittendī; quōrum sī
principēs ac senātus sibi iūre iūrāndō fidem fēcisset, eā
condiciōne quae ā Caesare ferrētur sē ūsūrōs ostendē-
25 bant: ad hās rēs cōficiendās sibi trīduī spatium daret.

Haec omnia Caesar eōdem illō pertinēre arbitrābā-
tur, ut trīduī morā interpositā equitēs eōrum, quī abes-
sent, reverterentur; tamen sēsē nōn longius milibus

passuum IIII aquatiōnis causā prōcessūrum eō diē dixit; hūc posterō diē quam frequentissimī convenirent, ut dē eōrum postulātis cōgnōsceret. Interim ad prae-
fectōs, quī cum omnī equitātū antecesserant, mittit quī
nūntiārent nē hostēs proeliō lacesserent; et sī ipsī laces-
serentur, sustinērent quoad ipse cum exercitū propius
accessisset.

*Roman cavalry treacherously attacked and routed by
the Germans.*

At hostēs, ubi primum nostrōs equitēs cōspexē-
runt, quōrum erat v milium numerus, cum ipsī nōn
amplius DCCC equitēs habērent, quod eī, quī frūmen-
tandī causā ierant trāns Mosam, nōndum redierant,
nihil timentibus nostrīs, quod lēgātī eōrum paulō ante
ā Caesare discesserant atque is diēs indūtiīs erat ab hīs
petitus, impetū factō celeriter nostrōs perturbāvērunt;
rūrsus hīs resistantibus cōsuētūdine suā ad pedēs dē-
siluērunt, subfossisque equīs complūribusque nostrīs
dēiectis, reliquōs in fugam coniēcērunt atque ita per-
territōs ēgērunt, ut nōn prius fugā dēsisterent, quam
in cōspectum agminis nostrī vērissent.

In eō proeliō ex equitibus nostrīs interficiuntur IIII
et LXX, in hīs vir fortissimus, Pisō Aquitānus, amplis-
simō genere nātus, cuius avus in civitāte suā rēgnum
obtinuerat amicus ā senātū nostrō appellātus. Hīc cum
frātrī interclūsō ab hostibus auxilium ferret, illum ex
periculō ēripuit, ipse equō vulnerātō dēiectus, quoad
potuit, fortissimē restitit; cum circumventus multīs
vulneribus acceptis cecidisset, atque id frāter, quī iam
proeliō excesserat, procul animadvertisset, incitātō
equō sē hostibus obtulit atque interfectus est.

When envoys come with an apology, Caesar detains them.

13 Hōc factō proeliō Caesar neque iam sibi lēgātōs
audiendōs neque condiōnēs accipiendās arbitrābātur
ab eis, quī per dolum atque insidiās petītā pāce ultrō
bellum intulissent; exspectāre vērō, dum hostium cō-
5 piae augērentur equitātusque reverterētur, summae
dēmentiae esse iudicābat; et cōgnitā Gallōrum infirmi-
tāte, quantum iam apud eōs hostēs ūnō proeliō auctō-
ritātis essent cōsecūtī sentiēbat; quibus ad cōsilia
capienda nihil spatī dandum existimābat.

10 Hīs cōstitutīs rēbus et cōsiliō cum lēgātīs et
quaestōre commūnicātō, nē quem diem pūgnae prae-
termitteret, opportunissima rēs accidit, quod postridiē
ēius diēi māne eādem et simulatiōne et perfidiā ūsī
Germānī frequentēs omnibus principibus māiōribusque
15 nātū adhibītīs, ad eum in castra vēnērunt; simul, ut di-
cēbātur, pūrgandī suī causā, quod contrā atque esset
dictum et ipsī petissent, proelium prīdiē commīsissent;
simul ut, sī quid possent, dē indūtiīs fallendō impetrā-
rent. Quōs sibi Caesar oblātōs gāvisus illōs retinērī
20 iussit; ipse omnēs cōpiās castrīs ēdūxit equitātumque,
quod recentī proeliō perterritum esse existimābat,
agmen subsequī iussit.

And surprises the German camp.

14 Aciē triplici īstitutā et celeriter VIII milium itinere
cōfectō, prius ad hostium castra pervēnit quam, quid
25 agerētur, Germānī sentire possent. Quī omnibus rēbus
subitō perterritī, et celeritāte adventūs nostrī et dis-
cessū suōrum, neque cōsiliī habendī neque arma capi-
endī spatiō datō perturbantur, cōpiāsne adversus hos-
tem dūcere an castra dēfendere an fugā salutem petere.

praestāret. Quōrum timor cum fremitū et concursū significārētur, milītēs nostrī prīstinī diēi perfidiā incitāti in castra inrūpērunt. Quō locō quī celeriter arma capere potuērunt, paulisper nostrīs restitērunt atque inter carrōs impedimentaue proelium commīsērunt; 5 at reliqua multitudō puerōrum mulierumque — nam cum omnibus suis domō excesserant Rhēnumque trānsierant — passim fugere coepit; ad quōs cōsectandōs Caesar equitātum mīsīt.

Defeat of the Germans, with great loss. Many are drowned.

Germānī, post tergum clāmōre auditō, cum suōs 15 interficī vidērent, armīs abiectīs signisque militāribus relictīs sē ex castrīs eiēcērunt, et cum ad cōfluentem Mosae et Rhēnī pervēnissent, reliquā fugā dēspērātā, māgnō numerō interfectō, reliquī sē in flūmen praecipitāvērunt, atque ibi timōre, lassitudīne, vī flūminis oppressi periērunt. Nostrī ad ūnum omnēs incolumēs, perpaucīs vulnerātīs, ex tantī bellī timōre, cum hostium numerus capitum ccccxxx milium fuisset, sē in castra recēpērunt. Caesar eīs quōs in castrīs retinuerat discēdendī potestātem fēcīt. Illī supplicia cruciātūsque 20 Gallōrum veritī, quōrum agrōs vexāverant, remanēre sē apud eum velle dixerunt. His Caesar libertātem concessit.

Why Caesar built a bridge and crossed the Rhine.

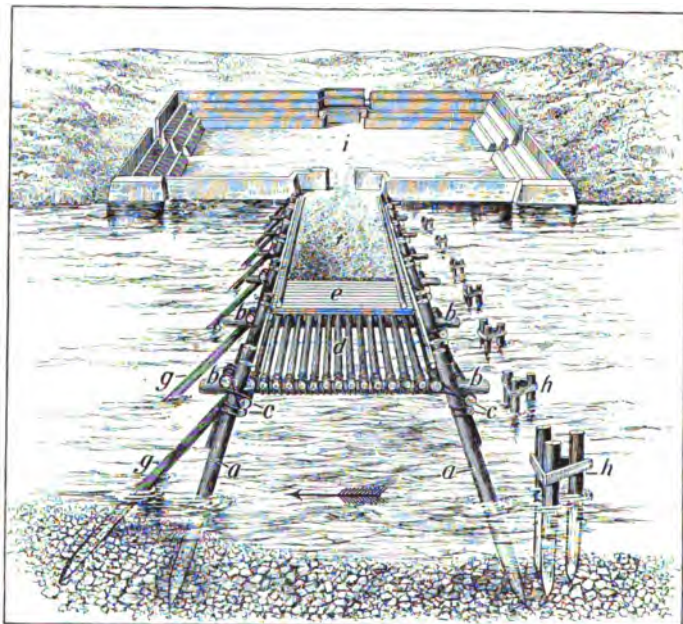
Germānicō bellō cōfectō multīs dē causīs Caesar 16 statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseundum; quārum illa 25 fuit iūstissima, quod, cum vidēret Germānōs tam facile impellī, ut in Galliam venīrent, suis quōque rēbus eōs timēre voluit, cum intellexerent et posse et audere populi Rōmānī exercitum Rhēnum trānsire. Accessit

etiam quod illa pars equitātūs Usipetum et Tencterō-
rum, quam suprā commemorāvī praedandī frūmen-
tandique causā Mosam trānsisse, neque proeliō inter-
fuisse, post fugam suōrum sē trāns Rhēnum in finēs
5 Sugambrōrum recēperat sēque cum hīs coniūnxerat.
Ad quōs cum Caesar nūntiōs mīsisset quī postulārent
eōs, quī sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent, sibi dēderent,
respondērunt: Populī Rōmānī imperium Rhēnum
finīre; sī sē invitō Germānōs in Galliam trānsīre nōn
10 aequum exīstimāret, cūr suī quicquam esse imperī aut
potestātis trāns Rhēnum postulāret?

Ubī autem, quī ūnī ex Trānsrhēnānīs ad Caesarem
lēgātōs mīserant, amīcitiā fēcērant, obsidēs dederant,
māgnopere ōrābant, ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod gravi-
15 ter ab Suēbīs premerentur; vel, sī id facere occupā-
tīōnibus reī publicae prohibērētur, exercitum modo
Rhēnum trānsportāret; id sibi ad auxilium spemque
reliqū temporis satis futūrum. Tantum esse nōmen
atque opīniōnem ēius exercitūs Ariovistō pulsō et hōc
20 novissimō proeliō factō etiam ad ultimās Germānōrum
nātiōnēs, utī opīniōne et amīcitiā populī Rōmānī tūtī
esse possent. Nāvium māgnam cōpiam ad trānspor-
tandum exercitum pollicēbantur.

The bridge described.

17 Caesar hīs dē causīs quās commemorāvī Rhēnum
25 trānsīre dēcrēverat; sed nāvibus trānsīre neque satis
tūtum esse arbitrābātur neque suae neque populī Rō-
mānī dignitātis esse statuēbat. Itaque, etsī summa
difficultās faciendī pontis prōpōnēbātur propter lāti-
tūdinem, rapiditātem altitudinemque flūminis, tamen
30 id sibi contendendum aut aliter nōn trādūcendum ex-
ercitum exīstimābat.



PONS A CAESARE IN RHENO FACTUS.

- a a*, tigna bina sesquipedalia.
b b, trabes bipedales.
c c, fibulae.
d, directa materia.
e, longurii.
f, crates.
g g, sublicae ad inferiorem partem fluminis pro ariete oblique actae.
h h, sublicae supra pontem immissae.
i, castellum ad caput pontis positum.

Ratiōnem pontis hanc instituit. Tigna bīna sēsquipēdālīa paulum ab imō praeacūta, dimēnsa ad altitudīnem flūminis intervāllō pedum duōrum inter sē iungēbat. Haec cum māchinātiōnibus immissa in flūmen dēfixerat festūcisque adēgerat, nōn sublicae modō dē- 5
rēctē ad perpendiculum, sed prōnē ac fastigātē, ut secundum nātūram flūminis prōcumberent, eīs item contrāria duō ad eundem modum iūcta intervāllō pedum quadrāgēnum ab inferiōre parte contrā vim atque impetum flūminis conversa statuēbat. Haec 10
utraq̃ue insuper bipedālībus trabibus immissīs, quantum eōrum tignōrum iūctūra distābat, bīnīs utrimque fibulīs ab extrēmā parte distinēbantur; quibus disclūsīs atque in contrāriam partem revinctīs, tanta erat operis firmitūdō atque ea rērum nātūra ut, quō māior vīs 15
aquae sē incitāvisset, hōc artius inligāta tenērentur. Haec dērēctā māteriā iniectā contexēbantur ac longuriīs crātibusque cōsternēbantur; ac nihilō sētius sublicae et ad inferiōrem partem flūminis oblīquē agēbantur, quae prō ariete subiectae et cum omnī opere 20
coniūctae vim flūminis exciperent; et aliae item suprā pontem mediocrī spatiō, ut, sī arborum truncī sive nāvēs dēiciendī operis causā essent ā barbarīs immissae, hīs dēfēnsōribus eārum rērum vīs minuerētur neu pontī nocērent.

25

Caesar crosses into Germany.

Diēbus x, quibus māteria coepta erat comportārī, 18
omni opere effectō exercitus trādūcitur. Caesar ad utramque partem pontis firmō praesidiō relictō in finēs Sugambrōrum contendit. Interim ā complūribus civitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt; quibus pācem atque 30
amicitiā petentibus liberālīter respondet obsidēsque

ad sē addūcī iubet. At Sugambri ex ēo tempore, quō
pōns institui coeptus est, fugā comparātā hortantibus
eīs quōs ex Tencteris atque Usipetibus apud sē habē-
bant, finibus suis excesserant suaque omnia exportāve-
5 rant sēque in sōlitudinē ac silvās abdiderant.

After eighteen days, he returns to Gaul without any fighting.

19 Caesar paucōs diēs in eōrum finibus morātus, om-
nibus vicīs aedificiisque incēnsis frūmentisque succīs,
sē in finēs Ubiōrum recēpit atque hīs auxilium suum
pollicitus, si ā Suēbīs premerentur, haec ab eīs cōgnō-
10 vit: Suēbōs, posteāquam per explōrātōrēs pontem fieri
comperissent, mōre suō conciliō habitō nūntiōs in
omnēs partēs dimisisse, utī dē oppidīs dēmigrārent,
liberōs, uxōrēs suaque omnia in silvīs dēpōnerent, atque
omnēs quī arma ferre possent ūnum in locum con-
15 venīrent. Hunc esse dēlēctum medium ferē regiōnum
eārum, quās Suēbī obtinērent; hīc Rōmānōrum ad-
ventum exspectāre atque ibīdem dēcertāre cōstituisse.

Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus eīs rēbus cōn-
fectīs, quārum rērum causā trādūcere exercitum cōn-
20 stituerat, ut Germānīs metum iniceret, ut Sugambros
ulciscerētur, ut Ubiōs obsidiōne liberāret, diēbus om-
nīnō XVIII trāns Rhēnum cōsūmptis, satis et ad lau-
dem et ad ūtilitatem prōfectum arbitrātus, sē in Gal-
liam recēpit pontemque rescidit.

He resolves to invade Britain.

20 Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā Caesar, etsi in hīs
locis, quod omnis Gallia ad septentrionēs vergit, mā-
tūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficisci con-
tendit; quod omnibus ferē Gallicis bellis hostibus nos-
tris inde subministrāta auxilia intellegēbat; et, si tem-

pus [annī] ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen mā-
gnō sibi ūsuī fore arbitrābātur, sī modo īnsulam adis-
set, genus hominum perspēxisset, loca, portūs, aditūs
cōgnōvisset; quae omnia ferē Gallīs erant incōgnita.
Neque enim temerē praeter mercātōrēs illō adit quis- 5
quam, neque hīs ipsis quicquam praeter ōram mariti-
mam atque eās regiōnēs quae sunt contrā Galliās nōtum
est. Itaque vocātīs ad sē undique mercātōribus, neque
quanta esset īnsulae māgnitūdō, neque quae aut quantae
nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum belli habērent 10
aut quibus īstitūtis ūterentur, neque quī essent ad
māiōrem nāvium multitūdinem idōneī portūs, reperīre
poterat.

Volusenus and Commius sent on reconnoitering expeditions.

Ad haec cōgnōscenda, priusquam perīculum faceret, 21
idōneum esse arbitrātus, C. Volusēnum cum nāvī longā 15
praemittit. Huic mandat ut explōrātis omnibus rēbus
ad sē quam primum revertātur. Ipse cum omnibus
cōpiīs in Morinōs proficiscitur, quod inde erat brevissi-
mus in Britanniam trāiectus. Hūc nāvēs undique ex
finitimis regiōnibus, et, quam superiōre aestāte ad Ve- 20
neticum bellum fēcerat classem, iubet convenīre.

Interim cōsiliō ēius cōgnitō et per mercātōrēs
perlātō ad Britannōs, ā complūribus īnsulae cīvitatī-
bus ad eum lēgātī veniunt quī polliceantur obsidēs dare
atque imperiō populī Rōmānī obtemperāre. Quibus 25
audītis liberāliter pollicitus hortātusque ut in eā sen-
tentiā permanērent, eōs domum remittit, et cum eīs
ūnā Commium, quem ipse Atrebātibus superātis rēgem
ibi cōstituerat, cūius et virtūtem et cōsiliū probā-
bat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābātur, cūiusque 30

auctōritās in hīs regiōnibus māgnī habēbātur, mittit. Huic imperat quās possit adeat cīvitātēs, hortēturque ut populī Rōmānī fidem sequantur sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet. Volusēnus perspectīs regiōnibus,
5 quantum eī facultātis darī potuit, quī nāvī ēgredi āc sē barbarīs committere nōn audēret, v diē ad Caesarem revertitur, quaeque ibi perspēxisset renūntiat.

Submission of the Morini. Preparation of a fleet.

22 Dum in hīs locīs Caesar nāvium parandārum causā morātur, ex māgnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī
10 vērunt quī sē dē superiōris temporis cōsiliō excūsārent, quod hominēs barbarī et nostrae cōsuētūdinis imperitī bellum populō Rōmānō fēcissent, sēque ea, quae imperāset, factūrōs pollicērentur. Hōc sibi Caesar satis opportunē accidisse arbitrātus, quod neque post
15 tergum hostem relinquere volēbat neque bellī gerendī propter annī tempus facultātem habēbat neque hās tantulārum rērum occupātiōnēs Britanniae antepōnendās iūdicābat, māgnū eīs numerum obsidum imperat. Quibus adductīs eōs in fidem recipit.

20 Nāvibus circiter LXXX onerāriīs coāctīs [contrāctisque], quot satis esse ad duās trānsportandās legiōnēs existimābat, quod praetereā nāvium longārum habēbat, quaestōrī, lēgātīs praefectisque distribuit. Hūc accēdēbant XVIII onerāriae nāvēs, quae ex eō locō
25 ā milibus passuum VIII ventō tenēbantur, quōminus in eundem portum venīre possent; hās equitibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum Titūriō Sabīnō et Aurunculēiō Cottae lēgātīs in Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum, ā quibus ad eum lēgātī nōn vērunt, dūcendum dedit. Sulpiciū Rūfū lēgātū cum eō



THE CLIFFS OF DOVER.

praesidiō quod satis esse arbitrābātur portum tenēre iussit.

Caesar crosses the channel and anchors near the shore.

Hīs cōstitūtīs rēbus nactus idōneam ad nāvigan- **23**
dum tempestātem IIII ferē vigiliā solvit, equitēsque in
ulteriōrem portum prōgredi et nāvēs cōscendere et
sē sequi iussit. Ā quibus cum paulō tardius esset ad-
ministrātum, ipse hōrā diēi circiter IIII cum primīs
nāvibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus colli-
bus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōspēxit. Cū-
ius loci haec erat nātūra atque ita montibus angustē **10**
mare continēbātur utī ex locis superiōribus in lītus
tēlum adigi posset. Hunc ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam
idōneum locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō con-
venirent, ad hōram nōnam in ancoris expectāvit.
Interim lēgātīs tribūnisque militum convocātis et quae **15**
ex Volusēnō cōgnōvisset et quae fieri vellet ostendit,
monuitque, ut rei militāris ratiō, māximē ut maritimae
rēs postulārent, ut quae celerem atque instābilem
mōtum habērent, ad nūtum et ad tempus omnēs rēs
ab eis administrārentur. Hīs dīmissis et ventum et **20**
aestum unō tempore nactus secundum, datō signō et
sublātis ancoris, circiter mīlia passuum VII ab eō locō
prōgressus, apertō ac plānō lītore nāvēs cōstituit.

The Britains resist a landing.

At barbari, cōsiliō Rōmānōrum cōgnitō, praemissō **24**
equitātū et essedāriis, quō plērumque genere in proeliis **25**
utī cōsuērunt, reliquīs cōpiis subsecūtī nostrōs nāvi-
bus ēgredi prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa
difficultās quod nāvēs propter māgnitudinem nisi in
altō cōstitui nōn poterant; militibus autem, ignōtis

locis, impeditis manibus, magnō et gravī onere armorum pressis, simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in fluctibus cōsistendum et cum hostibus erat pūgnandum; cum illi aut ex āridō aut paulum in aquam prōgressi
 5 omnibus membrīs expeditis, nōtissimīs locīs, audācter tēla cōicerent et equōs insuēfactōs incitārent. Quibus rēbus nostrī perterriti atque hūius omninō generis pūgnae imperitī nōn eādē alacritāte ac studiō, quō in pedestribus utī proeliis cōsuērant, utēbantur.

*Caesar manœuvres. Gallantry of a centurion
 of the Tenth.*

25 Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās, quarum et speciēs erat barbaris inūsitiōrior et mōtus ad ūsum expeditior, paulum removērī ab onerāriis nāvibus et rēmīs incitārī et ad latus apertum hostium cōstituī, atque inde fundis, sagittis, tormentis hostēs prōpellī
 15 ac submovērī iussit; quae rēs magnō ūsuī nostris fuit. Nam et nāvium figūrā et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitiō genere tormentōrum permōtī barbari cōstitērunt ac paulum etiam pedem rettulērunt. Atque nostris militibus cunctantibus, māximē propter altitudinem maris,
 20 quī x legiōnis aquilam ferēbat, obtestātus deōs, ut ea rēs legiōnī fēliciter evenīret: “Dēsilite,” inquit, “commilitōnēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere; ego certē meum rei pūblicae atque imperātōrī officium praestiterō.” Hōc cum vōce magnā dixisset, sē ex
 25 nāvī prōiēcit atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostrī cohortātī inter sē, nē tantum dēdecus admitterētur, ūniversi ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximis [prīmīs] nāvibus cum cōspēxissent, subsecūtī hostibus adpropinquāvērunt.

*The Romans land, but for want of cavalry cannot pursue
the Britons.*

Pugnatum est ab utrisque acriter. Nostrī tamen, 26
quod neque ordinēs servāre neque firmiter insistere
neque signa subsequi poterant, atque alius aliā ex nāvī
quibuscumque signis occurrerat sē adgregābat, māg-
nopere perturbābantur; hostēs vērō nōtis omnibus 5
vadīs, ubi ex litore aliquōs singulārēs ex nāvī ēgredi-
entēs cōspēxerant, incitātis equis impeditōs adoriē-
bantur, plūrēs paucōs circumsistēbant, aliī ab latere
apertō in ūniversōs tēla cōiciēbant. Quod cum ani-
madvertisset Caesar, scaphās longārum nāvium, item 10
speculātōria nāvigia militibus complēri iussit, et quōs
labōrantēs cōspēxerat hīs subsidia submittēbat. Nos-
trī, simul in aridō cōstitērunt, suis omnibus cōse-
cūtis, in hostēs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam
dedērunt; neque longius prōsequi potuērunt, quod 15
equitēs cursum tenēre atque insulam capere nōn po-
tuerant. Hōc ūnum ad pristinam fortūnam Caesarī
dēfuit.

Envoys from the Britons sue for peace.

Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā re- 27
cēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce misērunt; 20
obsidēs datūrōs quaeque imperāset factūrōs sēsē pol-
liciti sunt. Ūnā cum hīs lēgātis Commius Atrebās
vēnit, quem suprā dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare in Bri-
tanniam praemisum. Hunc illi ē nāvī ēgressum, cum
ad eōs ōrātōris modō Caesaris mandāta dēferret, com- 25
prehenderant atque in vincula coniēcērunt; tum proeliō
factō remisērunt, et in petendā pāce ēius rei culpam
in multitudinem contulērunt, et propter imprudentiam
ut ignōscerētur, petivērunt.

Caesar questus, quod, cum ultrō in continentem lēgātis missis pācem ab sē petissent, bellum sine causā intulissent, ignōscere imprudentiae dīxit obsidēsque imperāvit; quōrum illi partem statim dedērunt, partem
 5 ex longinquiōribus locis arcessitam paucis diēbus sēsē datūrōs dīxērunt. Intereā suōs remigrāre in agrōs iussērunt, principēsque undique convenire et sē civitātēsque suās Caesarī commendāre coepērunt.

Caesar's cavalry transports are driven back to Gaul by a storm.

28 His rēbus pāce cōfirmatā, post diem quartum
 10 quam est in Britanniam ventum, nāvēs XVIII, dē quibus suprā dēmōnstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant, ex superiōre portū lēnī ventō solvērunt. Quae cum adpropinquārent Britanniae et ex castris vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō coōrta est, ut nūlla eārum cursum
 15 tenēre posset; sed aliae eōdem unde erant profectae referrentur, aliae ad inferiōrem partem insulae, quae est propius sōlis occāsum, māgnō suō cum periculō dēicerentur; quae tamen ancoris iactis cum fluctibus complērentur, necessariō adversā nocte in altum prō-
 20 vectae continentem petiērunt.

His fleet on the coast of Britain is nearly wrecked.

29 Eādem nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna, quī diēs
 maritimōs aestūs māximōs in Ōceanō efficere cō-
 suēvit, nostrisque id erat incōgnitum. Ita ūnō tempore
 et longās nāvēs, [quibus Caesar exercitum trāspor-
 25 tandum cūrāverat,] quās Caesar in āridum subdūxerat,
 aestus complēbat, et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant
 dēligatae, tempestās adflīctābat, neque ūlla nostris
 facultās aut administrandī aut auxiliandī dabātur.
 Complūribus nāvibus frāctis, reliquae cum essent—fūni-

- bus, ancoris reliquisque armamentis amissis—ad navigandum inutilis, magna, id quod necesse erat accidere, totius exercitus perturbatio facta est. Neque enim navee erant aliae, quibus reportari possent, et omnia deerant, quae ad reficiendas navee erant usus, et, quod omnibus constabat hiemari in Gallia oportere, frumentum in his locis in hiemem provisum non erat.

The Britons plan to renew hostilities.

Quibus rebus cognitis principes Britanniae, qui post proelium ad Caesarem convenerant, inter se conlocuti, cum et equites et navee et frumentum Romanis deesse intellegerent, et paucitatem militum ex castrorum exiguitate cognoscerent,—quae hoc erant etiam angustiora, quod sine impedimentis Caesar legiones transportaverat,—optimum factum esse duxerunt, rebellione facta, frumento commeatumque nostros prohibere et rem in hiemem producere; quod his superatis aut redditu interclusis neminem postea belli inferendi causam in Britanniam transiturum confidebant. Itaque rursus coniuratione facta paulatim ex castris discedere et suos clam ex agris deducere coeperunt.

Caesar suspects their purpose.

At Caesar, etsi nondum eorum consilia cognoverat, tamen et ex eventu navium suarum et ex eo quod obsides dare intermiserant, fore id, quod accidit, suspicabatur. Itaque ad omnes casus subsidia comparabat. Nam et frumentum ex agris cotidie in castra conferrebat et quae gravissimae afflictae erant navee, earum materiam atque aere ad reliquas reficiendas utebantur, et quae ad eas res erant usus, ex continenti comparari iubebat. Itaque cum summo studio a militibus ad-

ministrārētur XII nāvibus āmissis, reliquīs ut nāvīgārī
satis commodē posset effēcīt.

They attack Roman foragers.

32 Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōsuētūdine ūnā frū-
mentātum missā, quae appellābātur VII, neque ūllā ad
5 id tempus bellī suspīciōne interpositā, cum pars homi-
num in agrīs remanēret, pars etiam in castra ventitāret,
eī quī prō portīs castrōrum in statiōne erant Caesarī
nūntiāvērunt pulverem māiōrem quam cōsuētūdō fer-
ret in eā parte vidērī quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset.

10 Caesar id quod erat suspicātus, aliquid novī ā barbarīs
initum cōsiliī, cohortēs, quae in statiōnibus erant
sēcum in eam partem proficiscī ex reliquīs duās in sta-
tiōnem succēdere, reliquās armārī et cōnfestim sēsē
subsequī iussit.

15 Cum paulō longius ā castrīs prōcessisset, suōs ab
hostibus premī atque aegrē sustinēre et cōnfertā legi-
ōne ex omnibus partibus tēla cōici animadvertit. Nam
quod omnī ex reliquīs partibus dēmessō frūmentō pars
ūna erat reliqua, suspicātī hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ven-
20 tūrōs noctū in silvīs dēlituerant; tum dispersōs dēpo-
sitīs armīs in metendō occupātōs subitō adortī, paucis
interfectīs reliquōs incertīs ōrdinibus perturbāverant,
simul equitātū atque essedīs circūm dederant.

The war chariots of the Britons.

33 Genus hōc est ex essedīs pūgnae: primō per omnēs
25 partēs perequitant et tēla cōiciunt atque ipsō terrōre
equōrum et strepitū rotārum ōrdinēs plērumque per-
turbant; et cum sē inter equitum turmās insinuāvērunt,
ex essedīs dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurīgae
interim paulātim ex proeliō excēdunt atque ita currūs

conlocant ut, si illi ā multitudīne hostium premantur, expeditum ad suos receptum habeant. Ita mōbilitātem equitum, stabilitātem peditum in proeliis praestant; āc tantum ūsū cotidiānō et exercitātiōne efficiunt uti in dēclivī āc praecipitī locō incitātōs equōs sustinēre et 5 brevī moderārī āc flectere, et per tēmōnem percurrere et in iugō insistere et sē inde in currūs citissimē recipere cōsuērint.

Rescue of the foragers. The Britons gather in great force.

Quibus rēbus perturbātis nostris nōvitāte pūgnae 34 tempore opportūnissimō Caesar auxilium tulit; namque 10 ēius adventū hostēs cōstitērunt, nostrī sē ex timōre recēpērunt. Quō factō ad lacessendum hostem et committendum proelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus, suō sē locō continuit et brevī tempore intermissō in castra legiōnēs redūxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostrīs 15 omnibus occupātis, quī erant in agrīs reliquī, discessērunt. Secūtae sunt continuōs complūrēs diēs tempestātēs, quae et nostrōs in castris continērent et hostem ā pūgnā prohibērent. Interim barbarī nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dimisērunt paucitātemque nostrōrum 20 militum suis praedicāvērunt et, quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum suī liberandī facultās darētur, si Rōmānōs castris expulissent, dēmōstrāvērunt. His rēbus celeriter māgnā multitudīne peditātūs equitātūsque cōactā ad castra vērunt. 25

They are defeated in battle.

Caesar, etsi idem quod superiōribus diēbus acci- 35 derat fore vidēbat, ut, si essent hostēs pulsī, celeritāte periculum effugerent, tamen nactus equitēs circiter xxx, quōs Commius Atrēbās, dē quō ante dictum est,

sēcum trānsportāverat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castrīs cōstituit. Commissō proeliō diūtius nostrōrum mīlitum impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuērunt āc terga vertērunt. Quōs tantō spatiō secūtī quantum cursū et vīribus effice-
 5 cere potuērunt, complūrēs ex eis occidērunt; deinde omnibus longē lātēque aedificiīs incēnsīs sē in castra recēpērunt.

The Romans return to Gaul.

36 Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē pāce vērērunt. Hīs Caesar numerum obsidum
 10 quem ante imperāverat duplicāvit, eōsque in continentem addūcī iussit, quod, propinquā diē aequinocī, infirmīs nāvibus hiemī nāvigātiōnem subiciendam nōn existimābat. Ipse idōneam tempestātem nactus paulō post mediam noctem nāvēs solvit; quae omnēs inco-
 15 lumēs ad continentem pervērērunt; sed ex eis onerariae duae eōdem portūs quōs reliquae capere nōn potuērunt et paulō infā dēlātae sunt.

The Morini attack some of Caesar's troops.

37 Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositi mīlītēs circiter ccc atque in castra contenderent, Morinī, quōs
 20 Caesar in Britanniam proficiscēns pācātōs reliquerat, spē praedae adductī primō nōn ita māgnō suōrum numerō circumstetērunt āc, sī sēsē interficī nōllent, arma pōnere iussērunt. Cum illī orbe factō sēsē dēfenderent, celeriter ad clāmōrem hominum circiter milia vi con-
 25 vērērunt. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnem ex castrīs equitātum suis auxiliō mīsīt. Interim nostrī mīlītēs impetum hostium sustinuerunt atque amplius hōris IIII fortissimē pūgnāvērunt, et paucis vulneribus acceptis complūrēs ex hīs occidērunt. Postea vērō quam

equitātus noster in cōspectum vēnit, hostēs abiectis armīs terga vertērunt māgnusque eōrum numerus est occīsus.

They are severely punished. Thanksgiving at Rome.

Caesar posterō diē T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum eīs **38**
legiōnibus quās ex Britannīā redūxerat in Morinōs, **5**
quī rebelliōnem fēcerant, mīsit. Quī cum propter sic-
citātēs palūdum quō sē reciperent nōn habērent, quō
perfugiō superiōre annō erant ūsī, omnēs ferē in po-
testātem Labiēni vērunt. At Q. Titūrius et L. Cotta
lēgātī, quī in Menapiōrum finēs legiōnēs dūxerant, om- **10**
nibus eōrum agrīs vāstātis, frūmentis succīs, aedificiis
incēnsis, quod Menapii sē omnēs in dēnsissimās silvās
abdiderant, sē ad Caesarem recēpērunt. Caesar in
Belgīs omnium legiōnum hiberna cōstituit. Eō duae
omnīnō civitātēs ex Britannīā obsidēs mīsērunt, reli- **15**
quae neglēxērunt. His rēbus gestis ex litterīs Caesaris
diērum **xx** supplicatiō ā senātū dēcrēta est.

LIBER QUINTUS.

SECOND INVASION OF BRITAIN.—FURTHER REVOLTS OF THE GAULS, B. C., 54

*Caesar orders a fleet built for a second expedition to Britain, and
quiets disturbances in Illyricum.*

- I L. Domitiō Ap. Claudiō cōsulibus, discēdēns ab
hībernīs Caesar in Ītaliā, ut quotannis facere cōn-
suērat, lēgātīs imperat quōs legiōnibus praefēcerat utī
quam plūrimās possint hieme nāvēs aedificandās vete-
5 rēsq̄ue reficiendās curent. Eārum modum formamque
dēmōnstrat. Ad celeritātem onerandī subductiōnisque
paulō facit humiliōrēs, quam quibus in nostrō marī ūtī
cōnsuēvimus, atque id eō magis, quod propter crēbrās
commūtātiōnēs aestuum minus māgnōs ibi fluctūs fierī
10 cōgnōverat; ad onera āc multitudinem iūmentōrum
trānsportandam paulō lātiōrēs quam quibus in reliquīs
ūtimur maribus. Hās omnēs āctuāriās imperat fierī,
quam ad rem multum humilitās adiuvat. Ea quae sunt
ūsui ad armandās nāvēs ex Hispāniā adportārī iubet.
15 Ipse conventibus Galliae citeriōris perāctīs in Īllyri-
cum proficiscitur, quod ā Pīrūstīs finitimam partem
prōvinciae incursiōnibus vāstārī audiēbat. Eō cum
vēnisset, civitātibus milītēs imperat certumque in locum
convenire iubet. Quā rē nūntiātā Pīrūstae lēgātōs ad
20 eum mittunt, quī doceant nihil eārum rērum pūblicō
factum cōsiliō, sēsēque parātōs esse dēmōnstrent om-

nibus ratiōnibus de iniūriis satisfacere. Perceptā orā-
tione eōrum Caesar obsidēs imperat eōsque ad certam
diem addūci iubet; nisi ita fecerint, sēsē bellō civitatem
persecūtūrum dēmōnstrat. Eīs ad diem adductis, ut
imperāverat, arbitrōs inter civitatēs dat quī litem aesti- 5
ment poenamque cōstituant.

*He orders the fleet to assemble at Portus Itius. Finds trouble
threatening among the Treviri.*

Hīs cōfectis rēbus conventibusque peractis, in 2
citeriorem Galliam revertitur atque inde ad exercitum
proficiscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, circumitis omnibus
hibernis, singulārī militum studiō in summā omnium 10
rērum inopiā circiter DC ēius generis, cūius suprā dē-
mōnstrāvimus, nāvēs et longās XXVIII invenit instrūctās
neque multum abesse ab eō quīn paucis diēbus dēdūci
possint. Conlaudātis militibus atque eīs quī negōtiō
praefuerant, quid fieri velit ostendit atque omnēs ad 15
portum Itium convenire iubet, quō ex portū commo-
dissimum in Britanniam trāiectum esse cōgnōverat,
circiter milium passuum xxx [trānsmissum] ā con-
tinenti; huic rei quod satis esse vīsum est militum re-
linquit. Ipse cum legiōnibus expeditis IIII et equitibus 20
DCCC in finēs Trēverōrum proficiscitur, quod hī neque
ad concilia veniēbant neque imperiō pārēbant, Ger-
mānōsque Trānsrhēnānōs sollicitāre dicēbantur.

Rival chiefs of the Treviri appeal to Caesar.

Haec civitās longē plūrimum tōtius Galliae equitatū 3
valet māgnāsque habet cōpiās peditum, Rhēnumque, 25
ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, tangit. In eā civitate duo
dē principātū inter sē contendēbant, Indūtiomārus et
Cingetorix; ex quibus alter, simul atque dē Caesaris

legiōnumque adventū cōgnitum est, ad eum vēnit, sē suōsque omnēs in officiō futūrōs neque ab amicitia populi Rōmānī dēfectūrōs cōfirmāvit, quaeque in Trēveris gererentur ostendit.

- 5 At Indūtiomārus equitātum peditātumque cōgere
eīsque quī per aetātem in armīs esse nōn poterant in
silvam Arduennam abditis, quae ingenti māgnitūdine
per mediōs finēs Trēverōrum ā flūmine Rhēnō ad ini-
tium Rēmōrum pertinet, bellum parāre instituit; sed
10 posteaquam nōn nūllī principēs ex eā cīvitate et auc-
tōritate Cingetorigis adducti et adventū nostrī exer-
citūs perterriti ad Caesarem vēnerunt et dē suis privātis
rēbus ab eō petere coepērunt, quoniam cīvitatī cōn-
sulere nōn possent, veritus, nē ab omnibus dēsererētur,
15 lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittit: Sēsē idcirco ab suis dis-
cēdere atque ad eum venīre nōluisse, quō facilius cīvi-
tātem in officiō continēret, nē omnis nōbilitātis discessū
plēbs propter imprudentiam lāberētur; itaque cīvitatē
in suā potestāte esse, sēque, si Caesar permitteret, ad
20 eum in castra ventūrum et suās cīvitatīsq̄e fortunās
ēius fidei permissūrum.

4

He decides in favor of Cingetorix.

- Caesar etsi intellegēbat quā dē causā ea dicerentur
quaeque eum rēs ab institūtō cōsiliō dēterrēt, ta-
men, nē aestātem in Trēveris cōsumere cōgerētur
25 omnibus rēbus ad Britannicum bellum comparātis,
Indūtiomārum ad sē cum cc obsidibus venīre iussit.
Hīs adductis, in eīs filiō propinquisque ēius omnibus,
quōs nōminātīm ēvocāverat, cōsolātus Indūtiomārum
hortātusque est utī in officiō manēret; nihilō tamen/
30 sētius principibus Trēverōrum ad sē convocātis hōs

singillatim Cingetorigi conciliavit, quod cum merito eius ab se fieri intellegebat, tum magni interesse arbitrabatur eius auctoritatem inter suos quam plurimum valere, cuius tam egregiam in se voluntatem perspexisset. Id factum graviter tulit Indutiomarus [suam 5 gratiam inter suos minui], et qui iam ante inimico in nos animo fuisset multo gravius hoc dolore exarsit.

Caesar's forces assemble at Portus Itius.

His rebus constitutis Caesar ad portum Itium cum 5 legionibus pervenit. Ibi cognoscit LX naves, quae in Meldis factae erant, tempestate reiectas cursum tenere 10 non potuisse atque eodem unde erant profectae revertisse; reliquas paratas ad navigandum atque omnibus rebus instructas invenit. Eodem equitatus totius Galliae convenit, numero milia IIII, principesque ex omnibus civitatibus; ex quibus perpaucos, quorum in se 15 fidem perspexerat, relinquere in Gallia, reliquos obsidum loco secum ducere decreverat, quod, cum ipse abesset, motum Galliae vereretur.

There is trouble again with Dumnorix the Haeduan.

Erat una cum ceteris Dumnorix Haeduus, de quo 6 ante a nobis dictum est. Hunc secum habere in pri- 20 mis constituerat, quod eum cupidum rerum novarum, cupidum imperi, magni animi, magnae inter Gallios auctoritatis cognoverat. Accedebat huc quod in concilio Haeduorum Dumnorix dixerat sibi a Caesare regnum civitatis deferri; quod dictum Haeduus graviter 25 fererant neque recusandi aut deprecandi causa legatos ad Caesarem mittere auderant. Id factum ex suis hospitibus Caesar cognoverat.

Ille omnibus primo precibus petere contendit ut in

Galliā relinqueretur, partim quod insuetus navigandi mare timeret, partim quod religionibus impediri sese diceret. Posteaquam id obstinate sibi negari vidit, omni spe impetrandi adempta, principes Galliae sollicitare, convocare singulos hortarique coepit uti in continenti remanerent; metu territare: non sine causa fieri ut Gallia omni nobilitate spoliaretur; id esse consilium Caesaris ut, quos in conspectu Galliae interficere vereretur, hos omnes in Britanniam traductos necaret; fidem reliquis interpungere, ius iurandum poscere ut, quod esse ex usu Galliae intellexissent, communi consilio administrarent. Haec a compluribus ad Caesarem deferbantur.

Dumnorix flees, but is pursued and killed.

7 Quam rem cognita Caesar, quod tantum civitati
 15 Haeduae dignitatis tribuebat, coercendum atque deterrendum quibuscumque rebus posset Dumnorigem statuere; quod longius eius amentiam progredi videbat, prospiciendum ne quid sibi ac rei publicae nocere posset. Itaque dies circiter xxv in eo loco commoratus, quod Corus ventus navigationem impediabat, qui
 20 magnam partem omnis temporis in his locis flare consuevit, dabat operam ut in officio Dumnorigem contineret; nihil tamen setius omnia eius consilia cognosceret. Tandem idoneam nactus tempestatem militibus
 25 equitesque conscendere naves iubet.

At omnium impeditis animis Dumnorix cum equibus Haeduorum a castris insciente Caesare domum discedere coepit. Quam rem nuntiata Caesar, intermissa profectio atque omnibus rebus postpositis, magnam
 30 partem equitatus ad eum insequendum mittit retrahique

imperat; sī vim faciat neque pāreat, interficī iubet; nihil hunc sē absente prō sãnō factūrum arbitrātus, quī prae-sentis imperium neglēxisset. Ille autem revocātus re-sistere ac sē manū dēfendere suōrumque fidem im-plōrāre coepit, saepe clāmitāns liberum sē liberaeque 5 esse cīvitatīs. Illi, ut erat imperātum, circumsistunt hominem atque interficiunt; at equitēs Haedui ad Caesarem omnēs revertuntur.

The Romans set sail for Britain, and find the coast deserted.

His rēbus gestīs, Labiēnō in continentī cum III 8 legiōnibus et equitum milibus duōbus relicto, ut portūs 10 tuērētur et rei frūmentāriae prōvidēret, quaeque in Galliā gererentur cōgnōsceret cōsiliūque prō tempore et prō rē caperet, ipse cum v legiōnibus et parī numerō equitum, quem in continentī relinquēbat, ad sōlis occāsum nāvēs solvit. Et lēnī Āfricō prōvectus 15 mediā circiter nocte ventō intermissō, cursum nōn tenuit, et longius dēlātus aestū ortā lūce sub sinistrā Britanniam relictam cōspexit. Tum rūsus aestūs commūtātiōnem secūtus rēmīs contendit ut eam partem insulae caperet quā optimum esse ēgressum superiōre 20 aestāte cōgnōverat. Quā in rē admodum fuit militum virtūs laudanda, quī vectōriīs gravibusque nāvigiīs nōn intermissō rēmigandī labōre longārum nāvium cursum adaequārunt.

Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus nāvibus 25 meridiānō ferē tempore; neque in eō locō hostis est vīsus; sed, ut postea Caesar ex captivīs cōgnōvit, cum māgnae manūs eō convēnissent, multitudīne nāvium perterritae, quae cum annōtinīs privātisque, quās suī quisque commodī causā fēcerat, amplius DCCC ūnō 30

erant visae tempore, à litore discesserant ac sē in superiōra loca abdiderant.

They disembark, advance inland, and defeat the natives.

9 Caesar expositō exercitū et locō castris idōneō captō, ubi ex captivīs cōgnōvit quō in locō hostium
5 cōpiae cōsēdissent cohortibus x ad mare relictis et equitibus ccc quī praesidiō nāvibus essent, dē tertiā vigiliā ad hostēs contendit eō minus veritus nāvibus, quod in litore mollī atque apertō dēligātās ad ancorās relinquēbat. Eī praesidiō nāvibusque Q. Atrium prae-
10 fēcit. Ipse noctū prōgressus mīlia passuum circiter xii hostium cōpiās cōspiciātus est.

Illi equitātū atque essedis ad flūmen prōgressī ex locō superiōre nostrōs prohibēre et proelium committere coepērunt. Repulsī ab equitātū sē in silvās ab-
15 didērunt, locum nactī ēgregiē et nātūrā et opere mūnītum, quem domesticī bellī, ut vidēbātur, causā iam ante praeparāverant; nam crēbris arboribus succisis omnēs introitus erant praeclūsī. Ipsī ex silvis rārī prōpūgnābant nostrōsque intrā mūnitiōnēs ingredi pro-
20 hibēbant. At militēs legiōnis vii, testūdine factā et aggere ad mūnitiōnēs adiectō, locum cēpērunt eōsque ex silvis expulērunt paucis vulneribus acceptis. Sed eōs fugientēs longius Caesar prōsequi vetuit, et quod locī nātūrā ignōrābat, et quod māgnā parte diēi cōn-
25 sūptā mūnitiōni castrōrum tempus relinqui volēbat.

A storm damages the fleet.

10 Postridiē eius diēi māne tripertitō militēs equitēsque in expeditiōnem mīsīt, ut eōs, quī fūgerant, persequerentur. Hīs aliquantum itineris prōgressīs, cum iam extrēmī essent in prōspectū, equitēs à Q. Atriō

ad Caesarem vērunt quī nūtiārent, superiōre nocte
māximā coōrtā tempestāte, prope omnēs nāvēs ad-
flictās atque in litus ēiectās esse, quod neque ancorae
fūnēsque sustinērent neque nautae gubernātōrēsque
vim tempestātis patī possent; itaque ex eō concursū 5
nāvium māgnū esse incommodum acceptum.

The ships are repaired and drawn up on the shore.

Hīs rēbus cōgnitis Caesar legiōnēs equitātumque 11
revocārī atque in itinere resistere iubet, ipse ad nāvēs
revertitur; eadem ferē quae ex nūntiis [litterisque]
cōgnoverat, cōram perspicit, sic ut āmissis circiter XL 10
nāvibus reliquae tamen reficī posse māgnō negōtiō
vidērentur. Itaque ex legiōnibus fabrōs dēligit et ex
continenti aliōs arcessī iubet; Labiēnō scribit ut quam
plūrimās possit eīs legiōnibus quae sint apud eum nāvēs
īstituāt. Ipse, etsi rēs erat multae operae ac labōris, 15
tamen commodissimum esse statuit omnēs nāvēs sub-
dūcī et cum castris ūnā mūnitiōne coniungī. In hīs
rēbus circiter diēs x cōnsūmit nē nocturnis quidem
tempōribus ad labōrem militum intermissis.

Subductis nāvibus castrisque ēgregiē mūnitis eās- 20
dem cōpiās quās ante praesidiō nāvibus relinquit; ipse
eodem, unde redierat proficiscitur. Eō cum vēnisset,
māiōrēs iam undique in eum locum cōpiae Britannō-
rum convēnerant, summā imperi bellique administrandī
commūni cōnsiliō permissā Cassivellaunō, cuius finēs 25
ā maritimis civitatibus flūmen dividit, quod appellatur
Tamesis, ā marī circiter mīlia passuum LXXX. Huic
superiōre tempore cum reliquīs civitatibus continentia
bella intercesserant; sed nostrō adventū permōti Bri-
tanni hunc tōti bellō imperiōque praefēcerant. 30

The people and resources of Britain.

- 12 Britanniae pars interior ab eīs incolitur quōs nātōs in insulā ipsā memoriā prōditum dīcunt; maritima pars ab eīs quī praedae ac bellī inferendī causā ex Belgiō trāsiērunt — quī omnēs ferē isdem nōminibus civitātum appellantur, quibus ortī ex civitātibus eō pervēnērunt — et bellō inlātō ibi remānsērunt atque agrōs colere coepērunt. Hominum est infīnīta multitūdō crēberrimaque aedificia ferē Gallicīs cōsimilia, pecoris māgnus numerus. Ūtuntur [aut aere] aut
10 nummō aureō aut tāleīs ferreīs ad certum pondus exāminātīs prō nummō.

Nāscitur ibi plumbum album in mediterrāneīs regiōnibus, in maritimīs ferrum, sed eius exigua est cōpia; aere ūtuntur importātō. Māteria cuiusque generis ut in Galliā est praeter fāgum atque abietem. Leporem et gallīnam et ānserem gustāre fās nōn putant; haec tamen alunt animī voluptātisque causā. Loca sunt temperātiōra quam in Galliā, remissiōribus frīgoribus.

Geography of the island.

- 13 Īnsula nātūrā triquetra, cuius ūnum latus est contrā Galliam. Hūius lateris alter angulus, quī est ad Cantium, quō ferē omnēs ex Galliā nāvēs adpelluntur, ad orientem sōlem, inferior ad merīdiem spectat. Hōc latus tenet circiter mīlia passuum D.
- 25 Alterum vergit ad Hispāniam atque occidentem sōlem; quā ex parte est Hibernia insula, dimidiō minor, ut existimātur, quam Britannia, sed parī spatiō trāsmisus atque ex Galliā est in Britanniam. In hōc mediō cursū est insula quae appellātur Mona; com-

plūrēs praetereā minōrēs obiectae insulae existimantur, dē quibus insulis nōn nulli scripsērunt diēs continuōs xxx sub brūmam esse noctem. Nōs nihil dē eō percontātiōnibus reperiēbāmus, nisi certis ex aquā mēnsūris breviorēs esse quam in continentī noctēs vidēbāmus. Hūius est longitūdō lateris, ut fert illōrum opīniō, dcc milium.

Tertium est contrā septentriōnēs, cui partī nulla est obiecta terra; sed eius angulus alter māximē ad Germaniam spectat. Hōc milium passuum dccc in longitūdinem esse existimātur. Ita omnis insula est in circuitū viciēs centum milium passuum.

Customs of the inhabitants.

Ex hīs omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī quī Cantium incolunt, quae regiō est maritima omnis, neque multum ā Gallicā differunt cōsuetūdine. Interiōrēs plērique frūmenta nōn serunt, sed lacte et carne vivunt pellibusque sunt vestītī. Omnēs vērō sē Britannī vitrō inficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit colōrem, atque hōc horribiliōrēs sunt in pūgnā aspectū; capillōque sunt prōmissō atque omnī parte corporis rāsā praeter caput et labrum superius. Uxōrēs habent, dēni duodēnique inter sē commūnēs, et māximē frātrēs cum fratribus parentēsque cum liberis; sed quī sunt ex eis nātī eōrum habentur liberī, quō primum virgō quaeque dēducta est.

Defeat of the Britons.

Equitēs hostium essedāriique ācriter proeliō cum equitātū nostrō in itinere cōflīxērunt, ita tamen ut nostrī omnibus partibus superiōrēs fuerint atque eōs in silvās collēsque compulerint; sed complūribus interfectis cupidius insecūtī nōn nullōs ex suis amiserunt.

At illi intermissō spatiō, imprudentibus nostris atque occupatis in munitiōne castrōrum, subitō sē ex silvis eiecērunt, impetūque in eōs factō, qui erant in statione prō castris conlocati, ācrit̄er pūgnāvērunt; duābusque
 5 missis subsidiō cohortibus ā Caesare, atque his primis legiōnum duarum, cum eae perexiguō intermissō loci spatiō inter sē cōstitissent, novō genere pūgnae perterritis nostris, per mediōs audācissimē perrūpērunt sēque inde incolumēs recēpērunt. Eō diē Q. Laberius
 10 Dūrus, tribūnus militum, interficitur. Illi pluribus submissis cohortibus repelluntur.

Their military tactics.

16 Tōtō hōc in genere pūgnae, cum sub oculis omnium āc prō castris dīmicārētur, intellēctum est nostrōs propter gravitatem armōrum, quod neque īnsequi cēdentēs
 15 possent neque ab signis discēdere audērent, minus aptōs esse ad hūius generis hostem; equitēs autem māgnō cum periculō proeliō dīmicāre, proptereā quod illi etiam cōsultō plērumque cēderent, et cum paulum
 20 et pedibus dispari proeliō contenderent. [Equestris autem proeli ratiō et cēdentibus et īnsequentibus pār atque idem periculum īferēbat.] Accēdēbat hūc, ut numquam cōfertī, sed rārī māgnisque intervāllis proeliārentur stationēsque dispositās habērent, atque aliōs
 25 aliī deinceps exciperent, integrīque et recentēs dēfatigātis succēderent.

Another defeat of the Britons.

17 Posterō diē procul ā castris hostēs in collibus cōstitērunt, rārīque sē ostendere et lēnius quam pridīe nostrōs equitēs proeliō lacessere coepērunt. Sed meri-

diē, cum Caesar pābulandī causā III legiōnēs atque omnem equitātum cum C. Trebōniō lēgātō mīssisset, repente ex omnibus partibus ad pābulātōrēs advolāvērunt, sic utī ab signis legiōnibusque nōn absisterent. Nostri ācritē in eōs impetū factō reppulērunt neque 5 finem sequendī fēcērunt, quoad subsidiō cōnfisi equitēs, cum post sē legiōnēs vidērent, praecipitēs hostēs ēgērunt, māgnōque eōrum numerō interfectō neque sui colligendī neque cōsistendī aut ex essedīs dēsiliendī facultātem dedērunt. Ex hāc fugā prōtinus quae undi- 10 que convēnerant auxilia discessērunt; neque post id tempus umquam summīs nōbiscum cōpiīs hostēs contendērunt.

Caesar crosses the Thames.

Caesar cōgnitō cōsiliō eōrum ad flūmen Tamesim 18 in finēs Cassivellaunī exercitum dūxit; quod flūmen ūnō omnīnō locō pedibus, atque hōc aegrē, trānsīrī 15 potest. Eō cum vēnisset, animadvertit ad alteram flūminis rīpam māgnās esse cōpiās hostium instrūctās. Rīpa autem erat acūtis sudibus praefixisque mūnita, ēiusdemque generis sub aquā dēfixae sudēs flūmine tegēbantur. Hīs rēbus cōgnitis ā captīvīs perfugīsque 20 Caesar praemissō equitātū cōnfestim legiōnēs subsequi iussit. Sed eā celeritāte atque eō impetū milītēs iērunt, cum capite sōlō ex aquā exstārent, ut hostēs impetum legiōnum atque equitum sustinēre nōn possent rīpās- 25 que dīmitterent āc sē fugae mandārent.

Cassivellaunus avoids a battle, but annoys the Romans.

Cassivellaunus, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, omnī dē- 19 positā spē contentiōnis dīmissis ampliōribus cōpiīs, milibus circiter IIII essedāriōrum relictis itinera nostra servābat; paulumque ex viā excēdēbat locisque impe-

dītis āc silvestribus sēsē occultābat atque eīs regiōnibus, quibus nōs iter factūrōs cōgnōverat, pecora atque hominēs ex agrīs in silvās compellēbat; et cum equitātus noster liberius praedandī vāstandīque causā sē in agrōs
 5 effunderet, omnibus viīs sēmītisque essedāriōs ex silvis ēmittēbat, et māgnō cum periculō nostrōrum equitum cum hīs cōnfligēbat atque hōc metū lātius vagārī prohibēbat. Relinquēbātur ut neque longius ab agmine legiōnum discēdī Caesar paterētur, et tantum agrīs vā-
 10 tandīs incendiisque faciendīs hostibus nocērētur quantum in labōre atque itinere legiōnārīi milītēs efficere poterant.

The Trinovantes submit to Caesar.

20 Interim Trinovantes, prope firmissima eārum regiōnum civitās, ex quā Mandubracius adulēscēns Caesaris
 15 fidem secūtus ad eum in continentem [Galliam] vēnerat, — cūius pater in eā civitāte rēgnum obtinuerat interfectusque erat ā Cassivellaunō, ipse fugā mortem vitāverat, — lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt pollicenturque sēsē eī dēditūrōs atque imperāta factūrōs; petunt
 20 ut Mandubracium ab iniuriā Cassivellaunī dēfendat, atque in civitātem mittat, quī praesit imperiumque obtineat. Hīs Caesar imperat obsidēs XL frūmentumque exercituī, Mandubraciumque ad eōs mittit. Illi imperāta celeriter fēcērunt, obsidēs ad numerum frūmen-
 25 tumque mīsērunt.

Other tribes follow their example. A British "Oppidum."

21 Trinovantibus dēfēnsīs atque ab omnī militum iniuriā prohibitīs Cēnimāgnī, Segontiācī, Ancalitēs, Bibrocī, Cassī lēgātiōnibus missīs sēsē Caesarī dedunt. Ab hīs cōgnōscit nōn longē ex eō locō oppidum Cassi-

vellaunī abesse silvīs palūdibusque mūnītum, quō satis māgnus hominum pecorisque numerus convēnerit. Oppidum autem Britannī vocant cum silvās impeditās vāllō atque fossā mūniērunt, quō incursiōnis hostium vitandae causā convenīre cōsuērunt. Eō proficiscitur 5 cum legiōnibus; locum reperit ēgregiē nātūrā atque opere mūnītum; tamen hunc duābus ex partibus oppugnāre contendit. Hostēs paulisper morātī militum nostrōrum impetum nōn tulērunt sēsēque aliā ex parte oppidi ēiēcērunt. Māgnus ibi numerus pecoris reper- 10 tus, multique in fugā sunt comprehēnsī atque interfectī.

Cassivellaunus at last gives up resistance.

Dum haec in hīs locīs geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad 22 Cantium, quod esse ad mare suprā dēmōstrāvimus, quibus regiōnibus IIII rēgēs praeerant, Cingetorix, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segovax, nūntiōs mittit atque hīs 15 imperat utī cōactīs omnibus cōpiīs castra nāvālia dē imprōvisō adoriantur atque oppugnent. Hī cum ad castra vēnissent, nostrī ēruptiōne factā multis eōrum interfectis, captō etiam nōbili duce Lugotorige, suōs inco- 20 lumēs redūxērunt.

Cassivellaunus hōc proeliō nūntiātō, tot dētrimentis acceptis, vāstātis finibus, māximē etiam permōtus dēfectiōne civitātum, lēgātōs per Atrebātem Commium dē dēdictiōne ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar cum cōstituisset hiemāre in continentī propter repentinōs Galliae 25 mōtūs, neque multum aestātis superesset, atque id facile extrahī posse intellexeret, obsidēs imperat, et quid in annōs singulōs vectīgālis populō Rōmānō Britannia penderet cōstituit. Interdicit atque imperat Cassivellaunō, nē Mandubraciō neu Trinovantibus noceat. 30

The Romans return to Gaul.

- 23 Obsidibus acceptis exercitum reducit ad mare, naves invenit refectas. His deductis, quod et captivorum magnum numerum habebat, et non nullae tempestate depravatae naves, duobus commeatibus exercitum reportare instituit. Ac sic accidit uti ex tanto navium numero, tot navigationibus, neque hoc neque superiore anno ulla omnino navis, quae milites portaret, desideraretur, at ex eis, quae inanēs ex continenti ad eum remitterentur [et] prioris commeatus expositis militibus et quas postea Labienus faciendas curaverat numero LX, perpaucae locum caperent; reliquae ferē omnes reciderentur. Quas cum aliquamdiu Caesar frustrā expectasset, ne anni tempore a navigatione excluderetur, quod aequinoctium suberat, necessario angustius milites conlocavit, ac summā tranquillitate consecuta, secundā initā cum solvisset vigiliā, primā luce terram attigit omnesque incolumēs naves perduxit.

Food being scarce, the army is quartered in detachments for the winter.

- 24 Subductis navibus concilioque Gallorum Samarobriva peractō, quod eō anno frumentum in Galliā propter siccitates angustius provenerat, coactus est aliter ac superioribus annis exercitum in hibernis collocare legionesque in plures civitates distribuere; ex quibus unam in Morinos ducendam C. Fabiō legatō dedit, alteram in Nervios Q. Ciceroni, tertiam in Esuvios L. Roscio, quartam in Remis cum T. Labienō in confinio Treverorum hiemare iussit, tres in Bellovacis conlocavit: his M. Crassum et L. Munatium Plancum et C. Trebonium legatos praefecit.

Unam legionem, quam proximē trans Padum con-

scripserat, et cohortēs v in Eburōnes, quōrum pars
māxima est inter Mosam ac Rhēnum, quī sub imperiō
Ambiorigis et Catuvolci erant, misit. His militibus Q.
Titūrium Sabīnum et L. Aurunculēium Cottam lēgātōs
praesesse iussit. Ad hunc modum distribūtis legiōni- 5
bus facillimē inopiae rei frūmentariae sēsē medēri posse
existimāvit. Atque hārum tamen omnium legiōnum
hiberna, praeter eam, quam L. Rōsciō in pācātissimam
et quiētissimam partem dūcendam dederat, milibus pas-
suum c continēbantur. Ipse intereā, quoad legiōnēs 10
conlocātās mūnitaque hiberna cōgnōvisset, et Galliā
morārī cōstituit.

Tasgetius, a friend of the Romans, is slain.

Erat in Carnutibus summō locō nātus Tasgetius, 25
cūius māiōrēs in suā civitāte rēgnum obtinuerant. Huic
Caesar prō eius virtūte atque in sē benevolentia, quod 15
in omnibus bellis singulārī eius operā fuerat ūsus, māiō-
rum locum restituerat. Tertium iam hunc annum rēg-
nantem inimici palam multis ex civitāte auctōribus in-
terfēcērunt. Dēfertur ea rēs ad Caesarem. Ille veri-
tus, quod ad plūrēs pertinēbat, nē civitās eōrum im- 20
pulsū dēficeret, L. Plancum cum legiōne ex Belgiō ce-
leriter in Carnutēs proficisci iubet ibique hiemāre; quō-
rumque operā cōgnōverit Tasgetium interfectum, hōs
comprehēnsōs ad sē mittere. Interim ab omnibus [lē-
gātīs quaestōribusque], quibus legiōnēs trādiderat, cer- 25
tior factus est in hiberna perventum locumque hibernis
esse mūnitum.

Ambiorix and Catuvolcus attack the winter camp of Sabinus.

Diēbus circiter xv quibus in hiberna ventum est, 26
initium repentinī tumultūs ac dēfectiōnis ortum est ab

Ambiorīge et Catuvolcō; quī, cum ad finēs rēgnī suī
 Sabīnō Cottaēque praestō fuissent frūmentumque in
 hiberna comportāvissent, Indūtiomārī Trēverī nūntiīs
 impulsī suōs concitāvērunt subitōque oppressis lignā-
 5 tōribus māgnā manū ad castra oppūgnanda vēnērunt.
 Cum celeriter nostrī arma cēpissent vāllumque ascen-
 dissent, atque ūnā ex parte Hispānīs equitibus ēmissis
 equestri proeliō superiōrēs fuissent, dēspērātā rē hostēs
 suōs ab oppūgnātiōne redūxērunt. Tum suō mōre
 10 conclāmāvērunt, utī aliquī ex nostrīs ad colloquium
 prōdīret: habēre sēsē, quae dē rē commūnī dicere vel-
 lent, quibus rēbus contrōversiās minui posse spērarent.

Ambiorix gives treacherous advice to Sabinus.

27 Mittitur ad eōs colloquendī causā C. Arpinēius,
 eques Rōmānus, familiāris Q. Titūrī, et Q. Iūnius ex
 15 Hispāniā quīdam, quī iam ante missū Caesaris ad Am-
 biorīgem ventitāre cōsuērat; apud quōs Ambiorix ad
 hunc modum locūtus est: Sēsē prō Caesaris in sē bene-
 ficiīs plūrimū eī cōnfītērī dēbēre, quod ēius operā stī-
 pendīō liberātus esset quod Atuatucis, finitimīs suīs,
 20 pendere cōsuēset, quodque eī et filius et frātris filius ā
 Caesare remissī essent, quōs Atuatuci obsidum numerō
 missōs apud sē in servitūte et catēnīs tenuissent; neque
 id quod fēcērit dē oppūgnātiōne castrōrum aut iūdiciō
 aut voluntāte suā fēcisse, sed coāctū cīvitatīs; suaque
 25 esse ēius modī imperia, ut nōn minus habēret iūris in
 sē multitudō quam ipse in multitudinē.

Civitatī porrō hanc fuisse bellī causam, quod repen-
 tinae Gallōrum coniūrātiōnī resistere nōn potuerit. Id
 sē facile ex humilitāte suā probāre posse, quod nōn
 30 adeō sit imperītus rērum, ut suīs cōpiīs populum Rō-

mānum superārī posse cōfidat. Sed esse Galliae commūne cōsiliū; omnibus hibernīs Caesaris oppūgnandis hunc esse dictum diem, nē qua legiō alterī legiōnī subsidiō venīre posset. Nōn facile Gallōs Gallīs negāre potuisse, praesertim cum dē recūperandā commūnī 5 libertāte cōsiliū initum vidērētur.

Quibus quoniam prō pietāte satisfēcerit, habēre nunc sē ratiōnem offici prō beneficiis Caesaris; monēre, orāre Titūrium prō hospitio, ut suae ac militum salutī cōsulat. Māgnam manum Germānōrum conductam 10 Rhēnum trānsisse; hanc adfore bīduō. Ipsōrum esse cōsiliū, velintne prius quam finitimī sentiant, ēductōs ex hibernīs militēs aut ad Cicerōnem aut ad Labiēnum, dēducere, quōrum alter milia passuum circiter L, alter paulō amplius ab eis absit. Illud sē pollicērī et 15 iūre iūrاندō cōfirmāre tūtum sē iter per suōs finēs datūrum. Quod cum faciat, et civitātī sēsē cōsulere, quod hibernīs levētur, et Caesarī prō eius meritīs grātiam referre. Hac orātiōne habitā discēdit Ambiorix.

*Some of the Roman officers are unwilling to leave
their camp.*

Arpinēius et Iūnius quae audierant ad lēgātōs dē- 28 ferunt. Illī repentinā rē perturbātī, etsī ab hoste ea dicēbantur, tamen nōn negligenda existimābant; māximēque hāc rē permovēbantur, quod civitātem ignōbilem atque humilem Eburōnum suā sponte populō Rōmānō bellum facere ausam vix erat crēdendum. Ita 25 que ad cōsiliū rem dēferunt māgnaque inter eōs existit contrōversia. L. Aurunculēius complūrēsque tribūnī militum et primōrum ordinum centuriōnēs nihil temerē agendum, neque ex hibernīs iniūssū Caesaris

discēdendum exīstimābant; quantāsvīs cōpiās etiam Germānōrum sustinērī posse mūnitīs hibernīs docēbant; rem esse testimōniō, quod primum hostiū impetum multis ultrō vulneribus inlātīs fortissimē sustinuerint; rē frūmentāriā nōn premī; intereā et ex proximīs hibernīs et ā Caesare conventūra subsidia; postrēmō quid esse levius aut turpius quam auctōre hoste dē summīs rēbus capere cōsiliū?

Sabinus is anxious to retreat.

29 Contrā ea Titūrius sērō factūrōs clāmitābat, cum
10 māiōrēs manūs hostiū adiūctīs Germānīs convēnissent, aut cum aliquid calamitātis in proximīs hibernīs esset acceptum. Brevem cōsulendī esse occāsionem. Caesarem sē arbitrārī profectum in Italiam; neque aliter Carnutes interficiundī Tasgetī cōsiliū fuisse cap-
15 tūrōs neque Eburōnēs, si ille adesset, tantā contemp-
tione nostrī ad castra ventūrōs. Sēsē nōn hostem auctōrem, sed rem spēctare: subesse Rhēnum; māgnō esse Germānīs dolōrī Ariovistī mortem et superiōrēs nostrās victōriās; ārdēre Galliam tot contumēliis acceptis
20 sub populī Rōmānī imperium redāctam, superiōre glōriā reī militāris exstīntā. Postrēmō quis hōc sibi persuādēret sine certā spē Ambiorigem ad ēius modī cōsiliū dēscendisse? Suam sententiam in utramque partem esse tūtā: si nihil esset dūrius, nūllō cum periculō
25 ad proximam legiōnem perventūrōs; si Gallia omnis cum Germānīs cōsentīret, ūnam esse in celeritāte positā salutem. Cottae quidem atque eōrum quī dissentīrent cōsiliū quem habēre exitum? in quō si nōn praesēns periculum, at certē longinquā obsidiōne famēs
30 esset timenda.

Cotta yields to the opinion of Sabinus.

Hāc in utramque partem disputatiōne habitā, cum 30
 ā Cottā primisque ordinibus ācriter resisterētur, “Vince-
 cite,” inquit, “sī ita vultis,” Sabīnus, et id clāriōre vōce,
 ut māgna pars militum exaudīret; “neque is sum,” in-
 quit, “quī gravissimē ex vōbīs mortis periculō terrear. 5
 Hī sapient; sī gravius quid acciderit, abs tē ratiōnem
 reposcent; quī, sī per tē liceat, perendinō diē cum proxi-
 mīs hibernīs coniūctī communem cum reliquīs bellī
 cāsum sustineant, nōn rēiectī et relēgātī longē ā cēterīs
 aut ferrō aut fame intereant.” 10

The Romans march from the camp.

Cōnsurgitur ex cōnsiliō; comprehendunt utrumque 31
 et ōrant, nē suā dissēnsiōne et pertināciā rem in sum-
 mum periculum dēdūcant; facilem esse rem, seu ma-
 neant, seu proficiscantur, sī modo ūnum omnēs sentiant
 āc probent; contrā in dissēnsiōne nūllam sē salūtem 15
 perspicere. Rēs disputatiōne ad mediam noctem per-
 dūcitur. Tandem dat Cotta permōtus manūs: supe-
 rat sententia Sabīnī. Prōnūtiātūr primā lūce itūrōs.
 Cōnsūmitur vigiliīs reliqua pars noctis, cum sua quis-
 que mīles circūspiceret, quid sēcum portāre posset, 20
 quid ex instrūmentō hibernōrum relinquere cōgerētur.
 [Omnia excōgitantur quārē nec sine periculō maneātur
 et languōre mīlitum et vigiliīs periculum augeātur.]
 Primā lūce sīc ex castrīs proficiscuntur ut quibus esset
 persuāsum nōn ab hoste sed ab homine amīcissimō 25
 [Ambiorige] cōnsilium datum, longissimō agmine
 māximīsque impedimentīs.

They are attacked by the ambushed Gauls.

At hostēs, posteāquam ex nocturnō fremitū vigiliīs- 32
 que dē protectiōne eōrum sēnsērunt, conlocātīs insidiīs

bipertitō in silvis opportūnō atque occultō locō ā milibus passuum circiter duōbus Rōmānōrum adventum exspectābant; et cum sē māior pars agminis in māgnam convallem dēmisset, ex utrāque parte ēius vallis subitō
5 sē ostendērunt novissimōsque premere et prīmōs prohibēre ascēnsū atque inīquissimō nostrīs locō proelium committere coepērunt.

Sabinus loses his presence of mind. Cotta is cool and brave.

33 Tum dēmum Titūrius, quī nihil ante prōvidisset, trepidāre et concursāre cohortēsque dispōnere, haec
10 tamen ipsa timidē atque ut eum omnia dēficere vidērentur; quod plērumque eis accidere cōsuēvit quī in ipsō negōtiō cōsiliū capere cōguntur. At Cotta, quī cōgitāset haec posse in itinere accidere atque ob eam causam profectiōnis auctor nōn fuisset, nullā in rē
15 commūnī salūtī deerat, et in appellandīs cohortandisque militibus imperātōris et in pūgnā militis officia praestābat.

Cum propter longitudinem agminis nōn facile per sē omnia obīre et quid quōque locō faciendum esset
20 prōvidēre possent, iussērunt prōnūntiārī, ut impedimenta relinquerent atque in orbem cōsisterent. Quod cōsiliū, etsī in ēius modī cāsū reprehendendum nōn est, tamen incommodē cecidit; nam et nostrīs militibus spem minuit et hostēs ad pūgnam alacriōrēs effēcit,
25 quod nōn sine summō timōre et dēspērātiōne id factum vidēbātur. Praetereā accidit, quod fierī necesse erat, ut vulgō militēs ab signīs discēderent, quaeque quisque eōrum cārissima habēret, ab impedimentis petere atque arripere properāret; clāmōre et flētū omnia complērentur.

Cunning tactics of Ambiorix.

At barbaris cōsiliū nōn dēfuit. Nam ducēs 34
 eōrum tōtā aciē prōnūntiārī iussērunt nē quis ab locō
 discēderet: illōrum esse praedam atque illis reservārī
 quaecumque Rōmānī reliquissent; proinde omnia in
 victōriā posita exīstimārent. [Erant et virtūte et nu- 5
 merō pūgnandi parēs.] Nostri, tametsi ab duce et ā
 fortūnā dēserēbantur, tamen omnem spem salūtis in
 virtūte pōnēbant, et quotiēns quaeque cohors prōcur-
 rerat, ab eā parte māgnus numerus hostium cadēbat.
 Quā rē animadversā Ambiorix prōnūntiārī iubet ut 10
 procul tēla cōiciant neu propius accēdant, et quam in
 partem Rōmānī impetum fēcerint, cēdant; [levitāte
 armōrum et cotīdiānā exercitātiōne nihil hīs nocērī
 posse,] rūsus sē ad sīgna recipiētēs insequantur.

The fight goes steadily against the Romans.

Quō praeceptō ab eis dīligentissimē observātō, cum 35
 quaequam cohors ex orbe excesserat atque impetum
 fēcerat, hostēs vēlōcissimē refugiēbant. Interim eam
 partem nūdārī necesse erat et ab latere apertō tēla re-
 cipere. Rūsus, cum in eum locum, unde erant prō-
 gressi reverti coeperant, et ab eis quī cesserant et ab 20
 eis, quī proximī steterant circumveniēbantur; sīn autem
 locum tenēre vellent, nec virtūti locus relinquebātur
 neque ab tantā multitudīne coniecta tēla cōnfertī vitāre
 poterant. Tamen tot incommodis cōnfectātī, multis
 vulneribus acceptis, resistēbant; et māgnā parte diēi 25
 cōnsūmptā, cum ā primā lūce ad hōram octāvam pū-
 gnārētur, nihil quod ipsīs esset indīgnum committē-
 bant. Tum T. Balventiō, quī superiōre annō primum pī-
 lum dūxerat, virō fortī et māgnae auctōritātis, utrum-

que femur trāgulā trāicitur; Q. Lūcānius, eiusdem ordinis, fortissimē pūgnāns, dum circumventō filiō subvenit, interficitur; L. Cotta lēgātus omnēs cohortēs ordinēsque adhortāns in adversum ōs fundā vulnerātur.

Sabinus parleys with Ambiorix.

- 36 His rēbus permōtus Q. Titūrius, cum procul Ambiorīgem suōs cohortantem cōspexisset, interpretem suum Cn. Pompēium ad eum mittit rogātum, ut sibi militibusque parcat. Ille appellātus respondet: Sī velit sēcum conloquī, licēre; spērāre ā multitudīne impetrārī posse quod ad militum salutē pertineat; ipsī vērō nihil nocitum irī, inque eam rem sē suam fidem interpōnere. Ille cum Cottā sauciō commūnicat, sī videātur, pūgnā ut excēdant et cum Ambiorīge ūnā conloquantur: spērāre sē ab eō dē suā ac militum salutē impetrārī posse. Cotta sē ad armātum hostem itūrum negat atque in eō perseverat.

Sabinus is treacherously slain, and nearly all the army killed.

- 37 Sabinus quōs in praesentiā tribūnōs militum circum sē habēbat et prīmōrum ōrdinum centuriōnēs sē sequī iubet; et cum propius Ambiorīgem accessisset, iūssus arma abicere imperātum facit suisque ut idem faciant imperat. Interim, dum dē condiōnibus inter sē agunt longiorque cōsultō ab Ambiorīge instituitur sermō, paulātīm circumventus interficitur.

- Tum vērō suō mōre victōriam conclāmant atque ululātum tollunt, impetūque in nostrōs factō ōrdinēs perturbant. Ibi L. Cotta pūgnāns interficitur cum māximā parte militū. Reliquī sē in castra recipiunt unde erant ēgressī; ex quibus L. Petrosidius aquilifer, cum māgnā multitudīne hostium premerētur, aquilam intrā

vāllum prōicit; ipse prō castris fortissimē pūgnāns occiditur. Illi aegrē ad noctem oppūgnātiōnem sustinent; nocte ad ūnum omnēs dēspērātā salūte sē ipsi interficiunt. Pauci ex proeliō ēlāpsi incertis itineribus per silvās ad T. Labiēnum lēgātum in hiberna perveniunt 5 atque eum dē rēbus gestis certiōrem faciunt.

Ambiorix induces the Atuatuci and Nervii to revolt.

Hāc victōriā sublātus Ambiorix statim cum equi- 38
tātū in Atuatucōs, quī erant eius rēgnō finitimī, proficiscitur, neque noctem neque diem intermittit, pedītātumque sē subsequi iubet. Rē dēmōnstrātā Atuatucis 10
cisque concitātis, posterō diē in Nervios pervenit, hortāturque nē suī in perpetuum liberandī atque ulciscendī Rōmānōs prō eis quās accēperint iniūriis occāsioniem dīmittant. Interfectōs esse lēgātōs duōs māgnamque 15
partem exercitūs interisse dēmōnstrat; nihil esse negōtī subitō oppressam legiōnem quae cum Cicerōne hiemet interfici; sē ad eam rem profitētur adiūtōrem. Facile hāc ōrātiōne Nervii persuādet.

Attack on the camp of Q. Cicero.

Itaque cōfestim dīmissis nūntiis ad Ceutronēs, 39
Grudiōs, Levacōs, Pleumoxiōs, Geidumnōs, quī omnēs 20
sub eōrum imperiō sunt, quam māximās possunt manūs cōgunt, et dē imprōvisō ad Cicerōnis hiberna advolant, nōndum ad eum fāmā dē Titūrī morte perlātā. Huic quoque accidit, quod fuit necesse, ut nōn nulli mīlitēs, quī lignātiōnis mūnitiōnisque causā in silvās 25
discessissent, repentinō equitum adventū interciperentur. Hīs circumventis, māgnā manū Eburōnēs, Nervii, Atuatuci atque hōrum omnium socii et clientēs legiōnem oppūgnāre incipiunt. Nostrī celeriter ad arma

concurrunt, vāllum cōnscedunt. Aegrē is diēs sustentātur, quod omnem spem hostēs in celeritāte pōnēbant atque hanc adepti victōriam in perpetuum sē fore victōrēs cōfidēbant.

Preparations for defense.

40 Mittuntur ad Caesarem cōfestim ā Cicerōne litterae, māgnis prōpositis praemiis si pertulissent; obsessis omnibus viis missi intercipiuntur. Noctū ex materiā, quam mūnitiōnis causā comportāverant, turrēs admodum cxx excitantur incrēdibili celeritāte; quae
10 deesse operi vidēbantur, perficiuntur. Hostēs posterō diē multō maiōribus coāctis cōpiis castra oppūgnant, fossam complent. Ā nostris eādē ratiōne quā pridē resistitur.

Hōc idem reliquīs deinceps fit diēbus. Nūlla pars
15 nocturni temporis ad labōrem intermittitur; nōn aegrīs, nōn vulnerātis facultās quiētis datur. Quaecumque ad proximī diēi oppūgnatiōnem opus sunt noctū comparantur; multae praeūstae sudēs, māgnus mūrālium pilōrum numerus instituitur; turrēs contabulantur; pinnae
20 lōricaeque ex crātibus attexuntur. Ipse Cicerō, cum tenuissimā valētūdine esset, nē nocturnum quidem sibi tempus ad quiētem relinquēbat, ut ultrō militum concursū ac vōcibus sibi parcere cōgerētur.

The Nervii try to persuade Cicero to withdraw.

41 Tum ducēs principēsque Nerviorum, qui aliquem
25 sermōnis aditum causamque amicitiae cum Cicerōne habēbant, conloqui sēsē velle dicunt. Factā potestāte, eadem quae Ambiorix cum Titūriō ēgerat commemorant: Omnem esse in armīs Galliam, Germānōs Rhēnum trānsisse, Caesaris reliquōrumque hiberna oppūg-

nārī. Addunt etiam dē Sabīnī morte; Ambiorīgem ostentant fideī faciundae causā. Errāre eōs dicunt, sī quicquam ab eīs praesidī spērent quī suis rēbus diffīdant; sēsē tamen hōc esse in Cicerōnem populumque Rōmānum animō ut nihil nisi hiberna recūsant, atque hanc inveterāscere cōsuētūdinem nōlīnt; licēre illis per sē incolumibus ex hibernīs discēdere et quāscumque in partēs velint sine metū proficīscī. Cicerō ad haec ūnum modo respondet: Nōn esse cōsuētūdinem populī Rōmānī accipere ab hoste armātō condiciōnem; sī ab armīs discēdere velint, sē adiūtōre ūtantur lēgātōsque ad Caesarem mittant; spērāre sē prō eīus iūstitiā quae petierint impetrātūrōs.

They besiege the camp.

Ab hāc spē repulsī Nervī vāllō pedum x et fossā pedum xv hiberna cingunt. Haec et superiōrum annōrum cōsuētūdine ā nōbīs cōgnōverant et quōsdam dē exercitū nactī captīvōs ab hīs docēbantur; sed nullā ferrāmentōrum cōpiā, quae ēssent ad hunc ūsum idonea, gladiīs caespitēs circumcidere, manibus sagulisque terram exhaurīre cōgēbantur. Quā quidem ex rē hominum multitūdō cōgnōscī potuit; nam minus hōris tribus mīlium passuum in circuitū mūnitiōnem perfēcērunt. Reliquīs diēbus turrēs ad altitudinem vāllī, falcēs testūdīnēsque, quās idem captīvī docuerant, parāre ac facere coepērunt.

A fierce assault is bravely repulsed.

Septimō oppugnātiōnis diē māximō coōrtō ferventēs fūsilēs ex argillā glandēs fundīs et fervefacta iacula in casās, quae mōre Gallicō strāmentis erant tectae, iacere coepērunt. Hae celeriter ignem comprehendērunt et ventī māgnitudine in omnem locum cas-

trōrum distulērunt. Hostēs māximō clāmōre, sicutī partā iam atque explōrātā victōriā, turrēs testūdīnēque agere et scālīs vāllum ascendere coepērunt. At tanta militum virtūs atque ea praesentia animī fuit ut, cum
 5 undique flammā torrērentur māximāque tēlōrum multitudīne premerentur suaeque omnia impedīmenta atque omnēs fortūnās cōnflagrāre intellexerent, nōn modo [dēmigrandī causā] dē vāllō dēcēderet nēmō, sed paene nē respiceret quidem quisquam; ac tum omnēs ācerrimē
 10 fortissimēque pūgnārent.

Hic diēs nostrīs longē gravissimus fuit, sed tamen hunc habuit ēventum ut eō diē māximus numerus hostium vulnerārētur atque interficerētur, ut sē sub ipsō vāllō cōnstipāverant recessumque primīs ultimī nōn da-
 15 bant. Paulum quidem intermissā flammā et quōdam locō turri adāctā et contingente vāllum, tertiae cohortis centuriōnēs ex eō quō stābant locō recessērunt suōsque omnēs remōvērunt; nūtū vōcibusque hostēs, sī introīre vellent, vocāre coepērunt; quōrum prōgredi
 20 ausus est nēmō. Tum ex omnī parte lapidibus coniectis dēturbātī turrisque succēnsa est.

Rivalry of two centurions.

44 Erant in eā legiōne fortissimī virī, centuriōnēs, quī iam primīs ōrdinibus adpropinquārent, T. Pullō et L. Vorēnus. Hī perpetuās inter sē contrōversiās habē-
 25 bant uter alterī anteferrētur, omnibusque annis dē locō summīs simultātibus contendēbant. Ex hīs Pullō, cum ācerrimē ad mūnitiōnēs pūgnārētur, “Quid dubitās,” inquit, “Vorēne? aut quem locum tuae probandae virtūtis exspectās? Hic diēs dē nostrīs contrōversiīs
 30 iūdicābit.” Haec cum dixisset, prōcēdit extrā mūnī-

tiōnēs quaeque pars hostium cōnfertissima est vīsa inrumpit.

Nē Vorēnus quidem sēsē tum vāllō continet, sed omnium veritus exīstimātiōnem subsequitur. Mediocri spatiō relictō Pullō pilum in hostēs inmittit atque 5 ūnum ex multitudine prōcurrentem trāicit; quō percussō et exanimātō hunc scūtis prōtegunt hostēs, in illum ūniversī tēla cōiciunt neque dant prōgrediendī facultātem. Trānsfigitur scūtum Pullōnī et verūtum in balteō dēfigitur. Avertit hic cāsus vāginam et gla- 10 dium ēdūcere cōnantī dextram morātur manum, impedītumque hostēs circumsistunt. Succurrit inimicus illi Vorēnus et labōrantī subvenit.

Ad hunc sē cōfestim ā Pullōne omnis multitūdō convertit [illum verūtō trānsfixum arbitrantur]. Gla- 15 diō comminus rem gerit Vorēnus atque ūnō interfectō reliquōs paulum prōpellit; dum cupidius instat, in locum dēiectus inferiōrem concidit. Huic rūsus circumventō subsidium fert Pullō, atque ambō incolumēs complūribus interfectis summā cum laude sēsē intrā mūnī- 20 tiōnēs recipiunt. Sic fortūna in contentiōne et certāmine utrumque versāvit ut alter alterī inimicus auxiliō salutīque esset neque dīiūdicārī posset uter utrī virtūte anteferendus vidērētur.

Information of the danger at last reaches Caesar.

Quantō erat in diēs gravior atque asperior oppūg- 45 nātiō, et māximē, quod māgnā parte militum cōfectā vulneribus rēs ad paucitātem dēfēnsōrum pervēnerat, tantō crēbriōrēs litterae nūntiīque ad Caesarem mittēbantur; quōrum pars dēprehēnsa in cōspectū nostrōrum militum cum cruciātū necābātur. Erat ūnus intus 30

Nervius nōmine Verticō, locō nātus honestō, quī ā primā obsidiōne ad Cicerōnem perfūgerat suamque eī fidem praestiterat. Hīc servō spē libertātis māgnisque persuādet praemiīs, ut litterās ad Caesarem dēferat. 5 Hās ille in iaculō inligātās effert; et Gallus inter Gallos sine ūllā suspiciōne versātus ad Caesarem pervenit. Ab eō dē periculīs Cicerōnis legiōnisque cōgnōscitur.

He sends messages to his lieutenants.

46 Caesar acceptīs litterīs hōrā circiter XI diēi statim nūntium, in Bellovacōs ad M. Crassum mittit, cūius 10 hiberna aberant ab eō milia passuum XXV; iubet mediā nocte legiōnem proficisci celeriterque ad sē venire. Exit cum nūntiō Crassus. Alterum ad C. Fabium lēgātum mittit, ut in Atrebātium finēs legiōnem adducat, quā sibi iter faciendum sciēbat. Scribit Labiēnō, sī rei 15 pūblicae commodō facere possit, cum legiōne ad finēs Nerviorū veniat; reliquam partem exercitūs, quod paulō aberat longius, nōn putat exspectandam; equitēs circiter cccc ex proximīs hibernīs cōgit.

Crassus meets him; but Labienus remains at his post.

47 Hōrā circiter III ab antecursōribus dē Crassī ad- 20 ventū certior factus, eō diē milia passuum XX prōgreditur. Crassum Samarobrīvae praeficit legiōnemque eī attribuit, quod ibi impedimenta exercitūs, obsidēs civitātum, litterās pūblicās frūmentumque omne quod eō tolerandae hiemis causā dēvēxerat, relinquēbat. Fa- 25 bius, ut imperātum erat, nōn ita multum morātus in itinere cum legiōne occurrit. Labiēnus interitū Sabīnī et caede cohortium cōgnitā, cum omnēs ad eum Trēverōrum cōpiae vēnissent, veritus nē, sī ex hibernīs fugae similem profectiōnem fēcisset, hostium impetum

sustinēre nōn posset, praesertim quōs recentī victōriā efferrī sciret, litterās Caesarī remittit quantō cum periculō legiōnem ex hibernīs ēductūrus esset; rem gestam in Eburōnibus perscribit; docet omnēs equitātūs peditātūsque cōpiās Trēverōrum III milia passuum longē 5 ab suis castris cōnsēdisse.

A letter tied to a dart is thrown into Cicerō's camp.

Caesar cōsiliō ēius probātō, etsī opīniōne trium 48 legiōnum deiectus ad duās reciderat, tamen ūnum commūnī salūtī auxilium in celeritāte pōnēbat. Vēnit māgnīs itineribus in Nerviōrum finēs. Ibi ex captivīs cōg- 10 nōscit quae apud Cicerōnem gerantur quantōque in periculō rēs sit. Tum cuidam ex equitibus Gallīs māgnīs praemiīs persuādet utī ad Cicerōnem epistulam dēferat. Hanc Graecis cōnscriptam litterīs mittit, nē interceptā epistulā nostra ab hostibus cōnsilia cōgnōs- 15 cantur. Sī adire nōn possit, monet ut trāgulam cum epistulā ad āmentum dēligatā intrā mūnitiōnēs castrōrum abiciat. In litterīs scribit sē cum legiōnibus profectum celeriter adfore; hortātur, ut prīstinam virtutem retineat. Gallus periculum veritus, ut erat prae- 20 ceptum, trāgulam mittit.

Haec cāsū ad turrim adhaesit, neque ā nostrīs bīduō animadversa, tertiō diē ā quōdam milite cōspicitur, dēmpla ad Cicerōnem dēfertur. Ille perlēctam in conventū militum recitat māximāque omnēs laetitiā adficit. 25 Tum fūmī incendiōrum procul vidēbantur; quae rēs omnem dubitātiōnem adventūs legiōnum expulit.

The Gauls move off to meet Caesar.

Gallī rē cōgnitā per explōrātōrēs obsidiōnem relin- 49 quunt; ad Caesarem omnibus cōpiīs contendunt. Haec

erant armāta circiter milia LX. Cicerō datā facultāte Gallum ab eōdem Verticōne, quem suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, repetit quī litterās ad Caesarem dēferat. Hunc admonet iter cautē dīligenterque faciat. Perscribit
 5 in litterīs hostēs ab sē discessisse omnemque ad eum multitudinem convertisse. Quibus litterīs circiter mediā nocte Caesar adlātīs suōs facit certiōrēs eōsque ad dimicandum animō cōfirmat.

Posterō diē lūce primā movet castra et circiter milia
 10 passuum IIII prōgressus trāns vallem et rīvum multitudinem hostium cōspicātur. Erat māgnī periculī rēs tantulīs cōpiīs iniquō locō dimicāre; tum, quoniam ob-
 sidiōne liberātum Cicerōnem sciēbat, aequō animō remittendum dē celeritāte exīstimābat; cōnsidit et quam
 15 aequissimō potest locō castra commūnit, atque haec, etsi erant exigua per sē, vix hominum milium VII, praesertim nūllis cum impedimentis, tamen angustiis viarum quam māximē potest contrahit, eō cōnsiliō, ut in summam contemptiōnem hostibus veniat. Interim
 20 speculātōribus in omnēs partēs dimissis explōrat quō commodissimē itinere vallem trānsire possit.

He manoeuvres for an advantageous position.

50 Eō diē parvulis equestribus proeliis ad aquam factis utriūque sēsē suō locō continent: Galli, quod ampliōrēs cōpiās quae nōndum convēnerant expectābant; Caesar, si forte timōris simulatiōne hostēs in suum locum
 25 ēlicere posset, ut citrā vallem prō castris proeliō contenderet; si id efficere nōn posset, ut explōrātis itineribus minōre cum periculō vallem rīvumque trānsiret. Primā lūce hostium equitātus ad castra accēdit proeliumque cum nostris equitibus committit. Caesar cōnsultō
 30

equitēs cēdere sēque in castra recipere iubet; simul ex omnibus partibus castra altiōre vāllō mūniri portāsque obstruī atque in hīs administrandis rēbus quam māximē concursārī et cum simulātiōne agī timōris iubet.

The enemy attack him and are defeated.

Quibus omnibus rēbus hostēs invītātī cōpiās trā- 51
dūcunt aciemque iniquō locō cōstituunt; nostrīs vērō etiam dē vāllō dēductis propius accēdunt et tēla intrā mūnitiōnem ex omnibus partibus cōiciunt praecōnibusque circummissis prōnūtiārī iubent, seu quis Gallus seu Rōmānus velit ante hōram tertiam ad sē trānsire, 10 sine periculō licēre; post id tempus nō fore potestatem. Āc sic nostrōs contempsērunt, ut obstrūctis in speciem portis singulis ōrdinibus caespitem, quod eā nō posse intrōrumpere vidēbantur, alii vāllum manū scindere, alii fossās complēre inciperent. Tum 15 Caesar omnibus portis ēruptiōne factā equitātūque ēmissō celeriter hostēs in fugam dat, sic utī omnīnō pūgnandī causā resisteret nēmō; māgnumque ex eis numerum occidit atque omnēs armīs exuit.

Caesar joins Cicero and praises his gallant defense.

Longius prōsequi veritus, quod silvae palūdēsque 52
intercēdēbant [neque etiam parvulō dētrīmentō illōrum locum relinqui vidēbat], omnibus suis incolumibus eōdem diē ad Cicerōnem pervēnit. Īnstitūtās turrēs, testūdīnēs mūnitiōnēsque hostium admīrātur; prōductā legiōne cōgnōscit nōn decimum quemque esse reliquum 25 mīlitem sine vulnere; ex hīs omnibus iūdicat rēbus quantō cum periculō et quantā virtūte rēs sint administrātae. Cicerōnem prō eius meritō legiōnemque conlaudat; centuriōnēs singillatim tribūnōsque mīlitum ap-

pellat, quōrum ēgregiam fuisse virtutem testimoniō Cicerōnis cōgnōverat. Dē cāsū Sabīnī et Cottae certius ex captivīs cōgnōscit. Posterō diē contiōne habitā rem gestam prōpōnit, milites cōsōlātur et cōnfirmat; quod
 5 dētrīmentum culpā et temeritatē lēgātī sit acceptum, hōc aequiōre animō ferundum docet, quod beneficiō deōrum immortalīum et virtūte eōrum expiātō incommodō neque hostibus diūtina laetitia neque ipsīs longior dolor relinquātur.

Attack on Labienus deferred. Caesar decides to spend the winter in Gaul, because of the prospects of a general uprising.

53 Interim ad Labiēnum per Rēmōs incrēdibilī celeritatē dē victoriā Caesaris fāma perfertur, ut, cum ab hibernīs Cicerōnis mīlia passuum abesset circiter LX, eōque post hōram nōnam diēi Caesar pervēnisset, ante mediam noctem ad portās castrōrum clāmōr orerētur,
 15 quō clāmōre significātiō victōriae grātulātiōque ab Rēmīs Labiēnō fieret. Hāc fāmā ad Trēverōs perlātā Indūtiomārus, quī posterō diē castra Labiēnī oppugnāre dēcrēverat, noctū profugit cōpiāsque omnēs in Trēverōs redūcit.

20 Caesar Fabium cum suā legiōne remittit in hiberna, ipse cum III legiōnibus circum Samarobrīvā trīnīs hibernīs hiemāre cōstituit, et quod tantī mōtūs Galliae exstiterant, tōtam hiemem ipse ad exercitum manēre dēcrēvit. Nam illō incommodō dē Sabīnī morte per
 25 lātō omnēs ferē Galliae civitatēs dē bellō cōsultābant, nūntiōs lēgatiōnēsque in omnēs partēs dīmittēbant; et quid reliquī cōsiliī caperent atque unde initium bellī fieret explōrābant nocturnaue in locīs dēserti concilia habēbant. Neque ūllum ferē tōtius hiemis tempus sine
 30 sollicitūdine Caesaris intercessit quā aliquem dē cōn-

siliis ac motū Gallōrum nūntium acciperet. In hīs ab L. Rōsciō, quem legiōnī XIII praefecerat, certior factus est māgnās [Gallōrum] cōpiās eārum civitātum quae Aremoricae appellantur oppugnandī suī causā convēnisse neque longius milibus passuum VIII ab hibernis suis āfuisse, sed nūntiō adlātō dē victoriā Caesaris, discessisse adeō ut fugae similis discessus vidērētur.

The Senones and others prepare to revolt.

At Caesar, principibus cuiusque civitatis ad se ēvo- 54
cātis aliōs territandō, cum se scīre quae fierent dēnū-
tiāret, aliōs cohortandō, māgnam partem Galliae in offi- 10
ciō tenuit. Tamen Senones, quae est civitas in primis
firma et māgnae inter Gallōs auctōritātis, Cavarinum,
quem Caesar apud eōs rēgem cōstituerat, cuius frāter
Moritasgus adventū in Galliam Caesaris cuiusque māiō-
rēs rēgnū obtinuerant, interficere pūblicō cōsiliō 15
cōnātī, cum ille praesēnsisset ac profūgisset, usque ad
finēs insecutī rēgnō domōque expulērunt; et missis ad
Caesarem satisfaciendī causā lēgātis, cum is omnem
ad se senātum venīre iussisset, dictō audientēs nōn
fuērunt. 20

Ac tantum apud hominēs barbarōs valuit esse ali-
quōs reptōs principēs bellī inferendī, tantamque om-
nibus voluntātum commūtatiōnem attulit ut, praeter
Haeduōs et Rēmōs, quōs praecipuō semper honōre Cae-
sar habuit, alterōs prō vetere ac perpetuā ergā populum 25
Rōmānum fidē, alterōs prō recentibus Gallici bellī offi-
ciis, nūlla ferē civitas fuerit nōn suspecta nobīs. Idque
adeō haud sciō mirandumne sit, cum complūribus aliis
dē causis, tum māximē quod quī virtūte bellī omnibus
gentibus praeferēbantur, tantum se eius opiniōnis dē- 30

perdidisse ut populi Rōmānī imperia perferrent, gravissimē dolēbant.

Efforts of Indutiomarus.

- 55 Trēverī vērō atque Indūtiomārus tōtīus hiemis nūllum tempus intermiserunt quā trāns Rhēnum lēgātōs
 5 mitterent, civitatēs sollicitārent, pecūniās pollicērentur, magnā parte exercitūs nostrī interfectā multō minōrem superesse dicerent partem. Neque tamen ullī civitatī Germānōrum persuādērī potuit ut Rhēnum trānsiret, cum sē bis expertōs dicerent, Ariovistī bellō et Tēcte-
 10 rōrum trānsitū: nōn esse amplius fortunam temptātūrōs. Hāc spē lapsus Indūtiomārus nihilō minus cōpiās cōgere, exercēre, ā finitimīs equōs parāre, exsulēs damnatōsque tōtā Galliā magnīs praemiīs ad sē adlicere coepit. Ac tantam sibi iam hīs rēbus in Galliā auctōri-
 15 tatem comparāverat, ut undique ad eum lēgatiōnēs concurrerent, grātiā atque amicitiam pūblicē prīvātimque peterent.

He plans to attack Labienus, with the help of several tribes.

- 56 Ubi intellēxit ultrō ad sē venīrī, alterā ex parte Senonēs Carnutēsque cōnscentiā facinoris instīgārī, alterā
 20 Nerviōs Atuatucōsque bellum Rōmānīs parāre neque sibi voluntariōrum cōpiās dēfore, si ex finibus suis prōgredi coepisset, armātum concilium indicit. Hōc mōre Gallōrum est initium bellī; quō lēge commūnī omnēs pūberēs armātī convenīre cōguntur; quī ex eis novissimus venit, in cōspectū multitudinis omnibus cruciātibus adfectus necātur. In eō conciliō Cingetorīgē,
 25 alterius prīncipem factiōnis, generum suum, quem suprà dēmōstrāvimus Caesaris secūtum fidem ab eō nōn discessisse, hostem iūdicat bonaque eius pūblicat. Hīs
 30 rēbus cōfectis in conciliō prōnūntiat arcessitum sē ā

Senonibus et Carnutibus aliisque complūribus Galliae civitatibus; hūc itūrum per finēs Rēmōrum eōrumque agrōs populātūrum, ac priusquam id faciat, castra Labiēni oppugnātūrum. Quae fieri velit praecipit.

Caution of Labienus.

Labiēnus, cum et loci nātūrā et manū mūnitissimis 57 castris sēsē tenēret, dē suō ac legiōnis periculō nihil timēbat; nē quam occāsiōnem rei bene gerendae dimitteret cōgitābat. Itaque ā Cingetorige atque ēius propinquīs ōrātiōne Indūtiomārī cōgnitā quam in conciliō habuerat, nūntiōs mittit ad finitimās civitatēs equitēs- 10 que undique ēvocat; hīs certam diem conveniendī dīcit. Interim prope cotidiē cum omnī equitātū Indūtiomārus sub castris ēius vagābātur, aliās ut situm castrōrum cōgnōsceret, aliās conloquendī aut territandī causā; equitēs plērumque omnēs tēla intrā vāllum cōiciēbant. 15 Labiēnus suōs intrā mūnitiōnem continēbat timōrisque opiniōnem quibuscumque poterat rēbus augēbat.

Defeat and death of Indutiomarus.

Cum māiōre in diēs contemptiōne Indūtiomārus ad 58 castra accēderet, nocte ūnā intrōmissis equitibus omnium finitimārum civitātum quōs arcessendōs cūrāve- 20 rat, tantā diligentiā omnēs suōs custōdiīs intrā castra continuit ut nullā ratiōne ea rēs ēnūntiārī aut ad Trēverōs perferri posset. Interim ex cōsuētūdine cotidiānā Indūtiomārus ad castra accēdit atque ibi māgnam partem diēi cōsūmit; equitēs tēla cōciunt et māgnā 25 cum contumeliā verbōrum nostrōs ad pūgnam ēvocant. Nullō ab nostris datō respōnsō, ubi vīsum est, sub vespere dispersi ac dissipāti discēdunt.

Subitō Labiēnus duābus portis omnem equitātum

ēmittit; praecipit atque interdicit, perterritis hostibus
atque in fugam coniectis — quod fore, sicut accidit,
vidēbat — ūnum omnēs petant Indūtiomārum, neu quis
quem prius vulneret quam illum interfectum viderit,
5 quod morā reliquōrum spatium nactum illum effugere
nōlēbat; māgna prōpōnit eis quī occiderint praemia;
submittit cohortēs equitibus subsidiō. Comprobat ho-
minis cōsiliū fortūna, et cum ūnum omnēs peterent,
in ipsō flūminis vadō dēprehēsus Indūtiomārus inter-
10 ficitur, caputque eius refertur in castra; redeuntēs equi-
tēs quōs possunt cōsectantur atque occidunt. Hāc
rē cōgnitā omnēs Eburōnum et Nerviōrum quae con-
vēnerant cōpiae discēdunt, paulōque habuit post id fac-
tum Caesar quiētiōrem Galliam.

LIBER SEXTUS.

SECOND INVASION OF GERMANY, B. C. 53.

Caesar increases his army.

Multis dē causis Caesar māiōrem Galliae mōtum **1**
exspectāns, per M. Silānum, C. Antistium Rēgīnum,
T. Sextium lēgātōs dilēctum habēre īnstituit; simul ab
Cn. Pompēiō prōcōsule petit, quoniam ipse ad urbem
cum imperiō rei pūblīcae causā remanēret, quōs ex **5**
Cisalpinā Galliā cōsul sacrāmētō rogāssēt, ad sīgna
convenīre et ad sē proficīscī iubēret; māgnī interesse
etiam in reliquum tempus ad opīniōnem Galliae exīsti-
māns tantās vidēri Italiae facultātēs ut, sī quid esset in
bellō dētrīmentī acceptum, nōn modo id brevī tempore **10**
sarcīrī, sed etiam māiōribus augērī cōpiīs posset. Quod
cum Pompēius et rei pūblīcae et amīcitiae tribuisset,
celeriter cōfectō per suōs dilēctū, tribus ante exāctam
hiemem et cōstitutīs et adductis legiōnibus, duplicātō-
que eārum cohortium numerō, quās cum Q. Titūriō **15**
āmiserat, et celeritāte et cōpiīs docuit quid populī Rō-
mānī disciplīna atque opēs possent.

Several of the northeastern Gallic tribes revolt.

Interfectō Indūtiomārō, ut docuimus, ad ēius pro- **2**
pinquōs ā Trēveris imperium dēfertur. Illī finitimōs
Germānōs sollicitāre et pecūniam pollicērī nōn dēsis- **20**

tunt. Cum ā proximīs impetrāre nōn possent, ulteriōrēs temptant. Inventis nōn nullis cīvitatibus iūre iūrando inter sē cōfirmant obsidibusque dē pecūniā cavent; Ambiorigem sibi societāte et foedere adiungunt. Quibus rēbus cōgnitis Caesar, cum undique bellum parārī vidēret, Nerviōs, Atuātucōs, Menapiōs, adiūctis Cishēnānis omnibus Germānis, esse in armīs, Senonēs ad imperātum nōn venīre et cum Carnutibus finitimisque cīvitatibus cōnsilia cōmmunicāre, ā Trēveris Germānōs
 10 crēbris lēgatiōnibus sollicitārī, mātūrius sibi dē bellō cōgitandum putāvit.

Caesar lays waste the Nervian country and marches against the Senones.

3 Itaque nōndum hieme cōfectā proximīs IIII coāctis legiōnibus dē imprōvisō in finēs Nerviōrum contēdit, et priusquam illi aut convenīre aut profugere possent, māgnō pecoris atque hominum numerō captō
 15 atque eā praedā militibus concessā vāstātisque agris, in dēditionem venīre atque obsidēs sibi dare coēgit. Eō celeriter cōfectō negōtiō rūsus in hiberna legiōnēs redūxit. Conciliō Galliae primō vēre, ut instituerat, indictō, cum reliquī praeter Senonēs, Carnutēs Trēverōsque vēnissent, initium bellī ac dēfectiōnis hōc esse arbitrātus, ut omnia postpōnere vidērētur, concilium Lute-
 20 tiam Parisiōrum trānsfert. Cōfinēs erant hī Senonibus cīvitatēque patrum memoriā coniūnxerant; sed
 25 ab hōc cōnsiliō āfuisse existimābantur. Hāc rē prō suggestū prōnūntiātā eōdem diē cum legiōnibus in Senonēs proficiscitur māgnisque itineribus eō pervenit.

Submission of the Senones and Carnutes.

4 Cōgnitō eiūs adventū Accō, quī princeps eiūs cōnsiliū fuerat, iubet in oppida multitudinem convenīre.

Cōnantibus, priusquam id effici posset, adesse Rōmānōs nūtiātur. Necessāriō sententiā dēsistunt lēgātōsque dēprecandī causā ad Caesarem mittunt; adeunt per Haeduōs, quōrum antiquitus erat in fidē civitās. Libenter Caesar petentibus Haeduīs dat veniam excūsatiōnem- 5 que accipit, quod aestivum tempus instantis bellī, nōn quaestiōnis esse arbitrābātur. Obsidibus imperātis c, hōs Haeduīs custōdiendōs trādit. Eōdem Carnutēs lēgātōs obsidēsque mittunt, ūsi dēprecātōribus Rēmīs, quōrum erant in clientelā eadem ferunt respōnsa. Per- 10 agit concilium Caesar equitēsque imperat civitatibus.

Caesar goes with five legions against the Menapii.

Hāc parte Galliae pācātā tōtus et mente et animō 5 in bellum Trēverōrum et Ambiorīgis insistit. Cavarinum cum equitatū Senonum sēcum proficisci iubet, nē quis aut ex huius irācundiā aut ex eō quod meruerat 15 odiō civitātis mōtus exsistat. Hīs rēbus cōstitutis, quod prō explorātō habēbat Ambiorigem proeliō nōn esse contentūrum, reliqua eius cōsilia animō circumspiciēbat. Erant Menapii propinqui Eburōnum finibus, perpetuis palūdibus silvisque mūniti, quī ūni ex 20 Galliā dē pāce ad Caesarem lēgātōs numquam miserant. Cum hīs esse hospitium Ambiorīgī sciēbat; item per Trēverōs vēnisse Germānis in amicitiam cōgnōverat. Haec prius illi dētrahenda auxilia existimābat, quam ipsum bellō lacerasset, nē dēspērātā salūte aut sē in 25 Menapiōs abderet. aut cum Trānsrhēnānis congregi cōgerētur. Hōc initō cōsiliō tōtius exercitūs impedimenta ad Labiēnum in Trēverōs mittit duāsque ad eum legiōnēs proficisci iubet; ipse cum legiōnibus expeditis v in Menapiōs proficiscitur. Illi nullā coactā manū, 30

loci praesidiō frētī, in silvās palūdēsque cōfugiunt
suaeque eōdem cōferunt.

He forbids them to harbor Ambiorix.

6 Caesar, partītis cōpiis cum C. Fabiō lēgātō et M.
Crassō quaestōre celeriterque effectis pontibus, adit
5 tripertitō, aedificia vicōsque incendit, māgnō pecoris
atque hominum numerō potitur. Quibus rēbus coacti
Menapii lēgātōs ad eum pācis petendae causā mittunt.
Ille obsidibus acceptis hostium sē habitūrum numerō
cōfirmat, si aut Ambiorigem aut eius lēgātōs finibus
10 suis recēpissent. His cōfirmātis rēbus Commium At-
rebātem cum equitatū custōdis locō in Menapiis relin-
quit; ipse in Trêverōs proficiscitur.

Labienu's doings among the Treveri.

7 Dum haec ā Caesare geruntur, Trêverī māgnis
coactis peditātus equitatūsque cōpiis Labiēnum cum
15 unā legiōne, quae in eōrum finibus hiemābat, adoriri
parābant, iamque ab eō nōn longius biduī viā aberant,
cum duās vēnisse legiōnēs missū Caesaris cōgnōscunt.
Pōsitis castris ā milibus passuum xv auxilia Germānō-
rum exspectāre cōstituunt. Labiēnus, hostium cōg-
20 nitō cōnsiliō, spērāns temeritate eōrum fore aliquam
dimicandi facultātem, praesidiō v cohortium impedi-
mentis relictō, cum xxv cohortibus māgnōque equitatū
contrā hostem proficiscitur, et mille passuum inter-
missō spatiō castra commūnit.

25 Erat inter Labiēnum atque hostem difficili trānsitū
flūmen ripisque praeruptis. Hōc neque ipse trānsire
habēbat in animō neque hostēs trānsitūrōs exīstimābat.
Augēbātur auxiliōrum cotidiē spēs. Loquitur cōsul-
tō palam: Quoniam Germāni adpropinquāre dicantur,

sēsē suās exercitūsque fortūnās in dubium nōn dēvocātūrum, et posterō diē primā lūce castra mōtūrum. Celeriter haec ad hostēs dēferuntur, ut ex māgnō Gallōrum equitum numerō nōn nullōs Gallicis rēbus favēre natūra cōgēbat. Labiēnus nocte, tribūnis militum prī- 5 mīsque ōrdinibus convocātis, quid suī sit cōnsili prōpōnit, et quō facilius hostibus timōris det suspiciōnem, māiōre strepitū et tumultū quam populī Rōmāni fert cōnsuetūdō, castra movērī iubet. Hīs rēbus fugae similem profectiōnem efficit. Haec quoque per explōrā- 10 tōrēs ante lūcem in tantā propinquitāte castrōrum ad hostēs dēferuntur.

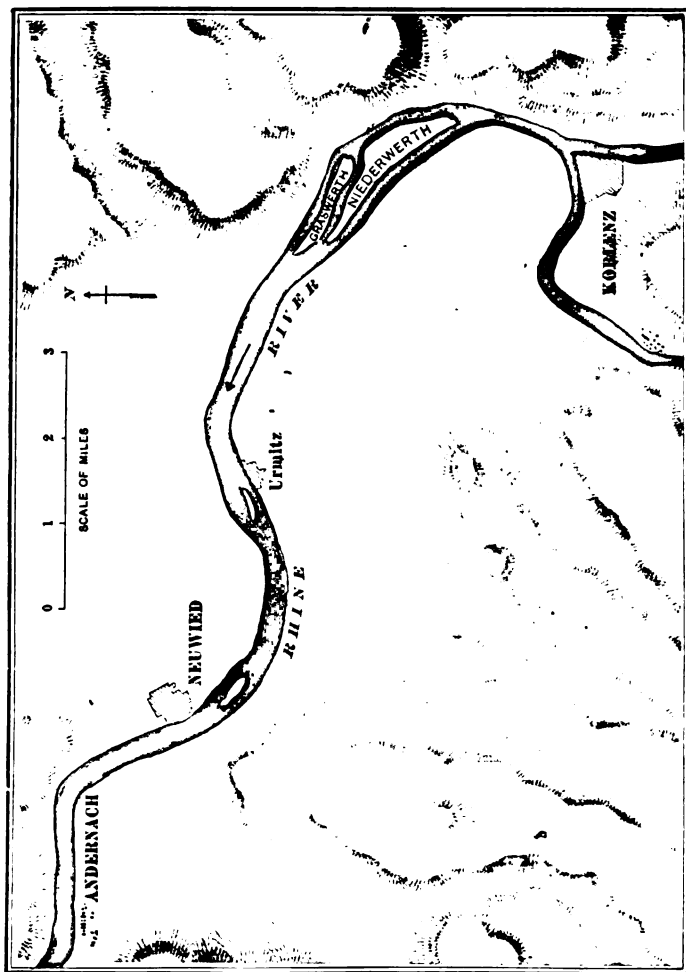
He defeats them in a decisive battle.

Vix agmen novissimum extrā mūnitiōnēs prōcesse- 8 rat, cum Galli—cohortāti inter sē nē spērātam praedam ex manibus dimitterent; longum esse perterritis Rō- 15 mānis Germānōrum auxilium exspectāre; neque suam patī dignitātem ut tantis cōpiis tam exiguam manum, praesertim fugientem atque impeditam, adorīrī nōn audeant — flūmen trānsīre et iniquō locō committere proelium nōn dubitant. Quae fore suspicātus Labiē- 20 nus, ut omnēs citrā flūmen ēliceret, eādē ūsus simulatiōne itineris placidē prōgrediēbātur. Tum praemissis paulum impedimentis atque in tumultō quōdam conlocātis, “Habētis,” inquit, “militēs, quam petistis facultātem; hostem impeditō atque iniquō locō tenētis; 25 praestāte eandem nobīs ducibus virtūtem quam saepe-numerō imperātōrī praestitistis, atque illum adesse et haec cōram cernere exīstimāte.” Simul signa ad hostem convertī aciemque dērigī iubet; et paucis turmis praesidiō ad impedimenta dīmissis reliquōs equitēs ad 30 latera dispōnit.

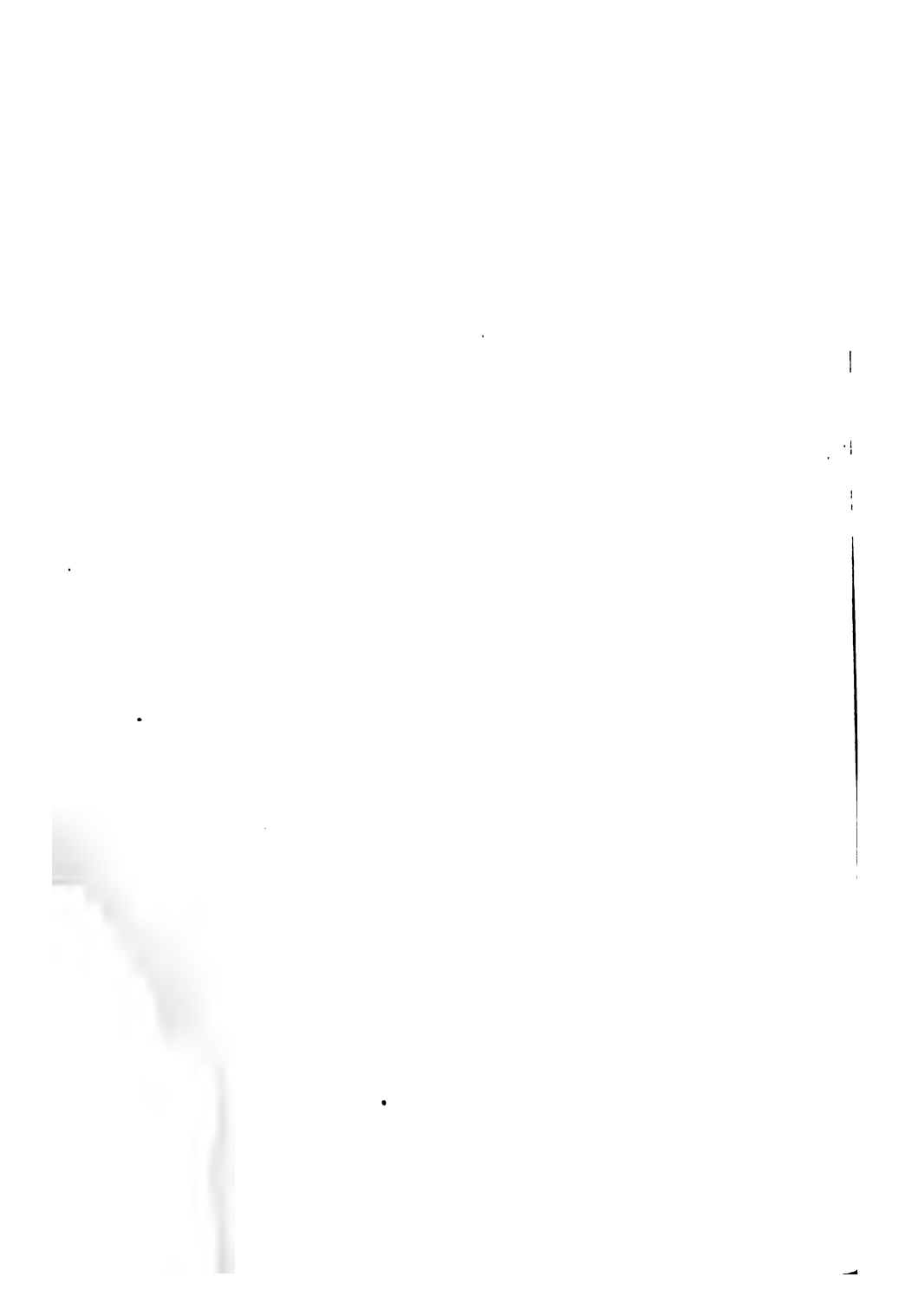
Celeriter nostrī clāmōre sublātō pīla in hostēs immittunt. Illī, ubi praeter spem quōs fugere crēdebant infestis signīs ad sē ire vidērunt, impetum nostrōrum ferre nōn potuērunt, ac primō concursū in fugam con-
 5 iectī proximās silvās petiērunt. Quōs Labiēnus equitātū cōsectātus, māgnō numerō interfectō, complūribus captis, paucis post diēbus cīvitatē recēpit. Nam Germānī quī auxiliō veniēbant, perceptā Trēverōrum fugā, sēsē domum contulērunt. Cum hīs propinquī In-
 10 dūtiomārī, quī dēfectiōnis auctōrēs fuerant, comitatī eōs ex cīvitatē excessērunt. Cingetorigī, quem ab initio permānsisse in officiō dēmōnstrāvimus, principātus atque imperium est trāditum.

Caesar crosses the Rhine a second time.

9 Caesar postquam ex Menapiis in Trēverōs vēnit,
 15 duābus dē causis Rhēnum trānsire cōstituit; quārum ūna erat quod Germānī auxilia contrā sē Trēveris miserant; altera, nē ad eōs Ambiorix receptum habēret. His cōstitutis rēbus paulō suprā eum locum quō ante exercitum trādūxerat facere pontem instituit. Nōtā
 20 atque institūtā ratiōne, māgnō militum studiō, paucis diēbus opus efficitur. Firmō in Trēveris ad pontem praesidiō relictō, nē quis ab hīs subitō mōtus orerētur, reliquās cōpiās equitātumque trādūcit. Ubī, quī ante obsidēs dederant atque in dēditionem vēnerant, pūr-
 25 gandī suī causā ad eum lēgātōs mittunt quī doceant neque auxilia ex suā cīvitatē in Trēverōs missa neque ab sē fidem laesam; petunt atque ōrant ut sibi parcat, nē commūni odiō Germānōrum innocentēs prō nocentibus poenās pendent; sī amplius obsidum velit
 30 dari, pollicentur. Cōgnitā Caesar causā reperit ab Suē-



THE RHINE FROM KOBLENZ TO ANDERNACH.



bīs auxilia missa esse; Ubiōrum satisfactiōnem accipit, aditūs viāsque in Suēbōs perquirit.

He finds that the Suebi have retreated to a forest.

Interim paucis post diēbus fit ab Ubiīs certior Suē- 10
bōs omnēs in ūnum locum cōpiās cōgere, atque eīs nātiōnibus, quae sub eōrum sint imperiō dēnūntiāre ut 5
auxilia peditātūs equitātūsque mittant. His cōgnitis rēbus rem frūmentāriam prōvidet, castris idōneum locum dēligit; Ubiīs imperat ut pecora dēdūcant suaeque omnia ex agris in oppida cōferant, spērāns barbarōs atque imperitōs hominēs inopiā cibāriōrum adductōs ad 10
inīquam pūgnandī condiciōnem posse dēdūcī; mandat ut crēbrōs explōrātōrēs in Suēbōs mittant quaeque apud eōs gerantur cōgnōscant.

Illī imperāta faciunt et paucis diēbus intermissis referunt: Suēbōs omnēs, posteaquam certiōrēs nūntiī dē 15
exercitū Rōmānōrum vēnerint, cum omnibus suis sociōrumque cōpiīs, quās coēgissent, penitus ad extrēmōs finēs sē recēpisse; silvam esse ibi infinitā māgnitūdine, quae appellētur Bācēnis; hanc longē intrōrsus pertinēre, et prō nātivō mūrō obiectam Chēruscōs ab Suēbōrum 20
Suēbōsque ab Chēruscōrum iniūriīs incursiōnibusque prohibēre; ad ēius silvae initium Suēbōs adventum Rōmānōrum exspectāre cōstituisse.

Customs of the Gauls. Political parties.

Quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est, nōn aliē- 11
num esse vidētur dē Galliae Germāniaeque mōribus et 25
quō differant hae nātiōnēs inter sēsē prōpōnere. In Galliā nōn solum in omnibus cīvitatibus atque in omnibus pāgīs partibusque, sed paene etiam in singulis domibus factiōnēs sunt; eārumque factiōnum principēs

sunt quī summam auctōritātem eōrum iūdictiō habēre exīstimantur, quōrum ad arbitrium iūdiciumque summa omnium rērum cōnsiliōrumque redeat. Idque ēius rei causā antiquitus institūtum vidētur, nē quis ex plēbe
 5 contrā potentiōrem auxiliī egēret; suōs enim quisque opprimī et circumveniri nōn patitur, neque, aliter sī faciat, ūllam inter suōs habeat auctōritātem. Haec eadem ratiō est in summā tōtius Galliae; namque omnēs cīvitātēs dīvisae sunt in duās partēs.

Political influence of the Romans. They favor the Haedui.

12 Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius factiōnis prīncipēs erant Haeduī, alterius Sēquanī. Hī, cum per sē minus valērent, quod summa auctōritās antiquitus erat in Haeduīs māgnaeque eōrum erant clientēlae, Germānōs atque Ariovistum sibi adiūnxerant eōsque ad
 15 sē māgnīs iactūrīs pollicitātiōnibusque perdūxerant. Proeliīs vērō complūribus factīs secundis atque omnī nōbilitāte Haeduōrum interfectā, tantum potentiā antecesserant, ut māgnam partem clientium ab Haeduīs ad sē trādūcerent obsidēsque ab hīs prīncipum filiōs
 20 acciperent, et publicē iūrāre cōgerent nihil sē contrā Sequanōs cōnsiliī initūrōs, et partem finitimī agrī per vim occupātam possidērent, Galliaeque tōtius prīncipātum obtinērent. Quā necessitatē adductus Dīviciācus auxiliī petendī causā Rōmam ad senātum profectus in-
 25 fectā rē redierat.

Adventū Caesaris factā commūtātiōne rērum, obsidibus Haeduīs redditīs, veteribus clientēlīs restitūtīs, novīs per Caesarem comparātīs, quod eī quī sē ad eōrum amīcitiā adgregāverant, meliōre condiciōne atque equiōre imperiō sē ūtī vidēbant, reliquīs rēbus eōrum

grātiā dignitāteque amplificatā, Sēquanī principātum dimiserant. In eōrum locum Rēmī successerant; quōs quod adaequāre apud Caesarem grātiā intellegēbātur, ei quī propter veterēs inimicitias nullō modō cum Haeduīs coniungī poterant sē Rēmis in clientēlam dicābant. 5 Hōs illī dīligenter tuēbantur; ita et novam et repente collēctam auctōritātem tenēbant. Eō tamen statū rēs erat ut longē principēs habērentur Haeduī, secundum locum dignitātis Rēmī obtinērent.

The Gallic nobility, Druids and knights. Power of the Druids.

In omnī Galliā eōrum hominum quī aliquō sunt 13 numerō atque honōre, genera sunt duō; nam plēbēs paene servōrum habētur locō, quae nihil audet per sē, nullī adhibētur cōsiliō. Plērique, cum aut aere aliēnō aut māgnitūdine tribūtōrum aut iniūriā potentiōrum premuntur, sēsē in servitūtem dicant nōbilibus; quibus 15 in hōs eadem omnia sunt iūra, quae dominīs in servōs. Sed dē his duōbus generibus alterum est druidum, alterum equitum. Illī rēbus dīvinīs intersunt, sacrificia pūblica ac privāta prōcūrant, religiōnēs interpretantur; ad eōs māgnus adulēscēntium numerus disciplīnae 20 causā concurrit, māgnōque hī sunt apud eōs honōre. Nam ferē dē omnibus contrōversiīs pūblicis privātisque cōstituunt; et, sī quod est admissum facinus, sī caedēs facta, sī dē hērēditāte, dē finibus contrōversia est, idem dēcernunt; praemia poenāsque cōstituunt; sī quī aut 25 privātus aut populus eōrum dēcrētō nōn stetit, sacrificiis interdīcunt. Haec poena apud eōs est gravissima. Quibus ita est interdictum, hī numerō impiōrum ac scelerātōrum habentur, his omnēs dēcēdunt, aditum eōrum sermōnemque dēfugiunt, nē quid ex contāgiōne 30

incommodi accipiant, neque eis petentibus ius redditur neque honos ullus communicatur.

His autem omnibus druidibus praeest unus, qui summam inter eos habet auctoritatem. Hoc mortuo, aut si qui ex reliquis excellit dignitate, succedit aut, si sunt plures pares, suffragio druidum, non numquam etiam armis de principatu contendunt. Hi certo anni tempore in finibus Carnutum, quae regio totius Galliae media habetur, considunt in loco consecrato. Huc
10 omnes undique qui controversias habent conveniunt eorumque decretis iudiciisque parent. Disciplina in Britannia reperta atque inde in Galliam translata existimatur; et nunc qui diligentius eam rem cognoscere volunt plerumque illo discendi causa profiscuntur.

Their privileges. Their doctrines.

14 Druides a bello abesse consueverunt neque tributa una cum reliquis pendunt. [Militiae vacationem omniumque rerum habent immunitatem.] Tantis excitati praemiis et sua sponte multi in disciplinam conveniunt et a parentibus propinquisque mittuntur. Magnum ibi numerum versuum ediscere dicuntur. Itaque annos non
20 nulli vicenos in disciplina permanent. Neque fas esse existimant ea litteris mandare, cum in reliquis ferere rebus, publicis privatisque rationibus, Graecis litteris utantur.

25 Id mihi duabus de causis instituisse videntur, quod neque in vulgus disciplinam efferri velint neque eos qui discunt litteris confisos minus memoriae studere; quod ferere plerisque accidit ut praesidio litterarum diligentiam in perdiscendo ac memoriam remittant. In
3 primis hoc volunt persuadere, non interire animas, sed

ab aliis post mortem trānsire ad aliōs, atque hōc māximē ad virtutem excitārī putant, metū mortis neglēctō. Multa praetereā dē sīderibus atque eōrum mōtū, dē mundi āc terrārum māgnitūdine, dē rērum nātūrā, dē deōrum immortalīum vī āc potestāte disputant et iuventūtī trādunt.

The knights.

Alterum genus est equitum. Hī, cum est ūsus at- 15
que aliquod bellum incidit — quod ferē ante Caesaris adventum quotannis accidere solēbat, utī aut ipsī iniū-
riās inferrent aut inlātās prōpulsārent —, omnēs in bellō 10
versantur, atque eōrum ut quisque est genere cōpiisque amplissimus, ita plūrimōs circum sē ambactōs clientēs-
que habet. Hanc ūnam grātiā potentiamque nōvē-
runt.

Human sacrifices.

Nātiō est omnis Gallōrum admodum dēdita religiō- 16
nibus, atque ob eam causam quī sunt adfectī graviōri-
bus morbīs quīque in proeliis periculisque versantur,
aut prō victimīs hominēs immolant aut sē immolātūrōs
vovent, administrisque ad ea sacrificia druidibus ūtun-
tur, quod, prō vitā hominis nisi hominis vitā reddātur, 20
nōn posse deōrum immortalīum nūmen plācārī arbi-
trantur; pūblicēque eiusdem generis habent inlītūta
sacrificia. Alii immānī māgnitūdine simulācra habent,
quōrum contexta vīminibus membra vīvīs hominibus
complant; quibus succēnsīs circumventi flammā exani- 25
mantur hominēs. Supplicia eōrum quī in fūrtō aut
lātrōciniō aut aliquā noxiā sint comprehēnsī grātiōra
dīs immortalibus esse arbitrantur; sed, cum eius generis
cōpia dēficit, etiam ad innocentium supplicia dēscen-
dunt.

The gods of the Gauls.

17 Deōrum mǎximē Mercurium colunt, — hūius sunt
plūrima simulācra; hunc omnium inventōrem artium
ferunt, hunc viārum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad
quaestūs pecūniae mercātūrāsque habēre vim mǎxi-
5 mam arbitrantur, — post hunc Apollinem et Mārtem et
Iovem et Minervam. Dē hīs eandem ferē quam reli-
quae gentēs habent opīniōnem: Apollinem morbōs dē-
pellere, Minervam operum atque artificiōrum initia trā-
dere, Iovem imperium caelestium tenēre, Mārtem bella
10 regere. Huic, cum proeliō dimicāre cōstituērunt, ea
quae bellō cēperint plērumque dēvovent. Cum supe-
rāvērunt, animālia capta immolant, reliquās rēs in ūnum
locum cōferunt. Multis in civitātibus hārum rērum
exstrūctōs cumulōs locis cōsecrātis cōspicārī licet;
15 neque saepe accidit ut neglēctā quispiam religiōne
aut capta apud sē occultāre aut posita tollere auderet;
gravissimumque eī rei supplicium cum cruciātū cōn-
stitutum est.

The Gauls claim descent from Pluto.

18 Galli sē omnēs ab Dīte patre prōgnātōs praedicant
20 idque ab druidibus prōditum dicunt. Ob eam causam
spatia omnis temporis nōn numerō diērum, sed noc-
tium finiunt; diēs nātālēs et mēnsium et annōrum initia
sic observant ut noctem diēs subsequātur. In reliquīs
vītae institūtis hōc ferē ab reliquīs differunt, quod suōs
25 liberōs, nisi cum adolēvērunt ut mūnus militiae susti-
nere possint, palam ad sē adīre nōn patiuntur, filium-
que puerilī aetāte in pūblicō in cōspectū patris adsis-
tere turpe dūcunt.

Marriage laws and funeral rites.

Virī, quantās pecūniās ab uxōribus dōtis nōmine **19** accēpērunt, tantās ex suis bonis aestimātiōne factā cum dōtibus commūnicant. Hūius omnis pecūniae coniūctim ratiō habētur frūctūsque servantur; uter eōrum vitā superāvit, ad eum pars utriusque cum frūctibus **5** superiōrum temporum pervenit. Virī in uxōrēs sicutī in libēros vitae necisque habent potestātem; et cum pater familiae inlustriōre locō nātus dēcessit, eius propinquī conveniunt et dē morte, sī rēs in suspiciōnem vēnit, dē uxōribus in servilem modum quaestiōnem ha- **10** bent, et sī compertum est, ignī atque omnibus tormentis excruciātās interficiunt. Fūnera sunt prō cultū Gallōrum māgnifica et sūmptuōsa; omniaque quae vivīs cordi fuisse arbitrantur in ignem inferunt, etiam animalia; ac paulō suprā hanc memoriam servī et clientēs, **15** quōs ab eis dilēctōs esse cōnstābat, iūstis fūnebris cōfectis unā cremābantur.

Rumors have to be reported to magistrates.

Quae civitātēs commodius suam rem pūblicam ad- **20** ministrāre existimantur habent lēgibus sānctum, sī quis quid dē rē pūblicā ā finitimis rūmōre ac fāmā accēperit, **20** uti ad magistrātum dēferat nēve cum quō aliō commūnicet; quod saepe hominēs temerāriōs atque imperitōs falsis rūmōribus terrērī et ad facinus impellī et dē summis rēbus cōsiliū capere cōgnitum est. Magistrātūs quae vīsa sunt occultant, quae esse ex ūsū iūdicā- **25** vērunt multitudinī prōdunt. Dē rē pūblicā nisi per conciliū loquī nōn concēditur.

Customs of the Germans.

Germānī multum ab hāc cōsuētūdine differunt. **21** Nam neque druides habent quī rēbus divinis praesint

neque sacrificiis student. Deorum numerō eōs sōlōs dūcunt quōs cernunt et quōrum apertē opibus iuvantur, Sōlem et Vulcānum et Lūnam; reliquōs nē fāmā quidem accēpērunt. Vita omnis in venātiōnibus atque
 5 in studiis rei militāris cōsistit; ā parvis labōri ac dūritiae student. Quī diūtissimē impūberēs permānsērunt māximam inter suōs ferunt laudem; hōc alī statūrā, alī virēs nervōsque cōfirmārī putant. Intrā annum vērō vicēsimū fēminae nōtitiam habuisse in turpissimis
 10 mīs habent rēbus; cūius rei nūlla est occultatiō, quod et prōmiscuē in flūminibus perluuntur, et pellibus aut parvis rēnōnum tegimentis ūtuntur, māgnā corporis parte nūdā.

No private ownership of land.

22 Agrī cultūrae nōn student, māiorque pars eōrum
 15 victūs in lacte, cāseō, carne cōsistit. Neque quisquam agrī modum certum aut finēs habet propriōs, sed magistrātūs ac principēs in annōs singulōs gentibus cōgnātiōnibusque hominum, quique ūnā coiērunt, quantum et quō locō vīsum est agrī attribuunt, atque annō post
 20 aliō trānsire cōgunt. Eius rei multās adferunt causās: nē adsiduā cōsuētūdine captī studium bellī gerendī agrī cultūrā commūtent; nē lātōs finēs parāre studeant potentiōrēs atque humiliōrēs possessiōnibus expellant; nē accurātius ad frīgora atque aestūs vitandōs aedificent;
 25 nē qua oriātur pecūniae cupiditās, quā ex rē factiōnēs dissēnsiōnēsq̄ nascuntur; ut animī aequitāte plēbem contineant, cum suās quisque opēs cum potentissimis aequārī videat.

Isolation of tribes; their chiefs; brigandage; hospitality.

23 Cīvitātibus māxima laus est quam lātissimē circum
 30 sē vāstātis finibus sōlitudinēs habēre. Hōc proprium

virtūtis existimant, expulsos agris finitimōs cedere, neque quemquam prope se audere consistere; simul hōc se fore tutiōrēs arbitrantur, repentinae incursiōnis timore sublātō. Cum bellum civitas aut inlātum defendit aut infert, magistrātus quī eī bellō praesint, et vitae necisque habeant potestatem, deliguntur. In pace nullus est communis magistrātus, sed principes regionum atque pagorum inter suos ius dicunt contrōversiāsque minuunt.

Lātrōcinia nullam habent infāmiam quae extrā finēs cuiusque civitātis fiunt, atque ea iuventutis exercendae ac desidiae minuendae causā fieri praedicant. Atque ubi quis ex principibus in conciliō dixit se ducem fore, quī sequi velint profiteantur, cōsurgunt eī quī et causam et hominem probant, suumque auxilium pollicentur, atque a multitudine conlaudantur; quī ex his secuti nōn sunt in desertōrum ac prōditōrum numero ducuntur omniumque his rerum postea fidēs derogātur. Hospitem violāre fas nōn putant; quī quācumque de causā ad eos vērunt ab iniuriā prohibent sanctōsque habent, hisque omnium domūs patent victusque communicātur.

Migration of Gauls into Germany.

Ac fuit antea tempus cum Germanos Galli virtute superarent, ultrō bella inferrent, propter hominum multitudinem agrique inopiam trāns Rhēnum coloniās mitterent. Itaque ea quae fertilissima Germaniae sunt loca, circum Hercyniam silvam, quam Eratostheni et quibusdam Graecis famā notam esse video, quam illi Orcyniam appellant, Volcae Tectosagēs occupāverunt atque ibi cōsederunt; quae gens ad hōc tempus his sedibus sese continet summamque habet iustitiae et bel-

licae laudis opīniōnem. Nunc, quod in eādem inopiā, egestatē, patientiā, quā ante, Germānī permanent, eōdem victū et cultū corporis ūtuntur; Gallīs autem prōvinciārum propinquitās et trānsmarinārum rērum nō-
 5 titia multa ad cōpiam atque ūsūs largitur; paulatim adsuēfactī superārī multisque victī proeliīs, nē sē quidem ipsī cum illis virtūte comparant.

The Hercynian forest.

25 Hūius Hercyniae silvae, quae suprā dēmōnstrāta est, lātitudō VIII diērum iter expeditō patet; nōn enim aliter
 10 finīrī potest, neque mēnsūrās itinerum nōvērunt. Oritur ab Helvētiōrum et Nemetum et Rauracōrum finibus, rēctāque flūminis Dānuvī regiōne pertinet ad finēs Dācōrum et Anartium; hinc sē flectit sinistrōrsus dīversīs ā flūmine regiōnibus multārumque gentium finēs
 15 propter māgnitūdinem attingit; neque quisquam est hūius Germāniae quī sē aut adisse ad initium eius silvae dicat, cum diērum iter LX prōcesserit, aut quō ex locō oriātur accēperit; multaque in eā genera ferārum nāscī cōstat quae reliquīs in locīs vīsa nōn sint; ex quibus
 20 quae māximē differant ā cēterīs et memoriae prōdenda videantur haec sunt.

Deer.

26 Est bōs cervī figūrā, cūius ā mediā fronte inter aurēs ūnum cornū exsistit excelsius magisque dērēctum hīs quae nōbīs nōta cornibus. Ab eius summō
 25 sicut palmae rāmīque lātē diffunduntur. Eadem est fēminae marisque nātūra, eadem forma māgnitūdōque cornuum.

The elk.

27 Sunt item quae appellantur alcēs. Hārum est cōn-similis caprīs figūra et varietās pellium; sed māgnitū-

dine paulō antecēdunt mutilaeque sunt cornibus et crūra sine nōdis articulisque habent; neque quiētis causā prōcumbunt neque, sī quō adflictæ cāsū concidērunt, ērigere sēsē ac sublevāre possunt. His sunt arborēs prō cubilibus; ad eās sē adplicant atque ita paulūm modo 5 reclinātae quiētem capiunt. Quārum ex vestigiis cum est animadversum ā vēnātōribus quō sē recipere cōsuērint, omnēs eō locō aut ab rādīcibus subruunt aut accidunt arborēs, tantum ut summa speciēs eārum stantium relinquātur. Hūc cum sē cōsuētūdine reclinā- 10 vērunt, infirmās arborēs pondere adfligunt atque ūnā ipsae concidunt.

The wild ox.

Tertium est genus eōrum quī ūrī appellantur. Hī 28 sunt māgnitūdine paulō infrā elephantōs, speciē et colōre et figurā taurī. Māgna vis eōrum est et māgna vē- 15 lōcītās; neque hominī neque ferae quam cōspexērunt parcut. Hōs studiōsē foveīs captōs interficiunt. Hōc sē labōre dūrant adulēscentēs atque hōc genere vēnatiōnis exercent, et quī plūrimōs ex hīs interfēcērunt, relātis in pūblicum cornibus quae sint testimoniō, māgnam fe- 20 runt laudem. Sed adsuēscere ad hominēs et mānsuēfierī nē parvulī quidem exceptī possunt. Amplitūdō cornuum et figurā et speciēs multum ā nostrōrum boum cornibus differt. Haec studiōsē conquisita ab labris argentō circumclūdunt atque in amplissimis epulis prō 25 pōculis ūtuntur.

Caesar returns to Gaul and resumes the pursuit of Ambiorix.

Caesar, postquam per Ubiōs explōrātōrēs comperit 29 Suēbōs sēsē in silvās recēpisse, inopiam frūmentī veritus, — quod, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, minimē hominēs Germānī agrī cultūrae student, — cōstituit nōn 30

prōgredi longius; sed, nē omnīnō metum reditūs suī barbarīs tolleret, atque ut eōrum auxilia tardāret, reductō exercitū partem ultimam pontis, quae ripās Ubiōrum contingēbat, in longitūdinem pedum cc rescindit, 5 atque in extrēmō ponte turrim tabulātōrum IIII cōstituit praesidiumque cohortium XII pontis tuendī causā pōnit māgnisque eum locum mūnitiōnibus firmat. Eī locō praesidiōque C. Volcācium Tullum adulēscentem praeficit.

10 Ipse, cum mātūrēscere frūmenta inciperent, ad bellum Ambiorīgis profectus, per Arduennam silvam, quae est tōtīus Galliae māxima atque ab ripīs Rhēnī finibusque Trēverōrum ad Nervios pertinet milibusque amplius D in longitūdinem patet, L. Minucium Basilum 15 cum omnī equitatū praemittit, sī quid celeritatē itineris atque opportunitatē temporis prōficere possit; monet ut ignēs in castris fieri prohibeat, nē qua ēius adventūs procul significatiō fiat; sēsē cōfestim subsequi dicit.

Lucky escape of Ambiorix.

30 Basilus ut imperātum est facit. Celeriter contrā-
20 que omnium opīniōnem cōfectō itinere multōs in agrīs inopinantēs dēprehendit; eōrum indicio ad ipsum Ambiorīgem contendit, quō in locō cum paucīs equitibus esse dicēbātur. Multum cum in omnibus rēbus tum in rē militārī potest fortūna; nam ut māgnō accidit 25 cāsū, ut in ipsum incautum etiam atque imparātum incideret, priusque ēius adventus ab hominibus vidērētur quam fāma ac nūntius adferrētur, sīc māgnae fuit fortūnae, omnī militārī instrūmentō, quod circum sē habebat ēreptō, raedis equisque comprehēnsis, ipsum effu- 30 gere mortem. Sed hōc factum est, quod, aedificiō cir-

cumdatō silvā, ut sunt ferē domicilia Gallōrum, quī vitandī aestūs causā plērumque silvārum ac flūminum petunt propinquitātēs, comitēs familiārēsq̄e ēius angustō in locō paulisper equitum nostrōrum vim sustinuērunt. Hīs pūgnantibus illum in equum quīdam ex 5 suis intulit; fugientem silvae tēxērunt. Sic et ad subeundum perīculum et ad vitandum multum fortūna valuit.

Disbandment of his troops. Suicide of Caturvolcus.

Ambiorīx cōpiās suās iūdiciōne nōn condūxerit, 31 quod proeliō dimicandum nōn exīstimāret, an tempore 10 exclusus et repentinō equitum adventū prohibitus, cum reliquum exercitum subsequī crēderet, dubium est; sed certē dimissis per agrōs nūntiīs sibi quemque cōsultare iussit. Quōrum pars in Arduennam silvam, pars in continentēs palūdēs profūgit; quī proximī Ōceanō fuē- 15 runt, hī insulis sēsē occultāvērunt, quās aestūs efficere cōsuērunt; multī ex suis finibus ēgressī sē suaeque omnia aliēnissimīs crēdidērunt. Caturvolcus, rēx dimidiāe partis Eburōnum, quī unā cum Ambiorīge cōnsilium inierat, aetāte iam cōfectus, cum labōrem bellī 20 aut fugae ferre nōn posset, omnibus precibus dētēstātus Ambiorīgē, quī ēius cōnsilī auctor fuisset, taxō, cūius magna in Galliā Germāniāque cōpia est, sē exanimāvit.

Caesar puts Q. Cicero in command at Atuatuca.

Sēgnī Condrūsique, ex gente et numerō Germānō- 32 rum, quī sunt inter Eburōnēs Trēverōsque, lēgātōs ad 25 Caesarem mīsērunt orātum, nē sē in hostium numerō dūceret nēve omnium Germānōrum quī essent citrā Rhēnum unam esse causam iūdicāret: nihil sē dē bellō cōgitāvisse, nūlla Ambiorīgī auxilia mīsisse. Caesar

explōrātā rē quaestiōne captivōrum, sī quī ad eōs Eburōnēs ex fugā convēnissent, ad sē ut reducerentur imperāvit; sī ita fēcissent, finēs eōrum sē violātūrum negāvit.

- 5 Tum cōpiīs in trēs partēs distribūtis impedimenta omnium legiōnum Atuatucam contulit. Id castelli nōmen est. Hōc ferē est in mediīs Eburōnum finibus, ubi Titūrius atque Aurunculēius hiemandi causā cōsēderant. Hunc cum reliquīs rēbus locum probābat, tum
10 quod superiōris annī mūnitiōnēs integrae manēbant, ut militum labōrem sublevāret. Praesidiō impedimentis legiōnem XIII relīquit, ūnam ex his tribus quās proximē cōscriptās ex Italiā trādūxerat. Ei legiōni castrisque Q. Tullium Cicerōnem praefēcit ducentōsque
15 equitēs ei attribuit.

Dividing his forces, he continues the hunt for Ambiorix.

- 33 Partītō exercitū T. Labiēnum cum legiōnibus tribus ad Ōceanum versus in eās partēs quae Menapiōs attingunt, proficīscī iubet; C. Trebōnium cum parī legiōnum numerō ad eam regiōnem, quae Atuatucis adiacet
20 dēpopulandam mittit; ipse cum reliquīs III ad flūmen Scaldim, quod influit in Mosam, extrēmāsque Arduennae partēs ire cōstituit, quō cum paucis equitibus profectum Ambiorigem audiēbat. Discēdēns post diem VII sēsē reversūrum cōfirmat, quam ad diem ei legiōni,
25 quae in praesidiō relinquēbātur, frūmentum dēbēri sciēbat. Labiēnum Trebōniumque hortātur, sī rei publicae commodō facere possint, ad eam diem revertantur; ut, rūsus commūnicātō cōsiliō explōrātisque hostium ratiōnibus, aliud initium bellī capere
30 possint.

Caesar's difficulties. Alliances sought by him against the Eburones.

Erat, ut suprà dēmōstrāvimus, manus certa nūlla, 34
nōn oppidum, nōn praesidium, quod sē armīs dēfende-
ret, sed in omnēs partēs dispersa multitudō. Ubi cui-
que aut vallēs abdita aut locus silvestris aut palūs im-
pedīta spem praesidi aut salūtis aliquam offerēbat, 5
cōnsēderat. Haec loca vicinītatibus erant nōta mǎg-
namque rēs diligentiam requirēbat, nōn in summā exer-
citūs tuendā — nūllum enim poterat ūniversīs ā perter-
ritīs āc dispersīs periculum accidere —, sed in singulīs
militibus cōservandīs; quae tamen ex parte rēs ad salū- 10
tem exercitūs pertinēbat. Nam et praedae cupiditās
multōs longius sēvocābat, et silvae incertīs occultisque
itineribus cōfertōs adire prohibēbant. Sī negōtium
cōfici stirpemque hominum scelerātōrum interfici vel-
let, dīmittendae plūrēs manūs dīdūcendique erant mili- 15
tēs; sī continēre ad sīgna manipulōs vellet, ut īnstitūta
ratiō et cōsuētūdō exercitūs Rōmānī postulābat, locus
ipse erat praesidiō barbaris, neque ex occultō īnsidiandī
et dispersōs circumveniendī singulīs deerat audācia.

Ut in ēius modī difficultātibus, quantum diligentīā 20
prōvidērī poterat, prōvidēbātur, ut potius in nocendō
aliquid praetermitterētur, etsī omnium animī ad ulcī-
scendum ārdēbant, quam cum aliquō militum dētri-
mentō nocērētur. Dīmittit ad finitimās cīvitatēs nūn-
tiōs Caesar: omnēs ēvocat spē praedae ad dīrīpiendōs 25
Eburōnēs, ut potius in silvīs Gallōrum vita quam legiō-
nārius mīles perīclitētur; simul ut mǎgnā multitudīne
circumfūsā prō tālī facinore stirps āc nōmen cīvitatīs
tollātur. Mǎgnus undique numerus celeriter convenit.

Invaders from Germany plunder the Eburones.

35 Haec in omnibus Eburōnum partibus gerēbantur
 diēsque adpetēbat VII, quem ad diem Caesar ad impe-
 dimenta legiōnemque reverti cōstituerat. Hīc, quan-
 tum in bellō fortūna possit et quantōs adferat cāsūs,
 5 cōgnōscī potuit. Dissipātis ac perterritis hostibus, ut
 dēmōstrāvimus, manus erat nūlla quae parvam modo
 causam timōris adferret. Trāns Rhēnum ad Germānōs
 pervenit fāma, diripī Eburōnēs atque ultrō omnēs ad
 praedam ēvocārī. Cōgunt equitum duo mīlia Sugam-
 10 brī, quī sunt proximī Rhēnō, ā quibus receptōs ex fugā
 Tencterōs atque Usipetēs suprā docuimus. Trānseunt
 Rhēnum nāvibus ratibusque xxx milibus passuum infrā
 eum locum ubi pōns erat perfectus praesidiumque ā
 Caesare relictum; primōs Eburōnum finēs adeunt; mul-
 15 tōs ex fugā dispersōs excipiunt, māgnō pecoris numerō,
 cūius sunt cupidissimī barbarī, potiuntur.

Invitātī praedā longius prōcēdunt. Nōn hōs palū-
 dēs bellō latrōciniisque nātōs, nōn silvae morantur.
 Quibus in locis sit Caesar ex captivīs quaerunt; pro-
 20 fectum longius reperiunt omnemque exercitum disces-
 sisse cōgnōscunt. Atque ūnus ex captivīs “ Quid vōs,”
 inquit, “ hanc miseram ac tenuem sectāminī praedam,
 quibus licet iam esse fortunātissimōs? Tribus hōris
 Atuatucam venīre potestis; hūc omnēs suās fortunās
 25 exercitus Rōmānōrum contulit; praesidī tantum est ut
 nē mūrus quidem cingī possit, neque quisquam ēgredi
 extrā mūnitiōnēs audeat.” Hāc oblātā spē Germānī
 quam nactī erant praedam, in occultō relinquunt; ipsī
 Atuatucam contendunt ūsī eōdem duce cūius haec in-
 30 diciō cōgnōverant.

Cicero sends out too many foragers.

Cicerō, quī omnēs superiōrēs diēs praeceptis Cae- 36
saris summā dīligentiā militēs in castris continuisset ac
nē cālōnem quidem quemquam extrā mūnitiōnem ēgre-
dī passus esset, VII diē, diffidēs dē numerō diērum
Caesarem fidem servātūrum, quod longius prōgressum 5
audiēbat neque ūlla dē reditū eius fāma adferēbātur;
simul eōrum permōtus vōcibus, quī illius patientiam
paene obsessiōnem appellābant, sīquidem ex castris
ēgredi nōn liceret; nūllum eius modi cāsum exspectāns
quō, VIII oppositis legiōnibus māximōque equitātū, 10
dispersis ac paene dēlētis hostibus, in milibus passum
tribus offendi posset, V cohortēs frūmentātum in proxi-
mās segetēs mittit, quās inter et castra ūnus omnīnō
collis intererat. Complūrēs erant in castris ex legiōni-
bus aegrī relictī; ex quibus quī hōc spatiō diērum con- 15
valuerant, circiter CCC, sub vēxillō ūnā mittuntur; māg-
na praetereā multitūdō cālōnum, māgna vīs iūmentō-
rum, quae in castris subsēderat, factā potestāte sequitur.

An assault on his camp by the Germans causes a panic.

Hōc ipsō tempore [et] cāsū Germānī equitēs inter- 37
veniunt, prōtinusque eōdem illō, quō vēnerant cursū 20
ab decumānā portā in castra inrumpere cōnantur; nec
prius sunt vīsī obiectis ab eā parte silvis, quam castris
adpropinquārent, ūsque eō ut quī sub vāllō tenderent
mercātōrēs recipiendī suī facultātem nōn habērent.
Inopināntēs nostrī rē novā perturbantur, ac vix primum 25
impetum cohors in statiōne sustinet. Circumfundun-
tur hostēs ex reliquīs partibus, sī quem aditum reperire
possint. Aegrē portās nostrī tuentur; reliquōs aditūs
locus ipse per sē mūnitiōque dēfendit. Tōtis trepidātur

castris atque alius ex aliō causam tumultūs quaerit; neque quō signa ferantur neque quam in partem quisque conveniat prōvident. Alius castra iam capta prōnūtiat; alius dēlētō exercitū atque imperātōre victōrēs
 5 barbarōs vēnisse contendit; plērīque novās sibi ex locō religiōnēs fingunt, Cottaēque et Titūrī calamitātem, quī in eōdem occiderint castellō, ante oculōs pōnunt. Tālī timōre omnibus perterritis cōfirmātur opīniō barbaris, ut ex captīvō audierant, nūllum esse intus praesidium.
 10 Perrumpere nītuntur sēque ipsī adhortantur nē tantam fortūnam ex manibus dīmittant.

Gallantry of Baculus.

38 Erat aeger in praesidiō relictus P. Sextius Baculus, quī primum pīlum apud Caesarem dūxerat, cūius mentiōnem superiōribus proeliis fēcimus, ac diem iam quīntum cibō caruerat. Hic diffusus suae atque omnium
 15 salūtī inermis ex tabernaculō prōdit; videt imminere hostēs atque in summō rem esse discrimine; capit arma ā proximis atque in portā cōsistit. Cōsequuntur hunc centuriōnēs eius cohortis quae in statiōne erat;
 20 paulisper unā proelium sustinent. Relinquit animus Sextium gravibus acceptis vulneribus; aegrē per manūs trāditus servātur. Hōc spatiō interpositō reliquī sēsē cōfirmant tantum ut in mūnitionibus cōsistere audeant speciemque dēfēnsōrum praebeant.

Return of the foraging party.

39 Interim cōfectā frūmentātiōne milītēs nostrī clāmōrem exaudiunt; praecurrunt equitēs, quantō rēs sit in periculō cōgnōscunt. Hic vērō nulla mūnitiō est quae perterritōs recipiat; modo cōscriptī atque ūsūs militāris imperītī ad tribūnum militum centuriōnēsque ōra

convertunt; quid ab hīs praecipiātur exspectant. Nēmō est tam fortis quā rei novitāte perturbētur. Barbari signa procul cōspicātī oppugnātiōne dēsistunt; redisse primō legiōnēs crēdunt quās longius discessisse ex captivīs cōgnōverant; postea dēspectā paucitāte ex omnibus partibus impetum faciunt.

They have to fight their way back with some loss.

Cālōnēs in proximum tumultum prōcurrunt; hinc celeriter dēiecti sē in signa manipulōsque cōiciunt; eō magis timidōs perterrent milites. Alii, cuneō factō ut celeriter perrumpant cēsent; quoniam tam propinqua sint castra, etsi pars aliqua circumventa ceciderit, at reliquōs servārī posse [confidunt]; alii, ut in iugō cōsistant atque eundem omnēs ferant cāsum. Hōc veterēs nōn probant milites, quōs sub vēxillō ūnā profectōs docuimus. Itaque inter sē cohortātī, duce C. Treboniō, equite Rōmānō, quī eis erat praepositus, per mediōs hostēs perrumpunt incolumēsque ad ūnum omnēs in castra perveniunt. Hōs subsecūtī cālōnēs equitēsque eodem impetū militum virtūte servantur.

At ei qui in iugō cōstiterant, nullō etiam nunc ūsū rei militāris perceptō, neque in eō, quod probāverant cōsiliō permanēre, ut sē locō superiōre dēfenderent, neque eam quam prōfuisse aliis vim celeritātemque viderant, imitārī potuerunt; sed sē in castra recipere cōnātī iniquum in locum dēmiserunt. Centuriōnēs, quorum nōn nulli ex inferioribus ordinibus reliquarum legiōnum virtutis causā in superiōrēs erant ordinēs huius legiōnis trāducti, nē ante partem rei militāris laudem amitterent, fortissimē pūgnantēs conciderunt. Militum pars, hōrum virtūte submōtis hostibus, prae-

ter spem incolumis in castra pervēnit, pars ā barbaris circumventa periit.

The Germans retire and Caesar returns.

- 41 Germānī dēsperātā expūgnātiōne castrōrum, quod nostrōs iam cōstitisse in mūnitiōnibus vidēbant, cum
5 eā praedā quam in silvīs dēposuerant trāns Rhēnum sēsē recēpērunt. Āc tantus fuit etiam post discessum hostium terror ut eā nocte cum C. Volusēnus missus cum equitātū in castra vēnisset, fidem nōn faceret adesse cum incolumī Caesarem exercitū. Sic omnium animōs
10 timor occupāverat ut paene aliēnātā mente, dēlētis omnibus cōpiīs equitātum sē ex fugā recēpisse dicerent, neque incolumī exercitū Germānōs castra oppūgnātūrōs fuisse contenderent. Quem timōrem Caesaris adventus sustulit.

Effect of the German invasion.

- 42 Reversus ille, ēventūs bellī nōn ignōrāns, ūnum quod cohortēs ex statīōne et praesidiō essent ēmissae questus — nē minimum quidem cāsui locum relinqū dēbuisse — multum fortūnam in repentinō hostium adventū potuisse iūdicāvit; multō etiam amplius, quod
20 paene ab ipsō vāllō portisque castrōrum barbarōs āvertisset. Quārum omnium rērum māximē admīrandum vidēbātur, quod Germānī, quī eō cōnsiliō Rhēnum trānsierant, ut Ambiorīgis finēs dēpopulārentur, ad castra Rōmānōrum dēlāti optātissimum Ambiorīgī
25 beneficium obtulerant.

Caesar punishes the tribes which resist him.

- 43 Caesar, rūrsus ad vexandōs hostēs profectus māgnō equitum cōactō numerō ex finitimīs civitātibus in omnes partēs dimittit. Omnēs vicī atque omnia aedificia

quae quisque cōspexerat incendēbantur; praeda ex omnibus locis agēbatur; frūmenta nōn solum à tantā multitudīne iumentōrum atque hominū cōsumēbantur, sed etiam annī tempore atque imbribus prōcubuerant, ut, si quī etiam in praesentiā sē occultāssent, tamen his dēductō exercitū rērum omnium inopiā pereundum vidērētur. Ac saepe in eum locum ventum est, tantō in omnēs partēs dimissō equitatū, ut modo vīsum ab sē Ambiorīgē in fugā circumspicerent captivī, nec plānē etiam abisse ex cōspectū contenderent; ut spē cōsequendī inlātā atque infinitō labōre susceptō, quī sē summam à Caesare grātiā inītūrōs putārent, paene nātūram studiō vincerent semperque paulum ad summam fēlicitatem dēfuisse vidērētur, atque ille latebris aut salibus sē ēriperet; et noctū occultātus aliās regiōnēs partēspeteret nōn māiōre equitum praesidiō quam IIII, quibus sōlis vitam suam committere audēbat.

A council. Execution of Acco. Caesar goes to Italy.

Tālī modō vāstātīs regiōnibus exercitum Caesar ducit, conciliōque in eum locum Galliae indictō dē cōiūratiōne Senonum et Carnutum quaestiōnem habere instituit; et dē Accōne, quī princeps eius cōsili fuerat, graviōre sententiā prōnūntiātā, mōre māiōrum supplicium sūmpsit. Nōn nullī iudicium veritī profūgērunt. Quibus cum aquā atque ignī interdixisset, duās legiōnēs ad finēs Trēverōrum, duās in Lingonibus, sex reliquās in Senonum finibus Agēdīncī in hibernīs conlocavit, frūmentōque exercitū prōvisō, ut instituerat, in Italiam ad conventūs agendōs profectus est.

LIBER SEPTIMUS.

THE GREAT STRUGGLE FOR INDEPENDENCE UNDER VERCINGETORIX, B. C. 52.

General movement among the Gauls.

- 1** Quiētā Galliā Caesar, ut cōstituerat, in Ītaliā ad
conventūs agendōs proficiscitur. Ibi cōgnōscit dē P.
Clōdī caede; dē senātūque cōsultō certior factus ut
omnēs iūniōrēs Ītaliae coniūrarent, dilēctum tōtā prō-
5 vinciā habēre instituit. Eae rēs in Galliam Trānsalpī-
nam celeriter perferuntur. Addunt ipsī et adfingunt
rūmōribus Gallī, quod rēs poscere vidēbātur, retinēri
urbānō mōtū Caesarem neque in tantīs dissēsiōnibus
ad exercitum venīre posse.
- 10** Hāc impulsī occāsiōne quī iam ante sē populī Rō-
mānī imperiō subiectōs dolērent liberior atque audācius
dē bellō cōnsilia inīre incipiunt. Indictīs inter sē prīn-
cipēs Galliae conciliīs silvestribus āc remōtīs locīs que-
runtur dē Accōnis morte; posse hunc cāsum ad ipsōs
15 recidere dēmōstrant; miserantur commūnem Galliae
fortūnam; omnibus pollicitātiōnibus āc praemiīs dēpos-
cunt quī bellī initium faciant et suī capitis periculō Gal-
liam in libertātem vindicent. In primīs ratiōnem esse
habendam dicunt, priusquam eōrum clandestīna cōn-
20 silia efferantur, ut Caesar ab exercitū interclūdātur. Id
esse facile, quod neque legiōnēs audeant absente im-

peratōre ex hibernīs ēgredi, neque imperātor sine praesidiō ad legiōnēs pervenire possit; postrēmō in aciē praestāre interficī quam non veterem belli glōriam libertātemque quam ā māiōribus accēperint, recuperāre.

The Carnutes agree to begin the war.

Hīs rēbus agitātis profitentur Carnutes sē nūllum **2**
periculum commūnis salutis causā recūsare principēs-
que ex omnibus bellum factūrōs pollicentur; et, quoniam in praesentiā obsidibus cavere inter sē nōn possint, nē rēs efferātur, ut iūre iūrاندō ac fidē sanciatū
petunt, conlātis militāribus signīs, quō mōre eōrum gra- **10**
vissima caerimōnia continētur, nē factō initiō belli ab
reliquīs dēserantur. Tum conlaudātis Carnutibus, datō
iūre iūrاندō ab omnibus quī aderant, tempore eius rei
cōstitutō, ā conciliō discēditur.

Massacre of the Romans at Cenabum.

The news travels fast.

Ubi ea diēs vēnit, Carnutes Cotuātō et Conconne- **3**
todumnō ducibus, dēspērātis hominibus, Cēnabum signō datō concurrunt cīvēsque Rōmānōs quī negōtiandi
causā ibi cōstiterant, in hīs C. Fūfium Citam, honestum equitem Rōmānum, quī rei frumentariae iussū Caesaris praeerat, interficiunt bonaeque eōrum diripiunt. **20**
Celeriter ad omnēs Galliae civitatēs fama perfertur.
Nam ubi quae māior atque inlustrior incidit rēs, clamōre per agrōs regiōnēsque significant; hunc aliī deinceps excipiunt et proximīs trādunt, ut tum accidit.
Nam quae Cēnabī oriente sōle gesta essent ante primam **25**
cōfectam vigiliam in finibus Arvernōrum audita sunt,
quod spatium est milium passuum circiter CLX.

Vercingetorix, the Arvernian, takes command.

4 Simili ratione ibi Vercingetorix, Celtilli filius Arvernus, summae potentiae adulēscēns, cuius pater principatū totius Galliae obtinuerat, et ob eam causam quod regnum adpetēbat a civitate erat interfectus, con-
5 vocatis suis clientibus facile incendit. Cōgnitō eius cōsiliō ad arma concurritur. Prohibētur a Gobannitione, patruō suō, reliquisque principibus, quī hanc temptandam fortunam nōn existimābant; expellitur ex
10 oppidō Gergoviā; nōn dēsistit tamen atque in agrīs habet dilēctum egentium ac perditōrum. Hāc coactā manū quōcumque adit ex civitate ad suam sententiam perducit; hortātur ut commūnis libertātis causā arma capiant; māgnisque coactis cōpiis adversariōs suōs, a quibus paulō ante erat eiectus, expellit ex civitate. Rēx
15 ab suis appellātur. Dīmittit quōque versus lēgationēs; obtestātur ut in fidē maneant.

Celeriter sibi Senones, Parisiōs, Pictonēs, Cadūrcōs, Turonōs, Aulercōs, Lemovices, Andōs reliquōsque om-
nēs quī Oceanum attingunt adiungit; omnium cōsēnsū
20 ad eum dēfertur imperium. Quā oblātā potestāte omnibus hīs civitatibus obsidēs imperat; certum numerum militum ad sē celeriter addūci iubet; armōrum quantum quaeque civitās domī, quodque ante tempus efficiat, cōnstituit; in primis equitātui studet. Summae diligētia
25 summam imperi sevērītatem addit; māgnitudine supplicii dubitantēs cōgit. Nam māiōre commissō dēlictō igni atque omnibus tormentis necat; leviōre dē causā auribus dēsectis aut singulis effossis oculis domum remittit; ut sint reliquis documentō et māgnitudine poe-
30 nae perterreant aliōs.

He forces the Bituriges to join him.

His suppliciis celeriter coactō exercitū Lucterium 5
Cadūrcum, summae hominem audāciae, cum parte cō-
piārum in Rutēnōs mittit; ipse in Biturīgēs proficisci-
tur. Eius adventū Biturīgēs ad Haeduōs, quōrum
erant in fidē, lēgātōs mittunt subsidium rogātum quō 5
facilius hostium cōpiās sustinēre possint. Haeduī dē
cōnsiliō lēgātōrum, quōs Caesar ad exercitum relique-
rat, cōpiās equitātūs peditātūsque subsidiō Biturīgibus
mittunt. Quī cum ad flūmen Ligerim vēnissent, quod
Biturīgēs ab Haeduīs dīvidit, paucōs diēs ibi morātī ne- 10
que flūmen trānsire ausī, domum revertuntur, lēgātīs-
que nostrīs renūntiant sē Biturīgum perfidiam veritōs
revertisse, quibus id cōnsili fuisse cōgnōverint ut, si
flūmen trānsissent, ūnā ex parte ipsī, alterā Arvernī
sē circumsisterent. Id eāne dē causā quam lēgātīs 15
prōnūntiārint an perfidiā adductī fēcerint, quod
nihil nobīs cōstat, nōn vidētur prō certō esse pōnen-
dum. Biturīgēs eōrum discessū statim sē cum Ar-
vernīs coniungunt.

Caesar with difficulty reaches his army.

His rēbus in Ītaliā Caesarī nūntiātīs, cum iam ille 6
urbānās rēs virtūte Cn. Pompēi commodiōrem in sta-
tum pervēnisse intellexeret, in Trānsalpīnam Galliam
profectus est. Eō cum vēnisset, māgnā difficultāte ad-
ficiēbātur, quā ratiōne ad exercitum pervenire posset.
Nam si legiōnēs in prōvinciam arcesseret, sē absente 25
in itinere proeliō dīmīcātūrās intellegēbat; si ipse
ad exercitum contenderet, nē eīs quidem eō tempore
quī quiētī vidērentur suam salūtem rēctē committī
vidēbat.

He checks the designs of Lucterius at Narbo.

7 Interim Lucterius Cadŭrcus in Rutēnōs missus eam
civitātem Arvernīs conciliat. Prōgressus in Nitiobro-
gēs et Gabalōs ab utrisque obsidēs accipit, et māgnā
coāctā manū in prōvinciam Narbōnem versus inrup-
5 tiōnem facere contendit. Quā·rē nūntiātā Caesar om-
nibus cōsiliīs antevertendum exīstimāvit, ut Narbō-
nem proficiscerētur. Eō cum vēnisset, timentēs cōn-
firmat, praesidia in Rutēnīs prōvinciālibus, Volcīs Are-
comicīs, Tolōsātibus circumque Narbōnem, quae loca
10 hostibus erant finitima, cōstituit; partem cōpiārum ex
prōvinciā supplēmentumque quod ex Ītaliā addūxerat
in Helviōs, quī finēs Arvernōrum contingunt, conve-
nīre iubet.

*Crossing of the Cevennes through the snow. Vercingetorix
returns to defend the Arverni.*

8 His rēbus comparātis, repressō iam Lucteriō et re-
15 mōtō, quod intrāre intrā praesidia periculōsum pūtabat,
in Helviōs proficiscitur. Etsī mōns Cebenna, quī Ar-
vernōs ab Helviīs disclūdit, dūrissimō tempore annī
altissimā nive iter impediēbat; tamen, discussā nive in
altitudinem pedum vi atque ita viīs patefactis, summō
20 militum labōre ad finēs Arvernōrum pervēnit. Quibus
oppressīs inopināntibus, quod sē Cebennā ut mūrō mū-
nītōs exīstimābant, ac nē singulārī quidem umquam ho-
minī eō tempore annī sēmitae patuerant, equitibus im-
perat ut quam lātissimē possint vagentur et quam māxi-
25 mum hostibus terrōrem inferant. Celeriter haec fāma
ac nūntiū ad Vercingetorīgem perferuntur; quem per-
territi omnēs Arvernī circumsistunt atque obsecrant ut
suīs fortūnis cōsulat, neu sē ab hostibus diripī patiā-

tur, praesertim cum videat omne ad sē bellum trāslātum. Quōrum ille prēcibus permōtus castra ex Biturīgibus movet in Arvernōs versus.

Caesar goes to seek reinforcements. Vercingetorix moves against the Boii.

At Caesar bīduum in hīs locīs morātus, quod haec 9
dē Vercingetorige ūsū ventūra opīniōne praecēperat, 5
per causam supplēmentī equitātusque cōgendī ab exercitū discēdit; Brūtum adulēscētem hīs cōpiīs praeficit; hunc monet ut in omnēs partēs equitēs quam lātissimē pervagentur; datūrum sē operam nē longius trīduō ā castrīs absit. Hīs cōstitutīs rēbus suis inopīnantibus, 10
quam māximīs potest itineribus, Viennam pervenit. Ibi nactus recentem equitātum, quem multīs ante diēbus eō praemīserat, neque diurnō neque nocturnō itinere intermissō, per finēs Haeduōrum in Lingonēs contendit, ubi duae legiōnēs hiemābant; ut, sī quid etiam 15
dē suā salūte ab Haeduīs inīrētur cōnsilī, celeritāte praecurreret. Eō cum pervēnisset, ad reliquās legiōnēs mittit, priusque omnēs in ūnum locum cōgit quam dē eius adventū Arvernīs nūntiārī posset. Hāc rē cōgnitā Vercingetorix rūsus in Biturīgēs exercitum re- 20
dūcit, atque inde profectus Gorgobinam, Bōiōrum oppidum, quōs ibi Helveticō proeliō victōs Caesar conlocāverat Haeduīsque attribuerat, oppugnāre instituit.

Caesar decides to relieve them.

Māgnam haec rēs Caesarī difficultātem ad cōnsilium 10
capiendum adferēbat: sī reliquam partem hiemis ūnō 25
locō legiōnēs continēret, nē stipendiāriīs Haeduōrum expūgnātīs cūncta Gallia dēficeret, quod nūllum amīcis in eō praesidium positum vidēret; sī mātūrius ex hīber-

nīs ēdūceret, nē ab rē frūmentāriā dūris subvectiōnibus labōrāret. Praestāre vīsum est tamen omnēs difficul-
tātēs perpetī quam, tantā contumeliā acceptā, omnium
suōrum voluntātēs aliēnāre. Itaque cohortātus Hae-
5 duōs dē supportandō commeātū, praemittit ad Bōiōs
quī dē suō adventū doceant, hortenturque ut in fidē
maneant atque hostium impetum māgnō animō susti-
neant. Duābus Agēdīncī legiōnibus atque impedimen-
tis tōtius exercitūs relictis ad Bōiōs proficiscitur.

He takes two towns near the Loire.

11 Alterō diē cum ad oppidum Senonum Vellaunodū-
num vēnisset, nē quem post sē hostem relinqueret, et
quō expeditiōre rē frūmentāriā ūteretur, oppūgnāre in-
stituit, eōque bīduō circumvallāvit; tertiō diē missis ex
oppidō lēgātis dē dēditiōne, arma cōferri, iūmenta prō-
15 dūcī, sescentōs obsidēs darī iubet. Ea quī cōficeret
C. Trebōnium lēgātum relinquit; ipse, ut quam prī-
mum iter cōficeret, Cēnabum Carnutum proficiscitur.
Quī tum prīmum adlātō nūntiō dē oppūgnātiōne Vel-
launodūnī, cum longius eam rem ductum irī existimā-
20 rent, praesidium Cēnabī tuendī causā, quod eō mitte-
rent, comparābant.

Hūc bīduō pervenit. Castris ante oppidum positīs,
diēi tempore exclūsus in posterum oppūgnātiōnem dif-
fert, quaeque ad eam rem ūsuī sint militibus imperat; et,
25 quod oppidum Cēnabum pōns flūminis Ligeris contin-
gēbat, veritus nē noctū ex oppidō profugerent, duās
legiōnēs in armīs excubāre iubet. Cēnabēnsēs, paulō
ante mediam noctem silentiō ex oppidō ēgressī flūmen
trānsire coepērunt. Quā rē per explorātōrēs nūntiātā
30 Caesar legiōnēs, quās expeditās esse iusserat, portis in-

cēnsis intrōmittit atque oppidō potitur, perpaucis ex hostium numerō dēsiderātis quā cūcti caperentur, quod pontis atque itinerum angustiae multitudinī fugam interclūserant. Oppidum diripit atque incendit, praedam militibus dōnat, exercitum Ligerim trādūcit 5 atque in Biturīgum finēs pervenit.

Surrender of Noviodunum followed by an attempt to defend it, on the approach of Vercingetorix.

Vercingetorix ubi dē Caesaris adventū cōgnōvit, oppidū pūgnatiōne dēsistit atque obviam Caesarī proficiscitur. Ille oppidum Biturīgum positum in viā Noviodūnum oppugnāre instituerat. Quō ex oppidō cum lēgātī ad 10 eum vēnissent orātum ut sibi ignōsceret suaeque vitae cōsuleret, ut celeritāte reliquās rēs cōnficeret quā plēraque erat cōsecūtus, arma cōferri, equōs prōdūci, obsidēs dari iubet.

Parte iam obsidum trādītā, cum reliqua administrā- 15 rentur, centuriōnibus et paucis militibus intrōmissis qui arma iūmentaue conquīrerent, equitātus hostium procul visus est, qui agmen Vercingetorigis antecesserat. Quem simul atque oppidānī cōspexērunt atque in spem auxili vēnērunt, clāmōre sublātō arma capere, 20 portās claudere, mūrum complēre coepērunt. Centuriōnēs in oppidō, cum ex significātiōne Gallōrum novī aliquid ab eis iniri cōnsili intellēxissent, gladiis dēstrictis portās occupāvērunt suōsque omnēs incolumēs recēpērunt. 25

Caesar takes Noviodunum and moves on Avaricum.

Caesar ex castris equitātum ēdūci iubet, proelium- 13 que equestre committit; labōrantibus iam suis Germānōs equitēs circiter cccc submittit, quōs ab initiō sēcum

habere instituerat. Eorum impetum Galli sustinere non potuerunt, atque in fugam coniecti multis amissis se ad agmen reciperunt. Quibus profligatis rursus oppidani perterriti comprehensos eos quorum opera
 5 plebem concitatum existimabant ad Caesarem perduxerunt scisque ei dediderunt. Quibus rebus confectis Caesar ad oppidum Avaricum, quod erat maximum munitionissimumque in finibus Biturigum atque agri fertilissimae regione, profectus est; quod eo oppido recepto
 10 civitatem Biturigum se in potestatem redacturum confidebat.

Vercingetorix advises the Gauls to lay waste the country and to burn the towns.

14 Vercingetorix tot continuis incommodis Vellaunoduni, Cenabi, Novioduni acceptis suos ad concilium convocat. Docet longae alia ratione esse bellum gerendum atque antea gestum sit. Omnibus modis huic rei
 15 studendum ut pabulatione et commeatu Romani prohibeantur. Id esse facile, quod equitatu ipsi abundant et quod anni tempore sublevantur. Pabulum secari non posse; necessario dispersos hostes ex aedificiis
 20 petere; hos omnes cotidie ab equitibus deleri posse. Praeterea salutis causa rei familiaris commoda neglegenda; vicis atque aedificia incendi oportere hoc spatium [a Boia] quoque versus, quo pabulandi causa adire posse videantur. Harum ipsis rerum copiam suppe-
 25 tere, quod quorum in finibus bellum geratur eorum opibus sublevantur; Romanos aut inopiam non laturos aut magno cum periculo longius a castris processuros; neque interesse ipsosne interficiant an impedimentis exuant, quibus amissis bellum geri non possit. Prae-
 30 terea oppida incendi oportere quae non munitione et

loci nātūrā ab omnī sint periculō tūta, nē suis sint ad dētrectandam militiam receptācula, neu Rōmānis prōposita ad cōpiam commeātūs praedamque tollendam. Haec sī gravia aut acerba videantur, multō illa gravius aestimārī dēbere, liberōs, coniugēs in servitūtem abstrahī, ipsōs interficī; quae sit necesse accidere victīs.

They obey, but spare Avaricum.

Omnium cōsēnsū hāc sententiā probātā ūnō diē 15
amplius xx urbēs Biturigum incenduntur. Hōc idem
fit in reliquīs cīvitatibus. In omnibus partibus incendia
cōspiciuntur; quae etsi māgnō cum dolōre omnēs ferē- 10
bant, tamen hōc sibi sōlāci prōpōnēbant, quod sē prope
explōrātā victōriā celeriter āmissa recuperātūrōs cōn-
fidēbant. Dēliberātur dē Avaricō in commūnī conciliō,
incendī placeat an dēfendī. Prōcumbunt omnibus Gal-
līs ad pedēs Bituriges, nē pulcherrimam prope tōtius 15
Galliae urbem, quae et praesidiō et ōrnāmentō sit cīvi-
tātī, suis manibus succendere cōgantur; facile sē loci
nātūrā dēfēnsūrōs dicunt, quod, prope ex omnibus par-
tibus flūmine et palūde circumdata, ūnum habeat et
perangustum aditum. Datur petentibus venia, dissuā- 20
dente primō Vercingetorīge, post concēdente, et pre-
cibus ipsōrum et misericordiā vulgī. Dēfēnsōrēs op-
pidō idōneī dēliguntur.

Vercingetorix observes closely the movements of Caesar.

Vercingetorix minōribus Caesarem itineribus sub- 16
sequitur, et locum castrīs dēligit palūdibus silvisque 25
mūnītum, ab Avaricō longē milia passuum xvi. Ibi
per certōs explōrātōrēs in singula diēi tempora quae
ad Avaricum gererentur cōgnōscebat et quid fierī vel-
let imperābat. Omnēs nostrās pābulatiōnēs frūmentā-

tiōnēsque observābat dispersōsque cum longius neces-
sariō prōcēderent, adoriēbātur māgnōque incommodō
adficiēbat; etsī, quantum ratiōne prōvidērī poterat, ab
nostris occurrēbātur, ut incertis temporibus diversisque
5 itineribus irētur.

The Romans bravely bear privations.

17 Castris ad eam partem oppidī positīs Caesar quae
intermissa [ā] flūmine et palūde aditum, ut suprā dixi-
mus, angustum habēbat, aggerem apparāre, vineās
agere, turrēs duās cōstituere coepit; nam circumvāl-
10 lāre locī nātūra prohibēbat. Dē rē frūmentāriā Bōiōs
atque Haeduōs adhortārī nōn dēstitit; quōrum alterī,
quod nūllō studiō agēbant, nōn multum adiuvābant;
alterī nōn māgnis facultātibus, quod civitās erat exigua
et infirma, celeriter quod habuērunt cōsūmpsērunt.

15 Summā difficultāte rei frūmentāriae adfectō exer-
citū, tenuitāte Bōiōrum, indiligentiā Haeduōrum, in-
cendiis aedificiōrum, ūsque eō ut complūrēs diēs frū-
mentō militēs caruerint, et pecore ex longinquiōribus
vicīs adāctō extrēmam famem sustentārint, nūlla tamen
20 vōx est ab eis audīta populī Rōmānī māiestāte et supe-
riōribus victōriis indīgna. Quīn etiam Caesar cum in
opere singulās legiōnēs appellāret et, sī acerbius ino-
piam ferrent, sē dīmissūrum oppūgnātiōnem diceret,
ūniversī ab eō nē id faceret petēbant: Sīc sē complūrēs
25 annōs illō imperante meruisse ut nūllam ignōminiam
acciperent, numquam infectā rē discēderent; hōc sē
ignōminiae lātūrōs locō, sī inceptam oppūgnātiōnem
reliquissent; praestāre omnēs perferre acerbitatēs, quam
nōn civibus Rōmānīs quī Cēnabī perfidiā Gallōrum in-
30 terissent parentārent. Haec eadem centuriōnibus tri-



būnisque militum mandābant, ut per eōs ad Caesarem dēferrentur.

Caesar approaches Vercingetorix.

Cum iam mūrō turrēs adpropinquāssent, ex cap- 18
tīvīs Caesar cōgnōvit Vercingetorigem cōsūptō pā-
bulō castra mōvisse propius Avaricum, atque ipsum 5
cum equitātū expeditisque quī inter equitēs proeliārī
cōsuēssent, insidiandī causā eō profectum quō nostrōs
posterō diē pābulātum ventūrōs arbitrārētur. Quibus
rēbus cōgnitis mediā nocte silentiō profectus ad hos- 10
tium castra māne pervēnit. Illi, celeriter per explorā-
tōrēs adventū Caesaris cōgnitō, carrōs impedimenta-
que sua in artiōrēs silvās abdidērunt, cōpiās omnēs in
locō ēditō atque apertō instrūxērunt. Quā rē nūn-
tiātā Caesar celeriter sarcinās cōferri arma expeditī
iussit. 15

And finds him strongly intrenched.

Collis erat lēniter ab infimō acclivis. Hunc ex om- 19
nibus ferē partibus palūs difficilis atque impedita cin-
gēbat, nōn lātiōr pedibus L. Hōc sē colle interruptīs
pontibus Gallī fidūciā locī continēbant generātimque
distribūtī [in cīvitatēs] omnia vada [āc saltūs] ēius 20
palūdis obtinēbant, sic animō parātī ut, si eam palūdem
Rōmānī perrumpere cōnārentur, haesitantēs premerent
ex locō superiōre; ut, quī propinquitatem locī vidēret,
parātōs prope aequō Mārte ad dīmicandum exīstimā-
ret; quī iniquitatem condiciōnis perspiceret, inānī si- 25
mulātiōne sēsē ostenāre cōgnōsceret.

Indignantēs militēs Caesar, quod cōspectum suum
hostēs ferre possent tantulō spatiō interiectō, et signum
proeli exposcentēs ēdocet quantō dētrimentō et quot
virōrum fortium morte necesse sit cōnstāre victōriam; 30

quōs cum sic animō parātōs videat ut nūllum prō suā laude periculum recūsent, summae sē inīquitātis condemnārī dēbere, nisi eōrum vītam laude suā habeat cārīorem. Sic milītēs cōsōlātus eōdem diē reducit in
5 castra; reliquaque quae ad oppūgnātiōnem oppidi pertinēbant administrāre instituit.

The Gauls suspect Vercingetorix. His defense.

20 Vercingetorix, cum ad suōs redisset, prōditiōnis insimulātus, quod castra propius Rōmānōs mōvisset, quod cum omnī equitātū discessisset, quod sine im-
10 periō tantās cōpiās reliquisset, quod ēius discessū Rōmānī tantā opportunitāte et celeritāte vēnissent; nōn haec omnia fortuitō aut sine cōsiliō accidere potuisse; rēgnum illū Galliae malle Caesaris concessū quam ip-
sōrum habēre beneficiō—tālī modō accūsātus ad haec
15 respondit: Quod castra mōvisset, factum inopiā pābuli, etiam ipsis hortantibus; quod propius Rōmānōs accessisset, persuāsum loci opportunitāte, quī sē ipse sine mūnitiōne dēfenderet; equitum vērō operam neque in locō palūstrī dēsiderārī dēbuisse, et illic fuisse ūtilem
20 quō sint profectī. Summam imperī sē cōsultō nulli discēdentem trādidisse, nē is multitudinis studiō ad dimicandum impelleretur; cui rei propter animi molli-
tatem studere omnēs vidēret, quod diūtius labōrem ferre nōn possent. Rōmānī sī cāsū intervenerint, fortū-
25 nae; sī alicūius indicio vocāti, huic habendam grātiā, quod et paucitatem eōrum ex locō superiōre cōgnoscere et virtutem dēspicere potuerint, quī dimicāre nōn ausi turpiter sē in castra recēperint. Imperium sē ā
Caesare per prōditiōnem nūllum dēsiderāre, quod ha-
30 bēre victoriā posset, quae iam esset sibi atque omnibus Gallis explorāta; quīn etiam ipsis remittere, sī sibi ma-

gis honōrem tribuere quam ab sē salūtem accipere videantur.

“Haec ut intellegātis,” inquit, “ā mē sincērē prōnūtiārī, audīte Rōmānōs milītēs.” Prōdūcit servōs, quōs in pābulātiōne paucīs ante diēbus excēperat et 5 famē vinculisque excruciāverat. Hī iam ante ēdoctī quae interrogātī prōnūtiārent, milītēs sē esse legiōnāriōs dicunt; famē atque inopiā adductōs clam ex castrīs exisse, sī quid frūmentī aut pecoris in agrīs reperīre possent; simīlī omnem exercitum inopiā premī, nec iam 10 vīrēs sufficere cūiusquam nec ferre operis labōrem posse; itaque statuīsse imperātōrem, sī nihil in oppūgnātiōne oppidī prōfēcisset, trīduō exercitum dēdūcere. “Haec,” inquit, “ā mē” [Vercingetorix] “beneficia habētis, quem prōditiōnis īnsimulātis; cūius operā sine 15 vestrō sanguine tantum exercitum victōrem famē paene cōnsūmptum vidētis; quem turpiter sē ex hāc fugā recipientem nē qua cīvītās suīs finibus recipiat, ā mē prōvīsum est.”

They acquit him with enthusiasm.

Conclāmat omnis multitūdō et suō mōre armīs con- 21 crepat, quod facere in eō cōsuērunt cūius ōrātiōnem adprobant: Summum esse Vercingetorigem ducem, nec dē eius fidē dubitandum, nec māiōre ratiōne bellum administrārī posse. Statuunt ut x milia hominum dēlēcta ex omnibus cōpiīs in oppidum submittantur, nec 25 sōlīs Biturīgibus commūnem salūtem committendam cēsent; quod paene in eō, sī id oppidum retinuissent, summam victōriae cōnstāre intellegēbant.

Skillful defensive operations of the Gauls at Avaricum.

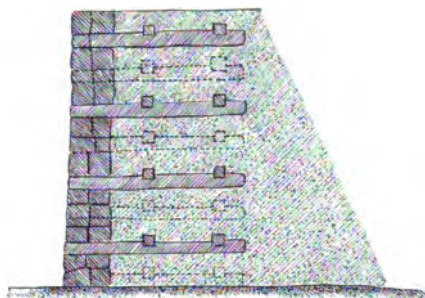
Singulārī militum nostrōrum virtūtī cōsilia cūius- 22 que modī Gallōrum occurrēbant, ut est summae genus 30

sollertiae atque ad omnia imitanda et efficienda quae ā quōque trāduntur aptissimum. Nam et laqueis falcēs āvertēbant, quās, cum dēstināverant, tormentis intrōrsus redūcēbant; et aggerem cuniculis subtrahēbant, eō
 5 scientius, quod apud eōs māgnae sunt ferrariae atque omne genus cuniculōrum nōtum atque ūsitātum est. Tōtum autem mūrum ex omni parte turribus contabulāverant atque hās coriis intēxerant. Tum crēbris diurnis nocturnisque ēruptionibus aut aggeri ignem inferēbant aut milites occupātōs in opere adoriēbantur; et
 10 nostrarum turrium altitudinem, quantum hās cotidiānus agger expresserat, commissis suarum turrium malis adaequābant; et apertōs cuniculōs praeustā et praeacūtā materiā et pice fervefactā et māximī ponderis
 15 saxīs morābantur moenibusque adpropinquāre prohibēbant.

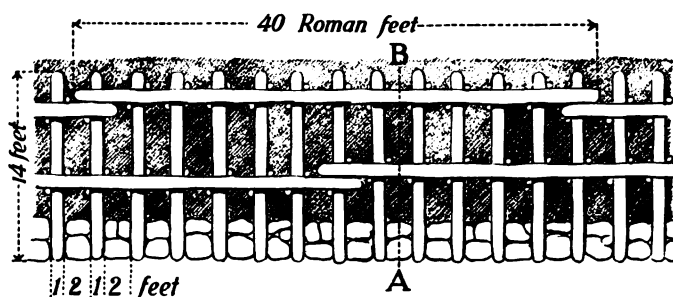
How a Gallic wall was built.

23 Mūri autem omnēs Gallicī hāc ferē formā sunt. Trabēs dērēctae perpetuae in longitudinem paribus intervāllis, distantēs inter sē bīnōs pedēs, in solō conlocantur. Hae revinciuntur intrōrsus et multō aggere
 20 vestiuntur; ea autem quae diximus intervālla grandibus in fronte saxīs efferciuntur. His conlocātis et coagmentātis alius insuper ōrdō additur, ut idem illud intervāllum servētur neque inter sē contingant trabēs,
 25 sed, paribus intermissis spatiis, singulae singulis saxīs interiectis artē contineantur. Sic deinceps omne opus contextitur dum iūsta mūri altitudō expleātur.

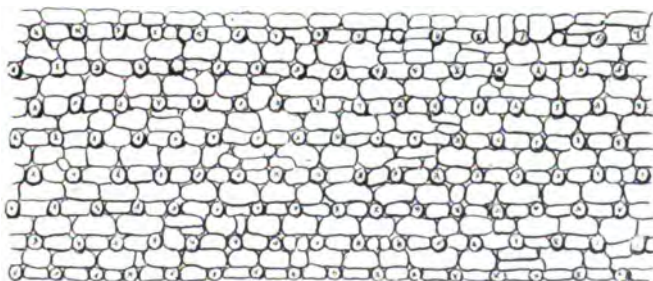
Hōc cum in speciem varietātemque opus dēforme nōn est, alternis trabibus ac saxīs, quae rēctis lineis suōs
 30 ōrdinēs servant, tum ad utilitātem et dēfensiōnem urbium summam habet oportunitātem; quod et ab incen-



Section through A B



Plan of one layer



Front view

A GALIC WALL.

diō lapis et ab ariete māteria dēfendit, quae perpetuis trabibus pedum quadrāgēnum plērumque intrōrsus revincta neque perrumpī neque distrahī potest.

A sortie by the Gauls.

Hīs tot rēbus impeditā oppūgnātiōne militēs, cum 24
tōtō tempore frigore et adsiduīs imbris tardārentur, 5
tamen continentī labōre omnia haec superāvērunt, et
diēbus xxv aggerem lātum pedēs cccxxx, altum pedēs
lxxx extrūxērunt. Cum is mūrū hostium paene
contingeret et Caesar ad opus cōsuētūdine excubā-
ret militēsque hortārētur nē quod omnīnō tempus ab 10
opere intermitterētur, paulō ante tertiam vigiliam est
animadversum fūmare aggerem, quem cuniculō hostēs
succenderant; eōdemque tempore, tōtō mūrō clāmōre
sublātō duābus portīs ab utrōque latere turrium ēruptiō
fiēbat. Aliī facēs atque āridam māteriam dē mūrō in 15
aggerem ēminus iaciēbant; picem reliquāsque rēs qui-
bus īgnis excitārī potest fundēbant; ut, quō primum
occurrerētur aut cui rei ferrētur auxilium, vix ratiō inīrī
posset. Tamen, quod institūtō Caesaris duae semper
legiōnēs prō castrīs excubābant, plūrēsque parītis tem- 20
poribus erant in opere, celeriter factum est ut aliī ērup-
tiōnibus resisterent, aliī turrēs reducerent aggeremque
interscinderent, omnis vērō ex castrīs multitudō ad re-
stinguendum concurreret.

Their splendid courage.

Cum in omnibus locīs, cōsumptā iam reliquā parte 25
noctis, pūgnārētur semperque hostibus spēs victōriae
redintegrārētur, eō magis quod deūstōs pluteōs turrium
vidēbant, nec facile adīre apertōs ad auxiliandum ani-
madvertēbant, semperque ipsī recentēs dēfessis succē-

derent omnemque Galliae salutem in illō vēstigiō temporis positam arbitrarentur; accidit inspectantibus nōbīs quod dignum memoriā visum praetereundum nōn existimāvimus.

- 5 Quīdam ante portam oppidī Gallus per manūs sēbī āc picis trāditās glēbās in īgnem ē regiōne turris prōiciēbat; scorpīone ab latere dextrō trāiectus exanimātusque concidit. Hunc ex proximīs ūnus iacentem trāsgressus eōdem illō mūnere fungēbātur; eādem ratiōne
10 ictū scorpīonis exanimātō alterō successit tertius et tertio quartus, nec prius ille est ā prōpūgnātōribus vacuus relictus locus, quam restinctō aggere atque omni parte submōtis hostibus, finis est pūgnandī factus.

Preparing to abandon the city, the defenders are dissuaded by the women.

- 26 Omnia expertī Gallī, quod rēs nūlla successerat, posterō diē consilium cēpērunt ex oppidō profugere hortante et iubente Vercingetorige. Id silentiō noctis cōnātī nōn māgnā iactūrā suōrum sēsē effectūrōs spērābant; proptereā quod neque longē ab oppidō castra
20 Vercingetorigis aberant, et palūs perpetua, quae intercēdēbat, Rōmānōs ad īnsequendum tardābat. Iamque hōc facere noctū apparābant, cum mātres familiae repente in pūblicum prōcurrērunt flentēsque prōiectae ad pedēs suōrum omnibus precibus petiērunt, nē sē et
25 commūnēs liberōs hostibus ad supplicium dēderent, quōs ad capiendam fugam nātūrae et vīrium infirmitās impedīret. Ubi eōs in sententiā perstāre vidērunt, quod plērumque in summō periculō timor misericordiam nōn recipit, conclāmāre et significāre dē fugā Rō-
30 mānis coepērunt. Quō timōre perterritī Gallī, nē ab

equitatū Rōmānōrum viae praeoccupārentur, cōsiliō dēstitērunt.

The Romans storm the walls.

Posterō diē Caesar prōmōtā turri dērēctisque operi- 27
bus quae facere instituerat, māgnō coōrtō imbrī, nōn
inūtilem hanc ad capiendum cōsiliū tempestātem 5
arbitrātus, quod paulō incautius custōdiās in mūrō dis-
positās vidēbat, suōs quoque languidiū in opere ver-
sārī iussit, et quid fierī vellet ostendit, legiōnibusque
[intrā vineās] in occultō expeditis cohortātus ut ali-
quandō prō tantis labōribus frūctum victōriae percipe- 10
rent, eis, quī primī mūrū ascendissent praemia prō-
posuit militibusque signum dedit. Illi subitō ex om-
nibus partibus evolāvērunt mūrūque celeriter com-
plēvērunt.

Most of the townspeople are slain.

Hostēs rē novā perterriti, mūrō turribusque dēiecti, 28
in forō ac locis patentiōribus cuneatim cōstitērunt,
hōc animō ut, si quā ex parte obviam [contrā] veni-
rētur, acie instructā depūgnārent. Ubi nēminem in
aequum locum sēsē dēmittere, sed tōtō undique mūrō
infunditū viderunt, itī nē omninō spēs fugae tolle- 20
rm s oppidi partēs continentī
si, cum angustō exitū por-
tibus, pars iam ēgressa
s. Nec fuit quisquam
ēnabēnsī caede et la- 25
ōnfectis, nōn mulieri-

quī fuit circiter milium
ōrē audītō sē ex oppidō
ingetorigem pervēnērunt. 30

Quōs ille multā iam nocte silentiō ex fugā excēpit, et veritus nē qua in castrīs ex eōrum concursū et miseri-
cordiā vulgī sēditiō orerētur, procul in viā dispositis
familiāribus suis prīncipibusque cīvitatū disparandōs
5 dēdūcendōsque ad suōs cūrāvit, quae cuique cīvitatī
pars castrōrum ab initiō obvenerat.

Vercingetorix urges the Gauls to continue the war.

- 29 Posterō diē conciliō convocātō cōsōlātus cohortā-
tusque est, nē sē admodum animō dēmitterent, nēve
perturbārentur incommodō. Nōn virtūte neque in
10 aciē vīcisse Rōmānōs, sed artificiō quōdam et scientiā
oppūgnātiōnis, cūius rei fuerint ipsī imperitī. Errāre,
sī quī in bellō omnēs secundōs rērum prōventūs ex-
spectent. Sibi numquam placuisse Avaricum dēfendī,
cūius rei testēs ipsōs habēret, sed factum imprūdentiā
15 Biturīgum et nimīa obsequentiā reliquōrum utī hōc in-
commodū acciperētur. Id tamen sē celeriter māiōri-
bus commodis sātātūrum. Nam quae ab reliquīs Gal-
līs cīvitatēs dissentirent, hās suā diligentiā adiūctū-
rum atque ūnum cōsiliū tōtīus Galliae effectūrum,
20 cūius cōsēnsuī nē orbis quidem terrārum possit obsis-
tere; idque sē prope iam effectum habēre. Intereā
aequū esse ab eis commūnis salūtis causā impetrārī,
ut castra mūnīre instituerent, quō facilius repentinōs
hostium impetūs sustinēre possent.

They are encouraged to do so.

- 30 Fuit haec ōrātiō nōn ingrāta Gallis, et māximē quod
ipse animō nōn dēfēcerat tantō acceptō incommodō,
neque sē in occultum abdiderat et cōspectum multi-
tūdinis fūgerat; plūsque animō prōvidēre et praesen-
tīre exīstimābātur, quod rē integrā prīmō incendendum

Avaricum, post dēserendum cēnsuerat. Itaque ut reliquōrum imperātōrum rēs adversae auctōritātem minuunt, sic hūius ex contrāriō dīgnitās incommodō acceptō in diēs augēbātur. Simul in spem veniēbant eiūs adfirmātiōne dē reliquīs adiungendīs civitātibus; pri-
mumque eō tempore Galli castra mūnīre instituērunt; et sic erant animō cōnsternāti hominēs insuētī laboris, ut omnia quae imperārentur sibi patienda existimārent.

He raises more troops.

Nec minus quam est pollicitus Vercingetorix animō **31** labōrābat ut reliquās civitatēs adiungeret, atque eārum 10 principēs dōnis pollicitātiōnibusque adliciēbat. Huic rei idōneōs hominēs dēligēbat, quōrum quisque aut orātiōne subdolā aut amicitia facillimē capere posset. Quī Avaricō expūgnātō refūgerant, armandōs vestiendōsque cūrat; simul, ut dēminūtae cōpiae redintegrārentur, 15 imperat certum numerum militūm civitatibus, quem, et quam ante diem, in castra addūcī velit; sagittariōsque omnēs, quōrum erat permāgnus in Galliā numerus, conquīrī et ad sē mittī iubet. His rēbus celeriter id quod Avaricī dēperierat, explētur. Interim Teutoma-
tus, Ollovicōnis filius, rēx Nitiobrogum, cuius pater ab
senātū nostrō amicus erat appellātus, cum māgnō nu-
merō equitum suōrum et quōs ex Aquitāniā condūxe-
rat ad eum pervēnit.

The Haedui, having a political dispute, appeal to Caesar.

Caesar Avaricī complūrēs diēs commorātus sum- **32**
mamque ibi cōpiam frūmenti et reliquī commeātūs nac-
tus, exercitum ex labōre atque inopiā reficit. Iam prope
hieme cōfectā, cum ipsō annī tempore ad gerendum
bellum vocārētur et ad hostem proficiscī cōstituisset,

sive eum ex palūdibus silvisque elicere sive obsidiōne premere posset, lēgātī ad eum prīncipēs Haeduōrum veniunt ōrātum, ut māximē necessariō tempore civitātī subveniat: Summō esse in periculō rem, quod, cum singulī magistrātūs antiquitus creārī atque rēgiam potestatem annum obtinēre cōsuēssent, duo magistrātum gerant, et sē uterque eōrum lēgibus creatum dicat. Hōrum esse alterum Convictolitavem, flōrentem et illustrem adulēscētem; alterum Cotum, antiquissimā familiā nātum, atque ipsum hominem summae potentiae et māgnae cōgnātiōnis, cūius frāter Valetiacus proximō annō eundem magistrātum gesserit. Civitatem esse omnem in armīs, dīvisum senātum, dīvisum populum, suās cūiusque eōrum clientēlās. Quod sī diūtius alatur contrōversia, fore, utī pars cum parte civitātis cōnfligat. Id nē accadat positum in ēius diligenitiā atque auctōritate.

He goes in person and decides the question.

33 Caesar etsī ā bellō atque hoste discēdere dētrimentosum esse exīstimābat, tamen nōn ignōrāns quanta ex
20 dissēnsiōnibus incommoda orīrī cōsuēssent, nē tanta et tam coniūcta populō Rōmānō civitās, quam ipse semper aluisset omnibusque rēbus ōrnāset, ad vim atque arma dēscenderet, atque ea pars quae minus sibi cōnfideret auxilia ā Vercingetorīge arcesseret, huic rei
25 praevertendum exīstimāvit; et quod lēgibus Haeduōrum eis quī summum magistrātum obtinērent excēdere ex finibus nōn licēret, nē quid dē iūre aut dē lēgibus eōrum dēminuisse vidērētur, ipse in Haeduōs proficiscī statuit, senātumque omnem et quōs inter contrō-
30 versia esset ad sē Decetiam ēvocāvit.

Cum prope omnis civitas eo convenisset, docereturque paucis clam convocatis alio loco, alio tempore, atque oportuerit, fratrem a fratre renuntiatum, cum leges duo ex una familia vivo utroque non solum magistratus creari vetarent, sed etiam in senatu esse prohiberent, Ceterum imperium depondere coegit; Convictolitavem, qui per sacerdotes more civitatis intermissis magistratibus esset creatus, potestatem obtinere iussit.

He sends Labienus northward, and goes himself toward Gergovia.

Hoc decreto interposito, — cohortatus Haeduos ut 34 contrroversiarum ac dissensionis obliviscerentur atque omnibus omissis [his] rebus huic bello servirent, eaque quae meruissent praemia ab se devicta Gallia expectarent, equitatumque omnem et peditum milia x sibi celeriter mitterent, quae in praesidiis rei frumentariae causa disponeret, — exercitum in duas partes divisit: 15 quattuor legionem in Senones Parisiosque Labieno ducendas dedit; sex ipse in Arvernenses ad oppidum Gergoviam secundum flumen Elaver duxit; equitatus partem illi attribuit, partem sibi reliquit. Quam rem cognita Vercingetorix, omnibus interruptis eius fluminis pontibus, 20 ab altera fluminis parte iter facere coepit.

He outwits Vercingetorix and crosses the Allier.

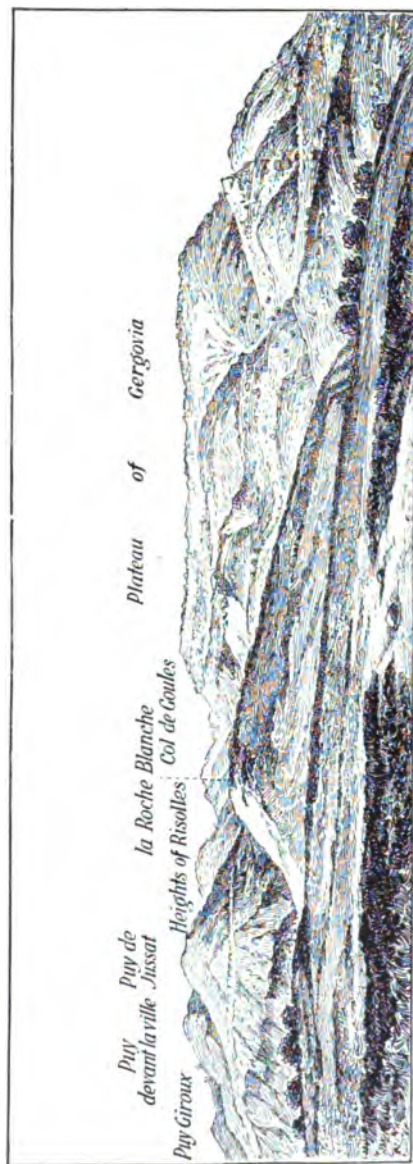
Cum uterque utrimque exisset exercitus, in conspectu ferereque e regione Caesaris castra ponebat, dispositis exploratoribus, necubi effecto ponte Romani copias traducerent. Erat in magnis Caesaris difficultatibus res ne maiorem aestatis partem flumine impediretur, quod non ferere ante autumnum Elaver vadum transiri solet. Itaque, ne id accideret, silvestri loco castris po-

sitis, ē regiōne ūnius eōrum pontium quōs Vercingetorix rescindendōs cūrāverat, posterō diē cum duābus legiōnibus in occultō restitit; reliquās cōpiās cum omnibus impedimentīs, ut cōsuērat, mīsīt, distrāctis
5 quibusdam cohortibus, ut numerus legiōnum cōstāre vidērētur.

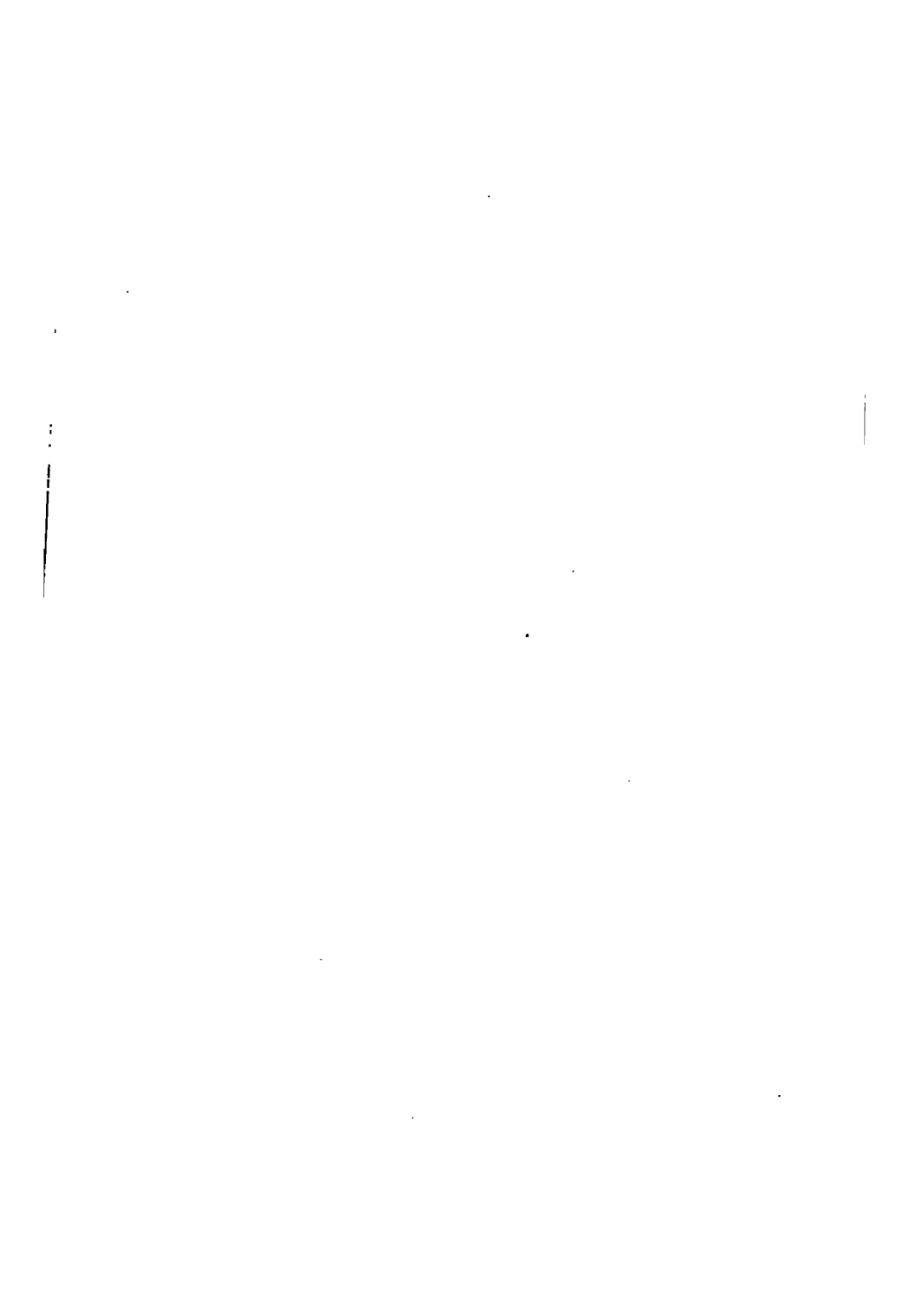
Hīs, quam longissimē possent prōgredi iūssīs, cum iam ex diēi tempore coniectūrā caperet in castra per-
ventum, isdem sublicis, quārum pars inferior integra
10 remanēbat, pontem reficere coepit. Celeriter effectō opere legiōnibusque trāductīs et locō castris idōneō delēctō, reliquās cōpiās revocāvit. Vercingetorix rē cōgnitā, nē contrā suam voluntātem dīmicare cōgerētur, māgnīs itineribus antecessit.

Reaching Gergovia, he gets an advantageous position.

36 Caesar ex eō locō quintis castris Gergoviam pervēnit equestrīque eō diē proeliō levī fectō, perspectō urbis sitū, quae posita in altissimō monte omnēs aditūs difficilēs habēbat, dē oppūgnātiōne dēspērāvit; dē ob-
sessiōne nōn prius agendum cōstituit quam rem frū-
20 mentāriam expedisset. At Vercingetorix castris prope oppidum in monte positīs, mediocribus circum sē intervāllis sēparātīm singulārum civitātum cōpiās conlocāverat; atque omnibus eius iugī collibus occupātis quā dispici poterat, horribilem speciem praehebāt; prīnci-
25 pēsque eārum civitātum, quōs sibi ad cōsiliū capien-
dum delēgerat, primā lūce cotidiē ad sē convenire iubēbat, seu quid commūnicandum seu quid administran-
dum vidērētur; neque ūllum ferē diem intermittēbat quin equestrī proeliō interiectīs sagittāriīs, quid in quō-
30 que esset animī ac virtūtis suōrum, periclitārētur.



VUE DE GERGOVIA FROM THE SOUTH.



Erat ē regiōne oppidī collis sub ipsis rādicibus montis ēgregiē mūnītus atque ex omnī parte cīrcumcīsus; quem sī tenērent nostrī, et aquae māgnā parte et pābulatiōne liberā prohibētūrī hostēs vidēbantur. Sed is locus praesidiō ab hīs nōn infirmō tenēbātur. Tamen 5 silentiō noctis Caesar ex castrīs ēgressus, priusquam subsidiō ex oppidō venīri posset, dēiectō praesidiō potītus locō duās ibi legiōnēs conlocāvit fossamque duplicem duodēnum pedum ā māiōribus castrīs ad minōra perdūxit, ut tūtō ab repentinō hostium incursū etiam 10 singulī commeāre possent.

A revolt is organized among the Haedui.

Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Convictolitavis 37 Haeduus, cui magistrātum adiūdicātum ā Caesare dēmōstrāvimus, sollicitātus ab Arvernīs pecūniā cum quibusdam adulēscentibus conloquitur, quōrum erat 15 princeps Litaviccus atque eius frātrēs, amplissimā familiā nātī adulēscentēs. Cum hīs praemium communicat hortāturque ut sē liberōs et imperiō nātōs meminerint. Ūnam esse Haeduōrum civitātem, quae certissimam Galliae victōriam distineat; eius auctōritāte 20 reliquās continēri; quā trāductā locum cōsistendī Rōmānis in Galliā nōn fore. Esse nōn nūllō sē Caesaris beneficiō adfectum, sic tamen ut iūstissimam apud eum causam obtinuerit; sed plūs commūni libertāti tribuere. Cūr enim potius Haedui dē suō iūre et dē lēgibus ad 25 Caesarem disceptātorem, quam Rōmāni ad Haeduōs veniant?

Celeriter adulēscentibus et ōrātiōne magistrātūs et praemiō dēductis, cum sē vel princīpēs eius cōsili fore profitērentur, ratiō perficiendī quaerēbātur, quod civi- 30

tātem temerē ad suscipiendum bellum addūcī posse nōn cōfidēbant. Placuit ut Litaviccus x illis milibus quae Caesarī ad bellum mitterentur praeficerētur, atque ea dūcenda cūrāret frātrēsque eius ad Caesarem praecurserent. Reliqua quā ratiōne agī placeat cōstituunt.

Litaviccus on the way to Gergovia incites his troops to desert the Romans.

38 Litaviccus acceptō exercitū, cum milia passuum circiter xxx ā Gergoviā abesset, convocātis subitō militibus lacrimāns, “Quō proficīscimur,” inquit, “mīlītēs? Omnis noster equitātus, omnis nōbilitās interiit; prīncipēs cīvītātis, Eporēdorīx et Viridomārus, insimulātī prōditiōnis, ab Rōmānis indictā causā interfectī sunt. Haec ab hīs cōgnōscite quī ex ipsā caede effūgērunt; nam ego, frātribus atque omnibus meis propinquīs interfectīs, dolōre prohibeor quae gesta sunt prōnūntiāre.” Prōdūcuntur eī quōs ille ēdocuerat quae dīcī vellet, atque eadem quae Litaviccus prōnūntiāverat multitudinī expōnunt: Omnēs equitēs Haeduōrum interfectōs, quod conlocūtī cum Arvernīs dicerentur; ipsōs sē inter multitudinem mīlitum occultāsse atque ex
20 mediā caede effūgisse.

Conclāmant Haeduī et Litaviccum obsecrant ut sibi cōnsulat. “Quasi vērō,” inquit ille, “cōnsilī sit rēs, āc nōn necesse sit nōbīs Gergoviam contendere et cum Arvernīs nōsmet coniungere. An dubitāmus quīn nefāriō facinore admissō Rōmānī iam ad nōs interficiendōs concurrant? Proinde, sī quid in nōbīs animī est, persequāmur eōrum mortem, quī indignissimē interiērunt, atque hōs latrōnēs interficiāmus.” Ostendit cīvēs Rōmānōs quī eius praesidī fidūciā ūnā erant.
30 Continuō māgnū numerum frūmentī commeātisque

diripit; ipsōs crudēliter excruciatōs interficit. Nūntiōs tōtā civitatē Haeduum dīmittit; eōdem mendaciō dē caede equitum et principum permovet; hortatur ut simili ratiōne atque ipse fēcerit suās iniuriās persequantur.

Eporēdorix informs Caesar.

Eporēdorix Haeduus, summō locō nātus adulē- 39
scēns et summae domī potentiae, et ūnā Viridomārus, parī aetate et grātiā sed genere disparī, quem Caesar ab Diviciācō sibi trāditum ex humili locō ad summam dignitatē perdūxerat, in equitum numerō convēne- 10
rant nōminatim ab eō ēvocātī. Hīs erat inter sē dē principatū contentiō; et in illā magistratuum contrōversia alter prō Convictolitave, alter prō Cotō summīs opibus pūgnāverant. Ex hīs Eporēdorix cōgnitō Litavici cōsiliō mediā ferē nocte rem ad Caesarem dēfert; 15
orat nē patiatur civitatē prāvīs adulēsentium cōsiliis ab amicitia populi Rōmānī dēficere; quod futurum prōvideat, si sē tot hominum mīlia cum hostibus coniūxerint, quōrum salutē neque propinquī neglegere neque civitās levī mōmentō aestimāre possit. 20

Who marches swiftly and puts down the revolt.

Māgnā adfectus sollicitūdine hōc nūntiō Caesar, 40
quod semper Haeduōrum civitatī praecipuē indulserat, nullā interpositā dubitatiōne legiōnēs expeditās IIII equitatumque omnem ex castris ēducit; nec fuit spatium tāli tempore ad contrahenda castra, quod rēs po- 25
sita in celeritate vidēbatur; C. Fabium lēgātum cum legiōnibus duābus castris praesidiō relinquit. Frātrēs Litavici cum comprehendī iussisset, paulō ante reperit ad hostēs profūgisse.

Adhortātus milītēs, nē necessāriō tempore itineris
 labōre permoveantur, cupidissimīs omnibus prōgressus
 mīlia passuum xxv, agmen Haeduōrum cōspiciātur;
 immissō equitātū iter eōrum morātur atque impe-
 5 dit, interdicītque omnibus nē quemquam interficiant.
 Eporēdorīgēm et Viridomārum, quōs illī interfectōs
 existimābant, inter equitēs versārī suōsque appel-
 lāre iubet. Hīs cōgnitīs et Litaviccī fraude perspectā,
 Haeduī manūs tendere et dēditiōnem sīgnificāre, et
 10 prōiectīs armīs mortem dēprecārī incipiunt. Lita-
 vīccus cum suis clientibus, quibus mōre Gallōrum
 nefās est etiam in extrēmā fortūnā dēserere patrōnōs,
 Gergoviam profugit.

He hastens back to Gergovia.

41 Caesar nūntiīs ad cīvitatē Haeduōrum missīs qui
 15 suō beneficiō cōservātōs docērent, quōs iūre bellī in-
 terficere potuisset, tribusque hōris [noctis] exercitū
 ad quiētem datīs castra ad Gergoviam movet. Mediō
 ferē itinere equitēs ā Fabiō missī quantō rēs in periculō
 fuerit expōnunt. Summīs cōpiīs castra oppūgnāta
 20 dēmōnstrant, cum crēbrō integrī dēfessīs succēderent
 nostrōsque adsiduō labōre dēfatigārent, quibus prop-
 ter māgnitudinem castrōrum perpetuō esset isdem
 in vāllō permanendum; multitūdine sagittārum atque
 omni genere tēlōrum multōs vulnerātōs; ad haec
 25 sustinenda māgnō ūsuī fuisse tormenta. Fabium dis-
 cessū eōrum, duābus relictīs portīs, obstruere cēterās
 pluteōsque vāllō addere et sē in posterum diem simi-
 lemque cāsum apparāre. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs Caesar
 summō studiō milītum ante ortum sōlis in castra per-
 30 vēnit.

Other plots of the Gauls.

Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Haedui primis 42
 nūntiis ab Litaviccō acceptis nūllum sibi ad cōgnōscen-
 dum spatium relinquunt. Impellit aliōs avāritia, aliōs
 irācundia et temeritās, quae māximē illi hominum ge-
 nerī est innāta, ut levem auditiōnem habeant prō rē 5
 compertā. Bona civium Rōmānōrum diripiunt, caedēs
 faciunt, in servitūtem abstrahunt. Adiuvat rem prō-
 clīnātam Convictolitavis plēbemque ad furōrem impel-
 lit, ut facinore admissō ad sānitātem reverti pudeat.
 M. Aristium, tribūnum mīlitum, iter ad legiōnēs facien- 10
 tem, fidē datā ex oppidō Cavillōnō ēdūcunt; idem facere
 cōgunt eōs quī negōtiandī causā ibi cōstiterant. Hōs
 continuō in itinere adorti omnibus impedimentis exuunt;
 rēpugnantēs diem noctemque obsident; multis utrim-
 que interfectis māiōrem multitudinem ad arma con- 15
 citant.

The Haedui seek an insincere reconciliation.

Interim nūntiō adlātō omnēs eōrum mīlitēs in po- 43
 testāte Caesaris tenērī, concurrunt ad Aristium; nihil
 pūblicō factum cōsiliō dēmōnstrant; quaestiōnem dē
 bonis direptis dēcernunt; Litaviccī frātrumque bona 20
 pūblicant; lēgātōs ad Caesarem pūrgandī suī grātiā
 mittunt. Haec faciunt recuperandōrum sūōrum causā;
 sed contāmināti facinore et capti compendiō ex direp-
 tis bonis, quod ea rēs ad multōs pertinēbat, et timōre
 poenae exterriti cōsilia clam dē bellō inīre incipiunt 25
 cīvitatēsque reliquās lēgātiōnibus sollicitant.

Quae tametsi Caesar intellegēbat, tamen quam mī-
 tissimē potest lēgātōs appellat: Nihil sē propter īnscien-
 tiam levitātemque vulgī gravius dē cīvitate iūdicāre

neque dē suā in Haeduōs benevolentīā dēminuere. Ipse māiōrem Galliae mōtum exspectāns, nē ab omnibus civitatibus circumsisteretur, cōsilia inibat, quem ad modum ā Gergoviā discēderet ac rursus omnem
5 exercitum contraheret, nē profectiō nāta ab timōre dēfectiōnis similisque fugae vidēretur.

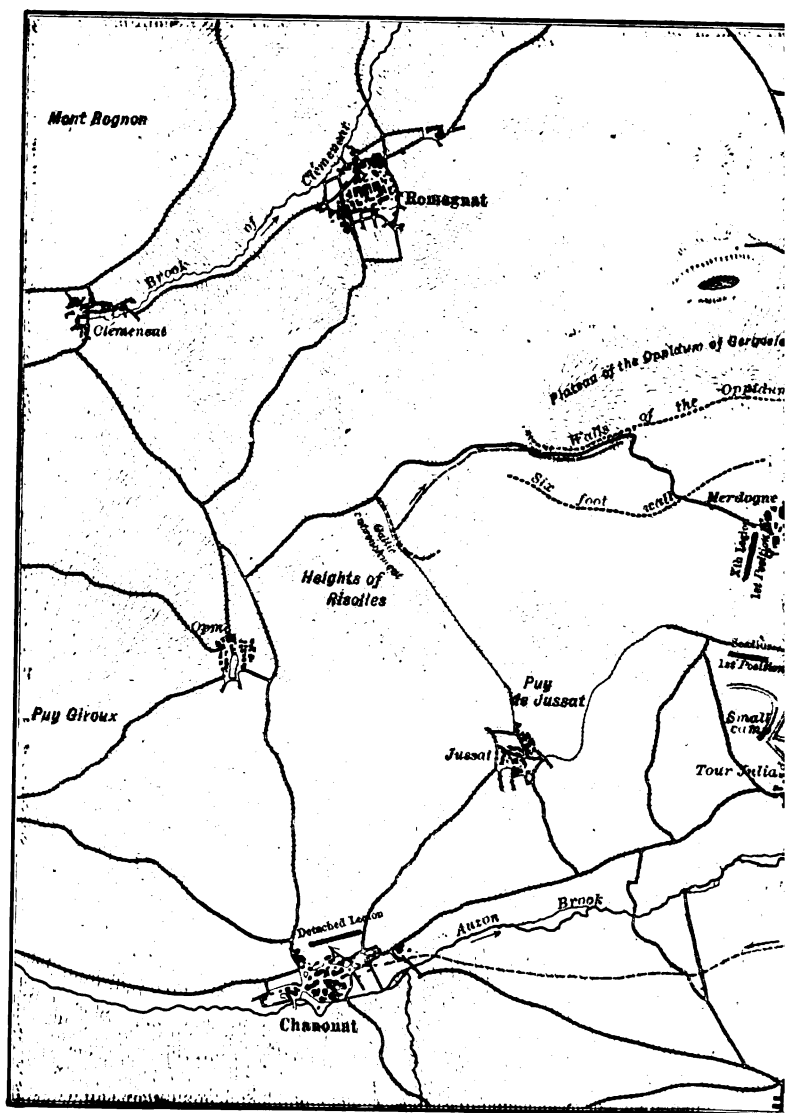
Caesar sees a chance to gain an advantage at Gergovia.

44 Haec cōgitantī accidere vīsa est facultās bene gerendae rei. Nam cum in minōra castra operis perspiciendi causā vēnisset, animadvertit collem quī ab hostibus
10 tenēbātur, nūdātum hominibus, quī superiōribus diēbus vix prae multitudine cernī poterat. Admirātus quacrit ex perfugīs causam, quōrum māgnus ad eum cotidiē numerus cōfluēbat. Cōstābat inter omnēs, quod iam ipse Caesar per explōrātōrēs cōgnōverat, dorsum esse
15 eius iugī prope aequum, sed silvestre et angustum, quā esset aditus ad alteram partem oppidī; vehementer huic illōs locō timēre nec iam aliter sentīre, ūnō colle ab Rōmānīs occupātō sī alterum āmisissent, quīn paene circumvallātī atque omnī exitū et pābulātiōne interclūsī
20 vidērentur. Ad hunc mūniendum locum omnēs ā Vercingetorige ēvocātōs.

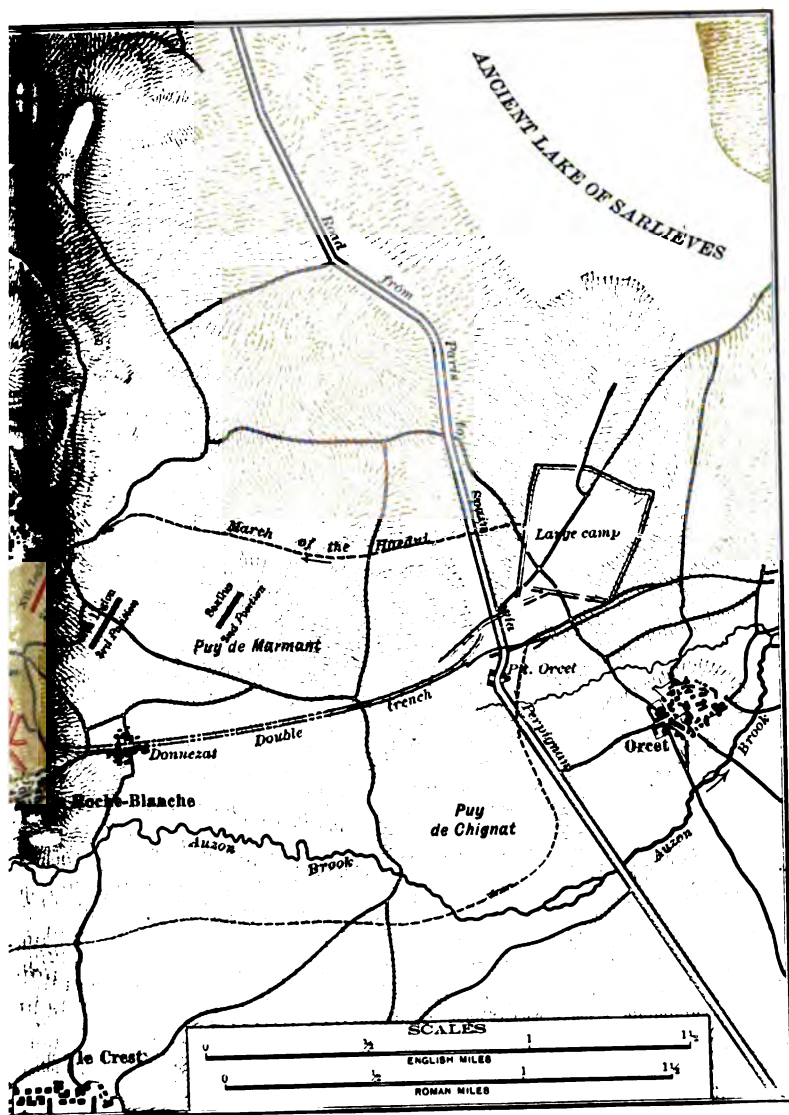
Skillful disposition of his troops.

45 Hāc rē cōgnitā Caesar mittit complūrēs equitum turmās eō dē mediā nocte; imperat ut paulō tumultuosius omnibus locis pervagentur. Primā lūce māgnum
25 numerum impedimentōrum ex castrīs mūlōrumque prōdūci dēque hīs strāmenta dētrahī mūliōnēsque cum cassidibus, equitum speciē ac simulātiōne, collibus circumvehī iubet. Hīs paucōs addit equitēs quī lātius ostentātiōnis causā vagentur. Longō circuitū eāsdem





THE SIEGE OF



OF GERGOVIA.

omnēs iubet petere regiōnēs. Haec procul ex oppidō vidēbantur, ut erat ā Gergoviā dēspectus in castra; neque tantō spatiō, certī quid esset, explōrārī poterat. Legiōnem x eōdem lūce mittit et paulum prōgressam inferiōre cōstituit locō silvisque occultat. Augētur 5 Gallis suspiciō, atque omnēs illō ad muniōnem cōpiae trādūcuntur.

Vacua castra hostium Caesar cōspicātus, tēctis insignibus suōrum occultātisque signis militāribus, rārōs milites, nē ex oppidō animadverterentur, ex mājōribus 10 castris in minōra trādūcit, lēgātisque quōs singulis legiōnibus praefēcerat quid fieri velit ostendit; in primis monet ut contineant milites nē studiō pūgnandī aut spē praedae longius prōgrediantur; quid iniquitās loci habeat incommodī prōpōnit; hōc unā celeritāte posse 15 vitārī; occāsionis esse rem, nōn proeli. His rēbus expositis signum dat et ab dextrā parte aliō ascēnsū eōdem tempore Haeduōs mittit.

He captures the Gallic camp by a sudden attack.

Mūrus oppidi ā plānitiē atque initiō ascēnsūs rēctā 46 regiōne, sī nūllus ānfractus intercēderet, MCC passūs 20 aberat; quicquid hūc circuitūs ad molliendum clivum accesserat, id spatium itineris augēbat. Ā mediō ferē colle in longitūdinem, ut nātūra montis ferēbat, ex grandibus saxīs vi pedum mūrum quī nostrōrum impetum tardāret praedūxerant Gallī atque, inferiōre 25 omni spatiō vacuō relīctō, superiōrem partem collis ūsque ad mūrum oppidi dēnsissimis castris complēverant. Milites datō signō celeriter ad muniōnem perveniunt eamque trānsgressī trinis castris potiuntur; ac tanta fuit in castris capiendis celeritās ut Teutomatus, 30

rēx Nitio brogum, subito in tabernāculō oppressus, ut meridiē conquiēverat, superiōre parte corporis nūlā, vulnerātō equō, vix sē ex manibus praedantium militum ēriperet.

The army is eager to assault the town.

- 47 Cōsecūtus id quod animō prōposuerat Caesar receptuī canī iussit, legiōnisque x, quācum erat, continuō sīgna cōstitērunt. At reliquārum legiōnum milites nōn auditō sonō tubae, quod satis māgna vallēs intercēdebat, tamen ā tribūnis militum lēgātisque, ut erat ā
10 Caesare praeceptum, retinēbantur. Sed ēlāti spē celeris victōriae et hostium fugā et superiōrum temporum secundis proeliis, nihil adeō arduum sibi existimābant, quod nōn virtūte cōsequi possent; neque finem prius sequendi fēcērunt, quam mūrō oppidī portisque adpro-
15 pinquārunt.

- Tum vērō ex omnibus urbis partibus ortō clāmōre, quī longius aberant repentinō tumultū perterriti, cum hostem intrā portās esse existimārent, sē ex oppidō ēiēcērunt. Mātrēs familiae dē mūrō vestem argentum-
20 que iactābant, et pectore nūdō prōminentēs, passis manibus obtestābantur Rōmānōs ut sibi parcerent neu, sicut Avaricī fēcissent, nē ā mulieribus quidem atque infanti-
bus abstinērent; nōn nūllae dē mūrō per manūs dēmissae sēsē militibus trādēbant. L. Fabius, centuriō
25 legiōnis VIII, quem inter suōs eō diē dixisse cōstābat excitārī sē Avaricēnsibus praemiis, neque commissūrum ut prius quisquam mūrum ascenderet, trēs suōs nactus manipulārēs atque ab eis sublevātus mūrum ascendit; hōs ipse rūsus singulōs exceptāns in mū-
30 rum extulit.

Reinforcements join the Gauls.

Interim eī qui ad alteram partem oppidī, ut suprā 48
 dēmōnstrāvimus, mūnitiōnis causā convēnerant, primō
 exaudītō clāmōre, inde etiam crēbris nūntiīs incitātī
 oppidum ā Rōmānīs tenērī, praemissīs equitibus māg-
 nō cursū eō contendērunt. Eōrum ut quisque primus 5
 vēnerat, sub mūrō cōsistēbat suōrumque pūgnantium
 numerum augēbat. Quōrum cum māgna multitudō
 convēnisset, mātres familiae, quae paulō ante Rōmānis
 dē mūrō manūs tendēbant, suōs obtestārī et mōre Gal-
 licō pāssum capillum ostentāre liberōsque in cōspec- 10
 tum prōferre coepērunt. Erat Rōmānīs nec locō nec
 numerō aequa contentiō; simul et cursū et spatiō pūg-
 nae dēfatigātī nōn facile recentēs atque integrōs susti-
 nēbant.

A doubtful struggle.

Caesar, cum inīquō locō pūgnārī hostiumque cōpiās 49
 augērī vidēret, praemetuēns suis ad T. Sextium lēgā-
 tum, quem minōribus castrīs praesidiō reliquerat, misit
 ut cohortēs ex castrīs celeriter ēdūceret et sub infimō
 colle ab dextrō latere hostium cōstitueret; ut, sī nos-
 trōs locō dēpulsōs vīdisset, quōminus liberē hostēs in- 20
 sequerentur terrēret. Ipse, paulum ex eō locō cum
 legiōne prōgressus ubi cōstiterat, ēventum pūgnae ex-
 spectābat.

Gallant action of Petronius.

Cum ācerrimē comminus pūgnārētur, hostēs locō 50
 et numerō nostrī virtūte cōfiderent, subitō sunt Hae- 25
 duī vīsī ab latere nostrīs apertō, quōs Caesar ab dextrā
 parte aliō ascēnsū manūs destinendae causā miserat.
 Hī similitūdine armōrum vehementer nostrōs perter-

ruērunt; ac, tametsi dextris umeris exsertis animadver-
tēbantur, quod insigne pactum esse consuebat, tamen
id ipsum sui fallendi causā milites ab hostibus factum
existimabant.

- 5 Eodem tempore L. Fabius centuriō quique unā mū-
rum ascenderant circumventi atque interfecti de mūrō
praecipitabantur. M. Petronius, eiusdem legionis cen-
turiō, cum portās excidere cōnātus esset, a multitudīne
oppressus ac sibi dēspērāns, multis iam vulneribus ac-
10 ceptis, manipulāribus suis qui illum secuti erant, “ Quo-
niam,” inquit, “ me unā vobiscum servare non possum,
vestrae quidem certē vitae prospiciam, quos cupiditate
gloriae adductus in periculum deduxi. Vos datā facul-
tate vobis consulite.” Simul in mediōs hostēs inrupit
15 duobusque interfectis reliquos a portā paulum submō-
vit. Cōnantibus auxiliārī suis “Frūstrā,” inquit, “ meae
vitae subvenire cōnāmini, quem iam sanguis virēsque
deficiunt. Proinde abite dum est facultās vōsque ad
legionem recipite.” Ita pugnans post paulum conci-
20 dit ac suis salutī fuit.

Repulse of the Romans.

- 51 Nostri, cum undique premerentur, XLVI centuriōni-
bus amissis deieci sunt loco. Sed intolerantius Gal-
lōs insequentēs legiō x tardavit, quae pro subsidiō paulō
aequiore loco cōstitērat. Hanc rursus XIII legionis
25 cohortēs excēpērunt, quae ex castris minōribus ēductae
cum T. Sextiō lēgātō cēperant locum superiorem. Le-
gionēs ubi primum plānitium attigērunt, infestis contrā
hostem signis cōstitērunt. Vercingetorix ab radicī-
bus collis suos intrā mūnitiōnēs redūxit. Eō diē mī-
30 litēs sunt paulō minus DCC dēsiderāti.

Caesar chides his troops for impetuosity, but praises them for their bravery.

Posterō diē Caesar contiōne advocātā temeritatem 52 cupiditatemque militum reprehendit, quod sibi ipsi iudicāvissent quō prōcēdendum aut quid agendum vidērētur, neque signō recipiendī datō cōstitissent neque ā tribūnis militum lēgātisque retinērī potuissent. Ex- 5 posuit quid inīquitās locī posset, quod ipse ad Avaricum sēnsisset, cum sine dūce et sine equitātū dēprehēnsis hostibus explōrātā victōriā dimisisset, nē parvum modo dētrīmentum in contentiōne propter inīquitatem locī accideret. Quantō opere eōrum animī māgnitū- 10 dinem admirārētur, quōs nōn castrōrum mūnitiōnēs, nōn altitūdō montis, nōn mūrus oppidī tardāre potuisset, tantō opere licentiam arrogantiamque reprehendere, quod plūs sē quam imperātorem dē victōriā atque exitū rērum sentīre exīstimārent; nec minus sē ā milite 15 modestiam et continentiam quam virtutem atque animī māgnitudinem dēsiderāre.

Caesar moves away to the country of the Haedui.

Hāc habitā contiōne et ad extrēmum [ōrātiōnē] 53 cōfirmātis militibus, nē ob hanc causam animō permoverēntur, neu, quod inīquitās locī attulisset, id virtūtī 20 hostium tribuerent; eadem dē profectiōne cōgitāns quae ante sēnserat, legiōnēs ex castris ēdūxit aciemque idōneō locō cōstituit. Cum Vercingetorix nihilō magis in aequum locum dēscenderet, levī factō equestri proeliō atque eō secundō, in castra exercitum re- 25 dūxit. Cum hōc idem posterō diē fēcisset, satis ad Gallicam ostentātiōnem minuendam militumque animōs cōfirmandōs factum exīstimāns, in Haeduōs

mōvit castra. Nē tum quidem īsecūtis hostibus, tertiō diē ad flūmen Elaver vēnit; pontem refēcit exercitumque trādūxit.

His suspicions of their intentions are confirmed.

- 54 Ibi ā Viridomārō atque Eporēdorige Haeduīs ap-
 5 pellātus, discit cum omnī equitātū Litavicum ad solli-
 citandōs Haeduōs profectum; opus esse ipsōs antecē-
 dere ad cōfirmandam civitātem. Etsī multis iam rē-
 bus perfidiam Haeduōrum perspectam habēbat, atque
 hōrum discessū mātūrārī defectionem civitātis existi-
 10 mābat; tamen eōs retinendōs nōn cēnsuit, nē aut inferre
 iniūriam vidērētur aut daret timōris aliquam suspiciō-
 nem. Discēdentibus eīs breviter sua in Haeduōs me-
 rita exposuit: quōs et quam humilēs accēpisset, com-
 pulsōs in oppida, multātōs agrīs, omnibus ēreptis sociīs,
 15 impositō stīpendiō, obsidibus summā cum contumeliā
 extortīs; et quam in fortunam quamque in amplitūdi-
 nem dūxisset, ut nōn solum in prīstinum statum redis-
 sent, sed omnium temporum dignitātem et grātiā an-
 teecessisse vidērentur. Hīs datīs mandātis eōs ab sē
 20 dīmīsīt.

The Gauls kill the Roman garrison at Noviodunum and burn the town.

- 55 Noviodūnum erat oppidum Haeduōrum ad rīpās
 Ligeris opportunō locō positum. Hūc Caesar omnēs
 obsidēs Galliae frūmentum, pecūniā pūblicā, suō-
 rum atque exercitūs impedimentōrum māgnam partem
 25 contulerat; hūc māgnū numerum equōrum, hūius
 bellī causā in Italiā atque Hispaniā coēptum miserat.
 Eō cum Eporēdorix Viridomārusque vēnissent et dē
 statū civitātis cōgnōvissent, Litavicum Bibracte ab

Haeduīs receptum, quod est oppidum apud eōs m̄xi-
mae auctōritātis, Convictolitavem magistrātum māg-
namque partem senātūs ad eum convēnisse, lēgātōs ad
Vercingetorigem dē pāce et amicitia conciliandā pū-
blicē missōs; nōn praetermittendum tantum commo- 5
dum existimāvērunt.

Itaque interfectis Noviodūni custōdibus quīque eō
negōtiandī causā convēnerant, pecūniam atque equōs
inter sē partitī sunt; obsidēs cīvitātum Bibracte ad
magistrātum dēdūcendōs cūrāvērunt; oppidum, quod ā 10
sē tenērī nōn posse iūdicābant, nē cui esset ūsuī Rō-
mānis, incendērunt; frūmentī quod subitō potuērunt
nāvibus āvēxērunt, reliquum flūmine atque incendiō
corrūpērunt. Ipsī ex finitimis regiōnibus cōpiās cō-
gere, praesidia custōdiāsque ad rīpās Ligeris dispōnere 15
equitātumque omnibus locis iniciendī timōris causā os-
tentāre coepērunt; sī ab rē frūmentāriā Rōmānōs exclū-
dere [aut adductōs inopiā ex prōvinciā expellere] pos-
sent. Quam ad spem multum eōs adiuvābat quod Li-
ger ex nivibus crēverat, ut omnīnō vadō nōn posse trān- 20
sīrī vidērētur.

Caesar crosses to the north bank of the Loire.

Quibus rēbus cōgnitis Caesar mātūrandum sibi cēn- 56
suit, sī esset in perficiendīs pontibus perīclitandum, ut
prius quam essent m̄iōrēs eō coāctae cōpiae dīmīcāret.
Nam nē commūtātō cōnsiliō iter in prōvinciam con- 25
verteret, ut nōn nēmō tum quidem necessāriō faciun-
dum existimābat, cum infāmia atque indignitās rei et
oppositus mōns Cebenna viārumque difficultās impe-
diēbat; tum m̄ximē quod abiūctō Labiēnō atque eīs
legiōnibus quās ūnā mīserat, vehementer timēbat. 30

Itaque admodum māgnis diurnis nocturnisque itineribus cōfectis contrā omnium opīnionem ad Ligirim vēnit; vadōque per equitēs inventō prō rei necessitatē opportunō, ut braccia modo atque umeri ad sustinenda arma liberī ab aquā esse possent, dispositō equitātū quī vim flūminis refringeret, atque hostibus primō aspectū perturbātis incolumem exercitum trādūxit; frūmentumque in agrīs et pecoris cōpiam nactus, replētō hīs rēbus exercitū iter in Senonēs facere instituit.

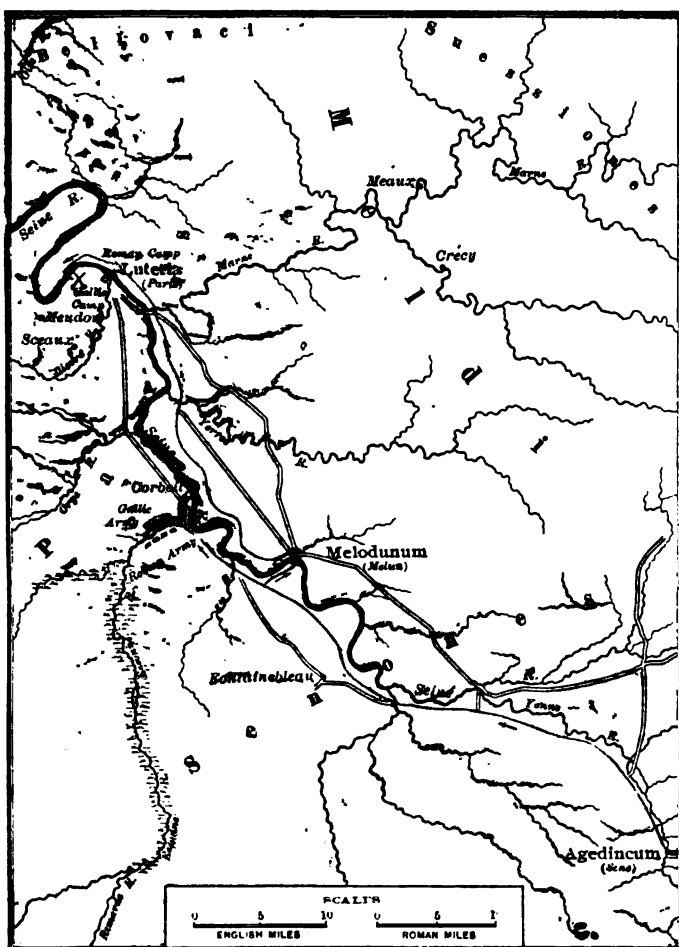
Labienus marches toward Lutetia.

- 57 Dum haec apud Caesarem geruntur, Labiēnus eō supplēmentō, quod nūper ex Italiā vēnerat, relicto Agēdincī, ut esset impedimentis praesidiō, cum IIII legiōnibus Lutetiam proficiscitur. Id est oppidum Parisiōrum positum in insulā flūminis Sēquanae. Cūius adventū ab hostibus cōgnitō māgnae ex finitimis civitatibus cōpiae convēnērunt. Summa imperī trāditur Camulogenō Aulercō, quī prope cōfectus aetate tamen propter singulārem scientiam rei militāris ad eum est honōrem ēvocātus. Is cum animadvertisset perpetuam
20 esse palūdem, quae influeret in Sēquanam atque illum omnem locum māgnopere impediret, hic cōsēdit nostrōsque trānsitū prohibēre instituit.

He falls back and captures Metiosedum.

The Gauls follow him.

- 58 Labiēnus primō vineās agere, crātibus atque aggere palūdem explēre atque iter mūnīre cōnābātur. Postquam id difficilius fieri animadvertit, silentiō ē castris
25 tertiā vigiliā ēgressus, eōdem quō vēnerat, itinere Metiosēdum pervēnit. Id est oppidum Senonum in insulā Sēquanae positum, ut paulō ante dē Lutetiā diximus.



THE CAMPAIGN OF LABIENUS AGAINST THE PARISII.



Dēprehēnsīs nāvibus circiter L celeriterque coniūctīs atque eō militibus impositīs et rei novitāte perterritīs oppidānīs, quōrum māgna pars erat ad bellum ēvocāta, sine contentiōne oppidō potitur. Refectō ponte, quem superiōribus diēbus hostēs resciderant, exercitum trā- 5 dūcit et secundō flūmine ad Lutetiam iter facere coepit. Hostēs rē cōgnitā ab eis, quī Metiosēdō profūgerant, Lutetiam incendi, pontēque eius oppidī rescindi iubent; ipsī profecti ā palūde in rīpā Sēquanāe ē regiōne Lutetiae contrā Labiēnī castra cōnsidunt. 10

*He learns of Caesar's repulse, and of the spread of the
insurrection.*

Iam Caesar ā Gergoviā discessisse audiēbātur, iam 59 dē Haeduōrum dēfectiōne et secundō Galliae mōtū rūmōrēs adferēbantur; Gallīque in conloquiīs interclūsum itinere et Ligerī Caesarem inopiā frūmentī cōactum in prōvinciam contendisse cōfirmābant. Bellovacī autem dēfectiōne Haeduōrum cōgnitā, quī iam ante erant 15 per sē infidēlēs, manūs cōgere atque apertē bellum parāre coepērunt. Tum Labiēnus tantā rērum commūtatiōne longē aliud sibi capiendum cōsiliū atque antea sēnserat intellegēbat; neque iam ut aliquid adquī- 20 reret proeliōque hostēs lacesseret, sed ut incolumem exercitum Agēdincum redūceret cōgitābat. Namque alterā ex parte Bellovacī, quae civitās in Galliā māximam habet opīniōnem virtūtis, instābant, alteram Camulogenus parātō atque instrūctō exercitū tenēbat; 25 tum legiōnēs ā praesidiō atque impedimentis interclūsās māximum flūmen distinēbat. Tantīs subitō difficultātibus obiectis ab animī virtūte auxilium petendum vidēbat.

A stratagem of Labienus.

60 Itaque sub vesperum cōsiliō convocātō cohortātus ut ea quae imperāset diligenter industriēque administrarent, nāvēs, quās Metiosēdō dēdūxerat singulās equitibus Rōmānīs attribuit; et primā cōfectā vigi-
5 liā IIII mīlia passuum secundō flūmine silentiō prōgredi ibique sē exspectāre iubet. V cohortēs quās minimē firmās ad dīmicandum esse existimābat castrīs praesidiō relinquit; v eiusdem legiōnis reliquās dē mediā nocte cum omnibus impedimentis adversō flūmine
10 māgnō tumultū proficisci imperat. Conquirit etiam lintres; hās māgnō sonitū rēmōrum incitātās in eandem partem mittit. Ipse post paulō silentiō ēgressus cum tribus legiōnibus eum locum petit quō nāvēs adpellī iusserat.

Causes the Gauls to divide their forces.

61 Eō cum esset ventum, explorātōrēs hostium, ut omnī flūminis parte erant dispositī, inopināntēs, quod māgnā subitō erat coōrta tempestās ā nostrīs opprimuntur; exercitus equitātusque equitibus Rōmānīs administrantibus quōs eī negōtiō praefēcerat, celeriter trāsmittitur.
20 Ūnō ferē tempore sub lūcem hostibus nūtiātur in castrīs Rōmānōrum praeter cōsuētūdinem tumultuārī, et māgnū ire agmen adversō flūmine sonitumque rēmōrum in eādē parte exaudiri, et paulō infrā milītēs nāvibus trānsportārī. Quibus rēbus auditis,
25 quod existimābant tribus locīs trānsire legiōnēs [atque omnēs perturbātōs dēfectiōne Haeduōrum fugam parāre], suās quoque cōpiās in trēs partēs distribuērunt. Nam praesidiō ē regiōne castrōrum relictō, et parvā manū Metiosēdum versus missā quae tantum prōgre-

deretur quantum naves processissent, reliquas copias contra Labienum duxerunt.

Labienus routs them, and rejoins Caesar.

Primā luce et nostrī omnēs erant transportāti et 62
hostium aciēs cernēbātur. Labiēnus milītēs cohortā-
tūs, ut suae pristināe virtūtis et tot secundissimōrum
proeliōrum retinērent memoriā atque ipsum Caesa-
rem, cuius ductū saepenumerō hostēs superāssent, prae-
sentem adesse existimārent, dat signum proeli. Primō
conkursū ab dextrō cornū, ubi septima legiō cōstite-
rat, hostēs pelluntur atque in fugam cōiciuntur; ab 10
sinistrō, quem locum XII legiō tenēbat, cum primī ōr-
dinēs hostium trānsfixi pilis concidissent, tamen ācer-
rimē reliquī resistēbant, nec dabat suspiciōnem fugae
quisquam. Ipse dux hostium Camulogenus suis aderat
atque eōs cohortābātur. 15

At incertō etiam nunc exitū victōriāe, cum VII le-
giōnis tribūnis esset nūntiātum quae in sinistrō cornū
gererentur, post tergum hostium legiōnem ostendērunt
signaque intulērunt. Nē eō quidem tempore quis-
quam locō cessit, sed circumventi omnēs interfectique 20
sunt. Eandem fortūnam tulit Camulogenus. At ei
qui in praesidiō contrā castra Labiēni erant relictī cum
proelium commissum audissent, subsidiō suis iērunt
collemque cēpērunt, neque nostrōrum militum victō-
rum impetum sustinere potuerunt. Sic cum suis fu- 25
gientibus permixti, quōs nōn silvae montēque tēx-
erunt, ab equitātū sunt interfecti. Hōc negōtiō cōn-
fectō Labiēnus revertitur Agēdincum, ubi impedimenta
tōtius exercitūs relicta erant; inde cum omnibus copiis
ad Caesarem pervenit. 30

The revolution spreads. Vercingetorix is formally elected commander-in-chief. The Haedui are jealous.

63 Dēfectiōne Haeduōrum cōgnitā bellum augētur. Lēgatiōnēs in omnēs partēs circummittuntur; quantum grātiā, auctōritāte, pecūniā valent, ad sollicitandās cīvitātēs ūtuntur; nactī obsidēs quōs Caesar apud eōs
5 dēposuerat, hōrum suppliciō dubitantes territant. Petunt ā Vercingetorige Haeduī ut ad sē veniat ratiōnēs-que bellī gerendī commūnicet. Rē impetrātā contendunt ut ipsīs summa imperī trādātur; et rē in contrōversiam dēductā, tōtius Galliae concilium Bibracte
10 indicitur. Conveniunt undique frequentēs. Multitudinis suffrāgiīs rēs permittitur; ad ūnum omnēs Vercingetorigem probant imperātorem.

Ab hōc conciliō Rēmī, Lingones, Trēverī āfuērunt: illī, quod amicitiam Rōmānōrum sequēbantur; Trēverī,
15 quod aberant longius et ā Germānīs premēbantur, quae fuit causa quārē tōtō abessent bellō et neutrīs auxilia mitterent. Māgnō dolōre Haeduī ferunt sē dēiectōs principātū; queruntur fortūnae commūtatiōnem et Caesaris in sē indulgentiam requirunt; neque tamen sus-
20 ceptō bellō suum cōsiliū ab reliquīs sēparāre audent. Invītī summae speī adulēscentēs Eporēdorix et Viridomārus Vercingetorigī pārent.

The plans of Vercingetorix.

64 Ille imperat reliquīs cīvitātibus obsidēs, dēnique eī rei cōstituit diem. Hūc omnēs equitēs, xv mīlia numerō,
25 celeriter convenīre iubet; peditātū quem ante habuerit sē fore contentum dīcit neque fortūnam temptātūrum aut aciē dīmīcātūrum; sed quoniam abundet equitātū, perfacile esse factū frūmentātiōnibus pābulātiōnibusque

Rōmānōs prohibēre; aequō modo animō sua ipsī frū-
menta corrumpant, aedificiaque incendant; quā rei
familiāris iactūrā perpetuum imperium libertātemque
sē cōsequi videant.

His cōstitutis rēbus Haeduīs Segusiāvīsq̄ue, quī 5
sunt finitimī prōvinciae, x milia peditum imperat; hūc
addit equitēs dccc. His praeficit frātre Eporēdorīgis
bellumque inferre Allobrogibus iubet. Alterā ex parte
Gabalōs proximōsque pāgōs Arvernōrum in Helviōs,
item Rutēnōs Cadūrcōsque ad finēs Volcārū Areco- 10
micōrum dēpopulandōs mittit. Nihilō minus clandes-
tīnis nūntiīs lēgatiōnibusque Allobrogas sollicitat, quō-
rum mentēs nōndum ab superiōre bellō resēdisse spērā-
bat. Hōrum principibus pecūniās, civātī autem impe-
rium tōtius prōvinciae pollicētur. 15

Caesar sends for German cavalry.

Ad hōs omnēs cāsūs prōvisa erant praesidia cohor- 65
tium duārum et xx, quae ex ipsā coacta prōvincia ab
L. Caesare lēgātō ad omnēs partēs oppōnēbantur. Hel-
vii suā sponte cum finitimis proeliō congressi pelluntur,
et C. Valeriō Domnotaurō, Caburī filiō, princepe civi- 20
tātis, complūribusque aliīs interfectis, intrā oppida mū-
rōsque compelluntur. Allobrogēs crēbris ad Rhoda-
num dispositis praesidiis māgnā cum cūrā et diligentīā
suos finēs tuentur. Caesar, quod hostēs equitātū su-
periōrēs esse intellegēbat, et interclūsīs omnibus iti- 25
neribus nullā rē ex prōvincia atque Italiā sublevārī
poterat, trāns Rhēnum in Germāniam mittit ad eās
civitatēs quās superiōribus annis pācāverat; equitēsque
ab his arcessit et levis armātūrae peditēs, quī inter eōs
proeliārī cōsuērant. Eōrum adventū, quod minus 30

idōneis equīs ūtēbantur, ā tribūnis mīlitum reliquīs-
que equitibus Rōmānīs atque ēvocātīs equōs sūmit
Germānīsque distribuit.

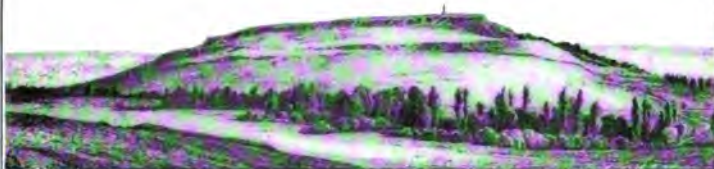
Vercingetorix urges the Gallic cavalry to attack the Romans.

66 Intereā, dum haec geruntur, hostium cōpiae ex Ar-
5 vernīs, equitēsque quī tōtī Galliae erant imperātī, con-
veniunt. Māgnō hōrum coāctō numerō, cum Caesar
in Sēquanōs per extrēmōs Lingonum finēs iter faceret,
quō facilius subsidium prōvinciae ferre posset, circiter
mīlia passuum x ab Rōmānīs trīnīs castrīs Vercinge-
10 torix cōnsēdit, convocātisque ad cōsiliū praefectīs
equitum vēnisse tempus victōriae dēmōnstrat: Fugere
in prōvinciam Rōmānōs Galliāque excēdere; id sibi ad
praesentem obtinendam libertātem satis esse; ad reliquī
temporis pācem atque ōtium parum prōfici; māiōribus
15 enim coāctīs cōpiīs reversūrōs neque finem bellandī fac-
tūrōs. Proinde in agmine impeditōs adorianur. Sī
peditēs suis auxilium ferant atque in eō morentur, iter
facere nōn posse; sī, id quod magis futūrum cōfidat,
relictīs impedimentīs suae salūtī cōsulant, et ūsū rērum
20 necessāriarū et dignitāte spoliātum irī. Nam dē equi-
tibus hostium, quī nēmō eōrum prōgredi modo extrā
agmen audeat, nē ipsōs quidem dēbere dubitāre. Id
quō māiōre faciant animō, cōpiās sē omnēs prō castrīs
habitūrum et terrōrī hostibus futūrum. Conclāmant
25 equitēs sāctissimō iūre iūrاندō cōfirmārī oportere
nē tēctō recipiātur, nē ad liberōs, nē ad parentēs, nē ad
uxōrem aditum habeat, quī nōn bis per agmen hostium
perequitārit.

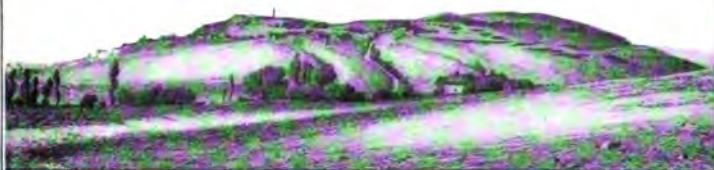
The attack is made, but fails.

67 Probātā rē atque omnibus ad iūs iūrاندum adāctīs,
posterō diē in trēs partēs distribūtō equitātū duae sē

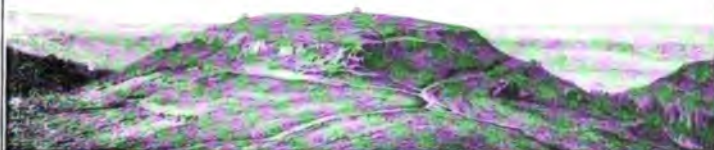
*From the
Northwest.*



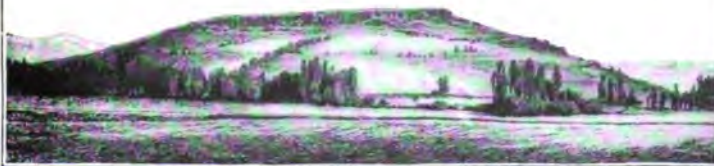
*From the
Southwest.*



*From the
Southeast.*



*From the
Northeast.*



VIEWS OF MONT AUXOIS, THE SITE OF ALESIA.

aciēs ab duōbus lateribus ostendunt, ūna ā primō agmine iter impedire coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar suum quoque equitātum tripertitō dīvisum contrā hostem ire iubet. Pūgnātur ūnā omnibus in partibus. Cōsistit agmen; impedimenta inter legiōnēs recipiuntur. Sī quā in parte nostrī labōrāre aut gravius premī vidēbantur, eō sīgna inferri Caesar aciemque cōverti iubēbat; quae rēs et hostēs ad īsequendum tardābat et nostrōs spē auxili cōfirmābat.

Tandem Germānī ab dextrō latere summum iugum 10 nactī hostēs locō dēpellunt; fugientēs ūsque ad flūmen, ubi Vercingetorix cum pedestribus cōpiīs cōsēderat, persequuntur complūrēsque interficiunt. Quā rē animadversā reliquī, nē circumvenīrentur veritī, sē fugae mandant. Omnibus locis fit caedēs. Trēs nōbilissimī 15 Haeduī captī ad Caesarem perdūcuntur: Cotus, praefectus equitum, quī contrōversiam cum Convictolitave proximīs comitiīs habuerat, et Cavarillus, quī post dēfectiōnem Litaviccī pedestribus cōpiīs praefuerat, et Eporēdorix, quō duce ante adventum Caesaris Haeduī 20 cum Sēquanīs bellō contenderant.

Vercingetorix retreats to Alesia, which Caesar decides to besiege.

Fugātō omnī equitātū Vercingetorix cōpiās suās, 68 ut prō castrīs conlocāverat, redūxit prōtinusque Alesiam, quod est oppidum Mandubiōrum, iter facere coepit, celeriterque impedimenta ex castrīs edūci et sē subsequi iussit. Caesar impedimentis in proximum collem ductis, duābus legiōnibus praesidiō relictis, secūtus hostēs quantum diēi tempus est passum, circiter 111 milibus ex novissimō agmine interfectis, alterō diē ad Alesiam castra fēcit. Perspectō urbis sitū perterritis- 30

que hostibus, quod equitātū, quā māximē parte exercitūs cōfidēbant, erant pulsī, adhortātus ad labōrem milītēs Alesiam circumvāllāre instituit.

Description of Alesia.

- 69 Ipsum erat oppidum in colle summō admodum
 5 ēditō locō, ut nisi obsidiōne expūgnārī nōn posse vidē-
 rētur. Cūius collis rādīcēs duo duābus ex partibus flū-
 mina subluēbant. Ante oppidum plānitiēs circiter mī-
 lia passuum III in longitudinem patēbat; reliquīs ex
 omnibus partibus collēs, mediocrī interiectō spatiō, parī
 10 altitudinis fastigiō oppidum cingēbant. Sub mūrō,
 quae pars collis ad orientem sōlem spectābat, hunc om-
 nem locum cōpiae Gallōrum complēverant, fossamque
 et māceriam in altitudinem VI pedum praedūxerant.
 Eius mūnitiōnis, quae ab Rōmānīs instituēbātur, cir-
 15 cuitus XI mīlia passuum tenēbat. Castra opportunīs
 locīs erant posita VIII castellaque XXIII facta; quibus in
 castellīs interdiū statiōnēs pōnēbantur, nē qua subitō
 ēruptiō fieret; haec eadem noctū excubitoribus ac fir-
 mīs praesidiīs tenēbantur.

Battle of cavalry on the plain. The Gauls badly beaten.

- 70 Opere institūtō fit equestre prolium in eā plānitiē,
 quam intermissam collibus tria mīlia passuum in longi-
 tudinem patēre suprā dēmōnstrāvimus. Summā vī ab
 utrisque contenditur. Labōrantibus nostrīs Caesar
 Germānōs submittit legiōnēsque prō castris cōstituit,
 25 nē qua subitō inruptiō ab hostium peditātū fiat.

Praesidiō legiōnum additō nostrīs animus augētur:
 hostēs in fugam coniectī sē ipsī multitūdine impediunt
 atque angustioribus portīs relictīs coartantur. Ger-
 mānī ācrius ūsque ad mūnitiōnēs sequuntur. Fit mā-

gna caedēs; nōn nullī relīctīs equīs fossam trānsīre et māceriam trāscendere cōnantur. Paulum legiōnēs Caesar quās prō vāllō cōstituerat prōmovērī iubet. Nōn minus quī intrā mūnitiōnēs erant Gallī perturban-
 tur; venīri ad sē cōfestim existimantēs ad arma con- 5
 clāmant; nōn nullī perterriti in oppidum inrumpunt. Vercingetorīx iubet portās claudī, nē castra nudentur. Multis interfectis, complūribus equīs captis Germānī sēsē recipiunt.

Vercingetorix sends away his cavalry, and calls for aid from all Gaul.

Vercingetorīx, priusquam mūnitiōnēs ab Rōmānīs 71
 perficiantur, cōsiliū capit omnem ab sē equitātum noctū dīmittere. Discēdentibus mandat ut suam quis-
 que eōrum civitātem adeat omnēsque quī per aetātem arma ferre possint, ad bellum cōgant; sua in illōs merita
 prōpōnit, obtestāturque ut suae salutis ratiōnem ha- 15
 beant, neu sē optimē dē commūnī libertāte meritum hostibus in cruciātum dēdant. Quod sī indiligentiōrēs
 fuerint, mīlia hominum dēlēcta LXXX ūnā sēcum interi-
 tūra dēmōnstrat. Ratiōne initā frūmentum sē exiguē
 diērum xxx habēre, sed paulō etiam longius tolerārī 20
 posse parcendō.

His datīs mandātis, quā erat nostrum opus intermis-
 sum, secundā vigiliā silentiō equitātum dīmittit. Frū-
 mentum omne ad sē referri iubet; capitis poenam eis
 quī nōn pāruerint, cōstituit; pecus, cūius māgna erat 25
 cōpia ā Mandubiīs compulsā, viritīm distribuit; frūmen-
 tum parcē et paulātim mētīrī instituit; cōpiās omnēs
 quās prō oppidō conlocāverat in oppidum recipit. Hīs
 ratiōnibus auxilia Galliae exspectāre et bellum admini-
 strāre parat.

Caesar's blockading works. Trenches.

- 72 Quibus rēbus cōgnitis ex perfugis et captivis Caesar haec genera mūnitiōnis instituit. Fossam pedum xx dērectis lateribus dūxit, ut ēius fossae solum tantundem patēret, quantum summa labra distārent; reli-
- 5 quās omnēs mūnitiōnēs ab eā fossā pedēs cccc redūxit, [id] hōc cōnsiliō, quoniam tantum esset necessariō spatium complexus, nec facile tōtum opus corōnā militum cingeretur, nē dē imprōvisō aut noctū ad mūnitiōnēs multitudō hostium advolāret, aut interdiū tēla in no-
- 10 strōs operī dēstinātōs cōicere possent. Hōc intermissō spatiō duās fossās xv pedēs lātās, eādem altitudīne perdūxit; quārum interiōrem campestribus ac dēmissis locis aquā ex flūmine dērivātā complēvit. Post eās aggerem ac vāllum xii pedum extrūxit; huic lōricam
- 15 pinnāsque adiēcit, grandibus cervīs ēminentibus ad commissūrās pluteōrum atque aggeris, quī ascēsum hostium tardārent; et turrēs tōtō opere circumdedit quae pedēs lxxx inter sē distārent.

An elaborate system of obstructions and defenses.

- 73 Erat eōdem tempore et mātēriārī et frūmentārī et
- 20 tantās mūnitiōnēs fierī necesse, dēminūtis nostris cōpiis, quae longius ā castris prōgrediēbantur; ac nōn numquam opera nostra Gallī temptāre atque ēruptiōnem ex oppidō plūribus portis summā vī facere cōnābantur. Quārē ad haec rūsus opera addendum Caesar putāvit,
- 25 quō minōre numerō militum mūnitiōnēs dēfendi possent. Itaque truncis arborum aut admodum firmis rāmis abscisis, atque hōrum dēlibrātis ac praeacūtis cacūminibus, perpetuae fossae quīnōs pedēs altae dūcēbantur. Hūc illi stīpitēs dēmissi et ab infimō revincti, nē





revelli possent, ab rāmīs ēminēbant. Quīnī erant ōrdinēs, coniūctī inter sē atque implicātī; quō quī intrāverant, sē ipsī acūtissimīs vāllis induēbant. Hōs cippōs appellābant.

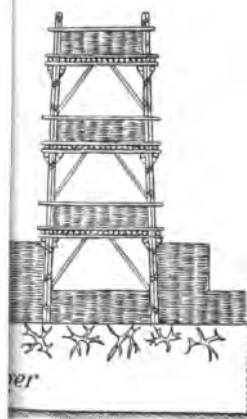
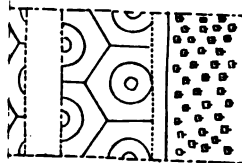
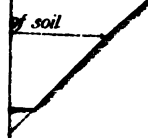
Ante hōs obliquīs ōrdinibus in quīncūncem dispositis scrobēs in altitudinem trium pedum fodiēbantur paulātim angustiore ad infimum fastigiō. Hūc teretēs stīpitēs feminis crassitudine ab summō praeacūtī et praeūstī dēmittēbantur, ita ut nōn amplius digitīs IIII ex terrā ēminērent; simul cōfirmandī et stabiliendī causā 10 singulī ab infimō solō pedēs terrā exculcābantur; reliqua pars scrobis ad occultandās insidiās vīminibus ac virgultīs integēbātur. Hūius generis octōnī ōrdinēs ductī ternōs inter sē pedēs distābant. Id ex similitudine flōris liliū appellābant. Ante haec tāleae pedem 15 longae ferreīs hāmīs infixis tōtae in terram infodiēbantur, mediocribusque intermissīs spatiis omnibus locis disserēbantur; quōs stimulōs nōminābant.

Similar defenses against the outer enemy.

His rēbus perfectīs, regiōnēs secūtus quam potuit 74 aequissimās prō locī nātūrā XIII milia passuum complexus parēs eiusdem generis mūnitiōnēs, diversās ab his, contrā exteriōrem hostem perfēcit, ut nē magnā quidem multitudine [sī ita accidat eius discessū] mūnitiōnum praesidia circumfundī possent; nē autem cum periculō ex castrīs ēgredi cōgātur, diērum xxx pābū 25 lum frūmentumque habēre omnēs convectum iubet.

General levy of Gauls for the relief of Alesia.

Dum haec ad Alesiam geruntur, Gallī conciliō prīncipum indictō nōn omnēs quī arma ferre possent, ut cēnsuit Vercingetorix, convocandōs statuunt, sed cer-



moriā movērētur, omnēsque et animō et opibus in id bellum incumberent.

Coāctis equitum milibus VIII et peditum circiter CCL, haec in Haeduōrum finibus recēnsēbantur, numerusque inībātur, praefectī cōstituēbantur: Commiō 5 Atrebātī, Viridomārō et Eporēdorīgī Haeduīs, Vercasivellaunō Arvernō, cōnsōbrinō Vercingetorigis, summa imperī trāditur. Hīs dēlēctī ex civitātibus attri- buuntur, quōrum cōsiliō bellum administrārētur. Om- nēs alacrēs et fidūciae plēnī ad Alesiam proficiscuntur, 10 neque erat omnium quisquam quī aspectum modo tan- tae multitudinis sustinērī posse arbitrārētur, praesertim ancipitī proeliō, cum ex oppidō ēruptiōne pūgnārētur, foris tantae cōpiaae equitātūs peditātūsque cernerentur.

Council of war in Alesia. Desperate plan of Critognatus.

At ei quī Alesiae obsidēbantur, praeteritā diē quā 77 auxilia suōrum exspectāverant, cōsūmptō omnī frū- mentō inscii quid in Haeduīs gererētur, conciliō coāctō dē exitū suārum fortūnārum cōsultābant. Āc variīs dictis sentiētiis, quārum pars dēditionem, pars, dum vīrēs suppetere, ēruptiōnem cēnsēbat, nōn praetere- 20 unda ōrātiō Critōgnātī vidētur propter eius singulārem et nefāriam crūdēlītatem. Hīc summō in Arvernīs ortus locō et māgnae habitus auctōritātis, “Nihil,” in- quit, “dē eōrum sentiētiā dictūrus sum quī turpissi- mam-servitūtem dēditionis nōmine appellant, neque hōs 25 habendōs civium locō neque ad conciliūm adhibendōs cēnsēō. Cum hīs mihi rēs est quī ēruptiōnem probant; quōrum in cōsiliō omnium vestrum cōsēnsū pristinae residēre virtūtis memoria vidētur. Animī est ista mol- litia, nōn vīrtus, paulisper inopiam ferre nōn posse. 30

Quī sē ultrō mortī offerant, facilius reperiuntur quam quī dolōrem patienter ferant.

“Atque ego hanc sententiam probārem, — tantum apud mē dignitās potest, — sī nūllam praeterquam vī-
5 tae nostrae iactūram fierī vidērem; sed in cōsiliō capiendō omnem Galliam respiciāmus, quam ad nostrum auxilium concitāvimus. Quid hominum milibus LXXX ūnō locō interfectis propinquis cōsanguineisque nostris animī fore exīstimātis, sī paene in ipsīs cadāveribus
10 proeliō dēcertāre cōgentur? Nōlīte hōs vestrō auxiliō exspoliāre quī vestrae salūtis causā suum perīculum neglēxerunt; nec stultitiā ac temeritatē vestrā aut animī imbēcillitatē omnem Galliam prōsternere et perpetuae servitūtī subicere. An, quod ad diem nōn vērunt,
15 dē eōrum fidē cōstantiāque dubitātis? Quid ergō? Rōmānōs in illīs ulteriōribus mūnitiōnibus animīne causā cotidiē exercērī putātis? Sī illōrum nūntiis cōfirmārī nōn potestis omnī aditū praesaep̄tō, hīs utimīni testibus adpropinquāre eōrum adventum; cūius rei
20 timōre exterritī diem noctemque in opere versantur.

“Quid ergō mei cōsili est? Facere quod nostrī māiōrēs nēquāquam parī bellō Cimbrōrum Teutonumque fēcērunt; quī in oppida compulsī ac similī inopiā subāctī eōrum corporibus quī aetate ad bellum inūtīlēs
25 vidēbantur vītam tolerāverunt neque sē hostibus trādīdērunt. Cūius rei sī exemplum nōn habērēmus, tamen libertātis causā institui et posteris prōdi pulcherrimum iūdicārem. Nam quid illī simile bellō fuit? Dēpopulātā Galliā Cimbrī, māgnāque inlātā calamitatē, finibus quī-
30 dem nostris aliquandō excessērunt atque aliās terrās petiērunt; iūra, lēgēs, agrōs, libertatē nobīs reliquērunt. Rōmānī vērō quid petunt aliud aut quid volunt,

nisi invidiā adductī, quōs fāmā nōbilēs potentēsque bellō cōgnōvērunt, hōrum in agrīs civitatibusque cōnsidere atque hīs aeternam iniungere servitūtem? Neque enim umquam aliā condiciōne bella gessērunt. Quod sī ea, quae in longinquis nātiōibus geruntur, ignōrātis, 5 respicite finitimam Galliam quae in prōvinciam redācta, iūre et lēgibus commūtātis, secūribus subiecta perpetuā premitur servitūte.”

The inhabitants of the town are driven out, but Caesar refuses to let them pass.

Sententiis dictīs cōstituunt ut eī quī valētūdine 78 aut aetate inūtilēs sint bellō oppidō excēdant, atque 10 omnia prius experiantur quam ad Critōgnātī sententiam dēscendant; illō tamen potius ūtendum cōnsiliō, sī rēs cōgat atque auxilia morentur, quam aut dēditiōnis aut pācis subeundam condiciōnem. Mandubiī, quī eōs oppidō recēperant, cum liberis atque uxōribus exīre 15 cōguntur. Hī cum ad mūnitiōnēs Rōmānōrum accessissent, flentēs omnibus precibus ōrābant ut sē in servitūtem receptōs cibō iuvārent. At Caesar dispositis in vāllō custodiīs recipi prohibēbat.

Arrival of the relieving army.

Intereā Commius reliquique ducēs, quibus summa 79 imperī permissa erat, cum omnibus cōpiīs ad Alesiam perveniunt, et colle exteriōre occupātō nōn longius mille passibus ā nostris mūnitiōnibus cōnsidunt. Posterō diē equitātū ex castrīs ēductō omnem eam plānitiam, quam in longitudinem mīlia passuum III patēre 25 dēmōnstrāvimus, complent, pedestrēsque cōpiās paulum ab eō locō abductās in locis superiōribus cōstituunt. Erat ex oppidō Alesiā dēspectus in campum.

Concurrunt hīs auxiliīs vīsīs; fit grātulātiō inter eōs atque omnium animī ad laetitiam excitantur. Itaque prōductīs cōpiīs ante oppidum consistunt, et proximam fossam crātibus integunt atque aggere explent, sēque
5 ad ēruptiōnem atque omnēs cāsūs comparant.

A hard battle in the valley. Defeat of the Gauls.

80 Caesar omnī exercitū ad utramque partem mūnitiōnum dispositō, ut, sī ūsus veniat, suum quisque locum teneat et nōverit, equitātum ex castrīs ēdūcī et proelium committi iubet. Erat ex omnibus castrīs, quae sum-
10 mum undique iugum tenēbant, dēspectus; atque omnēs militēs intentī pūgnae prōventum exspectābant. Galli inter equitēs rārōs sagittāriōs expeditōsque levis armātūrae interiēcerant, quī suis cēdentibus auxiliō succurrerent et nostrōrum equitum impetūs sustinērent. Ab
15 hīs complūrēs dē imprōvisō vulnerātī proeliō excēdebant.

Cum suōs pūgnā superiōrēs esse Galli cōfiderent et nostrōs multitudine premī vidērent, ex omnibus partibus et eī quī mūnitiōnibus continēbantur et eī quī ad
20 auxilium convēnerant clāmōre et ululātū suōrum animōs cōfirmābant. Quod in cōspectū omnium rēs gerēbātur, neque rēctē aut turpiter factum cēlārī poterat; utrōsque et laudis cupiditās et timor ignōminiae ad virtutem excitābat. Cum ā merīdiē prope ad sōlis oc-
25 cāsū dubiā victōriā pūgnārētur, Germānī ūnā in parte cōnfertis turmīs in hostēs impetum fēcērunt eōsque prōpulserunt; quibus in fugam coniectis sagittārii circumventī interfectique sunt. Item ex reliquīs partibus nostrī cēdentēs ūsque ad castra īsecūtī suī colligendī fac-
30 ultātem nōn dedērunt. At eī quī Alesiā prōcesserant

maestī prope victōriā dēspērātā sē in oppidum recēpērunt.

They attack the Romans at night.

Ūnō diē intermissō Gallī atque hōc spatiō māgnō 81
crātium, scālārum, harpagōnum numerō effectō, mediā
nocte silentiō ex castrīs ēgressī ad campestrēs mūnī- 5
tiōnēs accēdunt. Subitō clāmōre sublātō, quā signifi-
cātiōne quī in oppidō obsidēbantur dē suō adventū cōg-
nōscere possent, crātēs prōicere, fundīs, sagittis, lapidi-
bus nostrōs dē vāllō prōturbāre reliquaque quae ad op-
pūgnātiōnem pertinent parant administrāre. Eōdem 10
tempore clāmōre exauditō dat tubā signum suis Ver-
cingetorix atque ex oppidō ēdūcit.

Nostrī, ut superiōribus diēbus suus cuique erat locus
attribūtus, ad mūnitiōnēs accēdunt; fundīs librilibus,
sudibusque quās in opere disposuerant, āc glandibus 15
Gallōs prōterrent. Prōspectū tenebrīs ademptō multa
utrimque vulnera accipiuntur; complūra tormentis tēla
cōiciuntur. At M. Antōnius et C. Trebōnius lēgātī,
quibus hae partēs ad dēfendendum obvenerant, quā ex
parte nostrōs premī intellēxerant, hīs auxiliō ex ulte- 20
riōribus castellīs dēductōs submittēbant.

But are again repulsed.

Dum longius ā mūnitiōne aberant Gallī, plūs multi- 82
tūdine tēlōrum prōficiēbant; posteaquam propius suc-
cessērunt, aut sē stimulis inopināntēs induēbant aut in
scrobēs delāti trānsfodiēbantur aut ex vāllō āc turribus 25
traiecti pilis mūrālibus interībant. Multis undique vul-
neribus acceptis, nullā mūnitiōne perruptā, cum lūx ad-
peteret, veritī nē ab latere apertō ex superiōribus castrīs
ēruptiōne circumvenirentur, sē ad suōs recēpērunt. At

interiōrēs, dum ea quae ā Vercingetorīge ad ēruptiōnem
 praeparāta erant prōferunt, priōrēs fossās explent; diū-
 tius in hīs rēbus administrandīs morātī, prius suōs dis-
 cessisse cōgnōvērunt quam mūnitiōnibus adpropinquā-
 5 rent. Ita rē infectā in oppidum revertērunt.

Last effort of the relieving forces.

83 Bis māgnō cum dētrimentō repulsi Galli quid agant
 cōnsulunt; locōrum peritōs adhibent; ex hīs superiōrum
 castrōrum sitūs mūnitiōnēsque cōgnōscunt. Erat ā
 septentriōnibus collis, quem propter māgnitudinem cir-
 10 cuitūs opere circumplectī nōn potuerant nostrī; neces-
 sariōque paene iniquō locō et lēniter dēclivī castra fēce-
 rant. Haec C. Antistius Rēgīnus et C. Canīnius Rebi-
 lus lēgātī cum duābus legiōnibus obtinēbant.

Cōgnitis per explorātōrēs regiōnibus ducēs hostium
 15 LX mīlia ex omnī numerō dēligunt, eārum cīvitatū
 quae māximam virtūtis opīniōnem habēbant; quid quō-
 que pactō agī placeat occultē inter sē cōstituunt; ade-
 undī tempus dēfiniunt, cum meridiēs esse videātur.
 Hīs cōpiīs Vercassivellaunum Arvernum, ūnum ex IIII
 20 ducibus, propinquum Vercingetorīgis, praeficiunt. Ille
 ex castrīs primā vigiliā ēgressus, prope cōfectō sub
 lūcem itinere, post montem sē occultāvit militesque ex
 nocturnō labōre sēsē reficere iussit. Cum iam meri-
 diēs adpropinquāre vidērētur, ad ea castra quae suprā
 25 dēmōstrāvimus, contendit; eōdemque tempore equitā-
 tus ad campestrēs mūnitiōnēs accēdere et reliquae cō-
 piae prō castrīs sēsē ostendere coepērunt.

Coōperation of the besieged. Great straits of the Romans.

84 Vercingetorix ex arce Alesiae suōs cōspicātus ex
 oppidō ēgreditur; crātēs, longuriōs, mūrālēs falcēs, reli-

quaque quae ēruptiōnis causā parāverat, prōfert. Pūgnātur ūnō tempore omnibus locis atque omnia temptantur; quae minimē vīsa pars firma est hūc concurritur. Rōmānōrum manus tantis mūnitiōnibus distinetur nec facile plūribus locis occurrit. Multum ad terrendōs nostrōs valet clāmor, quī post tergum pūgnantibus existit, quod suum periculum in aliēnā vident virtūte cōnstāre; omnia enim plērumque quae absunt vehementius hominum mentēs perturbant.

Hard fighting on both sides.

Caesar idōneum locum nactus quāque in parte gerātur cōgnōscit; labōrantibus subsidium submittit. Utrisque ad animum occurrit ūnum esse illud tempus quō māximē contendī conveniat: Gallī, nisi perfrēgerint mūnitiōnēs, dē omnī salūte dēspērant; Rōmānī, si rem obtinuerint, finem labōrum omnium exspectant. Māximē ad superiōrēs mūnitiōnēs labōrātur, quō Vercassivellaunum missum dēmōstrāvimus. Inīquum loci ad declivitātem fastigium māgnū habet mōmentum. Aliī tēla cōiciunt, aliī testūdine factā subeunt; dēfatigātis in vicem integrī succēdunt. Agger ab ūniversis in mūnitiōnem coniectus et ascēsum dat Gallīs, et ea quae in terrā occultāverant Rōmānī contegit; nec iam arma nostrīs nec virēs suppetunt.

Caesar encourages his troops.

Hīs rēbus cōgnitis Caesar Labiēnum cum cohortibus VI subsidiō labōrantibus mittit; imperat, sī sustinere nōn possit, dēductis cohortibus ēruptiōne pūgnet; id nisi necessariō nē faciat. Ipse adit reliquōs; cohortātur nē labōrī succumbant; omnium superiōrum dimicatiōnum fructum in eō diē atque hōrā docet cōsistere.

Interiōrēs, dēspērātis campestribus locis propter māg-
nitūdinem mūnitiōnum, loca praerupta [ex] ascēnsū
temptant; hūc ea quae parāverant cōferunt. Multitū-
dine tēlōrum ex turribus prōpūgnantēs dēturbant, ag-
gere et crātibus fossās explent, falcibus vāllum ac lōrī-
cam rescindunt.

His activity in the fight.

- 87 Mittit primum Brūtum adulēscētem cum cohorti-
bus Caesar, post cum aliis C. Fabium lēgātum; pos-
trēmō ipse, cum vehementius pūgnārētur, integrōs sub-
10 sidiō addūcit. Restitūtō proeliō ac repulsis hostibus,
eō quō Labiēnum mīserat contendit; cohortēs IIII ex
proximō castellō dēdūcit, equitum partem sē sequi, par-
tem circumīre exteriōrēs mūnitiōnēs et ā tergō hostēs
adoriri iubet. Labiēnus, postquam neque aggerēs ne-
15 que fossae vim hostium sustinēre poterant, coāctis XI
cohortibus, quās ex proximis praesidiis dēductās fors
obtulit, Caesarem per nūntiōs facit certiōrem quid fa-
ciendum existimet. Accelerat Caesar ut proeliō in-
tersit.

The Gauls are finally defeated with great slaughter.

- 88 Ēius adventū ex colōre vestitūs cōgnitō [quō in-
signi in proeliis ūti cōsuērat] turmisque equitum et
cohortibus visis quās sē sequi iusserat, ut dē locis supe-
riōribus haec dēclīvia et dēvexa cernēbantur, hostēs
proelium committunt. Utrisque clāmōre sublātō ex-
25 cipit rūsus ex vāllō atque omnibus mūnitiōnibus clā-
mor. Nostrī omissis pilis gladiis rem gerunt.

Repente post tergum equitātus cernitur; cohortēs
aliae adpropinquant. Hostēs terga vertunt; fugienti-
bus equitēs occurrunt. Fit māgna caedēs. Sedulius,

dux et princeps Lemovicum, occiditur; Vercassivellanus Arvernus vivus in fugā comprehenditur; signa militaria LXXIII ad Caesarem referuntur; pauci ex tantō numerō sē incolumēs in castra recipiunt. Cōspicātī ex oppidō caedem et fugam suōrum, dēspērātā salūte, 5 cōpiās ā mūnitiōnibus redūcunt. Fit prōtinus hāc rē audītā ex castris Gallōrum fuga. Quod nisi crēbris subsidiis ac tōtius diēi labōre militēs essent dēfessī, omnēs hostium cōpiae dēlērī potuissent. Dē mediā nocte missus equitātus novissimum agmen cōsequitur; mā- 10 gnus numerus capitur atque interficitur; reliquī ex fugā in cīvitatēs discēdunt.

Surrender of Vercingetorix.

Posterō diē Vercingetorix conciliō convocātō id 89 bellum sē suscepisse nōn suārum necessitātum sed communis libertātis causā dēmōnstrat; et quoniam sit fortūnae cēdendum, ad utramque rem sē illis offerre, seu morte suā Rōmānis satisfacere seu vivum trādere velint. Mittuntur dē hīs rēbus ad Caesarem lēgātī. Iubet arma trādī, principēs prōdūcī. Ipse in mūnitiōne prō castris cōnsidit; eō ducēs prōdūcuntur. Vercingetorix dē- 20 ditur; arma prōiciuntur. Reservātis Haeduīs atque Arvernīs, si per eōs cīvitatēs recuperāre posset, ex reliquīs captivīs tōtī exercitui capita singula praedae nōmine distribuit.

Distribution of Caesar's troops for the winter.

Thanksgiving at Rome.

Hīs rēbus cōfectis in Haeduōs proficiscitur; civitatem recipit. Eō lēgātī ab Arvernīs missi quae imperāret sē factūrōs pollicentur. Imperat māgnū numerum obsidum. Legiōnēs in hiberna mittit. 90

Captivōrum circiter xx mīlia Haeduīs Arvernīsque reddit.

T. Labiēnum cum duābus legiōnibus et equitātū in Sēquanōs proficīscī iubet; huic M. Semprōnium Rutilum attribuit. C. Fabium lēgātum et L. Minucium Basilum cum legiōnibus duābus in Rēmīs conlocat, nē quam ā finitimīs Bellovacīs calamitātem accipiant. C. Antistium Rēgīnum in Ambivaretōs, T. Sextium in Biturīgēs, C. Canīnium Rebilum in Rutēnōs, cum singulis
10 legiōnibus mittit. Q. Tullium Cicerōnem et P. Sulpicium Cavillōnī et Maticōne in Haeduīs ad Ararim rei frūmentāriae causā conlocat. Ipse Bibracte hiemāre cōstituit.

Hīs rēbus ex Caesaris litterīs cōgnitis Rōmae diē-
15 rum xx supplicātiō redditur.

NOTES

NOTE.—The references in the notes are to the pages and lines of the text. W., West's Grammar; B., Bennett's Grammar; A., Allen and Greenough's Grammar; H., Harkness's (Complete or Short) Grammar. N., "note"; R., "remark"; *i. e.*, *id est*, "that is"; *sc.*, *scilicet*, "namely," or "supply"; *sqq.*, *sequentes*, "and the following"; *e. g.*, *exempli gratia*, "for example"; *cf.*, *confer*, "compare"; lit., "literally."

BOOK ONE—B. C. 58

INTRODUCTION—GAUL AND ITS NATIONS, ch. 1.

THE HELVETIAN WAR, MARCH TO JUNE, ch. 2-29. In the spring of 58 B. C. the whole Helvetian nation, amounting to 360,000 souls, attempted to pass through the midst of Gaul in order to settle in the west of the country. Their own country was confined, largely mountainous, and not fertile. Moreover, they were constantly harassed by German tribes on the north. Preparations for the migration had been previously made under the direction of Orgetorix. Before their departure he was charged with a treasonable conspiracy, and killed himself. Caesar parleyed a fortnight with the Helvetians, while he assembled troops and fortified the south bank of the Rhone, to prevent their crossing into the Roman Province. They were thus forced to go through the narrow pass between the Rhone and the Jura Mountains. Caesar pursued them, skirmished with them, and defeated them in two bloody battles in which more than 200,000 of them perished. Then he forced the remnant to return to their country, where, before starting, they had burned all their dwellings.

THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST ARIOVISTUS, JUNE TO SEPTEMBER, ch. 30-54. Quarrels between the two important Gallic tribes, the Sequani and the Haedui, had led to war. About three years before, the former had asked the assistance of some of the Germans and their king Ariovistus. These allies took a large part of the territory of the Sequani, and otherwise greatly oppressed them. The Romans, in 59 B. C., foreseeing the danger from the Helvetian invasion, made an alliance with the Haedui, and at the same time recognized the claims of Ariovistus. But after crushing the Helvetians, Caesar was at liberty to espouse the cause of his allies the Haedui, deliver the Sequani from their oppressors, and drive Ariovistus out of Gaul. This was accomplished after much marching and maneuvering, and some negotiations, by a decisive battle in Alsace, south of Strasburg, between the Vosges Mountains and the Rhine, in the month of September.

CHAPTER 1

PAGE 1

1. *Gallia*: see map, frontispiece. The term *Gallia*, as here used, excludes Cisalpine Gaul and the Province, but includes most of the Netherlands, the country on the west bank of the Rhine, and much of Switzerland, and thus extends far beyond the limits of modern France.

est . . . divisa: *is divided*, not *has been divided*; this is not a true perfect tense, but a present, *divisa* being a predicate adjective; W. 293; B. 337; A. 291. *ô*; H. 394. 1. When you look up a grammar reference be careful to notice the examples. They will often be of more help than the statement of a rule.

omnis: *taken as a whole*.

quarum: partitive genitive; W. 355; B. 201. 1; A. 216. *a*. 2; H. 440. 5.

unam: sc., *partem*. It is best in translating this sentence to change to the passive construction, in order to preserve more nearly the order and emphasis of the Latin; thus: *One of which is inhabited by the Belgians*, etc.

2. *Belgae*: the population of Gaul was much mixed even in Caesar's day. Successive hordes of invaders of Celtic race and language had been coming into the country for several centuries, conquering the earlier inhabitants, intermarrying with them, and, except in the south, imposing their language upon them. These Celtic conquerors were a tall, fair race; the populations which preceded them were shorter and darker. The conquering race were most numerous in the northern part of Gaul, and were less modified by mixing with the earlier inhabitants. They were the latest comers and the least civilized of the Celts. But they were much mixed with German tribes in the northeast. See Bk. II, ch. 1.

aliam: *the second*, lit. *another*.

Aquitani: Iberians, a short, dark people, living on both sides of the Pyrenees. They were but slightly mixed with the conquering Celtic race, and retained their own language.

qui: *those who*; the antecedent of *qui* is *ei* understood, the subject of *incolunt*.

3. *Celtae*: in the great central division of the country the population was more mixed than in Aquitania, and less purely Celtic than in Belgic Gaul. The language was Celtic, and the physical characteristics of the Celtic race were common enough to make a decided impression upon foreign observers.

Galli: the people of the great central division of Gaul—*Gauls*, in the narrower sense of the word.

4. *lingua*: ablative of specification; W. 396; B. 226; A. 253; H.

480 The *Aquitani* spoke Iberian languages; the *Galli* proper, Celtic; the *Belgae*, Celtic, sometimes mixed with German.

inter se: *from each other*; *inter* expresses any reciprocal relation; W. 425. 1; B. 245; A. 196. *f*; H. 502. 1.

6. *dividit*: singular, because the two rivers form a single boundary line; W. 298. 1; B. 255. 3; A. 205. *δ*; H. 392. 4.

7. *Horum omnium*: partitive genitive, with *fortissimi*.

propterea quod: *because* (lit. "on account of this, that"), or, *and the reason is that*.

8. *cultu atque humanitate*: *refinement and civilization*.

provinciae: the Roman province of Transalpine Gaul, afterward called *Gallia Narbonensis*, had been organized about 120 B. C. Its name survives in modern *Provence*. See map, frontispiece.

9. *mercatores*: traders and peddlers, traveling with pack-animals or wagons. They sold other commodities, but especially wine, and the phrase "a slave for a jar of wine" was proverbial.

commeant: *go back and forth*. The most traveled route was along the line of the Loire.

10. *ea*: object of *important*.

quae . . . *pertinent*: the author refers especially to the wines of Italy. Barbarians are prone to intoxication, and readily adopt the drinks of civilized peoples.

ad effeminandos animos: the gerundive with *ad* is used to express purpose, or that toward which something tends. W. 639. 3, 640; B. 338. 3, 339. 2; A. 300; H. 628.

11. *Germanis*: dative with an adjective of nearness; W. 333; B. 192. 1; A. 234. *a*; H. 434. 2.

trans Rhenum: the Rhine has been for ages the historic boundary between the Gauls, or French, and the Germans.

12. *continenter*: adverb formed from the present participle of *contineo*. It is important to notice groups of related words, and see how the same idea appears in different parts of speech. Compare in a lexicon the meanings of *contineo*, *continens*, *continenter*, *continentia*, *continuus*, *contentus*.

Qua de causa: *For this reason*; W. 304. 2; B. 251. 6; A. 180. *f*; H. 510. Note that a preposition of one syllable is apt to stand between its noun and the modifier of the latter.

13. *Helvetii*: notice that they are counted as Gauls, though living in what we call Switzerland. See map, frontispiece.

quoque: i. e. as well as the *Belgae*.

reliquos: *the rest of*.

virtute: ablative of specification; *in valor*; in same construction as *lingua*, etc., in line 4 above.

14. *proeliis*: ablative of means or manner.

15. *finibus*: ablative of separation; W. 374; B. 214. 2; A. 243; H. 464. 1.

17. *Eorum*: i. e. of the Gauls, the people put for the country.

Gallos obtinere: indirect discourse, depending on *dictum est*; the direct form would be *Galli obtinent*. *Obtinere* is to occupy (hold against others), not "to obtain." For the construction, see W. 598, 599, 600; B. 331. 1; 332. N; A. 272, R; H. 615. *Gallos* here = *Celtas*.

19. *ab*: on the side of, in the direction of.

PAGE 2

1. *vergit*: extends, stretches.

septentriones: the north; the "seven oxen" (*septem triones*) which draw the "plow," the seven stars in the "Great Bear" or "Dipper." The word is used in the singular two lines below.

2. *Galliae*: "Celtic" Gaul, just described, not *Gallia omnis*.

6. *ad Hispaniam*: near, next to Spain. This part of the ocean is the Bay of Biscay.

spectat, etc.: looks, faces; it extends north and west from the frontier of the Roman Province.



CHAPTER 2

9. *Orgetorix*: for this and all other proper names, see Vocabulary. Make it a rule to notice the quantity of the penult syllables of proper names and to pronounce them correctly. There is no reason why proper names should not be as correctly pronounced as any other words.

M. *Messala* [et] M. *Pisone consulibus*: the Romans designated a date by naming the consuls of the year in question. Translate: *in the consulship of*, etc. M. = *Marco*. Notice hereafter that bracketed words are generally not to be translated; they are words which have crept into the text by mistakes in copying or otherwise. The year here designated is 61 B. C. The construction is ablative absolute, *Messala* (and) *Piso* being consuls. W. 397, 398; B. 227. 1; A. 255. a; H. 489.

10. *cupiditate*: ablative of cause or means.

coniurationem: this word means a league formed with an oath; con, together; *iuro*, to swear. The Romans used the word in the same bad sense as the English "conspiracy." Caesar calls this a *conspiracy*, but he was looking at the matter from the Roman point of view.

11. *civitati*: why dative? W. 330; B. 187. II. *a*; A. 227; H. 426. 2.

11. *ut . . . exirent*: this clause is the direct object of *persuasit*; W. 511, 512; B. 294, 295. 1; A. 331; H. 565. In regard to the sequence of tenses, *persuasit . . . exirent*, see W. 462, 463; B. 267, 268. 1; A. 286; H. 543.

12. *perfacile esse . . . potiri*: indirect discourse, depending upon *dicens* or *dixit*, implied in *persuasit*; W. 598, 599, 600; B. 313, 314. 1. 2; A. 330. *e*; 336. 2. N. 2; H. 642. 1. *Potiri* is the subject of *perfacile esse*; W. 623; B. 327; A. 189. *d*; H. 615.

cum . . . praestarent: *since they excelled*; W. 542; B. 286. 2; 314; A. 326; 336. 2; H. 598.

virtute: ablative of specification.

13. *imperio*: why ablative? W. 387; B. 218. 1; A. 249; H. 477. 1.

14. *Id*: this refers to the preceding clause *perfacile . . . potiri*.

hoc: ablative of cause; W. 384; B. 219; A. 245; H. 475.

15. *una ex parte*: *on one side*; the order of words is like *qua de causa*, page 1, line 12; see note.

16. *qui*: agrees in gender not with *flumine*, but with *Rhodano*.

21. *His rebus fiebat*: *thus it happened*; the subject of *fiebat* is the clause *ut . . . possent*; W. 523; B. 297. 2; A. 332. *a*. 2; H. 571. 1.

For the tense of *fiebat*, see W. 448, 449; B. 260; A. 277; H. 534.

minus: *less . . . than they wished*.

22. *finitimis*: why dative? W. 332; B. 187. III. 2; A. 228. N. 2; H. 429.

qua ex parte: *and in this respect*.

23. *bellandi*: objective genitive depending on an adjective of desire; W. 352; B. 338. 1. *b*; A. 218. *a*; H. 451. 1.

24. *Multitudine*: in ch. 29 the number is stated as 368,000.

26. *Milia passuum*: *miles*; *mille passus* = 5,000 Roman feet = 4,854 English feet; *passus* = 2 *gradus* = 5 Roman feet = 4 feet 10½ inches English. *Gradus* is a *step*, *passus* is the distance from the place where either foot is put down in walking to the place where it is put down again —i. e., two steps. Here *milia* is accusative of extent of space; W. 324; B. 181; A. 257; H. 417; *passuum*, partitive genitive.

27. *ccxi*: *ducenta et quadraginta*, 240.

clxxx: *centum et octoginta*, 180; probably a copyist's mistake for *lxxx*.

patebant: the imperfect is the appropriate tense for description; the perfect for the narrative of events.

Probably the real reason for this exodus of the Helvetians was the pressure of German nations behind them.

CHAPTER 3

29. *constituerunt* : sc. *Helvetii*.

ea : object of *comparare*.

pertinerent : subjunctive, because it expresses the thought of the Helvetians, the subject of *constituerunt*, rather than that of the author; W. 620; B. 323; A. 340; H. 649, 652.

PAGE 3

1. *comparare* : object or complement of *constituerunt*; W. 626; B. 328. 1; A. 271. *a*; H. 609.

carrorum : two-wheeled carts, often covered. This is a word of Celtic origin, akin to our "car."

quam maximum : *as large as possible*; W. 414. 4; B. 240. 3; A. 93. *b*; H. 159. 2.

3. *suppeteret* : subjunctive of purpose; W. 506, 517; B. 282; A. 317; H. 568.

5. *sibi* : dative of reference with *satis*.

6. *duxerunt* : *they reckoned*.

confirmant : historical present; so *deligitur* and *suscipit*, line 8, *persuadet*, line 9, and *dat*, line 16; W. 447, (1); B. 259. 3; A. 276. *d*; H. 532. 3.

8. *civitates* : the independent clans or tribes of Gaul, numbering sixty, more or less. Gaul was not a nation, but a geographical expression.

9. *filio, Sequano* : appositives to *Castico*; W. 291; B. 169. 2; A. 183, 184; H. 393.

10. *regnum* : *headship*; personal, not hereditary power; there were at that time few regular monarchies in Gaul.

annos : accusative of duration; W. 324; B. 181. 1; A. 256; H. 417.

11. *obtinerat* : *had held*; do not translate *obtineo*, "obtain."

amicus : this title was sometimes conferred by the Roman Senate as a compliment; predicate nominative; W. 290; B. 168. 2. *b*; A. 185, 239. 1. N. 2; H. 393.

12. *ut . . . occuparet* : *to seize*, not "to occupy"; this clause is the object of *persuadet*, just like the clause *ut de finibus . . . exirent*, page 2, line 10. As to the sequence of tenses, see W. 462, 470; B. 294, 295. 1; A. 286; 287. *e*; H. 543, 546.

13. *Dumnorigi* : dative with *persuadet*, line 16; W. 330; B. 187. II. *a*; A. 227; H. 426. 2.

14. *principatum* : this word has much the same meaning as *regnum*, explained in the note to line 10.

15. *plebi acceptus* : *popular*; two or more Latin words are often

best rendered by a single one in English, and *vice versa*; *acceptus* is here not a perfect participle, but an adjective.

ut idem conaretur: to make the same attempt, lit. to attempt the same; notice that the Latin often expresses by a verb what the English expresses by a noun.

17. Perfacile factu: very easy to do; this is the predicate with *esse*, of which the subject is *conata perficere*; the clause *perfacile factu esse conata perficere* is the object of *probat*; *factu*, supine; ablative of specification; W. 655; B. 340. 2; A. 303; H. 635.

probat: he tried to prove; this sense of a verb is called the "conative" (*conor*, to try); W. 446. 2; B. 259. 2; A. 276. b; H. 530.

18. ipse: Orgetorix.

obtenturus esset: first periphrastic conjugation; W. 188; B. 115; A. 129; H. 236. This is needed because there is no future subjunctive. The subjunctive is used here because it expresses not the author's thought, but that of Orgetorix; as *pertinerent* in ch. 3. 1, expresses the thought of the Helvetii.

19. esse dubium: this is the infinitive of indirect discourse, reporting what Orgetorix said; the subject is the clause *quin . . . possent*.

quin, etc.: a clause introduced by *quin* after a negative expression of doubt; W. 576; B. 298; A. 319. d; H. 595. 1.

Galliae: partitive genitive; W. 355; B. 201. 1; A. 216. a. 2; H. 440. 5.

plurimum: why accusative? W. 316; B. 176. 3. a; A. 238. b; H. 416. 2.

20. se, suis . . . suo: the reflexive pronoun and its possessive adjective regularly, though not invariably, refer to the subject of the verb of the sentence in which they occur; W. 421. 1; B. 244. 1. I, II; A. 196; H. 503.

Copiis: not "forces," "troops," as usual, but *means, wealth*.

21. regna: used in the same sense as in line 10, above.

conciliaturum: sc. *esse*, which is usually omitted in the future infinitive.

22. inter se: to each other; construe with *dant*.

fidem et ius iurandum dant: gave a promise confirmed by an oath. This is a case of the construction called *hendiadys*; W. 740; B. 374. 4; A. 385; H. 751. 3. N. 1.

regno occupato: = *cum* (or *si*) *regnum occupavissent*; ablative absolute equivalent to a clause; W. 397, 399; B. 227. 2. a), b); A. 255. d. 1. 4; 310. a; H. 489.

23. tres . . . populos: do not say "three people," but *three nations*; i. e. *Helvetios, Sequanos, Haeduos*.

24. *Galliae*: *potior* sometimes takes not the ablative, but the genitive; W. 371; B. 212. 2; A. 249. *a*; H. 477. I. 3.

sese: subject of *posse*.

posse: the present infinitive for the future, which is more regular with *spero*.

CHAPTER 4

25. *Ea res*: *this*; it is generally best not to translate *res*, "thing" or "affair."

per indicium: = *per indices, through informers*.

Moribus: why ablative? W. 391; B. 220. 3; A. 253. N.; H. 475. 3.

26. *ex*: we should say *in*; similarly the Latin says *pugnare ex equo*, "to fight on horseback."

27. *damnatum*: = *if condemned*; sc. *eum*, object of *sequi*; W. 651; B. 337. 2. *b*; A. 292; H. 638. 2.

poenam sequi: this infinitive clause is the subject of the impersonal *oportebat*; W. 623; B. 330; A. 270. *b*; H. 615.

ut . . . cremaretur: substantive clause in apposition with *poenam*; W. 509; B. 294; A. 329. 2; N. before 331; H. 571. 4.

28. *Die*: why feminine? W. 98; B. 53; A. 30. *a*. 73; H. 135; ablative of time; W. 406; B. 230; A. 256; H. 486.

causae: objective genitive depending on *dictionis*; W. 351; B. 200; A. 217; H. 400. 2.

dictionis: genitive defining *die*; W. 348; B. 195; A. 213; H. 439.

29. *familiam*: *retinue*, not a family, but a household in the feudal sense, including a large number of servants and vassals.

ad: adverb with *decem*. It does not affect the case of the numeral when so used, as a preposition would.

milìa: in the plural a noun; in the singular an indeclinable adjective; W. 133; B. 80. 5; A. 94. *e*; H. 168; accusative here in apposition with *familiam*.

30. *obaeeratos*: *debtors*; for derivation, see Vocabulary; for the condition of these unfortunate persons, see page 149, ll. 13-16.

PAGE 4

1. *eodem*: adverb of place.

2. *per eos . . . eripuit*: *by this means he escaped having to plead his cause*.

ne . . . diceret: a negative clause of purpose; W. 506; B. 282; A. 317; H. 568.

se eripuit: i. e. he intimidated the judges and so avoided a trial.

Cum . . . conaretur : a clause of time ; W. 536 ; B. 288. I. B. ; A. 325 ; H. 600. II.

3. **ius suum** : i. e. the authority of the state to punish traitors.

4. **magistratus** : nominative plural.

5. **cogerent** : same construction as *conaretur*, line 3.

neque : = *et non*.

6. **ut** : with the indicative here means *as*, sometimes *when*.

quin . . . consciverit : *that he took his own life*, lit. "but that he decreed death to himself." A clause introduced by *quin* follows negative expressions of doubt and the like ; W. 576 ; B. 298 ; A. 319. *d* ; H. 595. I.

ipse : *self* ; agrees in Latin with the subject, in English with the object.

CHAPTER 5

8. **nihilo** : ablative of degree of difference ; W. 393 ; B. 223 ; A. 250 ; H. 479 ; *nihilo minus* is practically one word, "none-the-less," but the Latin never uses hyphens.

9. **conantur** : historical present ; W. 447. (I) ; B. 259. 3 ; A. 276. *d* ; H. 532. 3.

ut . . . exeant : substantive clause of purpose in apposition with *id*.

10. **Ubi** : notice that *ubi*, "when," takes the indicative ; *cum*, usually the subjunctive ; W. 530, 531 ; B. 287. I ; A. 324 ; H. 602.

paratos esse : not perfect passive ; *paratos* is to be taken as a predicate adjective, *ready*. Cf. *divisa*, page I, line I.

oppida : walled towns.—**vicos**, line 11 : open villages.

11. **numero** : ablative of specification ; W. 396 ; B. 226 ; A. 253 ; H. 480.

12. **incendunt . . . comburunt** : *set fire to . . . burned up*.

13. **portaturi erant** : *intended to carry* ; for the periphrastic conjugations, see W. 188 ; B. 115 ; A. 129 ; H. 236.

14. **domum** : accusative of limit of motion with the verbal noun *reditionis* ; W. 325. 2 ; B. 182. I. *b* ; A. 258. *b* ; H. 419. I.

reditionis : objective genitive, depending on *spe* ; W. 351 ; B. 200 ; A. 217 ; H. 440. 2.

spe sublata : ablative absolute ; W. 397 ; B. 227 ; A. 255 ; H. 489.

15. **ad . . . subeunda** : why gerundive and not gerund ? W. 639. 3 ; 640 ; B. 339. 2 ; A. 296, 300 ; H. 628.

essent : subjunctive of purpose ; W. 517 ; B. 282 ; A. 317 ; H. 568.

trium mensium : genitive of measure ; W. 354 ; B. 203. 2 ; A. 215. *b* ; H. 440. 3.

16. **molita cibaria** : *meal* ; unground grain was *frumentum*. Allow-
ing $\frac{1}{2}$ lb. of meal apiece each day for 368,000 persons for 90 days, we

should have a total of nearly 25,000,000 lbs. This quantity would require more than 12,000 carts, allowing 2,000 lbs. to each cart. If 20 feet of road were allowed for each cart the line of march would extend about 47 miles.

domo: ablative of place from which; W. 405; B. 229. 1. *ô*; A. 258. *a*; H. 462. 4.

efferre: object of *iubent*; W. 629; B. 331. II; A. 330. B. 2; H. 565. 3.

17. Rauracis et Tulingis et Latobrigis: dative with *persuadent*; W. 330; B. 187. II, *a*; A. 227; H. 426. 2. See map, frontispiece.

18. uti: older form of *ut*, common in Cæsar.

usi: participle of *utor*; *adopting* or *to adopt and*, etc.

consilio: ablative with *usi*; W. 387; B. 218. 1; A. 249; H. 477.

exustis: ablative absolute; translate in the active voice, *burning their towns*, etc., or *to burn their towns and*, etc.

19. una: adverb.

cum eis: i. e. *Helvetiis*; *secum* would be more regular, but this avoids ambiguity.

Boios: a Celtic tribe, then homeless, and wandering about in Gaul and other parts of Europe. Modern Bohemia gets its name from them.

20. Noricum: now eastern Bavaria and Upper Austria.

21. Noreiam: now *Nœumarkt*, 125 miles S. W. of Vienna.

receptos: translate this by a separate indicative; *they received and*, etc.; *ad se* belongs to *receptos*, *sibi* to *adsciscunt*.

CHAPTER 6

23. itineribus: this word is not to be translated; the antecedent is often repeated in Latin in the relative clause; W. 303. 2; B. 251. 3; A. 200; H. 399. 1.

24. possent: a clause of characteristic; W. 588; B. 283; A. 320; H. 591. 5.

unum (iter) . . . alterum (iter); in partitive apposition with *itineræ*; W. 292. 2; B. 169. 5; A. 184. *a*; H. 393. 4.

Sequanos: see map, frontispiece. To reach the *Sequani* they had to go down the north bank of the Rhone, where it runs close under the Jura Mountains. This is now the route of the railway from Geneva to the French cities.

26. Singuli: *in single file*; distributive numeral; W. 130; B. 81. 4. *a*; A. 95. *a*; H. 164.

ducerentur: subjunctive of characteristic, like *possent*, two lines above.

27. perpauci: *per-* is intensive; *very few*.

prohibere: the direct object is not expressed, but it is easy to supply one.

possent: subjunctive of result; W. 519; B. 284. 1; A. 319; H. 570.

28. provinciam: the Roman Province of Gaul referred to in chapter 1, and explained in a note to page 1, line 8. This was one of the provinces of which Caesar was governor, and this is what Caesar nearly always means in these Commentaries by the word *provincia*.

multo: ablative of degree of difference.

29. propterea quod: *because; and the reason is that*, etc.; cf. page 1, line 7, and note.

Allobrogum: on the south bank of the Rhone, in the Province.

PAGE 5

1. nuper pacati: subdued by C. Pomptinus, B. C. 61.

2. locis: ablative of place; on the omission of the preposition, see W. 402. 2; B. 228. 1. *b*; A. 258. *f*. 1; H. 485. 2.

vado: ablative of means; W. 386; B. 218; A. 248. *c*; H. 476. There is now only one ford between Geneva and *Pas de l'Écluse*.

transitur: = *transiri potest*.

4. finibus: dative with *proximum*; W. 333; B. 192. 1; A. 234. *a*; H. 434. 2.

5. Allobrogibus: dative with *persuasuros*.

persuasuros: sc. *esse*, as also with *coacturos*, two lines below; future infinitive, indirect discourse for *persuadebimus*.

6. bono animo: *well-disposed*; sc. *esse*; ablative of quality; W. 394; B. 224. 1; A. 251; H. 473. 2.

viderentur: subjunctive, because in a subordinate clause of indirect discourse; W. 605; B. 314. 1; A. 336. 1, 2; H. 643.

7. vi: how is this declined? W. 85; B. 41; A. 61; H. 107.

suos: refers to *Allobrogibus*.

ut . . . paterentur: this clause is the object or complement of *persuasuros* and *coacturos*; W. 511, 512; B. 295. 1; A. 331; H. 565.

8. eos: i. e. *Helvetios*.

9. die: ablative of time when; W. 406; B. 230; A. 230; H. 486. Repetition of antecedent in relative clause is like that of *itineribus*, page 4, line 23. On the gender of *die*, see note to same word, page 3, line 28.

10. convenient: subjunctive in a relative clause of purpose; *on which they should assemble*; W. 586. 1; B. 282. 2; A. 317; H. 590.

a. d. V. Kal. Apr.: = *ante diem quintum Kalendas Apriles*; translate as if it were *die quinto ante Kalendas Apriles*; *ante diem*, etc., is followed by the accusative, as if it were a preposition. This date was March 28th. But the Roman calendar was then very erroneous. It was re-

formed by Caesar in 46 B. C. W. 720, 721; B. 371. 5. *d*; A. 376; H. 754. III. 2.

11. *consulibus*: this ablative absolute construction, the usual Roman way of expressing dates, was explained in the note to page 2, line 9. The year indicated is 58 B. C.

CHAPTER 7

12. *Caesari cum*: in Latin the tendency is to put the emphatic word first; translate as if *cum* were the first word.

nuntiaturum esset: when is the subjunctive used with *cum*? W. 536; B. 288. I. *B*; A. 325; H. 600. II.

eos . . . conari: substantive clause, in apposition with *id*, subject of *nuntiaturum esset*.

13. *urbe*: Rome, THE CITY; *ab*, not *ex*, because he had been near but not in the city, on account of his military *imperium* as *pro-consul*. An *ex-consul* was regularly entitled to a province for a year *ex consulatu* (as we say *ex officio*), but Caesar, by a special law, had received the government of three provinces for five years.

14. *quam maximis*: as great as possible; W. 414. 4; B. 240. 3; A. 93. *b*; H. 159. 2. Caesar sometimes traveled 100 miles a day.

ulteriore: = *Transalpinam*.

15. *contendit*: Plutarch (Life of Caesar, 17) says that Caesar went from Rome to Geneva in eight days.

Provinciae: dative with a verb of commanding; W. 330; B. 187. II. *a*; A. 227. *f*; H. 426. I, 6.

16. *imperat*: orders to furnish, levies, makes requisition.

17. *legio una*: this was the veteran 10th legion, afterward so famous.

18. *rescindi*: *iubeo* and *veto* are followed by the accusative and infinitive; W. 629; B. 331. II; A. 271. *b*; H. 642. 5.

19. *certiores facti sunt*: a Latin idiom; were informed.

legatos: in predicate apposition with *nobilissimos*; as envoys; W. 290; B. 168; A. 183, 185; H. 393.

20. *cuius legationis*: = *quorum legatorum*.

21. *qui dicerent*: purpose; who were to say; W. 586. I; B. 282. 2; A. 317. 2; H. 590.

22. *sibi*: why dative? W. 340; B. 190; A. 231; H. 430. From this point on the sentence is in indirect discourse. *Sibi esse in animo*: an idiom; that they had in mind, intended, etc. The direct form would be *nobis est in animo*. The subject of *esse* is the clause ending with *facere*.

24. *rogare*: sc. *se*, the subject. The direct form would be *rogamus ut tua voluntate id nobis facere liceat*.

liceat : this would be subjunctive even in direct discourse, being in an object clause of purpose, depending on *rogare* ; W. 511, 512 ; B. 295. 1 ; A. 331 ; H. 565.

25. memoria : why ablative ? W. 386 ; B. 218 ; A. 248. c. 1 ; H. 476.

L. Cassium : the army of Cassius was swept away in 107 B. C. by the Cimbri and Teutones, whom the Helvetians joined as allies. This was one of six Roman armies so destroyed.

26. occisum : sc. *esse* ; also with *pulsum, missum, concedendum, and temperaturos*.

27. iugum : two spears set upright with one laid across the top, under which a defeated army marched, in token of submission. Compare the English word *sub-jug-ate*.

concedendum : impersonal ; *that concession should be made, that it (the request of the Helvetii) should be granted* ; W. 233. 3 ; B. 337. 7. b) 1 ; A. 146. d ; H. 302. 7.

non : connect with *concedendum* in translation.

neque : = *et non*.

28. inimico animo : ablative of quality ; W. 394 ; B. 224 ; A. 251 ; H. 473. 2.

data facultate : ablative absolute ; = *si facultas data esset* ; W. 397, 399 ; B. 227. 2. b) ; A. 255. 4 ; H. 489. 1.

29. faciundi : gerundive, not gerund ; W. 640 ; B. 339. 1 ; A. 297, 298 ; H. 626. 1 ; for the spelling *-undi* instead of *-endi*, see W. 192 ; B. 116. 2 ; A. 12. d ; H. 243 ; *itineris faciundi* modifies *facultate*.

PAGE 6

1. spatium : i. e., *temporis*.

2. convenirent : subjunctive with *dum* implying purpose ; W. 533 ; B. 293. III. 2 ; A. 328 ; H. 603. II. 2 ; *dum* means here not "while," but *till*.

3. diem : *time*.

se . . . sumpturum : direct form, *sumam*.

si . . . vellent : direct form *si vultis*, or *voletis* ; subjunctive in a subordinate clause of indirect discourse ; W. 605 ; B. 314 ; A. 337. 1. 1 ; H. 646.

4. ad : *at, about*.

Id. April. : *Idus Apriles* ; April 13th ; W. 719 ; B. 371, 372 ; A. 376. b ; H. 754. I. 3.

reverterentur : *they were to come back* ; for imperative of direct discourse ; W. 599 ; B. 316 ; A. 339 ; H. 642. His actual expression was *revertite*, "come back !"

CHAPTER 8

5. *legione . . . militibus* : ablatives of means or instrument ; although the soldiers were persons, Caesar was using them as his instruments.

6. *lacu Lemanno* : see map opposite page 6 of the text for this and the other places mentioned.

7. *influxit* : the Rhone flows into the lake at its head and out again at its foot.

8. *milia pasuum* : *miles* ; see explanation given in note to last line of Chapter II.

9. *xviii* : read *undeviginti* or *decem et novem* ; the distance is measured following the windings of the river.

murum . . . fossamque : Caesar, of course, did not run a wall and ditch all the way from Geneva to Pas de l'Écluse. For much of the distance the cliffs are steep and fortifications unnecessary. Where the slope was gentle he cut straight down for sixteen feet, and, throwing the earth toward the river, made a kind of wall and moat. See section opposite page 6. This was on the south bank of the river. He had to fortify in this way only about three miles of the nineteen. With the number of men at his disposal this required only three or four days.

pedum : why genitive ? W. 354 ; B. 203. 2 ; A. 215. *b* ; H. 440. 3.

10. *praesidia* : the *garrisons* of the *castella*.

11. *castella* : *redoubts* or small forts ; indicated on the map.

quo : used instead of *ut* in a clause of purpose on account of the comparative adverb *facilius* ; W. 507 ; B. 282. 1. *a* ; A. 317. *b* ; H. 568. 7.

se invito : *against his* (Caesar's) *will* ; ablative absolute ; W. 399 ; B. 227. 1 ; A. 255. *a* ; H. 489. *Se* refers to the subject of *posset* and *communit* and *disponit* ; W. 421. 2 ; B. 244. I, II ; A. 196. *a*. 2 ; H. 504.

12. *conarentur* : subjunctive because a subordinate clause in informal indirect discourse, expressing Caesar's thought ; imperfect, as *posset* also is, in sequence after the historical presents *disponit*, *communit* ; W. 462, 470 ; B. 267, 268. 3 ; A. 287. *e* ; H. 543, 546. It amounts to the same to say that *conarentur* is subjunctive because of its dependence upon the subordinate infinitive *prohibere* ; W. 620 ; B. 324. 2 ; A. 342. In direct discourse *conarentur* would be future indicative, *conabuntur*.

14. *negat* : = *dicit . . . non* ; not "he denies," but *he says . . . not*.

more et exemplo : *according to custom and precedent* ; W. 391 ; B. 220. 3 ; A. 248. R ; H. 475. 3.

16. *vim facere* : *use force*.

conentur: present subjunctive for future indicative of direct discourse; subjunctive because a subordinate clause of indirect discourse; present after a primary tense, *ostendit*; W. 605; B. 314. 1; A. 336. 2; H. 643.

(*se*) **prohibiturum** (*esse*): object of *ostendit*.

17. **ea spe deiecti**: *disappointed in this hope*; why is *spe* ablative? W. 374; B. 214; A. 243. 6; H. 461.

navibus: probably brought from the lake, *lacus Lemannus*. For the construction see W. 397; B. 227; A. 255; H. 489.

18. **qua**: *where*; adverb.

20. **si . . . possent conati**: *after trying, to see whether they could*, etc.; *si . . . possent* is equivalent to an indirect question; W. 593; B. 300. 3; A. 334. f; H. 649. II. 3.

operis munitione: *by the strength of the works*.

21. **conatu**: why ablative? W. 374; B. 214; A. 243; H. 461.

CHAPTER 9

22. **una**: emphatic, *only one*.

qua: ablative of the way by which; W. 386; B. 218. 9; A. 258. g; H. 476.

Sequanis invitis: like *se invito*, line 11, expresses condition.

23. **angustias**: notice on the map how close the mountains come to the river.

24. **sua sponte**: *by their own influence*; usually "of their own accord."

possent: *cum* is causal; W. 542; B. 288. 1. B; A. 326; H. 598.

25. **eo deprecatore**: *by his intercession*; ablative absolute; W. 397; B. 227. 1; A. 255. a; H. 489.

26. **impetrarent**: *they might gain their request*; subjunctive of purpose; W. 506; B. 282. 1; A. 317; H. 568.

gratia: *popularity*.

27. **plurimum**: adverbial accusative; W. 316; B. 176. 3. a; A. 240. a, b; H. 416. 2.

Helvetiis: why dative? W. 333; B. 192. 1; A. 234; H. 434.

29. **novis rebus**: *a revolution*, change of government; dative with *studeo*; W. 330; B. 187. II. a; A. 227. 3; H. 426. 1.

PAGE 7

1. **quam plurimas**: *as many . . . as possible*.

2. **habere**: *to keep*.

3. **ut . . . patiantur**: this clause is the object of *impetrat*; W. 506,

510; B. 295. 1; A. 331; H. 565. In the same way *uti . . . dent* is the object of *perficit*; W. 521, 522; B. 297. 1; A. 332; H. 571. 3.

4. *obsides*: we hear a good deal of *hostages* in the Commentaries. It was usual to require them as pledges of good faith, to be punished for any breaches of compact on the part of their countrymen.

uti: translate before *obsides*.

Sequani: sc. *obsides dant*; likewise with *Helvetii*, line 5.

5. *ne . . . prohibeant . . . transeant*: object clauses of purpose, depending on the notion of bargaining, implied in giving hostages; W. 511; B. 295; A. 331; H. 565.

itinere: why ablative? W. 376; B. 214. 2; A. 243; H. 46+.

CHAPTER 10

7. *nuntiatur*: *word is brought*; the subject of this "impersonal" verb is the clause *Helvetiis esse*, etc.

Helvetiis, etc.: cf. *sibi esse in animo*, page 5, line 22, and note. The Helvetians intended to settle in the western part of Gaul, perhaps in the country of the Santones (or Santoni).

8. *Santonum*: the name of this tribe appears in the modern city of *Saintes* and province of *Saintonge*.

9. *non longe*: it was about 100 miles.

quae civitas: i. e. *Tolosa* (*Toulouse*).

10. *Id*: i. e. *iter . . . facere* above.

si fieret: future condition depending on *intellegebat*; direct form would be *si fiet*. The apodosis *futurum (esse)* would be *erit*.

11. *ut . . . haberet*: sc. *provincia*; substantive clause of result, subject of *futurum (esse)*; W. 523; B. 297. 2; A. 329. N; H. 571. 1.

12. *locis*: best taken as ablative absolute.

13. *finitimos*: predicative; *as neighbors*.

14. *munitioni*: i. e. along the Rhone; dative after a verb compounded with *prae*; W. 332; B. 187. III; A. 228; H. 429.

T: *Titum*; always read the full name in case of abbreviations.

Labienum: Cae-ar's ablest lieutenant.

15. *Italiam*: as usual in Caesar, this means Cisalpine Gaul, which was not officially a part of Italy till 43 B. C.

magnis itineribus: *by forced marches*: see Introduction, page xlvii; also page 5, line 14, and note.

16. *duas . . . legiones*: the 11th and 12th.

tres: the 7th, 8th and 9th. The 10th was near Geneva. Thus Caesar had six legions besides the troops from the Province, mentioned in chaps. 7 and 8.

17. *Aquileiam*: a strongly fortified town at the head of the Adriatic,

a Roman colony, founded 181 B. C. It was within Caesar's provincial jurisdiction as governor of Cisalpine Gaul and Illyricum.

qua proximum iter . . . erat: this was by way of *Mont Genève*, a safe and easy pass.

19. **Ibi:** in the Alps.

21. **itinere:** ablative of separation; W. 376; B. 214. 2; A. 243. *a*; H. 464.

Compluribus: connect with *proeliis*, *his* with *pulsis*; this is the "interlocked" order; B. 350. 11. *d*); A. 344. *h*.

22. **Ocelo:** probably to be identified with Avigliana or Drubiaglio on the Dora Riparia river.

23. **citerioris provinciae:** *Gallia Cisalpina*.

25. **Segusianos:** clients of the Haedui, and therefore friendly to the Romans. They lived west of the Rhone. Caesar apparently encamped in the angle of the Rhone and Saône (*Arar*), outside the boundaries of his province.

CHAPTER 11

28. **angustias:** referred to at the beginning of ch. 6 and ch. 9. See notes to those passages.

PAGE 8

1. **populabantur:** note the tenses; they *had arrived* (*pervenerant*) and *were plundering*. The Helvetians had advanced only about 100 miles during Caesar's absence, which must have lasted 30 or 40 days.

2. **possent:** subjunctive in a clause of time and cause; W. 536, 542; B. 286. 2; 288. *B*; A. 325, 326; H. 598, 600.

3. **rogatum:** accusative supine, expressing purpose with a verb of motion; W. 654; B. 340. 1. *a*; A. 302; H. 633.

Ita se . . . meritos esse, etc.: sc. *dicentes*.

The Haedui are called *socii* of the Romans by Livy (Bk. lxi), referring to the year 121 B. C.; Cicero calls them sarcastically *fratres nostri*. See Tacitus, Ann. xi. 25.

5. **nostri:** i. e. *Romani*; agrees with *exercitus*.

vastari: B. 270. 2; A. 271; H. 607.

7. **necessarii:** *necessitudo* means community of interests.

8. **depopulatis:** passive here, though the verb is deponent; W. 185. 2; B. 112. *b*; A. 135. *b*.

9. **ab oppidis:** notice the preposition here and the absence of it with *itinere*, page 7, line 5; both times in connection with *prohibere*.

10. **Allobroges:** probably those in the angle of the Rhone, south of Culoz.

12. *sibi*: possessive dative.

solum: noun; not from *solus*, -a, -um.

reliqui: partitive genitive.

13. *exspectandum (esse) sibi*: *that he must not wait*; *sibi* is the so-called dative of agent; W. 339; B. 189. 1; A. 232; H. 431.

15. *pervenirent*: subjunctive with *dum* expressing purpose, *until they should arrive*; W. 533; B. 293. III. 2; A. 328; H. 603. II. 2.

CHAPTER 12

16. *Flumen est*: *there is a river*. The *Arar* (Saône) formed the boundary between the Sequani and the Haedui.

17. *in Rhodanum influit*: at the city of *Lugdunum* (Lyons).

lenitate: ablative of quality; W. 394; B. 224; A. 251; H. 473. 2.

It might possibly be taken as ablative of manner with *influit*.

18. *fluat*: subjunctive in indirect question; W. 590; B. 300. 1; A. 334; H. 649. II. The question is the subject of *iudicari non possit*.

possit: subjunctive of result.

19. *transibant*: the place where the Helvetii crossed the Saône is not definitely known.

20. *tres . . . partes*: *three fourths*.

21. *copiarum*: what is the difference in meaning of *copia* and *copiae*?

traxisse: some compounds of *trans* take two objects, as here *partes* and *flumen*; W. 320; B. 179. 1; A. 239. 2. b; H. 413.

22. *citra*: on the east bank.

Ararim: notice this accusative in -im; A. 55. d; 56. a. 1; H. 102. 3. N.

de tertia vigilia: *after midnight*; *de* means "counting from the beginning of." See Introduction, page lii, on the meaning of *vigilia*, and method of reckoning time of day and night.

23. *castris*: it seems likely that this camp was close to a place now called Sathonay, in the angle of the Rhone and Saône, a very few miles from Lyons.

profectus: from *proficiscor*.

25. *Eos*: = *eam partem*.

26. *concidit*: what is the meaning of *concidit*?

mandarunt: = *mandaverunt*; W. 189; B. 116. 1; A. 128. a; H. 238.

27. *in . . . silvas*: accusative because motion is implied in *abdiderunt*; *they went into the woods and hid themselves*.

This battle probably occurred near Trévoux, on the east bank of the Saône, some 15 miles north of Lyons.

28. *pagus*: properly a *district*, *canton*, here means the people of the district. This *canton* corresponded approximately to the modern Zürich.

29. *divisa est*: *is divided*, not *has been divided*, as on page 1, line 1.

30. *domo* : no preposition is used with *domi*, *domum*, *domo* ; W. 404, 405 ; B. 229. 1. *b* ; A. 258. *a* ; H. 462. 4.

PAGE 9

1. *L. Cassium*, etc. : this occurrence is referred to page 5, line 25. See note on that passage.

2. *casu* . . . *consilio* : ablatives of cause.

deorum : Caesar had little or no religious belief, but often talks of the power of fortune, e. g. Bk. VI, ch. 42 ; Bel. Civ. iii. 105.

3. *quae pars* : = *ea pars* . . . *qua* ; W. 303. 3 ; B. 251. 4. *a*) ; A. 200. *b*. N ; H. 399. 3.

4. *princeps* . . . *persolvit* : *was the first to pay* ; W. 412 ; B. 239 ; A. 191 ; H. 497. 3. Notice the three words in succession beginning with the same letter. Such "alliteration," as it is called, is quite common in Latin. Sometimes it is accidental, often intentional.

6. *ultus est* : from *ulciscor*.

eius : i. e. *Caesaris*.

7. *soceri* : Caesar's (4th and) last wife was Calpurnia, daughter of Lucius Calpurnius Piso.

legatum : it was correct etiquette to speak of officials by their appropriate titles.

8. *proelio* : ablative of time ; W. 406 ; B. 230. 2 ; A. 256 ; H. 486.

CHAPTER 18

10. *posset* : subjunctive of purpose.

in : *over*.

faciendum curat : *had built*, i. e. *caused to be built* ; W. 644. 2 ; B. 337. 7. *b*) 2) ; A. 294. *d* ; H. 622.

12. *diebus xx* : *within twenty days* ; W. 407 ; B. 231 ; A. 256 ; H. 487.

13. *ut flumen transiret* : *namely, crossing the river*, substantive clause explaining *id*, object of *fecisse* ; W. 521, 522 ; B. 297. 3 ; A. 332 ; H. 571. 3.

illum : i. e. *Caesarem* ; *illum* . . . *fecisse* is indirect discourse, depending on *intellegent*.

14. *cuius legationis* : = *quorum legatorum*.

15. *bello Cassiano* : ablative of time, *in the war with Cassius*. This had been in 107 B. C. Divico was therefore an aged man in 58 B. C.

17. *Si pacem*, etc. : from this point the rest of the chapter is in indirect discourse, depending on *egit* and reporting the language of Divico. The whole passage is given in direct form in A. 339. In the first sentence the verbs *ituros (esse)* and *futuros (esse)* are declaratory ; *reminisceretur* is

imperative. In the next, *tribueret*, line 25, and *despicere* prohibitive. *Didicisse*, line 26, is declaratory. *Committit* prohibitive. All the other verbs in the passage are subordinate for *facies*; *constituisset* and *voluisset* for *constituit* (future perfects); *ituros* and *futuros* for *ibunt* and *erunt* and *erimus*.

20. bello: ablative of means; W. 386; B. 218; A. 206. 2; A. 219; H. 454.

21. incommodi: he means the defeat of Cassius. A term for a serious thing is called "euphemism." W. 386; B. 218; A. 206. 2; A. 219; H. 454.

22. Quod: conjunction; *as to the fact that*; W. 386; B. 218; A. 206. 2; A. 219; H. 454.

23. unum pagum: the Tigurini; see p. 10. *adortus esset, transissent*: subordinate clauses of indirect discourse; W. 605; B. 218; A. 206. 2; A. 219; H. 454.

24. suis: *their countrymen*; W. 386; B. 218; A. 206. 2; A. 219; H. 454.

25. ipsos: i. e. *Helvetios*.

26. Se: i. e. *Helvetios*.

27. dolo . . . insidiis: ablative of means.

28. ne committeret: *he should not commit*; W. 386; B. 218; A. 206. 2; A. 219; H. 454.

CHAPTER 14

1. His: sc. *rebus*, or *hominibus*.

2. Eo: ablative of cause.

H. 475.

The rest of the chapter.

Divico respondit and *respondit*.

in H. 653, and in A. 206. 2; A. 219; H. 454.

sage.

dubitationis: *doubt*; W. 355, 356; B. 206; A. 206. 2; A. 219; H. 454.

2. quod . . . te . . . commemorasse.

W. 620; B. 324; A. 206. 2; A. 219; H. 454.

3. eo . . . quod . . .

the (less, etc.); W. 355, 356; B. 206; A. 206. 2; A. 219; H. 454.

4. merito: *desert*.

something happen.

qui si: = *si populus Romanus*.

5. iniuriæ: objective genitive with *consciis*; W. 352; B. 204. 1; A. 218. a; H. 450; 451. 1.

sibi: need not be translated.

fuisse: corresponds to *fuit* in direct discourse; B. 304. 3; A. 264. b; H. 583. 3. Translate as if it were *futurum fuisse*; W. 617. 2; B. 304; 321. 2; A. 308. d. N; 337. b. 2; H. 647. 2, 3.

6. cavere: subject of *fuisse*.

eo: *thereby*, referring to the clauses following, *quod . . . intellegeret . . . putaret*.

deceptum: sc. *populum Romanum . . . esse*.

commisum: = *quicquam commissum esse*.

7. timeret: subjunctive of characteristic (*quare* is a relative = *propter quod*), as well as a subordinate verb in indirect discourse; W. 588, 605; B. 283, 314. 1; A. 320, 336. 2; H. 591. 4.

timendum: sc. *esse*; impersonal passive; W. 233. 3; B. 138. IV; A. 146. d; H. 302. 6, 7.

8. Quod: *now*, or *but*, lit. "as to which"; W. 316; B. 185. 2; A. 240. b; H. 510. 9. Quod si . . . vellet: *But if he were willing*; direct discourse *If I were willing*: *si velim* or *volo*.

contumeliae: genitive with a verb of forgetting.

9. num: not to be translated; it introduces a rhetorical question with its verb, *posse*, in the infinitive; W. 240. 5; 280. 2; B. 162. 2. b; A. 210. c; 338; H. 642. 2.

iniuriarum: objective genitive with *memoriam*, line 11; W. 351; B. 200; A. 217; H. 439, 440. 2.

The wrongs are specified in the *quod* clauses which follow.

eo invito: we might expect *se*, as the reference is probably to Caesar; but *eo* may possibly mean *populo Romano*.

11. Allobrogas: notice the accusative plural of Celtic proper names of the third declension, ending in *-as*.

12. Quod: *the fact that*; *quod . . . gloriarentur* and *quod . . . admirarentur* are subjects of *pertinere*.

sua: of the Helvetians.

victoria: over Cassius in 107 B. C.

14. eodem pertinere: *had the same significance, were to the same effect*.

Consuesse: as to the form, W. 189; B. 116. 1; A. 128. a. 1; H. 238. The present means *to grow or become accustomed*, the perfect *to be accustomed*.

15. quo: used with a comparative adverb, *gravius*, to introduce a clause of purpose; W. 507; B. 282. 1. a; A. 317. b; H. 568. 7.

18. **Cum**: concessive; W. 571; B. 309. 3; A. 326; H. 598.
 19. **ab eis**: i. e. *Helvetiis*; *sibi*: *Caesari*.
ea: object of *facturos (esse)*.
 20. **Haeduis**: dative with *satisfaciant*; supplied from line 21.
ipsis: i. e. *Haeduis*; dative with *intulerint*.
 22. **Sese . . . esse facturum**: in direct discourse, *faciam*.
 24. **consuerint**: subjunctive of result.
 25. **testem**: again alluding to the victory over Cassius.
 26. **discessit**: sc. *Divico*.

CHAPTER 15

27. **movent**: sc. *Helvetii*; historical present.
 28. **equitatum**: see Introduction, page xxxviii.

PAGE 11

1. **coactum habebat**: means nearly the same as *coëgerat*; B. 337. 6; A. 292. c; H. 431. 3.
qui . . . videant: clause of purpose; plural because the antecedent of *qui* is the collective *equitatum*; W. 301. 2; A. 199. b; H. 397.
 2. **quas . . . faciant**: indirect question; W. 590; B. 300. 1; A. 210, 338; H. 649. II.
Qui: *They*, the horsemen.
cupidius: *too eagerly*.
novissimum agmen: *the rear* of the Helvetian army. See Introduction, page xlvii.
 3. **alieno**: *unfavorable*, lit. "another's"; similarly *suus* may mean "advantageous."
loco: why ablative? W. 402. 2; B. 228. 1. b); A. 258. f. 1; H. 483, 485. 2.
 4. **de nostris**: = *nostrorum*; the ablative with *de* or *ex* is commonly used, instead of a partitive genitive, with numerals; B. 201. 1. a; A. 216. c; H. 444.
 6. **equitibus**: ablative of instrument; W. 386; B. 218. 10; A. 248. c. 1; H. 476.
 8. **agmine**: B. 228. 1. b); A. 258. f. 2; H. 483, 485.
 9. **proelio**: ablative of means; W. 386, 389; B. 218; A. 248. c. 1; H. 476.
nostros: sc. *milites*.
 10. **Satis habebat**: *was content*; lit. "considered it enough."
 11. **rapinis**, etc.: ablative of separation; W. 374; B. 214. 2; A. 243; H. 464.

prohibere: object of *habebat*, *satis* being predicate; *he considered it enough to prevent*, etc.; W. 625; B. 177. 2; 328. 1; A. 330. B; H. 613.

12. **dies**: accusative of duration; W. 324; B. 181; A. 256; H. 417.

13. **primum**: sc. *agmen*; *van* or *vanguard*.

14. **quinis aut senis**: *five or six each (day)*; distributive numerals; W. 130, 132; B. 78. 1. c; A. 95; H. 162. 3; 163, 164.

milibus: ablative of distance or "degree of difference"; *amplius* does not affect the case of the following noun as other comparatives do; W. 393, 382; B. 223, 217. 3; A. 247. c; 250; H. 471. 4; 479.

CHAPTER 16

15. **Haeduos . . . frumentum**: two accusatives with a verb of asking; W. 318; B. 178. 1. a; A. 239. c; H. 411.

16. **essent . . . polliciti**: implied indirect discourse; *which (he said) they had promised*; W. 605; B. 323; A. 341. d; H. 649. I.

publice: *in the name of the state, as a community*.

flagitare: historical infinitive; W. 631. 1; B. 335; A. 275; H. 610. This verb is one of the class known as frequentatives; W. 273. 2; B. 155. 2; A. 167. b; H. 364.

frigora: *cold seasons*; the climate was colder in those days, before the forests were cleared and the marshes drained.

18. **frumenta**: the plural is used for standing grain, the singular for the threshed grain.

19. **ne . . . quidem**: always separated by the emphasized word; W. 240. 6; B. 347. 1; A. 151. e; H. 677.

pabuli: *green fodder*; this had been eaten by the cattle of the Helvetians.

20. **frumento**: ablative with *uti*; W. 387; B. 218. 1; A. 249; H. 477.

flumine: ablative of means; W. 386; B. 218; A. 258. g; H. 476.

21. **propterea**: connect with the following *quod*; *for the reason that, for this reason . . . because*.

iter . . . averterant: the Helvetians had turned to the N. W. into the valley of the *Liger* (Loire); see map, opposite page 10 of the text.

23. **Diem ex die**: *day after day*; *diem* is accusative of duration; translate as if it were *Caesarem ducere* (*they kept putting off*) *ex die in diem*. *Ducere* is historical infinitive. So is *dicere*.

conferri, comportari, adesse: sc. *frumentum*; they all depend on *dicere*, and form a climax.

25. **diutius**: *too long*.

intellexit: sc. *Caesar*.

26. *die* : do not translate ; W. 303. 2 ; B. 251. 3 ; A. 200. *a* ; H. 399. I.
metiri : infinitive, subject of the impersonal *oporteret* ; W. 623 ; B. 327. 1 ; A. 270. *b* ; H. 615. Grain was served out regularly twice every month ; see Introduction, page xli.
oporteret : subjunctive in a subordinate clause of indirect discourse.
 27. *eorum* : *Haeduorum*.
 28. *Diviciaco et Lisco* : ablatives in apposition with *principibus*.
magistratui : dative with *praerat* ; W. 332 ; B. 187. III ; A. 228 ; H. 429.
 29. *vergobretum* : Latinized from the Celtic words *guerg breth*.
 30. *annuus* : predicate adjective ; translate as if it were an adverb.
in suos : *over his countrymen*.

PAGE 12

2. *tam necessario tempore* : *in a crisis so pressing*.
 3. *propinquis hostibus* : ablative absolute ; W. 397 ; B. 227. I ; A. 255. *a* ; H. 489.
sublevetur : this verb and *sit destitutus*, line 5, are in the subjunctive because Caesar the writer is giving the causes alleged by Caesar the speaker on this occasion ; in other words, he is quoting himself as a third person, in indirect discourse ; W. 545 ; B. 286. I ; A. 321 ; H. 588. II.
 4. *magna ex parte* : *in great measure*.
 5. *susceperit* : causal subjunctive.
multo : ablative of degree of difference.

CHAPTER 17

8. *quod* : object of *tacuerat* ; sc. *id*, object of *proponit*.
Esse, etc. : indirect discourse to the end of the chapter. The passage is given in direct form in Allen and Greenough's Caesar in the notes to this chapter.
 9. *plurimum valeat* : adverbial accusative ; see note on *plurimum*, page 3, line 19. The same construction is seen in *plus possint*.
 There was a sort of feudal system in Gaul ; hence the power of great landowners with many retainers. See Bk. VI, ch. 15.
 10. *possint* : this verb, as perhaps also *valeat*, line 9, is in the subjunctive of characteristic.
 11. *improba* : *reckless*.
 12. *ne . . . conferant* : *from furnishing* ; a substantive clause of purpose ; W. 514 ; B. 294, 295. 3 ; A. 331. *e*. 2 ; H. 568. 2, 8 ; plural because *multitudinem* is a collective noun.

debeant : sc. *conferre*.

praestare : *that it was better*, etc. ; here Liscus is quoting the arguments used to stir up the people against the Romans.

15. superaverint : perfect subjunctive for the future perfect indicative of direct discourse.

16. una : adverb.

reliqua : *the rest of*.

Haeduis : dative with a verb of "taking away" ; W. 337 ; B. 188. 2. *d* ; A. 229 ; H. 427.

sint erepturi : nearly = *eripiant*, but emphasizes the intention more ; W. 576 ; B. 208 ; A. 319. *d* ; H. 595. 1.

17. quaeque : = *et quae*.

18. a se : sc. *Lisco*.

19. Quin etiam : *nay even, moreover*.

quod : *in that* ; W. 549 ; B. 299. 2 ; A. 333 ; H. 588. II. 3.

necessariam : adjective like adverb ; *of necessity*.

20. id : refers to the clause *quod . . . enuntiavit*.

21. tacuisse : intransitive ; in line 8 it is transitive.

CHAPTER 18

23. pluribus praesentibus : *in the presence of a number of persons* ; ablative absolute.

24. iactari : *to be discussed*, "bandied about."

dimittit . . . retinet : the omission of the conjunction (*asyndeton*) is common in Caesar ; W. 253 ; B. 341. 4. *a* ; A. 208. *b* ; 346. *c* ; H. 657. 6.

25. solo : sc. *Lisco* ; *in private*. Cf. *quaerit ex solo* with *ab aliis quaerit*, line 27 ; W. 319 ; A. 239. *c*, N. 1 ; H. 411. 4.

27. vera : predicate adjective.

28. Ipsum : *the very man* ; indirect discourse as far as *desperare*, page 13, line 19. The direct form is given in full in Allen and Greenough's Caesar, in the note on this passage.

summa audacia : (*a man*) *of the greatest boldness* ; W. 394 ; B. 224 ; A. 251 ; H. 473. 2.

29. rerum novarum : *revolutions, political changes* ; very frequent in Gaul in those times ; objective genitive with *cupidum* ; W. 352 ; B. 204. 1 ; A. 218. *a* ; H. 450. 1.

PAGE 13

1. annos : accusative of duration.

portoria : *customs duties*.

2. vectigalia : *revenues in general* ; they were farmed out, i. e. the right to collect them was sold to the highest bidder, who then paid the

amount of his bid into the state treasury and kept the surplus for himself.

pretio: ablative of price; W. 395; B. 225; A. 252; H. 478.

redempta habere: *had farmed*; nearly = *redemisse*; like *coactum habebat*, page 11, line 1.

3. illo licente: ablative absolute; *when he bid*.

4. rem familiarem: *property*.

auxisse . . . comparasse: the subject is still *Dumnorigem*.

5. ad largiendum: gerund with *ad*, expressing purpose; W. 639. 3; B. 338. 3; A. 300; H. 628.

7. neque = *et non*.

domi: locative case; W. 403. 2; B. 232. 2; A. 258, *d*; H. 484. 2.

8. largiter posse: cf. *plurimum possent*, ch. 3. 7; *plus possint*, ch. 17. 1.

potentiae: material power or personal influence; *potestas* is legal, and *imperium* military authority.

causa: W. 384; B. 219; A. 245. *c*; H. 475. 2.

9. Biturigibus: this name appears in the modern *Bourges*, the ancient *Avaricum*.

10. conlocasse: *had given in marriage*.

ipsum: *Dumnorigem*; his wife was the daughter of Orgetorix, page 3, line 16.

11. ex matre: *on the mother's side*; they were not children of the same father.

nuptum: supine, expressing purpose; W. 654; B. 340. 1. *b*; A. 302; H. 633. 1. See *nubo* and *duco* in the Vocabulary (last meaning under *duco*). A woman "veiled herself" for her husband, a man "led" his wife to his home.

12. cupere: *was well disposed toward*.

Helvetiis: why dative? W. 330; B. 187. II. *a*; A. 227; H. 426. 4. N.

13. odisse: defective verb, lacking present, imperfect, and future tenses. Perfect serves as present, etc.

suo nomine: cf. same, page 216, line 20; a mercantile phrase; *on his own account*, ablative of cause.

15. Diviciacus: he was a Druid (see Introduction, page lxiv), and had been in Rome in 63 B. C., the year of Cicero's consulship and Caesar's praetorship, to get aid for the Haedui against the German king Ariovistus (Cic. De Div. I. xli. 90).

16. Si quid accidat: *if anything should happen*; we have the same euphemism in English, meaning "anything unlucky" or "disastrous." In direct discourse *accidat* would be *accidet*.

17. per: *by means of, by the help of*.

regni obtinendi: connect with *spem*; W. 640; B. 338. I. *a*; 339. I; A. 298; H. 626. This is an objective genitive.

18. imperio: *under the rule*; ablative of time and cause.

19. desperare: this is the last word in the indirect quotation.

20. quod proelium, etc.: *in regard to the defeat of the cavalry which had taken place*, etc.; W. 549; B. 299; A. 333; H. 588. II. 3. N.

23. auxilio Caesari: dative of "tendency" and dative of person affected; W. 342, 345; B. 191. 2. *b*; A. 233. *a*; H. 433.

CHAPTER 19

26. Quibus: translate by a demonstrative pronoun.

27. accederent: = *adderentur*; why subjunctive? W. 536, 542; B. 288. I. *B*, 286. 2; A. 325, 326; H. 598, 600. II.

quod . . . traduxisset: this and the three following *quod*-clauses are substantive clauses in apposition with *res*; their verbs are in the subjunctive because of their dependence on *accederent*; W. 620; B. 324; A. 342; H. 652.

eos: *Sequanos et Helvetios*.

dandos curasset: *had caused . . . to be given*; cf. *faciendum curat*, page 9, line 10; W. 644. 2; B. 337. 7. *b*) 2); A. 294. *d*; H. 622.

29. non modo . . . civitatis: *not only without his own (Caesar's) bidding or that of the (Haeduan) state*, etc.; W. 103. 1; 384; B. 57. 1; 219. 2; A. 71. *b*; 245; H. 143. 1; 475. 3.

30. ipsis: sc. *Caesare et Haeduis*.

magistratu: *Lisco*.

PAGE 14

1. causae: partitive genitive with *satis*.

arbitratur: sc. *Caesar*.

2. animadverteret: cf. note on *timeret*, page 10, line 7; subjunctive in a relative clause of characteristic, though it would be subjunctive also because in a dependent clause of indirect discourse depending on *arbitratur*; W. 587, 605; B. 283. 1; 314. 1; A. 320, 336. 2; H. 591. 4; 643, 652.

4. rebus: why dative? W. 330; B. 187. II. *a*; A. 227; H. 426. I.
unum: *one consideration*.

7. cognoverat: *he was acquainted with*; *cognosco* means "I am learning"; *cognovi*, "I have learned," "I know." Notice the omission of conjunctions in this sentence.

ne: *that*, with a verb of fearing; W. 516; B. 296. 2; A. 331. *f*; H. 567. 1.

eius: *Dumnorigis*.

supplicio : *punishment, especially execution.*

8. prius quam : translate as one word.

9. conaretur : why subjunctive? W. 534; B. 291, 292. I. a; A. 327;

H. 605; imperfect after the historical present *iubet*.

10. cotidianis : *ordinary*; lit. "every-day."

11. principem : *a leading man.*

12. cui : *in whom*; dative of reference.

omnium rerum : *about everything.*

eo : = *Diviciaco.*

13. quae . . . sint dicta : indirect question.

15. de eo : i. e. *Dumnorige.*

apud se : i. e. *Caesarem.*

16. ut . . . statuatur . . . iubeat : substantive clauses of purpose;
W. 511, 512; B. 295; A. 331; H. 565.

eius : i. e. *Diviciaci*, limits *animi*, "feelings"; *animi* is objective genitive with *offensione*, "wounding."

17. ipse : sc. *Caesar.*

causa cognita : *after hearing his case.*

CHAPTER 20

19. complexus : translate by present active participle.

20. gravius : *too severe*; agrees with *quid*; W. 414. 2; B. 240. 1; A.

93. a; H. 498.

21. Scire se, etc. : sc. *dixit*; indirect discourse to *avertentur*, page 15, line 1. This passage is given in direct form in Allen and Greenough's Caesar.

nec quemquam : *and that no one.*

ex eo : neuter, *from that fact.*

22. ipse : *Diviciacus*; *per se*, line 24, *suam, sese*, line 26, *ipse*, line 29, *sua*, line 30, and *se*, page 15, line 1, also refer to Diviciacus.

23. gratia : why ablative? W. 386; B. 218; A. 248. c. 1; H. 476.

domi : among the Haedui.

ille : *Dumnorix.*

24. per se : *by his (Diviciacus's) help.*

crevisset; from *cresco*; connect with *propterea quod*; the subject is *Dumnorix* understood.

25. opibus ac nervis : *influence and power*; ablative with *uteretur*; W. 387; B. 218. 1; A. 249; H. 477.

26. uteretur : subordinate verb in indirect discourse.

28. Quod si : *But if, Now if.*

quid : euphemistic like *incommodi*, page 9, line 21; and *si quid accidat*, page 13, line 16.

el: sc. *Dumnorigi*.

accidisset: represents the future perfect indicative of direct discourse.

30. non . . . factum (esse): *that it had not been done*; object of **existimaturum**.

voluntate: causal ablative.

PAGE 15

1. futurum (esse) uti, etc.: *the result would be that*, etc., *it would come to pass that*, etc.; the usual periphrasis for the future passive infinitive; W. 636; B. 270. 3. *a*; page 57, foot-note 3; A. 147. *c*. 3; 288. *f*; H. 619. 2; 571. 1.

3. peteret: W. 536; B. 288. 1. B; A. 325; H. 600.

4. consolatus: remember that this verb is deponent; translate as if it were a present participle.

5. faciat: subjunctive in a substantive clause of purpose, without *ut*, the object or complement of *rogat*; W. 511, 512; B. 295. 8; A. 331. *f*. R; H. 565.

tanti: genitive of price; W. 361; B. 203. 3; A. 252. *a*; H. 448. 1.

eius: i. e. *Diviciaci*.

apud se: i. e. *Caesarem*.

6. rei publicae: objective genitive with *injuriam*.

voluntati, etc.: *in deference to his wish he (Caesar) pardons*, etc., *lit.* "makes a present to his wish," etc.

8, 9. reprehendat, intellegat, queratur: subjunctives of indirect question; W. 590; B. 300. 1; A. 210. 2; 338; H. 649. II.

10. ut . . . vitet: an object clause of purpose, complementary to *monet*; W. 511, 512; B. 295. 1; A. 331; H. 565.

11. praeterita: neuter plural, = *res praeteritas*.

Diviciaco: *for the sake of Diviciacus*.

12. agat . . . loquatur: subjunctives of indirect question.

CHAPTER 21

14. hostes: the Helvetians were in the valley of the Liger (Loire), S. E. of Bibracte.

16. qualis esset: indirect question.

in circuitu: *if one went around*, i. e. ascended from the other side; or *at different points all around*.

17. cognoscere: subjunctive in relative clause of purpose.

misit: sc. *exploratores* or the like.

18. esse: sc. *ascensum*.

De tertia vigilia: see Introduction, page lii, and note on same words, page 8, line 22.

T. Labienum : see page 7, line 14, and note.

legatum pro praetore : *lieutenant with praetorian power* ; see Introduction, page 11 ; Labienus was really second in command and had this special title, i. e. he had an independent *imperium* of his own ; the other lieutenants were probably simply *legati* whose authority was not independent, but only delegated to them by the commander-in-chief. A *propraetor* would rank above them in that case, and also above the *quaestor*.

19. cum . . . eis ducibus : *with those men as guides*, referring to the scouts of the preceding day.

21. consilii : partitive genitive.

de quarta vigilia : not far from 2 A. M., for sunrise is about 4 A. M. in June in that latitude.

22. itinere : W. 386 ; B. 218. 9 ; A. 258. g ; H. 476.

24. rei militaris : *warfare* ; objective genitive after an adjective of skill ; W. 352 ; B. 204. 1 ; A. 218. a ; H. 451. 1.

25. L. Sullae . . . M. Crassi : Sulla had carried on the war against Mithradates, king of Pontus, 88-84 B. C., and Crassus the war against Spartacus and his gladiators in 71 B. C.

in : sc. *exercitu*.

CHAPTER 22

27. summus : *the top of*, etc. ; W. 416 ; B. 241. 1 ; A. 193 ; H. 498. 1.

teneretur : why subjunctive ? W. 536, 542 ; B. 288. 1. B ; 286. 2 ; A. 323, 326 ; H. 598, 600. II.

28. ipse : Caesar.

29. passibus : ablative of distance or degree of difference ; W. 393 ; B. 223 ; A. 250 ; H. 479. 3.

PAGE 16

1. cognitus esset : connect with *cum*, page 15, line 27.

2. equo admisso : (*riding*) *at full speed*.

3. voluerit : subjunctive in subordinate clause of indirect discourse, depending on *dicit*.

4. insignibus : here a noun ; it refers to devices on shields, crests of helmets, etc., as well as to standards.

6. ducit . . . instruit : historical presents ; W. 447 (1) ; B. 259. 3 ; A. 276. d ; H. 532. 3.

7. ne . . . committeret : substantive clause, subject of *erat* . . . *praeceptum* ; W. 511, 512 ; B. 295. 1 ; A. 331. h ; H. 564. II.

ipsius : *Caesaris*.

8. *visae essent* : indirect discourse for the future perfect indicative ; Caesar's order in direct form was *ne . . . committas, nisi . . . visae erunt*.

9. *monte occupato* : ablative absolute.

10. *proelio* : ablative of separation ; W. 376 ; B. 214. 2 ; A. 243. *b* ; H. 461.

Multo denique die : *not till late in the day*.

13. *pro viso* : *viso* is used substantively ; *as (a thing) seen*, i. e. *as if he had seen it*.

14. *quo . . . intervallo* : five or six miles, as appears from page 11, line 14. Why ablative ? W. 390 ; B. 220. 1 ; A. 248 ; H. 473. 3.

consuerat : sc. *sequi*.

15. *milia* : accusative of extent of space.

CHAPTER 23

17. *diei* : W. 348, 720 ; B. 201. 3. *a* ; A. 214. *g* ; H. 446. 5.

18. *cum* : *before*, or *within which*, i. e. (before the time) when.

metiri : sc. *Caesarem* as subject ; see note on page 11, line 26.

oporteret : subjunctive in a clause of characteristic.

19. *Bibracte* : identified with Mont Beuvray, twelve miles west of Autun ; for the declension see B. 39. 2 ; A. 57. *d* ; H. 103. 2.

20. *milibus passuum xviii* : see note on *milia passuum*, page 2, line 26 ; *milibus* here is ablative of distance or degree of difference with *aberat*, its case not being affected by *amplius*.

21. *rei* : dative ; W. 332 ; B. 187. III ; A. 228 ; H. 426. 4. N.

prospiciendum : sc. *esse* : impersonal passive.

22. *avertit* : toward the north.

Bibracte : accusative, limit of motion ; W. 325. 2 ; B. 182 ; A. 258. *b* ; H. 418.

23. *fugitivos* : *runaway slaves* ; ordinary deserters are *transfugae*.

decurionis : leader of a *decuria* of cavalry ; see Introduction, page xxxviii.

25. *existimarent, confiderent* (line 28) ; subjunctive because the reasons are not known to Caesar, but only conjectured ; W. 545 ; B. 286. 1 ; A. 321 ; H. 588. II.

eo magis : *all the more* ; *eo* is causal, and is explained by the clause *quod . . . commisissent*.

26. *superioribus . . . occupatis* : concessive ablative absolute ; *though they had taken possession*, etc. ; W. 397, 399 ; B. 227. 2. *c* ; A. 255. *d*. 3 ; H. 489. 1.

27. *commisissent* : subjunctive because subordinate to *existimarent* ; W. 620 ; B. 324 ; A. 342 ; H. 652.

29. *itinere converso* : *reversing the direction of their march*.

a *novissimo agmine*: *from the rear*; see Introduction, page xlvii and page 11, line 2, and note.

CHAPTER 24

PAGE 17

1. *animus advertit*: a compound, often written as one word, *animadvertit*; in either case it takes a direct object, in this case *id*.

2. *collem*: probably the hill of Armecy, just south of Montmort. Excavations here in 1886 revealed the remains of an ancient entrenchment, and in 1889 nine trenches were found, filled with ashes, charcoal, and human bones. The distance from Mont Beuvray suits what Caesar says of his distance from Bibracte on the morning of the battle, at the beginning of the last chapter.

sustineret: subjunctive in a relative clause of purpose; W. 586. 1; B. 282. 2; A. 317. 2; H. 590.

3. *in colle medio*: *half-way up the hill*; W. 416; B. 241. 1; A. 193; H. 497. 4.

4. *triplicem aciem*: for explanation see Introduction, page xlii. Each legion was in three lines, and the four legions side by side.

legionum: genitive of definition or material; W. 348; B. 197; A. 214. 4; H. 440. 4.

5. *summo*: *at the top of*; used like *medio*, line 4.

duas legiones: the new legions raised that year, the 11th and 12th (page 7, line 16), which were not yet steady enough to be trusted in battle.

7. *auxilia*: non-Roman troops, light infantry, see Introduction, page xxxviii.

8. *sarcinas*: *packs* or *knapsacks*; see Introduction, page xlv.

9. *superiore acie*: i. e. the two legions on the hill.

10. *muniri*: see entrenchments on plan opposite page 17.

cum . . . carris: like the Germans, they used to go to war with their families and goods in wagons. Their women encouraged them to fight, and the wagons formed a rude defense for their camps.

12. *confertissima acie*: ablative absolute or, perhaps, ablative of manner.

phalange: on the Gallic manner of fighting see Introduction, page lxvii.

relecto . . . equitatu: cavalry was no match for considerable bodies of infantry, and was not expected to do much of the actual fighting in a pitched battle.

CHAPTER 25

14. *suo*: sc. *equo remoto*; officers often dismounted before battle; cf. Sall. Cat. 59.

omnium ; the officers, not the cavalry.

17. *e loco superiore* : this was a great advantage in throwing their spears and then in charging.

pilis : the *pilum* and the method of using it are described in the Introduction, page xxxv.

18. in eos : sc. *hostes* or *Helvetios*.

19. *Gallis* . . . *impedimento* : the Gauls were greatly hindered in fighting ; two datives, one of reference, one of tendency ; W. 342, 345 ; B. 191. 2. a ; A. 233. a ; H. 433.

20. *pluribus* . . . *scutis* . . . *transfixis*, etc. : they stood in so close order that their shields overlapped ; hence the long iron point of a *pilum* could pierce several shields at once.

21. *ferrum* : the iron point.

inflexisset : when is the subjunctive used with *cum* ? W. 536, 542 ; B. 286. 2 ; 288. B ; A. 325, 326 ; H. 600. II, 598.

22. *sinistra* : sc. *manu* ; the shield was carried on the left arm.

23. *multi ut* : transposed in order to emphasize *multi*.

iactato brachio : i. e. in trying to shake the spear point out of the shield.

praeoptarent : subjunctive of result.

24. *nudo* : unprotected.

26. *pedem referre* : to retreat.

27. *mons* : see plan opposite page 17.

eo : thither.

28. *Capto* : gained, reached.

29. *agmen* . . . *claudabant* : brought up the rear.

PAGE 18

1. *novissimis praesidio* : two datives, like *Gallis* . . . *impedimento*, page 17, line 19.

ex itinere : on the march.

2. *ab latere aperto* ; on the exposed (left) flank. This phrase often means the right side in contrast to the left, which the shield protected.

circumvenire : sc. *coeperunt*, from below.

5. *conversa* . . . *intulerunt* : faced about and advanced in two directions ; it is often best to translate a participle by an independent verb ; i. e. the first and second lines facing forward, the third line wheeling to oppose the Boii and Tulingi (*venientes*).

CHAPTER 26

8. *ancipiti* : literally, "facing both ways" ; figuratively, *uncertain*. The latter is meant here.

pugnatum est : impersonal ; *the fight went on* ; W. 442. 4 ; B. 138. IV ; A. 146. *d* ; H. 302. 6.

9. possent : sc. *hostes*.

10. alteri . . . alteri : *Helvetii . . . Boi et Tulingi*.

11. Nam, etc. : i. e. (They did not run away, but retired in good order) *for, etc.*

12. proelio : ablative of time ; W. 406 ; B. 230. 1 ; A. 256, 259. *a* ; H. 486. 1.

cum : *although* ; W. 571 ; B. 309. 3 ; A. 326 ; H. 598.

hora septima : a little after 1 P. M. at this season of the year ; see Introduction, page lii, foot-note.

13. aversum hostem : *the back of an enemy*.

Ad multam noctem : *till late at night* ; cf. *multo die*, page 16, line 10.

15. pro vallo : *as a barricade*.

e loco superiore : i. e. from the top of their barricade.

16. coiciebant : *hurled* (from above).

17. mataras : Gallic spears.

tragulas : heavy javelins hurled by means of a thong or strap.

subiciebant : *threw from below*.

19. impedimentis castrisque : ablative with *potiti sunt* ; W. 387 ; B. 218. 1 ; A. 249 ; H. 477.

20. e filiis : usual equivalent of the partitive genitive used with numerals ; *of his sons*.

captus est : singular agreeing with the nearest subject ; W. 298 ; B. 255. 2 ; A. 205. *d* ; H. 392.

22. nocte : time how long is sometimes expressed by the ablative ; B. 231. 1 ; A. 256. *b* ; H. 417. 2.

23. in fines Lingonum : the southern part of Champagne, sixty or seventy miles north of Bibracte. The chief town is *Langres*. Napoleon III (*Jules César*) puts the end of their flight at Tonnerre, sixty miles west of Langres.

24. cum : causal.

27. Lingonas : accusative plural of third declension in *-as*, like *Allobroges*, page 10, line 11. See note there.

ne . . . iuvarent : W. 599 ; B. 316 ; A. 339 ; H. 642.

28. qui si : *if they*, i. e. the Lingones.

iuvissent : direct discourse would be *iuveritis*, future perfect. W. 615, 616 ; B. 319. B. *a* ; A. 337. 1, 3 ; H. 644. 2.

se (eos) eodem loco . . . habiturum (esse) : *that he would treat them in the same way* ; direct discourse would be *vos habebo*.

triduo intermisso : *after an interval of three days*.

30. eos : *Helvetios*.

CHAPTER 27

PAGE 19

2. *Qui cum*: *And when they*; W. 304. 2; B. 251. 6; A. 201. *e*; H. 510.

3. *convenissent*: transitive; *had met*.

ad pedes: *at his* (Caesar's) *feet*.

4. *eos*: i. e. *Helvetios*, subject of *expectare* depending on *iussisset*.

5. *essent*: subjunctive because subordinate to *expectare*; W. 620; B. 324. 1; A. 342; H. 652.

7. *perfugissent*: subjunctive, because indirectly quoting Caesar's *perfugerant*; W. 605; B. 323; A. 341; H. 649. 1.

Dum . . . *conquiruntur*; *dum*, meaning *while*, regularly takes the present indicative even when referring to past time; W. 533; B. 293. 1; A. 276. *e*; H. 533. 4; 604. 1. Translate as if it were imperfect.

8. *ea*: neuter plural, referring to *obsides*, *arma*, *servos*, regarded as so many *things*; W. 295. 2; B. 235. *B. 2. b) β*; A. 187. 2. *b*; H. 395. 2; 398.

9. *pagi*: *pagus* is explained in note to page 8, line 28.

Verbigenus: between the modern Bern and Lucerne.

10. *perterriti*: agrees in case with *milīa*, but in gender with *hominum*, of whom the *milīa* consisted; W. 294. 2; B. 235. *B. 2. c*; A. 187. *d*; H. 389. 2.

ne: *that or lest* after a verb of fearing; W. 516; B. 296. 2; A. 331. *f*; H. 567. 1.

12. *occultari*: i. e. from Caesar.

13. *ignorari*: i. e. by any one.

existimarent: subjunctive as expressing the supposed reason in the minds of the Helvetians.

prima nocte: *early in the evening*; W. 416; B. 241. 1; A. 193; H. 498. 1.

CHAPTER 28

16. *Quod*: notice how the Latin uses a relative pronoun at the beginning of a sentence where the English uses a personal or demonstrative; see note to *Qui*, line 2.

quorum: the antecedent is *his*.

17. *his*: antecedent of *quorum*, and indirect object of *imperavit*.

uti conquirerent . . . *reducerent*: sc. *Helvetios*; these clauses are direct objects of *imperavit*; W. 512; B. 295. 1; A. 331; H. 565. His command in direct form was *Conquirite* . . . *reducite, si mihi purgati esse vultis*.

sibi: dative of reference; W. 335; B. 188. 1; A. 235; H. 425. 4.

purgati : participle used as a predicate adjective, like *divisa*, page 1, line 1.

18. in . . . habuit : *he treated as enemies*; euphemistic; the meaning is that he put them to death.

19. in deditionem accepit : *the rest he allowed to surrender*; they became formally subjects of the Roman republic, and so entitled to Caesar's protection as well as bound to obedience.

21. unde : *e quibus*.

iussit : cf. this verb with dependent infinitive, and *imperavit*, line 23, with its dependent *ut . . . facerent*.

22. quo . . . tolerarent : a clause of purpose; W. 507; B. 282. 2; A. 317; H. 590.

23. ut . . . copiam facerent : *to furnish*; the clause is the direct object of *imperavit*.

24. ipsos : sc. *Helvetios*, etc.

oppida, etc. : cf. page 4, lines 10-12.

26. ea maxime ratione : *chiefly for this reason*.

27. ne . . . Germani . . . transirent : a negative clause of purpose. The sadly diminished Helvetians, however, could scarcely keep out the Germans. They sent only 8,000 men to the relief of Alesia, Bk. VII, ch. 75.

PAGE 20

1. Allobrogibus : the Allobroges were inside the Province; the addition is only by way of explanation.

Boios : object of *conlocarent*, line 3.

petentibus Haeduis : dative with *concessit*.

2. erant cogniti : sc. *Boi*. The Haedui gave them land between the Liger (*Loire*) and the Elaver (*Allier*). They were anxious for help against their neighbors and rivals, the Sequani.

3. illi : *Haedui*.

5. atque : *as*; B. 341. 1. c); A. 156. a; H. 508. 5.

CHAPTER 20

6. tabulae : *lists*, lit. "tablets"; thin boards coated with wax, on which they wrote with a sharp iron instrument called a *stilus*.

litteris Graecis : in Greek characters, not in the Greek language. Having no alphabet, the Gauls borrowed from the Greeks at Massilia (*Marseilles*). A similar use of Greek letters occurs at page 133, line 14, and page 150, line 22.

8. tabulis : repeated antecedent, not to be translated; W. 303. 2; B. 251. 3; A. 200; H. 399.

ratio : *an account*.

qui : interrogative adjective ; W. 148 ; B. 90 ; A. 104 ; H. 184. 1.

9. domo : why no preposition ? W. 403. 2 ; 405 ; B. 229. 1. b) ; A. 258. a ; H. 462. 4.

10. pueri, senes mulieresque : sc. *exissent*.

11. capitum : *individuals, souls* ; however, it need not be translated at all.

12. cclxiii : *ducenta sexaginta tria* ; read all numbers in Latin words ; xxxvi : *triginta sex* ; W. 132 ; B. 79 ; A. 94 ; H. 163.

13. xiiii : *quattuordecim* ; xiii : *viginti tria* ; xxii : *triginta duo*.

15. fuerunt : agrees with *milia*, which is nominative, *ad* being an adverb here.

ccclxviii : *trecenta sexaginta octo*. Deducting the Boii, adopted by the Haedui, the figures show a loss of about 250,000 in this short campaign ; but more may have escaped than the record showed.

CHAPTER 80

18. Galliae : used in the restricted sense, the land of the *Galli* proper.

19. gratulatum : supine expressing purpose ; W. 654 ; B. 340. 1 ; A. 302 ; H. 633.

20. Intellegere, etc. : indirect discourse depending on *dixerunt* implied with *gratulatum convenerunt* ; the direct quotation would be *intellegimus*.

Helvetiorum : subjective genitive ; W. 350 ; B. 199 ; A. 214 ; H. 440. 1.

21. populi Romani : objective genitive ; W. 351 ; B. 200 ; A. 217 ; H. 440. 2.

22. repetisset ; this would be *repetisti* in direct discourse.

ex usu : *to the advantage of*, "of use to."

23. accidisse : depends on *intellegere*.

24. eo consilio : *with this intention* ; the *uti*-clauses, following, are in apposition with it ; W. 511, 518 ; B. 282. 1 ; A. 317. a ; 331 ; H. 564. III.

florētissimis rebus : adversative or concessive ablative absolute ; W. 397, 399 ; B. 227. 1, 2. c) ; A. 255. 3. d) ; H. 489. 1.

25. reliquissent : for *reliquerunt* of direct discourse.

uti . . . inferrent, potirentur (line 26), deligerent (line 27), substantive clauses of purpose, in apposition with *eo consilio*, line 24.

imperio : ablative with *potirentur* ; W. 387 ; B. 218. 1 ; A. 249 ; H. 477.

26. domicilio : dative of purpose ; W. 343 ; B. 191. 1 ; A. 233 ; H. 425. 3.

copia : sc. *locorum*.

PAGE 21

1. *stipendiarias*: predicate adjective; W. 293; B. 233. 2; A. 186. *b*; H. 394.

3. *uti sibi . . . liceret*: *permission*, lit. "that it might be allowed them."

concilium totius Galliae: Caesar had no authority to forbid or permit an assembly of Free Gaul. But it was politic to secure his *voluntas*, his "good-will," in advance.

7. *ne quis*: *that no one*; W. 149; B. 252. 1; A. 105. *d*; H. 186.

enuntiaret: for the construction, see W. 511; B. 295. 1; A. 331. *d*; H. 565.

nisi quibus: i. e. *nisi eis quibus*.

8. *mandatum esset*: *some instruction should be given*; pluperfect subjunctive for future perfect indicative of direct discourse.

inter se sanxerunt: *they bound themselves to one another by an oath*, etc.

CHAPTER 81

10. *idem*: nominative plural.

11. *fueraut*: sc. *apud eum*.

13. *agere*: subject of the impersonal *liceret*; W. 623; B. 327. 1; A. 270. *b*; H. 615.

14. *Caesari*: dative of reference; translate as if genitive; W. 335; B. 188. I. N; A. 235. *a*; H. 425. 4. N.

Non minus . . . viderent (line 18): this passage is in indirect discourse; the direct form would be: *Non minus id contendimus et laboramus, ne ea quae dixerimus enuntientur, quam uti ea quae volumus impetremus, propterea quod, si enuntiatum erit, summum in cruciatum nos venturos (esse) videmus*.

id: i. e. *ne . . . enuntiarentur*; the substantive clause is in apposition with the pronoun.

19. *Diviciacus*: cf. page 12, line 22.

Galliae, etc.: indirect discourse to the end of the chapter; direct form in Allen and Greenough's Caesar.

Galliae totius: an exaggeration; he means only the eastern part of Celtic Gaul.

20. *factiones*: *parties*.

21. *Arvernos*: in modern *Auvergne*; they had been conquered in 121 B. C., but not made into a province.

22. *contenderent*: translate by the pluperfect; W. 449. 4; B. 260. 4; A. 277. *b*; H. 535.

23. *uti . . . arcesserentur* : substantive clause of result, subject of *factum est* ; W. 521, 523 ; B. 297. 2 ; A. 332. a ; H. 571. 1.

Sequanis : the *Sequani* were allies of the *Arverni*, and being unequal to the *Haedui*, had asked aid of the Germans.

mercede : ablative of price ; W. 395 ; B. 225 ; A. 252 ; H. 478.

26. *adamassent* : *amare* is "to love" ; *adamare*, "to fall in love with."
traductos : sc. *esse*.

27. *plures* : sc. *Germanos*.

esse : sc. *eos* or *Germanos*.

ad : preposition, connect with *numerus*.

28. *clientes* : *tributary states, vassals*.

PAGE 22

1. *omnem . . . amisisse* : this is, of course, an exaggeration.

3. *fractos* : sc. *eos*, antecedent of *qui* and subject of *coactos esse*.

4. *plurimum* : adverbial accusative with *potuissent*.

6. *sese . . . repetituros* : sc. *esse* ; substantive clause, expressing the promise contained in the oath *iure iurando civitatem obstringere*.

8. *recusaturos, quominus . . . essent* : *refuse to be* ; the clause introduced by *quominus* is an object clause of purpose ; W. 507, 514 ; B. 295. 3 ; A. 317. b. N. 1 ; H. 568.

9. *illorum* : *Sequanorum*.

10. *Unum . . . esse* : *was the only one*.

qui . . . potuerit : primary tense, contrary to the rule of sequence ; a clause of characteristic ; W. 587 ; B. 283. 2 ; A. 320. b ; H. 591. 5.

12. *Romam* : accusative of place to which ; on Diviciacus's visit to Rome, see note to page 13, line 15.

13. *postulatum* : how is the accusative supine used ?

15. *peius* : used substantively, subject of *accidisse*.

victoribus : adjective.

16. *Ariovistus* : German *Heerfürst*, "prince of the host."

17. *tertiam partem* : what is now known as upper Alsace.

18. *optimus* : the land of the Sequani was approximately the fine district of Franche-Comté.

19. *altera* : *a second*.

20. *mensibus* : ablative of degree of difference with *ante*, adverb ; W. 393 ; B. 223 ; A. 250 ; H. 479. 3.

Harudum : the Harudes had been living north of the Lake of Constance, east of the Tulingi.

21. *eum* : *Ariovistum*.

quibus . . . pararentur : a relative clause of purpose ; W. 586. 1 ; B. 282 ; A. 317. 2 ; H. 590.

22. **Futurum esse** . . . *uti* : *that the result would . . . be that*, etc. ; the *uti*-clauses are the subjects of *futurum esse*.

23. **omnes** : sc. *Galli*.

24. **neque enim** : *for, of course, . . . not*.

25. **Gallicum** : sc. *agrum*.

hanc : of the Gauls.

26. **illa** : of the Germans ; W. 426. 2 ; B. 246. 1 ; A. 102. *a, b* ; H. 505. 1.

27. **ut semel** : *as soon as*, lit. "when once" ; *vicerit* would be *vicit* in direct discourse. Through the rest of this quotation the tenses are the same as they would be in direct discourse. This makes the style more vivid and shows a livelier interest in the subject.

28. **proelium** : antecedent repeated with the relative, as often before.

Magetobrigam : the locality is unknown.

29. **nobilissimi cuiusque** : the English says *all*, the Latin *each* ; W. 433. 3 ; B. 252. 5. *c* ; A. 93. *c* ; H. 515. 2.

30. **omnia exempla cruciatusque** : hendiadys ; *all sorts of torture* ; W. 740 ; B. 374. 4. A. 385 ; H. 751. 3. N. 1.

31. **edere** : *inflicts (publicly)*.

ad : *at or according to*.

PAGE 23

3. **auxili** : partitive genitive with *quid*.

4. **Gallis** : the so-called dative of agent ; W. 339 ; B. 189. 1 ; A. 232 ; H. 431.

idem : subject of *esse faciendum* ; in apposition with it are the clauses *ut . . . emigrent . . . petant . . . experiantur*.

6. **quaecumque** : indefinite relative pronoun ; its antecedent is *fortunam*.

7. **Haec si** : *haec* has the emphatic position ; reverse the words in translating.

8. **dubitare** : sc. *se, i. e. Diviciacum*.

quin . . . sumat : object clause after verb of doubting ; W. 576 ; B. 298 ; A. 332. *g. R* ; H. 595. 1.

10. **exercitus** : genitive ; sc. *auctoritate*.

12. **Rhenum** : accusative governed by *trans* in *traducatur* ; W. 320 ; B. 179. 3 ; A. 239. 2. *b* ; H. 413. For the mood of *traducatur* after a verb of hindering, see W. 514 ; B. 295. 3 ; A. 331. *c. 2* ; H. 596. 2.

CHAPTER 32

15. **fletu** : ablative of manner ; W. 390 ; B. 220. 1 ; A. 248 ; H. 473. 3.

16. **unos** : *only, alone* ; W. 131 ; B. 66 ; A. 94. *a* ; H. 166. 1.

17. *facerent*: subjunctive in a clause subordinate to the infinitive *facere*; W. 620; B. 324; A. 342; H. 652. The scene which follows is very characteristic of the Gauls.

18. *quae . . . esset*: indirect question.

20. *respondere . . . permanere*: historical infinitives; notice that this kind of infinitive has a nominative subject; W. 631. 1; B. 335; A. 275; H. 610.

21. *quaereret*: when does *cum* temporal take the subjunctive? Translate in the pluperfect tense; W. 449. 4; B. 260. 4; A. 277. 6; H. 535.

23. *Hoc: for this reason*, explained in *quod soli*, etc. The rest of the chapter is in indirect discourse. The direct form is given in Harkness's and in Allen and Greenough's Caesar.

24. *ne . . . quidem*: always separated by the emphasized word; B. 347; A. 345. 6; H. 677.

25. *absentis: even when he was absent*.

26. *velut si . . . adesset*: a conditional clause of comparison; W. 567; B. 307. 1. 2; A. 312; H. 584.

27. *horrerent*: here transitive.

reliquis: to the rest (of the Gauls).

28. *Sequanis*: dative of agent with *perferendi*.

CHAPTER 83

PAGE 24

2. *sibi . . . curae futuram*: sc. *esse*; *that he would attend to that matter*. Notice the future infinitive after a verb of promising.

5. *secundum ea: accordingly*.

6. *res: considerations*.

7. *putaret*: subjunctive of result or characteristic; *quare = propter quas = ut propter eas*, referring to *multae res*; W. 586. 2; B. 283, 284. 2; A. 319. 2; 320; H. 591. 2.

8. *fratres consanguineosque*: predicate accusatives with *appellatos*; W. 290; B. 169. 2; A. 185; H. 393. 9; it seems to have been common for the Romans to speak of the Haedui as kinsmen. There are several allusions to them as brethren in Roman literature, e. g. Cic. *ad Fam.* vii. 10. 4; Tac. *Ann.* xi. 25; Lucan. i. 427, 428.

11. *quod: a situation which*; the antecedent of *quod* is the idea contained in the preceding infinitive clauses.

16. *periculosum*: sc. *esse*; the subject is *Germanos consuescere . . . transire . . . et . . . venire*.

17. *sibi . . . temperatus . . . quin . . . exirent*: *would restrain themselves from going forth*; on the case of *sibi*, see W. 330; B. 187. II.

a; A. 227; H. 426. 4. N.; on the *quin* clause, see W. 577; B. 295. 3; A. 319. *d*; H. 594. II; 595. 2.

18. *ut*: *as*.

19. *Cimbri Teutonique*: these nations had kept Italy in terror for several years. They were destroyed by Marius in 102 and 101 B. C.

fecissent: subjunctive because subordinate to a subjunctive; being a secondary subordinate clause in indirect discourse, introduced by *existimabat*; W. 620; B. 324; A. 342; H. 643.

22. *rebus*: dative with a verb compounded with *ob*; W. 332; B. 187. III; A. 228; H. 429.

quam maturime: *as quickly as possible*.

occurrendum: sc. *esse sibi*; impersonal passive of intransitive verb.

24. *ferendus non videretur*: Latin puts the negative with the verb, English with the adjective.

CHAPTER 34

25. *placuit ei*, etc.: *he decided to send*; the subject of *placuit* is the clause *ut . . . mitteret*.

26. *postularent*: subjunctive of purpose.

medium utriusque: *midway between the two*.

27. *conloquio*: dative of purpose; W. 343; B. 151. I; A. 233; H. 425. 3.

velle, etc.: indirect discourse depending on the idea of *saying* implied in *postularent*.

29. *Si quid*, etc.: indirect discourse to end of chapter depending on *respondit*; the direct form is given in Harkness's and in Allen and Greenough's Caesar.

ipsi: *Ariovisto*; *sese* and *se* refer to Ariovistus, *eum* and *ille* to Caesar.

PAGE 25

1. *opus esset*: what constructions are found with *opus* and *usus*? W. 389; B. 218. 2. *a*; A. 243. *e*. R; H. 477. III. and N.

venturum fuisse: conclusion of a condition contrary to fact, in indirect discourse; W. 617. 2; B. 321. A. 2. *a*; A. 337. *b*; H. 647.

si quid . . . se velit: *if he (Caesar) wished anything of him (Ariovistus)*; *velle* is used, like a verb of asking, with two accusatives; W. 318; B. 178. I. *a*; A. 239. *c*; H. 411. This condition would be a simple indicative in direct discourse: *Si quid ille me vult, illum ad me venire oportet*.

6. *mirum*: neuter, because it refers to the indirect question clause *id . . . negoti esset*.

7. *vicisset*: subjunctive in a subordinate clause of indirect discourse.

Caesari . . . **populo** : possessive datives ; W. 340 ; B. 190 ; A. 231 ; H. 430.

8. negoti : partitive genitive ; connect with *quid*.

CHAPTER 35

10. Quoniam, etc. : indirect discourse to the end of the chapter ; direct form in Harkness's and in Allen and Greenough's Caesar.

11. adfectus : *although treated* ; *beneficio* is explained by the clause *cum . . . esset*.

12. consulatu suo : ablative of time. Caesar had been consul in 59 B. C., a year before.

rex atque amicus : the Roman Senate often conferred complimentary titles on barbarian chiefs in order to gain their good-will ; e. g. Catamantaloedes, page 3, lines 10-12.

13. hanc . . . gratiam referret : *he requited it in this way* ; *gratiam* is explained by the clause *ut . . . putaret*.

sibi : *Caesari*.

14. neque de communi re . . . cognoscendum : *that he did not need to learn or inquire about the common interest*.

15. sibi : refers to Ariovistus, subject of *putaret*.

16. haec esse : *that the following were the things which*.

ab eo : *Ariovisto*.

quam : indefinite pronoun ; *any*.

19. redderet : to the *Haedui*.

permitteret ut . . . liceret : *should allow*.

illi : *Sequani*.

20. voluntate eius : *with his (Ariovistus's) consent*.

illis : *Haeduis*.

neve . . . neve : not *neque . . . neque*, because in a clause of purpose ; B. 282. 1. *d* ; H. 316. 5 ; 561. 4.

23. Si . . . fecisset . . . futuram (esse) : direct form : *si . . . feceris . . . erit*.

25. impetraret : sc. *Caesar* ; the direct form of this conditional sentence would be : *Si non impetrabo . . . non neglegam*.

M. Messala . . . consulibus : i. e. B. C. 61 ; see note to page 2, line 9.

26. uti : connect with *defenderet*.

27. provinciam : *as his province* ; predicate accusative ; W. 317 ; B. 177 ; A. 239. 1 ; H. 410. 1.

obtineret : do not translate "obtain."

quod . . . posset : *so far as he could* ; W. 589 ; B. 283. 5 ; A. 320. *d* ; H. 591. 3.

commodo: W. 391; B. 220. 3; A. 253. N; H. 475. 3.

29. se: a repetition of *sece*, line 25, after the parenthetic clauses.

CHAPTER 86

PAGE 26

1. Ius esse, etc.: indirect discourse through the whole chapter.

ut . . . imperarent: substantive clause of result; W. 524. 3; B. 297. 3; A. 332; H. 571. 2.

qui: the antecedent is *ei*, subject of *imperarent*.

2. eis: dative with *imperarent*; W. 330; B. 187. II. *a*; A. 227; H. 426. 1.

3. victis: participle used as noun; dative with *imperare*.

ad: according to.

6. quem ad modum . . . uteretur: indirect question.

suo . . . suo: *its* (the Roman people's) . . . *his* (Ariovistus's).

9. stipendiarios: *stipendium* is a tribute or tax of fixed amount.

10. Magnam . . . injuriam: what is hyperbaton? W. 740; B. 350. II. *a*; A. 386; H. 751. 5.

qui . . . faceret: *by making or since he was making*; W. 586. 4; B. 283. 3. *a*; A. 320. *e*; H. 592.

suo . . . sibi: the first refers to Caesar, the second to Ariovistus.

11. vectigalia: see note on this word, page 13, line 2.

13. iniuria: *wrongfully*; ablative of manner; W. 390; B. 220. 2; A. 248. R; H. 474.

si . . . convenisset: *if they abode by their agreement*, lit. "in that which had been agreed upon."

14. penderent: this is the verb meaning to *pay*, because originally metal used as money was uncoined and therefore had to be weighed.

15. longe . . . afuturum: *would be far from being of any use*.

fraternum: the Latin often uses an adjective where the English would put a genitive.

16. Quod . . . denuntiaret: *as for Caesar's declaring*; a substantive *quod*-clause; W. 549; B. 299. 2; A. 333. *a*; H. 588. II. 3. N.

sibi: sc. *Ariovisto*.

se: sc. *Caesarem*.

17. secum: with Ariovistus.

18. sua: refers to *neminem*, the subject of *contendisse*.

congrederetur: subjunctive for imperative in indirect discourse; W. 599; B. 316; A. 339; H. 642. The subject of this verb, of *vellet*, and of *intellecturum (esse)* is Caesar.

19. quid: adverbial accusative, with *possent*; W. 316; B. 176. 2. *a*; A. 240. *a*; H. 416. 2.

20. inter: *during*.

CHAPTER 37

23. Treveris : a nation living along the Mosel. Their capital is now the city of *Trèves* or *Trier*.

veniebant : the imperfect is the tense for something going on at the same time as something else.

Haedui : sc. *veniebant*.

24. questum : supine of *queror*, expressing the purpose for which they came ; W. 654 ; B. 340 ; A. 302 ; H. 633.

25. datis : *by giving*.

27. pagos centum : *the people of one hundred cantons* ; the district used for the population as at page 8, line 28.

Sueborum : for a description of this nation see Bk. IV, ch. i. The name is often used as a general term for the interior tribes of Germany.

PAGE 27

1. maturandum sibi : sc. *esse* ; *that he must hasten* ; impersonal passive ; W. 233. 3 ; B. 138. IV ; A. 146. *d* ; 230 ; H. 621. 2.

2. veteribus : i. e. already in Gaul.

3. resisti : impersonal passive.

5. magnis itineribus : *by forced marches*, perhaps twenty-five miles a day ; see Introduction, page xlvii.

contendit : it is uncertain where he started from. The council of Gallic tribes described in chaps. 30-33 seems to have met Caesar north of Bibracte, somewhere in the country of the *Lingones*.

CHAPTER 38

6. tridui : genitive of measure ; W. 354 ; B. 203. 2 ; A. 215. *b* ; H. 440. 3.

viam : this is what is called a cognate accusative ; W. 313 ; B. 176. 4. *a* ; A. 238 ; H. 409. Trace Caesar's route on the map opposite page 10.

7. occupandum : gerundive, not gerund ; W. 640 ; B. 339. 2 ; A. 296 ; 300. N ; H. 628 and foot-note.

8. Vesontionem : now *Besançon*.

quod : this relative agrees in gender with the predicate noun *oppidum*, instead of with its antecedent *Vesontionem* ; W. 301 ; B. 250. 3 ; A. 199 ; H. 396. 2.

10. Id : i. e. the occupation of Vesontio by Ariovistus.

ne : after *praecavendum*, a verb of *hindering* ; W. 514 ; B. 295. 3 ; A. 331. *e*. 2 ; H. 566.

12. ad bellum : = *bello*.

usui : dative of "tendency" or service ; W. 342 ; B. 191 ; A. 233 ; H. 425. 3.

15. Dubis : Celtic, the "black river" ; modern French, *Doubs*.

ut : *as if*.

16. spatium : object of *continet*.

17. pedum : genitive of measure, not affected in case by *amplius* ; W. 382 ; B. 217. 3 ; A. 247. c ; H. 471. 4.

DC : *sexcentorum* ; 600 feet at the top of the plateau ; the whole distance is 1,600 feet. DC may be a mistake in copying MDC.

qua : *where*.

intermittit : *is interrupted* ; i. e. it does not make a complete circle.

18. altitudine : ablative of quality ; W. 394 ; B. 224 ; A. 251 ; H. 473. 2.

radices : object of *contingant* ; the subject is *ripae*.

19. Hunc (montem) . . . arcem : two accusatives with one verb ; W. 317 ; B. 177. 1 ; A. 239. 1. a ; H. 410. 1.

Excavations at Besançon have revealed remains of both the Gallic and the Roman *Vesontio*.

CHAPTER 39

25. moratur : sc. *Caesar*, present indicative with *dum*, *while* ; W. 533 ; B. 293. 1 ; A. 276. c ; H. 533. 4.

nostrorum : *of our soldiers*, who asked about the enemy.

26. vocibus : *remarks, talk*.

27. magnitudine : ablative of quality ; so *virtute* and *exercitatione*. The Italians were on an average much smaller than the men of the Teutonic race ; cf. page 82, line 1.

PAGE 28

2. timor : this is the general word for fear ; if it is opposed to *metus* it means fear without sufficient reason, timidity or cowardice, while *metus* means fear of something definite, a well-grounded apprehension.

4. tribunis . . . praefectis reliquisque : for the character and duties of the *tribuni militum* and the *praefecti*, see Introduction, pages xxxix and xl. *Reliquis* no doubt refers to the *aides* or *attachés*, called *contubernales*, attached to Caesar for personal and political reasons, and often worse than useless as officers ; page xli.

5. urbe : *Roma*.

amicitiae causa : a very polite phrase for political considerations.

7. alius alia causa inlata : *one alleging one reason, another another, or on different pretexts*.

quam . . . diceret : *which they said made it necessary* ; *diceret* is singular to correspond with *alius . . . petebat* ; for its mood, see W. 545 ; B. 323 ; A. 341. d. R ; H. 649. I.

8. eius voluntate : *with his (Caesar's) permission* ; W. 390 ; B. 220. 3 ; A. 253. N ; H. 475. 3.

11. vultum fingere : *control their expression, put on a bold face.*

12. abditi : *hiding themselves* ; middle or reflexive meaning of the passive ; W. 442. 3 ; B. 256. 1 ; A. 111. a. N. ; H. 517.

17. in castris : *in the service.*

milites centurionesque : the private soldiers were all professionals ; the centurions were promoted from the ranks ; see Introduction, page xxix.

18. qui equitatu praerant : *praefecti and decuriones* ; see Introduction, pages xxxviii and xl.

20. vereri : this verb expresses awe or respect, such as is felt in the presence of a superior.

22. rem frumentariam : translate as if this were nominative, subject of *posset* ; W. 516 ; B. 374. 5. a ; A. 334. c.

ut : *that . . . not*, after a verb of fearing ; W. 516 ; B. 296. 2 ; A. 331. f. foot-note ; H. 567. 1.

24. castra moveri : translate in the active voice ; *to break camp.*

signa ferri : *to advance.*

iussisset : for the future perfect indicative of direct discourse.

25. dicto : dative ; W. 330 ; B. 187. II. a ; A. 227. N. 2 ; H. 433. 4.

dicto audientes : = *obedient.*

CHAPTER 40

27. omniumque ordinum . . . centurionibus : ordinarily only the *centuriones primorum ordinum* were thus consulted ; see Introduction, page xxx. Apparently the centurions of six legions, 360 in number, were summoned to this council.

29. quod : connect with *putarent* ; *because (as he said) they thought* ; W. 545 ; B. 323 ; A. 341 ; H. 649. I.

PAGE 29

1. quam in partem : *in what direction* ; connect with *ducerentur*, which is subjunctive in indirect question. This question is the subject of *quaerendum aut cogitandum esse* : translate, *that they had a right to ask*, etc.

2. Ariovistum, etc. : indirect discourse as far as *futuram*, page 30, line 20. This whole famous speech is given in direct form in Allen and Greenough's Caesar.

se consule: in his (*Caesar's*) consulship, 59 B. C.; ablative absolute; W. 397; B. 227. 1; A. 255. a; H. 489.

4. **cur . . . indicaret**: *why was any one to suppose?* the direct form would be *inducet, why is any one to suppose?* W. 493; B. 277; 300. 2; A. 338. a; H. 559. 5. N.

5. **quidem**: *at least*.

persuaderi: impersonal passive of a verb taking its object in the dative; W. 331; B. 187. II. b; A. 230; H. 426. 3. The subject is the infinitive clause *cum . . . repudiaturum (esse)*, in which *cum* refers to Ariovistus, *suam* to Caesar.

8. **Quod si**: *but if*; W. 316; B. 185. 2; A. 156. b; 240. b; H. 510. 9.

9. **intulisset**: this stands for the future perfect indicative of direct discourse.

vererentur: this would stand for either *veremini* or *vereamini* of direct discourse; probably it is meant for the latter.

10. **factum**: sc. *esse*; *had been made*.

11. **periculum**: *a trial, a test*.

patrum . . . memoria: ablative of time within which; W. 407; B. 231; A. 256; H. 487. The battles of *Aquae Sextiae* and *Vercellae*, in which the Romans under Marius nearly destroyed the *Cimbri* and *Teutoni* respectively, were in 102 and 101 B. C.; see Introduction, pages ix and lxiii.

13. **meritus**; sc. *esse*; *meritus* is attracted to the case of the subject of *videbatur*; W. 631. 2, 3; B. 328. 2; A. 271. c; II. 611. 2. N. 2.

videbatur: this is the only instance in the Gallic War of the imperfect indicative with *cum*; the subjunctive would be more regular here, but the author apparently wishes to emphasize the reality of the fact asserted; W. 607; B. 314. 3; A. 336. d; H. 643. 4.

14. **factum**: sc. *esse periculum*.

servili tumultu: ablative of time, referring to the *revolt of the slaves* and gladiators, many of whom were Germans, under Spartacus, B. C. 73-71. A *tumultus* meant a war in Italy or on its frontiers; *bellum*, a foreign war.

15. **quos**: the antecedent is *servorum* implied in *servili*; *of the slaves, whom*, etc.

usus ac disciplina: *experience and training*; they had been trained as gladiators by their Roman masters, and had also acquired some knowledge of Roman military methods.

quam: agrees with the nearer of the two antecedents.

16. **quantum haberet**: indirect question; translate in present tense.

17. **boni**: partitive genitive with *quantum*.

18. **inermes**: accusative agreeing with *quos*, and referring to the *con-*
of the insurgents at the beginning of the revolt.

19. *superassent* : sc. *Romani* ; in direct discourse the verb would be *superavimus*.

22. *illorum* : sc. *Germanorum*.

qui tamen : the Helvetii ; and yet they.

23. *esse . . . potuerint* : could not have been.

24. *quos* : any.

adversum proelium : *adversum* is an adjective ; for the fact referred to see page 21, line 28 ; page 22, line 2.

25. *hos . . . posse* : that they might learn, etc.

26. *defatigatis Gallis* : ablative absolute.

27. *sui potestatem* : a chance at him, i. e. to attack him.

28. *desperantes* : sc. *Gallos* ; object of *adortum*.

29. *adortum* : assailing ; agrees with *Ariovistum*.

30. *Cui rationi . . . hac* : transpose the clauses, and translate as if it were *Hac ratione . . . cui* ; W. 303. 3 ; B. 251. 4. a ; A. 200. b ; H. 399. 3.

31. *ipsum* : *Ariovistum* ; notice that the emphasized word stands between *ne* and *quidem*.

PAGE 30

1. *Qui . . . conferrent* : (*Those*) who attributed their fear to their pretended anxiety about the corn-supply, etc.

2. *facere* : its subject is *eos* understood, antecedent of *Qui*.

3. *praescribere* : sc. *officium*, from *de officio* ; translate to dictate (to their commander).

4. *sibi . . . curae* : two datives ; W. 342, 345 ; B. 191. 2. a ; A. 233. a ; H. 433.

5. *subministrare* : were now supplying.

6. *esse* : were beginning to be.

frumenta : crops ; the singular means grain.

7. *Quod . . . dicantur* : as for its being said of them that they, etc. ; W. 549 ; B. 299. 2 ; A. 333. a ; H. 588. 3. N. The verb of this *quod*-clause is in the subjunctive because this is a subordinate clause of indirect discourse depending on *commoveri*.

audientes . . . laturi : why nominative ? W. 631. 1 ; B. 328. 2 ; A. 271. c ; H. 612. 1.

8. *dicantur* : personal construction, where the English prefers the impersonal ; W. 631. 3 ; B. 332. c ; A. 330. a. 1 ; H. 611. 1.

nihil : no way, not at all ; W. 316 ; B. 176. 2. b ; A. 238. b ; H. 416. 2.

9. *scire* : sc. *se*.

quibuscumque : dative with *dicto audiens*, which is practically a compound word. Its antecedent is *cis*, understood with *defuisse*.

pugnatum est: impersonal; *the fight went on*; W. 442. 4; B. 138. IV; A. 146. *d*; H. 302. 6.

9. possent: sc. *hostes*.

10. alteri . . . alteri: *Helvetii . . . Boi et Tulingi*.

11. Nam, etc.: i. e. (They did not run away, but retired in good order) *for, etc.*

12. proelio: ablative of time; W. 406; B. 230. 1; A. 256, 259. *a*; H. 486. 1.

cum: *although*; W. 571; B. 309. 3; A. 326; H. 598.

hora septima: a little after 1 P. M. at this season of the year; see Introduction, page lii, foot-note.

13. aversum hostem: *the back of an enemy*.

Ad multam noctem: *till late at night*; cf. *multo die*, page 16, line 10.

15. pro vallo: *as a barricade*.

e loco superiore: i. e. from the top of their barricade.

16. coiciebant: *hurled* (from above).

17. mataras: Gallic spears.

tragulas: heavy javelins hurled by means of a thong or strap.

subiciebant: *threw from below*.

19. impedimentis castrisque: ablative with *potiti sunt*; W. 387; B. 218. 1; A. 249; H. 477.

20. e filiis: usual equivalent of the partitive genitive used with numerals; *of his sons*.

captus est: singular agreeing with the nearest subject; W. 298; B. 255. 2; A. 205. *d*; H. 392.

22. nocte: time how long is sometimes expressed by the ablative; B. 231. 1; A. 256. *b*; H. 417. 2.

23. in fines Lingonum: the southern part of Champagne, sixty or seventy miles north of Bibracte. The chief town is *Langres*. Napoleon III (*Jules César*) puts the end of their flight at Tonnerre, sixty miles west of Langres.

24. cum: causal.

27. Lingonas: accusative plural of third declension in *-as*, like *Allobrogas*, page 10, line 11. See note there.

ne . . . iuvarent: W. 599; B. 316; A. 339; H. 642.

28. qui si: *if they*, i. e. the Lingones.

iuvissent: direct discourse would be *iuveritis*, future perfect. W. 615, 616; B. 319. B. *a*; A. 337. 1, 3; H. 644. 2.

se (eos) eodem loco . . . habiturum (esse): *that he would treat them in the same way*; direct discourse would be *vos habeo*.

triduo intermisso: *after an interval of three days*.

30. eos: *Helvetios*.

CHAPTER 27

PAGE 19

2. *Qui cum*: *And when they*; W. 304. 2; B. 251. 6; A. 201. *e*; H. 510.

3. *convenissent*: transitive; *had met*.

ad pedes: *at his* (Caesar's) *feet*.

4. *eos*: i. e. *Helvetios*, subject of *expectare* depending on *iussisset*.

5. *essent*: subjunctive because subordinate to *expectare*; W. 620; B. 324.1; A. 342; H. 652.

7. *perfugissent*: subjunctive, because indirectly quoting Caesar's *perfugerant*; W. 605; B. 323; A. 341; H. 649. 1.

Dum . . . *conquiruntur*; *dum*, meaning *while*, regularly takes the present indicative even when referring to past time; W. 533; B. 293. 1; A. 276. *e*; H. 533. 4; 604. 1. Translate as if it were imperfect.

8. *ea*: neuter plural, referring to *obsides*, *arma*, *servos*, regarded as so many *things*; W. 295. 2; B. 235. *B. 2. δ) β*); A. 187. 2. *δ*; H. 395. 2; 398.

9. *pagi*: *pagus* is explained in note to page 8, line 28.

Verbigenus: between the modern Bern and Lucerne.

10. *perterriti*: agrees in case with *milia*, but in gender with *hominum*, of whom the *milia* consisted; W. 294. 2; B. 235. *B. 2. c*); A. 187. *d*; H. 389. 2.

ne: *that or lest* after a verb of fearing; W. 516; B. 296. 2; A. 331. *f*; H. 567. 1.

12. *occultari*: i. e. from Caesar.

13. *ignorari*: i. e. by any one.

existimarent: subjunctive as expressing the supposed reason in the minds of the Helvetians.

prima nocte: *early in the evening*; W. 416; B. 241. 1; A. 193; H. 498. 1.

CHAPTER 28

16. *Quod*: notice how the Latin uses a relative pronoun at the beginning of a sentence where the English uses a personal or demonstrative; see note to *Qui*, line 2.

quorum: the antecedent is *his*.

17. *his*: antecedent of *quorum*, and indirect object of *imperavit*.

uti conquirerent . . . *reducerent*: sc. *Helvetios*; these clauses are direct objects of *imperavit*; W. 512; B. 295. 1; A. 331; H. 565. His command in direct form was *Conquirite* . . . *reducite, si mihi purgati esse vultis*.

sibi: dative of reference; W. 335; B. 188. 1; A. 235; H. 425. 4.

a novissimo agmine: *from the rear*; see Introduction, page xlvii and page 11, line 2, and note.

CHAPTER 24

PAGE 17

1. **animum advertit**: a compound, often written as one word, *animadvertit*; in either case it takes a direct object, in this case *id*.

2. **collem**: probably the hill of Armecy, just south of Montmort. Excavations here in 1886 revealed the remains of an ancient entrenchment, and in 1889 nine trenches were found, filled with ashes, charcoal, and human bones. The distance from Mont Beuvray suits what Caesar says of his distance from Bibracte on the morning of the battle, at the beginning of the last chapter.

sustineret: subjunctive in a relative clause of purpose; W. 586. 1; B. 282. 2; A. 317. 2; H. 590.

3. **in colle medio**: *half-way up the hill*; W. 416; B. 241. 1; A. 193; H. 497. 4.

4. **triplicem aciem**: for explanation see Introduction, page xlii. Each legion was in three lines, and the four legions side by side.

legionum: genitive of definition or material; W. 348; B. 197; A. 214. 4; H. 440. 4.

5. **summo**: *at the top of*; used like *medio*, line 4.

duas legiones: the new legions raised that year, the 11th and 12th (page 7, line 16), which were not yet steady enough to be trusted in battle.

7. **auxilia**: non-Roman troops, light infantry, see Introduction, page xxxviii.

8. **sarcinas**: *packs* or *knap sacks*; see Introduction, page xlvi.

9. **superiore acie**: i. e. the two legions on the hill.

10. **muniri**: see entrenchments on plan opposite page 17.

cum . . . carris: like the Germans, they used to go to war with their families and goods in wagons. Their women encouraged them to fight, and the wagons formed a rude defense for their camps.

12. **confertissima acie**: ablative absolute or, perhaps, ablative of manner.

phalange: on the Gallic manner of fighting see Introduction, page lxvii.

reieto . . . equitatu: cavalry was no match for considerable bodies of infantry, and was not expected to do much of the actual fighting in a pitched battle.

CHAPTER 25

14. **suo**: sc. *equo remoto*; officers often dismounted before battle; cf. Sall. Cat. 59.

omnium ; the officers, not the cavalry.

17. *e loco superiore* : this was a great advantage in throwing their spears and then in charging.

pilis : the *pilum* and the method of using it are described in the Introduction, page xxxv.

18. in *eos* : sc. *hostes* or *Helvetios*.

19. *Gallis* . . . *impedimento* : the Gauls were greatly hindered in fighting ; two datives, one of reference, one of tendency ; W. 342, 345 ; B. 191. 2. a ; A. 233. a ; H. 433.

20. *pluribus* . . . *scutis* . . . *transfixis*, etc. : they stood in so close order that their shields overlapped ; hence the long iron point of a *pilum* could pierce several shields at once.

21. *ferrum* : the iron point.

inflexisset : when is the subjunctive used with *cum* ? W. 536, 542 ; B. 286. 2 ; 288. B ; A. 325, 326 ; H. 600. II, 598.

22. *sinistra* : sc. *manu* ; the shield was carried on the left arm.

23. *multi ut* : transposed in order to emphasize *multi*.

iactato brachio : i. e. in trying to shake the spear point out of the shield.

praeoptarent : subjunctive of result.

24. *nudo* : unprotected.

26. *pedem referre* : to retreat.

27. *mons* : see plan opposite page 17.

eo : thither.

28. *Capto* : gained, reached.

29. *agmen* . . . *claudabant* : brought up the rear.

PAGE 18

1. *novissimis praesidio* : two datives, like *Gallis* . . . *impedimento*, page 17, line 19.

ex itinere : on the march.

2. *ab latere aperto* ; on the exposed (left) flank. This phrase often means the right side in contrast to the left, which the shield protected.

circumvenire : sc. *coeperunt*, from below.

5. *conversa* . . . *intulerunt* : faced about and advanced in two directions ; it is often best to translate a participle by an independent verb ; i. e. the first and second lines facing forward, the third line wheeling to oppose the Boii and Tulingi (*venientes*).

CHAPTER 26

8. *ancipiti* : literally, "facing both ways" ; figuratively, *uncertain*. The latter is meant here.

18

51

ob

w

br

d

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

26

27

28

29

30

31

32

33

34

35

36

37

38

39

40

41

42

43

44

45

46

47

48

49

50

51

52

53

54

55

56

57

58

59

60

61

62

63

64

65

66

67

68

69

70

71

72

73

74

75

the year / see Introduction, 2

197

and, often written as *omne* / seenext subject, in this case *ad* /many, just south of / *ad* /

of in ancient and modern

filled with ashes, otherwise

many sites what *Comitatus* /the battle, at the *legio* /of purpose / *W* / 35/ *B* 241.4 / *ad* /

action, page

by *ad* // *B* 241.4 / *ad* /and, often written as *omne* / seenext subject, in this case *ad* /many, just south of / *ad* /

of in ancient and modern

filled with ashes, otherwise

many sites what *Comitatus* /the battle, at the *legio* /of purpose / *W* / 35/ *B* 241.4 / *ad* /

action, page

by *ad* // *B* 241.4 / *ad* /and, often written as *omne* / seenext subject, in this case *ad* /many, just south of / *ad* /

of in ancient and modern

filled with ashes, otherwise

many sites what *Comitatus* /the battle, at the *legio* /of purpose / *W* / 35/ *B* 241.4 / *ad* /

action, page

by *ad* // *B* 241.4 / *ad* /and, often written as *omne* / seenext subject, in this case *ad* /many, just south of / *ad* /

of in ancient and modern

filled with ashes, otherwise

many sites what *Comitatus* /the battle, at the *legio* /of purpose / *W* / 35/ *B* 241.4 / *ad* /

action, page

by *ad* // *B* 241.4 / *ad* /

cavalry.

as a great advantage in throwing their

of using it are described in the Intro-

tios.

; *the Gauls were greatly hindered in*

rence, one of tendency ; W. 342, 345 ;

ansfixis, etc. : they stood in so close

hence the long iron point of a *pilum*

active used with *cum*? W. 536, 542 ;

600. II, 598.

eld was carried on the left arm.

er to emphasize *multi*.

; to shake the spear point out of the

ult-

ge 17.

brought up the rear.

xi

the front,

18. **Cum**: concessive; W. 571; B. 309. 3; A. 326; H. 598.
 19. **ab eis**: i. e. *Helvetiis*; *sibi*: *Caesari*.
ea: object of *facturos (esse)*.
 20. **Haeduis**: dative with *satisfaciant*; supplied from line 21.
ipsis: i. e. *Haeduis*; dative with *intulerint*.
 22. **Sese . . . esse facturum**: in direct discourse, *faciam*.
 24. **consuerint**: subjunctive of result.
 25. **testem**: again alluding to the victory over Cassius.
 26. **discessit**: sc. *Divico*.

CHAPTER 15

27. **movent**: sc. *Helvetii*; historical present.
 28. **equitatum**: see Introduction, page xxxviii.

PAGE 11

1. **coactum habebat**: means nearly the same as *coëgerat*; B. 337. 6; A. 292. c; H. 431. 3.
qui . . . videant: clause of purpose; plural because the antecedent of *qui* is the collective *equitatum*; W. 301. 2; A. 199. b; H. 397.
 2. **quas . . . faciant**: indirect question; W. 590; B. 300. 1; A. 210, 338; H. 649. II.
Qui: *They*, the horsemen.
cupidius: *too eagerly*.
novissimum agmen: *the rear* of the Helvetian army. See Introduction, page xlvii.
 3. **alieno**: *unfavorable*, lit. "another's"; similarly *suus* may mean "advantageous."
loco: why ablative? W. 402. 2; B. 228. 1. b; A. 258. f. 1; H. 483, 485. 2.
 4. **de nostris**: = *nostrorum*; the ablative with *de* or *ex* is commonly used, instead of a partitive genitive, with numerals; B. 201. 1. a; A. 216. c; H. 444.
 6. **equitibus**: ablative of instrument; W. 386; B. 218. 10; A. 248. c. 1; H. 476.
 8. **agmine**: B. 228. 1. b; A. 258. f. 2; H. 483, 485.
 9. **proelio**: ablative of means; W. 386, 389; B. 218; A. 248. c. 1; H. 476.
nostros: sc. *milites*.
 10. **Satis habebat**: *was content*; lit. "considered it enough."
 11. **rapinis**, etc.: ablative of separation; W. 374; B. 214. 2; A. 243; H. 464.

prohibere: object of *habebat, satis* being predicate; *he considered it enough to prevent*, etc.; W. 625; B. 177. 2; 328. 1; A. 330. B; H. 613.

12. dies: accusative of duration; W. 324; B. 181; A. 256; H. 417.

13. primum: sc. *agmen*; *van* or *vanguard*.

14. quinis aut senis: *five or six each (day)*; distributive numerals; W. 130, 132; B. 78. 1. c; A. 95; H. 162. 3; 163, 164.

milibus: ablative of distance or "degree of difference"; *amplius* does not affect the case of the following noun as other comparatives do; W. 393, 382; B. 223, 217. 3; A. 247. c; 250; H. 471. 4; 479.

CHAPTER 16

15. Haeduos . . . frumentum: two accusatives with a verb of asking; W. 318; B. 178. 1. a; A. 239. c; H. 411.

16. essent . . . polliciti: implied indirect discourse; *which (he said) they had promised*; W. 605; B. 323; A. 341. d; H. 649. I.

publice: *in the name of the state, as a community*.

flagitare: historical infinitive; W. 631. 1; B. 335; A. 275; H. 610. This verb is one of the class known as frequentatives; W. 273. 2; B. 155. 2; A. 167. b; H. 364.

frigora: *cold seasons*; the climate was colder in those days, before the forests were cleared and the marshes drained.

18. frumenta: the plural is used for standing grain, the singular for the threshed grain.

19. ne . . . quidem: always separated by the emphasized word; W. 240. 6; B. 347. 1; A. 151. c; H. 677.

pabuli: *green fodder*; this had been eaten by the cattle of the Helvetians.

20. frumento: ablative with *uti*; W. 387; B. 218. 1; A. 249; H. 477.

flumine: ablative of means; W. 386; B. 218; A. 258. g; H. 476.

21. propterea: connect with the following *quod*; *for the reason that, for this reason . . . because*.

iter . . . averterant: the Helvetians had turned to the N. W. into the valley of the *Liger* (Loire); see map, opposite page 10 of the text.

23. Diem ex die: *day after day*; *diem* is accusative of duration; translate as if it were *Caesarem ducere (they kept putting off) ex die in diem*. *Ducere* is historical infinitive. So is *dicere*.

conferri, comportari, adesse: sc. *frumentum*; they all depend on *dicere*, and form a climax.

25. diutius: *too long*.

intellexit: sc. *Caesar*.

26. *die* : do not translate ; W. 303. 2 ; B. 251. 3 ; A. 200. *a* ; H. 399. I.

metiri : infinitive, subject of the impersonal *oporteret* ; W. 623 ; B. 327. 1 ; A. 270. *b* ; H. 615. Grain was served out regularly twice every month ; see Introduction, page xli.

oporteret : subjunctive in a subordinate clause of indirect discourse.

27. *eorum* : *Haeduum*.

28. *Diviciaco et Lisco* : ablatives in apposition with *principibus*.

magistratui : dative with *praerat* ; W. 332 ; B. 187. III ; A. 228 ; H. 429.

29. *vergo Bretum* : Latinized from the Celtic words *guerg breth*.

30. *annuus* : predicate adjective ; translate as if it were an adverb.

in suos : *over his countrymen*.

PAGE 12

2. *tam necessario tempore* : *in a crisis so pressing*.

3. *propinquis hostibus* : ablative absolute ; W. 397 ; B. 227. 1 ; A. 255. *a* ; H. 489.

sublevetur : this verb and *sit destitutus*, line 5, are in the subjunctive because Caesar the writer is giving the causes alleged by Caesar the speaker on this occasion ; in other words, he is quoting himself as a third person, in indirect discourse ; W. 545 ; B. 286. 1 ; A. 321 ; H. 588. II.

4. *magna ex parte* : *in great measure*.

5. *susceperit* : causal subjunctive.

multo : ablative of degree of difference.

CHAPTER 17

8. *quod* : object of *tacuerat* ; sc. *id*, object of *proponit*.

Esse, etc. : indirect discourse to the end of the chapter. The passage is given in direct form in Allen and Greenough's Caesar in the notes to this chapter.

9. *plurimum valeat* : adverbial accusative ; see note on *plurimum*, page 3, line 19. The same construction is seen in *plus possint*.

There was a sort of feudal system in Gaul ; hence the power of great landowners with many retainers. See Bk. VI, ch. 15.

10. *possint* : this verb, as perhaps also *valeat*, line 9, is in the subjunctive of characteristic.

11. *improba* : *reckless*.

12. *ne . . . conferant* : *from furnishing* ; a substantive clause of purpose ; W. 514 ; B. 294, 295. 3 ; A. 331. *e*. 2 ; H. 568. 2, 8 ; plural because *multitudinem* is a collective noun.

debeant : sc. *conferre*.

praestare : *that it was better*, etc. ; here Liscus is quoting the arguments used to stir up the people against the Romans.

15. superaverint : perfect subjunctive for the future perfect indicative of direct discourse.

16. una : adverb.

reliqua : *the rest of*.

Haeduis : dative with a verb of "taking away" ; W. 337 ; B. 188. 2. *d* ; A. 229 ; H. 427.

sint erepturi : nearly = *eripiant*, but emphasizes the intention more ; W. 576 ; B. 298 ; A. 319. *d* ; H. 595. 1.

17. quaeque : = *et quae*.

18. a se : sc. *Lisco*.

19. Quin etiam : *nay even, moreover*.

quod : *in that* ; W. 549 ; B. 299. 2 ; A. 333 ; H. 588. II. 3.

necessariam : adjective like adverb ; *of necessity*.

20. id : refers to the clause *quod . . . enuntiavit*.

21. tacuisse : intransitive ; in line 8 it is transitive.

CHAPTER 18

23. pluribus praesentibus : *in the presence of a number of persons* ; ablative absolute.

24. iactari : *to be discussed*, "bandied about."

dimittit . . . retinet : the omission of the conjunction (*asyndeton*) is common in Caesar ; W. 253 ; B. 341. 4. *a* ; A. 208. *b* ; 346. *c* ; H. 657. 6.

25. solo : sc. *Lisco* ; *in private*. Cf. *quaerit ex solo* with *ab aliis quaerit*, line 27 ; W. 319 ; A. 239. *c*, N. 1 ; H. 411. 4.

27. vera : predicate adjective.

28. Ipsum : *the very man* ; indirect discourse as far as *desperare*, page 13, line 19. The direct form is given in full in Allen and Greenough's Caesar, in the note on this passage.

summa audacia : (*a man*) *of the greatest boldness* ; W. 394 ; B. 224 ; A. 251 ; H. 473. 2.

29. rerum novarum : *revolutions, political changes* ; very frequent in Gaul in those times ; objective genitive with *cupidum* ; W. 352 ; B. 204. 1 ; A. 218. *a* ; H. 450. 1.

PAGE 13

1. annos : accusative of duration.

portoria : *customs duties*.

2. vectigalia : *revenues in general* ; they were farmed out, i. e. the right to collect them was sold to the highest bidder, who then paid the

amount of his bid into the state treasury and kept the surplus for himself.

pretio: ablative of price; W. 395; B. 225; A. 252; H. 478.

redempta habere: *had farmed*; nearly = *redemisse*; like *coactum habebat*, page 11, line 1.

3. **illo licente**: ablative absolute; *when he bid*.

4. **rem familiarem**: *property*.

auxisse . . . comparasse: the subject is still *Dumnorigem*.

5. **ad largiendum**: gerund with *ad*, expressing purpose; W. 639. 3; B. 338. 3; A. 300; H. 628.

7. **neque** = *et non*.

domi: locative case; W. 403. 2; B. 232. 2; A. 258, *d*; H. 484. 2.

8. **largiter posse**: cf. *plurimum possent*, ch. 3. 7; *plus possint*, ch. 17. 1.

potentiae: material power or personal influence; *potestas* is legal, and *imperium* military authority.

causa: W. 384; B. 219; A. 245. *c*; H. 475. 2.

9. **Biturigibus**: this name appears in the modern *Bourges*, the ancient *Avaricum*.

10. **conlocasse**: *had given in marriage*.

ipsum: *Dumnorigem*; his wife was the daughter of Orgetorix, page 3, line 16.

11. **ex matre**: *on the mother's side*; they were not children of the same father.

nuptum: supine, expressing purpose; W. 654; B. 340. 1. *b*; A. 302; H. 633. 1. See *nubo* and *duco* in the Vocabulary (last meaning under *duco*). A woman "veiled herself" for her husband, a man "led" his wife to his home.

12. **cupere**: *was well disposed toward*.

Helvetiis: why dative? W. 330; B. 187. II. *a*; A. 227; H. 426. 4. N.

13. **odisse**: defective verb, lacking present, imperfect, and future tenses. Perfect serves as present, etc.

suo nomine: cf. same, page 216, line 20; a mercantile phrase; *on his own account*, ablative of cause.

15. **Diviciacus**: he was a Druid (see Introduction, page lxiv), and had been in Rome in 63 B. C., the year of Cicero's consulship and Caesar's praetorship, to get aid for the Haedui against the German king Ariovistus (Cic. De Div. I. xli. 90).

16. **Si quid accidat**: *if anything should happen*; we have the same euphemism in English, meaning "anything unlucky" or "disastrous." In direct discourse *accidat* would be *accidet*.

17. **per**: *by means of, by the help of*.

regni obtinendi: connect with *spem*; W. 640; B. 338. 1. *a*; 339. 1; A. 298; H. 626. This is an objective genitive.

18. imperio: *under the rule*; ablative of time and cause.

19. desperare: this is the last word in the indirect quotation.

20. quod proelium, etc.: *in regard to the defeat of the cavalry which had taken place, etc.*; W. 549; B. 299; A. 333; H. 588. II. 3. N.

23. auxilio Caesari: dative of "tendency" and dative of person affected; W. 342, 345; B. 191. 2. *b*; A. 233. *a*; II. 433.

CHAPTER 19

26. Quibus: translate by a demonstrative pronoun.

27. accederent: = *adderentur*; why subjunctive? W. 536, 542; B. 288. 1. *B*, 286. 2; A. 325, 326; H. 598, 600. II.

quod . . . traduxisset: this and the three following *quod*-clauses are substantive clauses in apposition with *res*; their verbs are in the subjunctive because of their dependence on *accederent*; W. 620; B. 324; A. 342; H. 652.

eos: *Sequanos et Helvetios*.

dandos curasset: *had caused . . . to be given*; cf. *faciendum curat*, page 9, line 10; W. 644. 2; B. 337. 7. *b* 2; A. 294. *d*; H. 622.

29. non modo . . . civitatis: *not only without his own (Caesar's) bidding or that of the (Haeduan) state, etc.*; W. 103. 1; 384; B. 57. 1; 219. 2; A. 71. *b*; 245; H. 143. 1; 475. 3.

30. ipsis: sc. *Caesare et Haeduis*.

magistratu: *Lisco*.

PAGE 14

1. causae: partitive genitive with *satis*.

arbitrabatur: sc. *Caesar*.

2. animadverteret: cf. note on *timeret*, page 10, line 7; subjunctive in a relative clause of characteristic, though it would be subjunctive also because in a dependent clause of indirect discourse depending on *arbitrabatur*; W. 587, 605; B. 283. 1; 314. 1; A. 320, 336. 2; H. 591. 4; 643, 652.

4. rebus: why dative? W. 330; B. 187. II. *a*; A. 227; H. 426. 1.
unum: *one consideration*.

7. cognoverat: *he was acquainted with*; *cognosco* means "I am learning"; *cognovi*, "I have learned," "I know." Notice the omission of conjunctions in this sentence.

ne: *that*, with a verb of fearing; W. 516; B. 296. 2; A. 331. *f*; H. 567. 1.

eius: *Dumnorigis*.

supplicio : *punishment, especially execution.*

8. prius quam : translate as one word.

9. conaretur : why subjunctive ? W. 534 ; B. 291, 292. I. a ; A. 327 ; H. 605 ; imperfect after the historical present *iubet*.

10. cotidianis : *ordinary* ; lit. "every-day."

11. principem : *a leading man.*

12. cui : *in whom* ; dative of reference.

omnium rerum : *about everything.*

eo : = *Diviciaco.*

13. quae . . . sint dicta : indirect question.

15. de eo : i. e. *Dumnorige.*

apud se : i. e. *Caesarem.*

16. ut . . . statuatur . . . iubeatur : substantive clauses of purpose ; W. 511, 512 ; B. 295 ; A. 331 ; H. 565.

eius : i. e. *Diviciaci*, limits *animi*, "feelings" ; *animi* is objective genitive with *offensione*, "wounding."

17. ipse : sc. *Caesar.*

causa cognita : *after hearing his case.*

CHAPTER 20

19. complexus : translate by present active participle.

20. gravior : *too severe* ; agrees with *quid* ; W. 414. 2 ; B. 240. 1 ; A. 93. a ; H. 498.

21. Scire se, etc. : sc. *dixit* ; indirect discourse to *avertentur*, page 15, line 1. This passage is given in direct form in Allen and Greenough's *Caesar*.

nec quemquam : *and that no one.*

ex eo : neuter, *from that fact.*

22. ipse : *Diviciacus* ; *per se*, line 24, *suam, sese*, line 26, *ipse*, line 29, *sua*, line 30, and *se*, page 15, line 1, also refer to *Diviciacus*.

23. gratia : why ablative ? W. 386 ; B. 218 ; A. 248. c. 1 ; H. 476.

domi : among the *Haedui*.

ille : *Dumnorix.*

24. per se : *by his (Diviciacus's) help.*

crevisset : from *cresco* ; connect with *propterea quod* ; the subject is *Dumnorix* understood.

25. opibus ac nervis : *influence and power* ; ablative with *uteretur* ; W. 387 ; B. 218. 1 ; A. 249 ; H. 477.

26. uteretur : subordinate verb in indirect discourse.

28. Quod si : *But if, Now if.*

quid : euphemistic like *incommodi*, page 9, line 21 ; and *si quid accidat*, page 13, line 16.

ei: sc. *Dumnorigi*.

accidisset: represents the future perfect indicative of direct discourse.

30. non . . . factum (*esse*): *that it had not been done*; object of *existimaturum*.

voluntate: causal ablative.

PAGE 15

1. futurum (*esse*) uti, etc.: *the result would be that*, etc., *it would come to pass that*, etc.; the usual periphrasis for the future passive infinitive; W. 636; B. 270. 3. *a*; page 57, foot-note 3; A. 147. *c.* 3; 288. *f*; H. 619. 2; 571. 1.

3. peteret: W. 536; B. 288. 1. B; A. 325; H. 600.

4. consolatus: remember that this verb is deponent; translate as if it were a present participle.

5. faciat: subjunctive in a substantive clause of purpose, without *ut*, the object or complement of *rogat*; W. 511, 512; B. 295. 8; A. 331. *f*. R; H. 565.

tanti: genitive of price; W. 361; B. 203. 3; A. 252. *a*; H. 448. 1.

eius: i. e. *Diviciaci*.

apud se: i. e. *Caesarem*.

6. rei publicae: objective genitive with *injuriam*.

voluntati, etc.: *in deference to his wish he (Caesar) pardons*, etc., *lit.* "makes a present to his wish," etc.

8, 9. reprehendat, intellegat, queratur: subjunctives of indirect question; W. 590; B. 300. 1; A. 210. 2; 338; H. 649. II.

10. ut . . . vitet: an object clause of purpose, complementary to *monet*; W. 511, 512; B. 295. 1; A. 331; H. 565.

11. praeterita: neuter plural, = *res praeteritas*.

Diviciaco: *for the sake of Diviciacus*.

12. agat . . . loquatur: subjunctives of indirect question.

CHAPTER 21

14. hostes: the Helvetians were in the valley of the Liger (Loire), S. E. of Bibracte.

16. qualis esset: indirect question.

in circuitu: *if one went around*, i. e. ascended from the other side; or *at different points all around*.

17. cognoscerent: subjunctive in relative clause of purpose.

misit: sc. *exploratores* or the like.

18. esse: sc. *ascensum*.

De tertia vigilia: see Introduction, page lii, and note on same words, page 8, line 22.

T. Labienum : see page 7, line 14, and note.

legatum pro praetore : *lieutenant with prelorian power* ; see Introduction, page xi ; Labienus was really second in command and had this special title, i. e. he had an independent *imperium* of his own ; the other lieutenants were probably simply *legati* whose authority was not independent, but only delegated to them by the commander-in-chief. A *propraetor* would rank above them in that case, and also above the *quaestor*.

19. cum . . . eis ducibus : *with those men as guides*, referring to the scouts of the preceding day.

21. consilii : partitive genitive.

de quarta vigilia : not far from 2 A. M., for sunrise is about 4 A. M. in June in that latitude.

22. itinere : W. 386 ; B. 218. 9 ; A. 258. 9 ; H. 476.

24. rei militaris : *warfare* ; objective genitive after an adjective of skill ; W. 352 ; B. 204. 1 ; A. 218. a ; H. 451. 1.

25. L. Sullae . . . M. Crassi : Sulla had carried on the war against Mithradates, king of Pontus, 88–84 B. C., and Crassus the war against Spartacus and his gladiators in 71 B. C.

in : sc. *exercitu*.

CHAPTER 22

27. summus : *the top of*, etc. ; W. 416 ; B. 241. 1 ; A. 193 ; H. 498. 1.

teneretur : why subjunctive ? W. 536, 542 ; B. 288. 1. B ; 286. 2 ; A. 323, 326 ; H. 598, 600. II.

28. ipse : Caesar.

29. passibus : ablative of distance or degree of difference ; W. 393 ; B. 223 ; A. 250 ; H. 479. 3.

PAGE 16

1. cognitus esset : connect with *cum*, page 15, line 27.

2. equo admisso : (*riding*) *at full speed*.

3. voluerit : subjunctive in subordinate clause of indirect discourse, depending on *dicit*.

4. insignibus : here a noun ; it refers to devices on shields, crests of helmets, etc., as well as to standards.

6. ducit . . . instruit : historical presents ; W. 447 (1) ; B. 259. 3 ; A. 276. d ; H. 532. 3.

7. ne . . . committeret : substantive clause, subject of *erat . . . praecipitum* ; W. 511, 512 ; B. 295. 1 ; A. 331. h ; H. 564. II.

ipsius : *Caesaris*.

8. *visae essent* : indirect discourse for the future perfect indicative ; Caesar's order in direct form was *ne . . . committas, nisi . . . visae erunt*.

9. *monte occupato* : ablative absolute.

10. *proelio* : ablative of separation ; W. 376 ; B. 214. 2 ; A. 243. 6 ; H. 461.

Multo denique die : *not till late in the day*.

13. *pro viso* : *viso* is used substantively ; *as (a thing) seen, i. e. as if he had seen it*.

14. *quo . . . intervallo* : five or six miles, as appears from page 11, line 14. Why ablative ? W. 390 ; B. 220. 1 ; A. 248 ; H. 473. 3.

consuerat : sc. *sequi*.

15. *milia* : accusative of extent of space.

CHAPTER 23

17. *diei* : W. 348, 720 ; B. 201. 3. *a* ; A. 214. *g* ; H. 446. 5.

18. *cum* : *before, or within which, i. e. (before the time) when*.

metiri : sc. *Caesarem* as subject ; see note on page 11, line 26.

oporteret : subjunctive in a clause of characteristic.

19. *Bibracte* : identified with Mont Beuvray, twelve miles west of Autun ; for the declension see B. 39. 2 ; A. 57. *d* ; H. 103. 2.

20. *milibus passuum xviii* : see note on *milia passuum*, page 2, line 26 ; *milibus* here is ablative of distance or degree of difference with *aberat*, its case not being affected by *amplius*.

21. *rei* : dative ; W. 332 ; B. 187. III ; A. 228 ; H. 426. 4. N.

prospiciendum : sc. *esse* : impersonal passive.

22. *avertit* : toward the north.

Bibracte : accusative, limit of motion ; W. 325. 2 ; B. 182 ; A. 258. 6 ; H. 418.

23. *fugitivos* : *runaway slaves* ; ordinary deserters are *transfugae*.

decurionis : leader of a *decuria* of cavalry ; see Introduction, page xxxviii.

25. *existimarent, confiderent* (line 28) ; subjunctive because the reasons are not known to Caesar, but only conjectured ; W. 545 ; B. 286. 1 ; A. 321 ; H. 588. II.

eo magis : *all the more* ; *eo* is causal, and is explained by the clause *quod . . . commisissent*.

26. *superioribus . . . occupatis* : concessive ablative absolute ; *though they had taken possession, etc.* ; W. 397, 399 ; B. 227. 2. *c* ; A. 255. *d*. 3 ; H. 489. 1.

27. *commisissent* : subjunctive because subordinate to *existimarent* ; W. 620 ; B. 324 ; A. 342 ; H. 652.

29. *itinere converso* : *reversing the direction of their march*.

a *novissimo agmine*: from the rear; see Introduction, page xlvii and page 11, line 2, and note.

CHAPTER 24

PAGE 17

1. *animum advertit*: a compound, often written as one word, *animadvertit*; in either case it takes a direct object, in this case *id*.

2. *collem*: probably the hill of Armecy, just south of Montmort. Excavations here in 1886 revealed the remains of an ancient entrenchment, and in 1889 nine trenches were found, filled with ashes, charcoal, and human bones. The distance from Mont Beuvray suits what Caesar says of his distance from Bibracte on the morning of the battle, at the beginning of the last chapter.

sustineret: subjunctive in a relative clause of purpose; W. 586. 1; B. 282. 2; A. 317. 2; H. 590.

3. in *colle medio*: *half-way up the hill*; W. 416; B. 241. 1; A. 193; H. 497. 4.

4. *triplicem aciem*: for explanation see Introduction, page xlii. Each legion was in three lines, and the four legions side by side.

legionum: genitive of definition or material; W. 348; B. 197; A. 214. e; H. 440. 4.

5. *summo*: at the top of; used like *medio*, line 4.

duas legiones: the new legions raised that year, the 11th and 12th (page 7, line 16), which were not yet steady enough to be trusted in battle.

7. *auxilia*: non-Roman troops, light infantry, see Introduction, page xxxviii.

8. *sarcinas*: *packs or knapsacks*; see Introduction, page xli.

9. *superiore acie*: i. e. the two legions on the hill.

10. *muniri*: see entrenchments on plan opposite page 17.

cum . . . carris: like the Germans, they used to go to war with their families and goods in wagons. Their women encouraged them to fight, and the wagons formed a rude defense for their camps.

12. *confertissima acie*: ablative absolute or, perhaps, ablative of manner.

phalange: on the Gallic manner of fighting see Introduction, page lxvii.

reieto . . . equitatu: cavalry was no match for considerable bodies of infantry, and was not expected to do much of the actual fighting in a pitched battle.

CHAPTER 25

14. *suo*: sc. *equo remoto*; officers often dismounted before battle; cf. Sall. Cat. 59.

omnium ; the officers, not the cavalry.

17. *e loco superiore* : this was a great advantage in throwing their spears and then in charging.

pilis : the *pilum* and the method of using it are described in the Introduction, page xxxv.

18. *in eos* : sc. *hostes* or *Helvetios*.

19. *Gallis . . . impedimento* : the Gauls were greatly hindered in fighting ; two datives, one of reference, one of tendency ; W. 342, 345 ; B. 191. 2. *a* ; A. 233. *a* ; H. 433.

20. *pluribus . . . scutis . . . transfixis*, etc. : they stood in so close order that their shields overlapped ; hence the long iron point of a *pilum* could pierce several shields at once.

21. *ferrum* : the iron point.

inflexisset : when is the subjunctive used with *cum* ? W. 536, 542 ; B. 286. 2 ; 288. *B* ; A. 325, 326 ; H. 600. II, 598.

22. *sinistra* : sc. *manu* ; the shield was carried on the left arm.

23. *multi ut* : transposed in order to emphasize *multi*.

iactato brachio : i. e. in trying to shake the spear point out of the shield.

praeoptarent : subjunctive of result.

24. *nudo* : unprotected.

26. *pedem referre* : to retreat.

27. *mons* : see plan opposite page 17.

eo : thither.

28. *Capto* : gained, reached.

29. *agmen . . . claudebant* : brought up the rear.

PAGE 18

1. *novissimis praesidio* : two datives, like *Gallis . . . impedimento*, page 17, line 19.

ex itinere : on the march.

2. *ab latere aperto* ; on the exposed (left) flank. This phrase often means the right side in contrast to the left, which the shield protected.

circumvenire : sc. *coeperunt*, from below.

5. *conversa . . . intulerunt* : faced about and advanced in two directions ; it is often best to translate a participle by an independent verb ; i. e. the first and second lines facing forward, the third line wheeling to oppose the Boii and Tulingi (*venientes*).

CHAPTER 26

8. *ancipiti* : literally, "facing both ways" ; figuratively, *uncertain*. The latter is meant here.

27. *commodissimum esse*: predicate, of which the subject is *impone-re*, line 29.

omnibus equis . . . detractis: ablative absolute.

28. *Gallis equitibus*: dative with *detrakere*; W. 337; B. 188. 2. *d*; A. 229; H. 427.

eo: = *in eos (equos)*.

PAGE 32

1. *si quid . . . esset*: if there should be any need of action. Future condition in indirect discourse; secondary tense sequence, after *statuit*.

quid: why accusative? W. 316; B. 176. 3; A. 240. *a*; H. 416. 2.

facto: ablative with *opus*; W. 389; B. 218. 2. *c*; A. 243. *e*; H. 477. III.

2. *Quod cum fieret*: this is the usual order of words in a *cum*-clause containing a relative pronoun; while this was going on.

non inridicule: = *ridicule*, just as "not bad" means "decidedly good"; this form of speech is called *litotes*; W. 740; B. 375. 1; A. 209. *c*; H. 752. 8.

3. *ex militibus*: equivalent in sense to the partitive genitive; B. 201. 2; A. 216. *c*; H. 444.

4. *pollicitum*: agrees with *Caesarem*, understood, subject of *rescribere*; that Caesar, having promised, or who had promised.

5. *ad equum rescribere*: the wit lies in the double meaning of this phrase, *was enrolling as horsemen* and *was enrolling as knights*, for the "knights" were a kind of lesser nobility at Rome.

CHAPTER 43

6. *tumulus*: perhaps to be identified with the *tertre de Plettig*, a gently sloping hill, which rises about 180 feet above the plain, on the west bank of the Fecht, between Ostheim and Gemar.

terrenus: i. e. not rocky, hence smooth and round.

10. *equis*: on horseback, lit. by means of horses.

passibus cc: *ducentis*; at the distance of 200 paces; i. e. 1,000 feet; *passus* = 2 *gradus* = 5 feet; ablative of degree of difference; W. 393; B. 223; A. 250, 257. *b*; H. 417. 3; 479.

12. *ex equis*: see note on *ex vinculis*, page 3, line 26.

se: plural, Ariovistus and Caesar.

14. *ventum est*: passive impersonal; translate, *they came*; W. 233. 3; B. 138. IV; A. 146. *d*; H. 302. 6.

initio: ablative of time.

15. *quod . . . appellatus esset*: subjunctive in informal indirect discourse, i. e. Caesar is quoting himself like a third person; the *quod*-clauses are substantive, in apposition with *beneficia*.

spears and the ...
 pils in ... 201. e; H.
 duction, ...

is ...
 is ...
 ... on *iussisset*.
 B. 191. ...; W. 620; B.

...
 ... quoting Caesar's

... regularly takes the
 ... 533; B. 293. I;
 ... perfect.
 ... regarded as
 ... 2. 6; H. 395. 2;

... der with *homi*-
 ... 2. c); A. 187.
 ...; A. 331. f;

... in the
 ...; H.

... ve;

... it.
 ... causes are
 ... 565. His
 ... *purgati esse*

...; H. 425. 4.

pugnatum est : impersonal ; *the fight went on* ; W. 442. 4 ; B. 138. IV ; A. 146. *d* ; H. 302. 6.

9. possent : sc. *hostes*.

10. alteri . . . alteri : *Helvetii . . . Boi et Tulingi*.

11. Nam, etc. : i. e. (They did not run away, but retired in good order) *for, etc.*

12. proelio : ablative of time ; W. 406 ; B. 230. 1 ; A. 256, 259. *a* ; H. 486. 1.

cum : *although* ; W. 571 ; B. 309. 3 ; A. 326 ; H. 598.

hora septima : a little after 1 P. M. at this season of the year ; see Introduction, page lii, foot-note.

13. aversum hostem : *the back of an enemy*.

Ad multam noctem : *till late at night* ; cf. *multo die*, page 16, line 10.

15. pro vallo : *as a barricade*.

e loco superiore : i. e. from the top of their barricade.

16. coiciebant : *hurled* (from above).

17. mataras : Gallic spears.

tragulas : heavy javelins hurled by means of a thong or strap.

subiciebant : *threw from below*.

19. impedimentis castrisque : ablative with *potiti sunt* ; W. 387 ; B. 218. 1 ; A. 249 ; H. 477.

20. e filiis : usual equivalent of the partitive genitive used with numerals ; *of his sons*.

captus est : singular agreeing with the nearest subject ; W. 298 ; B. 255. 2 ; A. 205. *d* ; H. 392.

22. nocte : time how long is sometimes expressed by the ablative ; B. 231. 1 ; A. 256. *b* ; H. 417. 2.

23. in fines Lingonum : the southern part of Champagne, sixty or seventy miles north of Bibracte. The chief town is *Langres*. Napoleon III (*Jules César*) puts the end of their flight at Tonnerre, sixty miles west of *Langres*.

24. cum : causal.

27. Lingonas : accusative plural of third declension in *-as*, like *Allobrogas*, page 10, line 11. See note there.

ne . . . iuvarent : W. 599 ; B. 316 ; A. 339 ; H. 642.

28. qui si : *if they*, i. e. the Lingones.

luissent : direct discourse would be *iuveritis*, future perfect. W. 615, 616 ; B. 319. B. *a* ; A. 337. 1, 3 ; H. 644. 2.

se (eos) eodem loco . . . habiturum (esse) : *that he would treat them in the same way* ; direct discourse would be *vos habeo*.

triduo intermisso : *after an interval of three days*.

30. eos : *Helvetios*.

CHAPTER 27

PAGE 19

2. *Qui cum*: *And when they*; W. 304. 2; B. 251. 6; A. 201. *c*; H. 510.

3. *convenissent*: transitive; *had met*.

ad pedes: *at his* (Caesar's) *feet*.

4. *eos*: i. e. *Helvetios*, subject of *expectare* depending on *iussisset*.

5. *essent*: subjunctive because subordinate to *expectare*; W. 620; B. 324.1; A. 342; H. 652.

7. *perfugissent*: subjunctive, because indirectly quoting Caesar's *perfugerant*; W. 605; B. 323; A. 341; H. 649. I.

Dum . . . *conquiruntur*; *dum*, meaning *while*, regularly takes the present indicative even when referring to past time; W. 533; B. 293. I; A. 276. *c*; H. 533. 4; 604. I. Translate as if it were imperfect.

8. *ea*: neuter plural, referring to *obsides*, *arma*, *servos*, regarded as so many *things*; W. 295. 2; B. 235. B. 2. *b*) *β*); A. 187. 2. *b*; H. 395. 2; 398.

9. *pagi*: *pagus* is explained in note to page 8, line 28.

Verbigenus: between the modern Bern and Lucerne.

10. *perterriti*: agrees in case with *milia*, but in gender with *hominum*, of whom the *milia* consisted; W. 294. 2; B. 235. B. 2. *c*); A. 187. *d*; H. 389. 2.

ne: *that or lest* after a verb of fearing; W. 516; B. 296. 2; A. 331. *f*; H. 567. I.

12. *occultari*: i. e. from Caesar.

13. *ignorari*: i. e. by any one.

existimarent: subjunctive as expressing the supposed reason in the minds of the Helvetians.

prima nocte: *early in the evening*; W. 416; B. 241. I; A. 193; H. 498. I.

CHAPTER 28

16. *Quod*: notice how the Latin uses a relative pronoun at the beginning of a sentence where the English uses a personal or demonstrative; see note to *Qui*, line 2.

quorum: the antecedent is *his*.

17. *his*: antecedent of *quorum*, and indirect object of *imperavit*.

uti conquirerent . . . *reducerent*: sc. *Helvetios*; these clauses are direct objects of *imperavit*; W. 512; B. 295. I; A. 331; H. 565. His command in direct form was *Conquirite* . . . *reducite, si mihi purgati esse vultis*.

sibi: dative of reference; W. 335; B. 188. I; A. 235; H. 425. 4.

CHAPTER 46

7. *geruntur*: present tense with *dum*; W. 533, 447; B. 293; A. 276. *c*; H. 533. 4.

8. *tumulum*: accusative with *propius*, as if the latter were a preposition; B. 141. 3; A. 261. *a*; H. 420. 5.

11. *ne quod omnino telum*: *that no weapon at all*.

12. *periculo legionis*: *danger to the legion*; the genitive is objective.

13. *committendum* (*esse*), etc.: *that occasion should be given for saying*; the clause *ut . . . posset* is the subject of the infinitive *committendum* (*esse*).

15. *per fidem*: *through (misplaced) confidence*, or else *per* = *in violation of, contrary to*, as in *per-fidia*, *per-iurium*.

17. *usus*: translate simply *with*; connect with *arrogantia*.

Gallia: ablative of separation; connect with *interdixisset*.

Romanis: why dative? W. 332; B. 187. III; A. 225. *d. N.* 1; H. 426. 7; 464. 3.

interdixisset: subjunctive in indirect question, *qua* being interrogative.

18. *ut*: interrogative; *how*; translate it before *impetum*.

CHAPTER 47

21. *Biduo*: ablative of degree of difference with *post*; W. 393; B. 223; A. 250; H. 479. 3.

22. *Velle*: indirect discourse as far as *mitteret*, line 25, depending on the idea of "saying" implied in *legatos misit*.

coeptae: passive, because its complementary infinitive *agi* is passive; B. 133. 1; A. 143. *a*; H. 299. 1.

23. *uti*: (*asking*) *that*.

24. *constitueret*: subjunctive in a substantive clause after a verb of desiring implied; W. 515; B. 296. 1; A. 331. *b*; H. 565.

minus = *non*, as often with *si*.

suis . . . *se*: the first refers to Caesar, the second to Ariovistus.

26. *visa non est*: *did not appear (reasonable)*.

eo magis: *all the more (for this)*; *eo* is causal.

27. *diei*; why genitive? W. 348, 720; B. 201. 3. *a*; A. 223. *e. N.* 2; H. 446. 5.

28. *quin* . . . *coicerent*: *from throwing*; a result clause; W. 577; B. 284. 3; A. 319. *d*; H. 595. 2.

Legatum: *as an envoy*; in line 25 *legatis* means *lieutenants*.

PAGE 36

2. **C. Valerium Procillum**: the father of this man having received the honor of Roman citizenship from Valerius Flaccus, governor of the Province of Gaul in B. C. 83, took the *praenomen* (*Gaius*) and *nomen* (*Valerius*) of his patron, retaining his own Gallic name as a *cognomen*. The son's name is similarly composed.

3. **humanitate**: *culture, education*.

4. **civitate**: *with citizenship*.

6. **multa . . . utebatur**: *spoke readily*; *multa* agrees with *qua*, ablative with *utebatur*.

longinqua consuetudine: *by long practice*.

7. **in eo**: *in his* (Procillus's) *case*.

esset: subjunctive, because the reason is not stated as a fact, though it is true, but as the thought in the mind of the person who decided to send the envoy. It makes no difference that the author is writing about his own doings; he speaks of himself always in the third person. W. 605; B. 323; A. 321. 2; N. 2; H. 588. II.

8. **hospitio**: this relation was sacred, and Metius would naturally be protected by it.

12. **Quid**: *why?*; adverbial.

venirent: a question in indirect discourse; the direct form would be *venitis?*

an: introduces the second member of an alternative question; the first member, as here, is often omitted; W. 281; B. 162. 4. *a*; A. 211. *b*; II. 380. 3.

13. **conantes**: agrees with *eos* understood, the object of *prohibuit* and *coniecit*.

This high-handed act was done for effect on the minds of Ariovistus's soldiers.

CHAPTER 48

15. **milibus**: distance considered as measure of difference is in the ablative. It may be regarded as extent of space, and be expressed by the recursive.

16. **sub monte**: i. e. at the foot of the Vosges.

17. **diei**: as on page 35, line 27. We say the "eve" or the "morrow" of a day.

praeter castra Caesaris: this flank movement would not have been safe if Ariovistus had not been moving along high ground on the slopes of the Vosges west of Caesar's camp.

18. **castra**: see plan opposite page 38 of the text.

19. *uti . . . intercluderet*: purpose clause in apposition with *consilio*; W. 518; A. 317. *a*; H. 568. 3.

frumento: ablative of separation.

The object of cutting off Caesar's supplies was to force him to retreat.

20. *supportaretur*: subjunctive by attraction to the mood of *intercluderet*, to which it is subordinate; W. 620; B. 324. 1; A. 342; H. 652.

22. *vellet*: imperfect subjunctive, because depending on *deesset*. Standing merely as a conditional sentence, the form would be *si . . . volet . . . deerit*.

24. *castris*: *in the camp*; the preposition *in* may be omitted when the idea of means is prominent in an ablative of place; W. 401, 402; B. 228. 1; A. 258. *f*. 1; H. 485.

26. *hoc*: referring, as is frequently the case, to what follows.

se . . . exercuerant: *were trained*; the Latin reflexive is often best translated by the English passive, or the Latin passive by the English reflexive.

27. *numero*: ablative of specification, defining *totidem*; W. 396; B. 226; A. 253; H. 480.

28. *singuli singulos*: *taking a man apiece*; W. 130; B. 81. 4. *a*); A. 95. *a*; H. 164. 1.

30. *versabantur*: *associated*.

PAGE 37

1. *si qui* = *si quis*.

2. *equo*: ablative of separation; W. 374; B. 214. 2; A. 243. *b*; H. 461.

si quo erat . . . prodeundum: *if there was occasion to advance anywhere*.

4. *sublevati*: *supporting themselves*; W. 442. 3; B. 256. 1; A. 111. *a*; H. 517.

CHAPTER 49

6. *eum* and *se*: both refer to Ariovistus; *eum* is the subject and *se* the object of *tenere*.

7. *ultra*: i. e. toward Vesontio; Caesar fortifies a second camp south of that of Ariovistus, in order to keep open the line of communication with his base of supplies. This second was smaller than the first; see lines 17-19.

9. *castris*: dative with *idoneus*, an adjective of fitness; W. 333; B. 192. 2; A. 234. *a*; H. 434.

acie triplici: see Introduction, pages xlii and xlvii.

11. *castra munire*: for a description of the plan and fortification of a Roman camp, see Introduction, pages xlviii-lii.

13. *expedita*: translate as if it were *expeditorum*, agreeing with *hominum* understood. Infantry only is meant.

14. *quae copiae*: *copiae* is virtually a repeated antecedent, as it means the infantry and cavalry already specified; W. 303. 2; B. 251. 4. *δ*); A. 200. *α*; H. 399. 1.

15. *Nihilo*: ablative of degree of difference with *setius*.

CHAPTER 50

20. *instituto suo*: according to his usual practice. What kind of an ablative? W. 391; B. 220. 3; A. 253. N; H. 475. 3.

25. *quae . . . oppugnaret*: relative clause of purpose.

PAGE 38

5. *quod . . . esset*: that (as they told him) it was customary; *esset* subjunctive, representing the cause, not as a fact, but as the statement of the informants.

ut . . . *declararent*: substantive clause explaining *consuetudo*.

6. *matres familiae*, etc.: a similar statement is found in Tacitus, *Germania*, 8.

sortibus: it was characteristic of the Germans to use lots or divining tablets in order to predict the future.

7. *utrum . . . necne*: interrogative particles introducing a double or alternative question; W. 594; B. 162. 4; A. 211; H. 650. 1.

ex usu: advantageous.

8. *fas*: the will of God, fated, right.

9. *novam lunam*: compare on this point Tacitus, *Germania*, 11, and the account of the Spartans' delay before the battle of Marathon. The new moon in question here occurred on September 18th.

CHAPTER 51

10. *praesidio . . . castris*: two datives; W. 342, 345; B. 191. 2; A. 233. *α*; H. 433.

11. *alarios*: auxiliaries, light-armed troops, thus named because in battle they were usually stationed on the wings (*alae*).

12. *pro*: distinguish the meaning here and in *pro . . . numero*, lines 13, 14.

14. *ad speciem*: to make a show (of strength), for effect; making the number of legionaries appear larger than it was.

15. *acie*: as to the breadth of the front of a legion in triple line of battle, see Introduction, page xliii. Here six legions were arrayed. See plan opposite page 38 of the text. Notice that one cohort was probably detached from each legion to guard the camp.

17. *generatim*: by tribes—each nation by itself; see map, frontispiece, for the location of these nations in Germany.

paribus intervallis: ablative of manner or attendant circumstance; W. 390; B. 221; A. 248; H. 473. 3.

20. *raedis*: four-wheeled vehicles, with leather coverings.

carris: two-wheeled carts.

21. *Eo*: there or therein—i. e. in the wagons and carts.

23. *se*: i. e. the women; the pronoun refers not to the subject of *traherent*, but to the subject of *implorabant*.

CHAPTER 52

24. *singulos*, etc.: i. e. a lieutenant (*legatus*) over each of five legions and the *quaestor* over the sixth. The object of this arrangement was to develop a spirit of competition.

26. *a*: on.

eam partem: the left wing of the enemy, opposite his own right wing.

28. *ita*: connect with *acriter*; *itaque* (line 29) = *et ita*, with *repente*, etc.

PAGE 39

1. *spatium*: connect with the gerund *coiciendi*, the object of which is *pila*.

3. *phalange*: cf. page 17, line 12, and see Introduction, page lxvii; notice the Greek accusative of this word in line 5.

5. *insilirent* . . . *revellerent* . . . *vulnerarent*: subjunctives of characteristic; W. 587; B. 283. 2; A. 320. *a*; H. 591. 1.

6. *desuper*: ordinarily the Roman soldier pressed close to his enemy and thrust at him under the edge of his shield.

7. *a sinistro*: on the German left.

10. *P. Crassus*: a son of M. Crassus the triumvir; see Introduction, page xiii; cf. Bk. III, ch. 20 *sqq.*, where Caesar entrusts to him an important command.

adolescens: perhaps he is called "young" to distinguish him from his father, the triumvir; but the same word is applied to several other persons in the Commentaries, where no such purpose is evident.

11. *expeditior*: freer.

CHAPTER 53

16. *Rhenum*: by fleeing down the Ill they could reach the Rhine near Rheinau, some fifty miles from the battle-field. The numeral V, "five," in the text is probably an error. Some authorities give the number as "fifty"; e. g. Plutarch says "four hundred furlongs."

17. *viribus*: causal ablative with *confisi*; W. 385; B. 219. 1; A. 254. 6; H. 476. 3.

tranare contenderunt: *by great effort swam across*.

18. *inventis* . . . *reppererunt*: *invenire* is to come upon, to find without seeking; *reperire* is to find by seeking.

20. *ea*: *in it*; really an instrumental ablative.

profugit: his death is mentioned in Bk. V, ch. 29, as having occurred previous to the writing of that book.

reliquos omnes: Plutarch says 80,000 were slain. We are tempted to think this an exaggeration.

22. *Duae* . . . *uxores*: a German ordinarily had but one wife; see Tacitus, *Germania*, 18.

Sueba: there is a description of this nation in Bk. IV, ch. 1-3.

natione: ablative of specification.

23. *duxerat* . . . *duxerat*: *he had brought* . . . *he had married*.

25. *altera* . . . *altera*: appositives to *duae*; W. 292. 1; B. 253. 1; A. 184. a; H. 393. 4.

27. *Procillus*: see ch. 47.

28. *trinis*: *three sets of*, or simply *three*, the distributive numeral being used because *catenae* is usually found in the plural; W. 130; B. 81. 4. 6; A. 95. d; H. 164. 3.

in . . . *Caesarem* . . . *incidit*: *fell in with (encountered) Caesar*.

29. *hostes*: object of *insequentem*.

quidem: this word is "post-positive," i. e. it never begins a sentence; W. 240. 6; B. 347. 1; A. 345. 6; H. 677.

PAGE 40

2. *honestissimum*: never translate *honestus* "honest."

3. *hospitem*: the relation of guest and host was a sacred one among the ancients, permanent in its character, often hereditary, a private international relation even in the absence of public ones.

4. *eius*: sc. *Procilli*.

5. *quicquam*: adverbial accusative.

6. *ter*: see note on *sortibus*, page 38, line 6. Cf. Tacitus, *Germania*, 10, and our proverbial "three guesses."

consultum (esse): impersonal.

7. *necaretur* . . . *reservaretur*: indirect discourse for the direct deliberative questions, *necetur* . . . *reservetur*?

8. *sortium beneficio*: *thanks to the lots*.

9. *M. Metius*: see page 36, line 8.

eum: *Caesarem*.

CHAPTER 54

11. *Suebi* . . . *venerant* : see statement about the *Suebi* in ch. 37.

13. *Ubii* : living near the site of Cologne ; enemies of the *Suebi*.

Rhenum : accusative with *proximi* ; B. 141. 3 ; A. 261. *a* ; 234. *e* ; H. 435. 2 ; cf. *propius tumultum*, page 35, line 8.

15. *una aestate* : the defeat of the Helvetii probably occurred late in June or early in July ; that of Ariovistus about September 10th or 15th.

16. *hiberna* : see Introduction, page lii.

17. *in* : *among*.

18. *citeriorem* : = *Cisalpinam*.

ad conventus agendos : *to hold the assizes*. As governor of Cisalpine Gaul Caesar had to visit its cities and administer justice. Moreover, in that country he was nearer Rome and able to keep a closer watch on political events there.

BOOK TWO—B. C. 57

SUBJUGATION OF THE BELGIC GAULS. Learning that the Belgae, excepting the Remi, were forming a confederation against the Romans, Caesar takes the field and fortifies a camp on the Axona (Aisne) River, where he soon afterward inflicts a crushing defeat upon the allied Belgae. This is followed by the submission of the city of Noviodunum and the nations of the Bellovaci and Ambiani (ch. 1-15). When advancing against the Nervii, Caesar is suddenly attacked by them and their allies, and barely escapes defeat. After a desperate struggle the Nervii are beaten and almost annihilated (ch. 16-28). The Atuatucae surrender after a siege, but, acting treacherously, are sold into slavery (ch. 29-33). The campaign ends with the reduction of several tribes along the coast (ch. 34, 35).

CHAPTER 1

PAGE 41

1. **Cum esset Caesar:** *when Caesar was*; a temporal clause with its verb in the imperfect subjunctive; W. 536; B. 288. 1. B; A. 325; H. 600. II.

in citeriore Gallia: in northern Italy, then called Cisalpine Gaul. See page 40, line 18 and note. What is the difference between *in* with the accusative and *in* with the ablative? W. 325. 1; 401; B. 143; A. 152. c; H. 420. 3; 490. 3. N. B.—Do not translate words in brackets.

2. **ita uti:** *just as*; A. 107; H. 584. 5.

demonstravimus: i. e. in the last chapter of Bk. I. Caesar, as the author, speaks in the first person, often plural; but he speaks of Caesar, the actor in the narrative, in the third person.

3. **adferebantur:** the imperfect tense indicates a repeated occurrence—something which happened several times, or often, or usually; W. 449. 1; B. 260. 2; A. 115. 2. b; H. 534. 3.

litteris: *letters*, though *litterae* usually means *a letter*. Ablative of means or instrument; W. 386; B. 218; A. 248. c; II. 476.

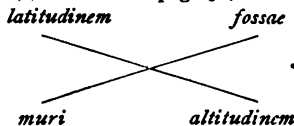
Labieni: Caesar's ablest lieutenant; for all proper names consult the vocabulary. At this time he had charge of Caesar's army, which was wintering among the Sequani; see map, frontispiece.

certior fiebat: *was informed (from time to time)*; *certior fieri* is a Latin "idiom."

17. **ex itinere** : i. e. immediately on his arrival, without stopping to form a regular siege.

oppugnare : distinguish the meaning of this from that of *expugnare*, line 19.

18. **latitudinem fossae murique altitudinem** : the second phrase 'reverses the order of the first ; this arrangement is called *chiasmus*, from the Greek letter X (chi) ; see note on page 30, line 11.



W. 675 ; B. 350. 11. c ; A. 344. f. N ; H. 666. 2.

19. **paucis defendentibus** : *though the defenders were few* ; W. 397 ; B. 227. 2. c) ; A. 255. 3 ; H. 489. 1.

expugnare : *to take by assault or storm* ; **oppugnare** is simply *to assault or besiege*.

20. **vineas agere** : *to move up sheds* ; see Introduction, page lviii.

quaeque : = *et ea quae* ; *ea*, understood, being the object of *comparare*.

ad oppugnandum : gerund expressing purpose ; W. 639. 3 ; B. 338. 3 ; A. 300 ; H. 628.

21. **usui** : W. 342 ; B. 191 ; A. 233. a ; H. 425. 3.

22. **proxima nocte** : i. e. the second night after the battle on the *Aisme*.

23. **aggere . . . turribus** : see Introduction, pages liii, liv, lv, and lviii.

24. **iacto** : *thrown up*.

magnitudine . . . celeritate : ablative of means or cause.

25. **quae** : (*the like of*) *which*.

27. **ut conservarentur** : this clause is the object both of *petentibus* and *impetrant* ; W. 512 ; B. 295. 1 ; A. 332 ; H. 565, 566.

CHAPTER 13

29. **primis** : used as a noun, *the principal men* ; W. 409 ; B. 236 ; A. 188 ; H. 494.

30. **Galbae** : see page 43, lines 18, 19.

PAGE 49

2. **Qui cum** : *and when they*.

3. **Bratuspantium** : perhaps near the modern Breteuil, between Beauvais and Amiens, but the identification is absolutely uncertain.

4. **circiter** : adverb ; connect with *V*, i. e. *quinque*.

non nullis: *some:* ablative of agent; W. 379; B. 216; A. 246; H. 467, 463.

9. partim qui: *partly by those who* or *some of whom*; sc. *ab eis* (i. e. *Gallis*) as antecedent of *qui*. Notice that the verbs of the relative clauses, *noluerant*, line 10, *ferebant*, line 12, *studebant*, line 13, are all indicatives stating facts as real, regardless of their being in indirect discourse; W. 607; B. 314. 3; A. 336. *b*; H. 643. 3.

ut . . . ita: *as . . . so* or *while . . . yet*; A. 107; H. 586. II. 5.

Germanos . . . versari: this infinitive clause is the object of *noluerant*; W. 626; B. 331. IV; A. 271. *a*. N. 1; H. 614.

11. moleste ferebant: a Latin "idiom"; *they took it ill, were annoyed, were vexed*; the object of *ferebant* is *exercitum hiemare atque inveterascere*; W. 625; B. 331. V; A. 333. *b*; H. 614.

12. mobilitate ac levitate: ablatives of cause; W. 334; B. 219; A. 245; H. 475.

13. novis imperiis: *a change of masters*; dative with *studebant*; W. 330; B. 187. II. *a*; A. 227; H. 426. 1.

ab non nullis: sc. *solicitarentur*.

14. ad conducendos homines: *to hire men*, i. e. mercenary soldiers; the accusative gerundive with *ad* expresses purpose; W. 639. 3; 640; B. 339. 1; A. 300; H. 628.

15. regna: see note to *regnum*, page 3, line 10.

16. eam rem: *that* or *this*; *res* is very often not to be translated, and rarely translated "thing"; it refers here to the seizure of sovereign power—*regna occupabantur*.

imperio nostro: *under our rule*; ablative of attendant circumstance; W. 391; B. 221; H. 473. 3.

consequi: complementary infinitive with *poterant*; W. 626; B. 328. 1; A. 271; H. 607. 2.

17. poterant: *would be able*.

CHAPTER 2

18. nuntiis: ablative of means or cause.

duas legiones: the 13th and 14th; he already had six, the 7th, 8th, 9th, 10th, 11th, and 12th; the eight legions and the auxiliary troops probably amounted to about 60,000 men.

19. inita aestate: *at the beginning of summer*; lit. "summer having been begun"; ablative absolute. The Romans often vaguely divided the year into summer and winter, as we sometimes do.

20. in . . . Galliam: connect with *deduceret* in translating; the phrase really belongs to both verbs in the sentence.

qui deduceret: *to lead (them)*; relative clause of purpose; the antecedent of *qui* is *Pedium*; W. 586. 1; B. 282. 2; A. 317. 2; H. 590.

Q. Pedium: Caesar's nephew or grand-nephew.

PAGE 42

1. legatum: appositive to *Pedium*; W. 291; B. 169. 1, 2; A. 183, 184; H. 383. 3. Concerning *legatus* see Introduction, page xl.

cum primum pabuli, etc.; i. e. in June; *pabulum*, "forage," was needed for the transport animals as well as for the cavalry horses.

2. inciperet: imperfect subjunctive with *cum* temporal; see note on *Cum esset*, page 41, line 1.

ad exercitum: perhaps at Vesontio, the chief city of the Sequani, now Besançon; see map, opposite page 10 of the text.

Dat negotium: *he charged*; *dat* is the historical present, often used for the perfect in lively narrative; W. 447. (1); B. 259. 3; A. 276. *d*; H. 532. 3.

Senonibus: this nation lived north of the Haedui, on the upper Seine. Their name is preserved in the modern Sens (Latin *Agedincum*).

3. Belgis: dative with *finitimi*, an adjective of nearness; W. 333; B. 192. 1; A. 234. *a*; H. 434. 2.

uti . . . cognoscant . . . faciant: substantive clauses in apposition with and explaining *negotium*.

4. quae . . . gerantur: subjunctive by attraction to the mood of *cognoscant*, on which it depends; W. 620; B. 324; A. 342; H. 652.

se: *him* (Caesar), referring to the subject of the main verb *dat*; W. 421. 2; B. 244. II; A. 196. *a*. 2; H. 504.

5. certiore faciant: *inform*; a Latin "idiom"; notice that two Latin words may often be best rendered by one English word, and *vice versa*.

6. manus: *bodies of troops*; accusative plural, subject of *cogi*. The clause *manus cogi* is the object of *nuntiaverunt*.

7. dubitandum: sc. *esse*, which is usually omitted in the periphrastic passive when it is impersonal; B. 337. 7; A. 113. *d*. N; 146. *d*; H. 612.

2. N. 1. Translate: *that he must not hesitate*.

quin . . . proficisceretur: *quin* introduces clauses after negative expressions of doubting and hindering; W. 576; B. 298; A. 319. *d*; H. 595. 1. Translate: *to advance*; ordinarily the infinitive follows *dubito*, in the sense of "hesitate"; W. 626; B. 298. *b*; A. 271.

8. Re . . . provisa: *after attending to*, etc.; ablative absolute.

9. movet: *breaks*; again a historical present.

diebus: ablative of time within which; W. 407; B. 231; A. 256; 487.

finēs Belgarum: supposing he marched ten miles a day, this would be about one hundred and fifty miles from Vesontio, at or near which the legions had probably wintered. He would cross the *Matrona* (Marne), thirty or forty miles southeast of *Durocoriorum* (Rheims), the capital of the Remi.

CHAPTER 3

11. Eo: into the country of the *Belgae*.

de improviso: just like the corresponding English phrase, *of a sudden*.

celerius omni opinione: *sooner than any one expected*; ablative with the comparative; W. 380; B. 217. 4; A. 247. *b*; H. 471. 8.

12. venisset: pluperfect subjunctive with *cum* temporal; W. 536; B. 288. *B*; A. 325; H. 600. II.

Remi: see map opposite page 81 of the text. They were friendly to the Romans, who had made them the second power in Gaul by defeating Ariovistus.

Galliae: in the narrower sense, Celtic Gaul; see Bk. I, ch. 1. Dative with *proximi*; W. 333; B. 192. 1; A. 234. *a*; H. 434. 2.

ex Belgis: = partitive genitive; B. 201. 1. *a*; A. 216. *c*; H. 444.

13. primos civitatis: *chiefs*; adjective used substantively; W. 409; B. 236; A. 188; H. 494.

14. qui dicerent: *to say*; relative clause of purpose; W. 586. 1; B. 282. 2; A. 317; H. 590. What follows for the rest of the chapter is what the envoys said, quoted indirectly.

Se suaque: objects of *permittere* and referring to its subject, *Remos*, understood.

sua omnia: *all their interests*.

fidem: *protection*, the duty of a loyal superior to his vassal.

15. se: subject of *consensisse* and *coniurasse*.

17. coniurasse: shorter form of *coniuravisse*; W. 189; B. 116. 1; A. 128. *a*. 1; H. 238.

paratos: predicate adjective; *paratos esse* is not perfect passive infinitive.

et . . . et: *both . . . and*.

dare . . . facere . . . recipere . . . iuvare: infinitives complementary to *paratos esse*; W. 626; B. 328. 1; A. 273. *b*; H. 608. 4. With the last two infinitives understand *cum* or *Romanos* as objects.

18. oppidis: no preposition is used because the ablative is thought of as the means as well as the place; B. 218. 7.

frumento . . . rebus: ablative of means.

20. cis: on the south or west side, nearest the Romans.

incolant: subjunctive in a subordinate clause of indirect discourse; W. 605; B. 314; A. 336. 2; H. 643.

his: i. e. *Belgis*.

22. *ut . . . potuerint*: a clause of result after *tantum . . . furorem*; W. 527, 528; B. 284. 1; A. 319; H. 570.

ne . . . quidem: notice that the emphasized word always stands between these particles; B. 347. 1; A. 151. *e*; H. 677.

Suessiones: object of *detertere*; this name survives in the modern Soissons.

fratres: appositive to *Suessiones*.

23. *iure*: general system and principles of law; *legibus*, specific enactments, *statutes*. Ablative with *utantur*; W. 387; B. 218. 1; A. 249; H. 477. After *utantur* supply *et*, connecting it with *habeant*. This omission of the conjunction is called *asyndeton*.

24. *ipsis*: *Remis*.

25. *quin . . . consentirent*: from uniting (*agreeing*); a *quin*-clause is regularly used after negatives, especially negative verbs of *hindering* and the like (*detertere*); W. 577; B. 295. 3. *a*; A. 319. *d*; 332. *g*; H. 595. 2.

CHAPTER 4

26. *ab eis*: sc. *legatis*; W. 319; A. 239. 2. *c*. N. 1; H. 411. 4.

quae . . . quantaeque . . . essent . . . quid . . . possent: indirect questions, objects of *quaereret*; W. 590; B. 300. 1; A. 334; H. 649. II; 643.

27. *quid*: adverbial accusative; *quid . . . possent*; *what power they had*; W. 316; B. 176. 3. *a*; A. 240. *a*; H. 409. 1.

28. *plerosque*, etc.: indirect discourse as far as *sumerent*, page 43, line 5, depending on *reperiebat*. The direct form is given in Harkness's and in Allen and Greenough's Caesar. In regard to the German nationality of the Belgae, cf. what Tacitus says about the Nervii, in *Germania*, 28. Of the Belgae in general we may say that they were probably originally Celtic, but were much mixed with Germans on the borders.

a Germanis: ablative of source; W. 378; B. 215. 2; A. 244. 2. *a*. R; H. 467.

Rhenum: object of *trans* in *traductos* (*trans-ductos*); W. 320; B. 179. 1; A. 239. 2. *b*; H. 413.

29. *ibi*: west of the Rhine, in Gaul.

PAGE 43

1. *solos*: *the only* (*people*).

memoria: ablative of time within which; W. 407; B. 231; A. 256; H. 487.

omni . . . vexata: *when all* (the rest of) Gaul was harassed; ablative absolute.

2. **Teutonos Cimbrosque**: see note to page 29, line 11.

3. **ingredi**: *from entering*; we might have a subjunctive clause; W. 629; B. 295. 3; A. 271. a; 331. 2; H. 595. 2; 596. 2; 566. 2.

prohibuerint: even in direct discourse this would be subjunctive, being in a clause of characteristic after *solos*; W. 587, 588. 2; B. 283. 2; A. 320. b; H. 591. 5.

qua ex re: *and from this fact*; W. 304. 2; B. 251. 6; A. 201. e; II. 510.

feri: the subject of this infinitive is the clause *uti . . . sumerent*; W. 523; B. 297. 2; A. 332. a. 2; H. 571. 1.

rerum: objective genitive depending on *memoria*; W. 351; B. 200; A. 217; H. 440. 2.

4. **memoria**: ablative of cause.

5. **sumerent**: the sequence of tenses requires this to be imperfect, after *reperiebat*, page 42, line 27. In direct discourse it would be *sumant*; W. 462; B. 267. 1, 2; A. 285, 286; H. 543, 544.

6. **De**, etc.: indirect discourse depending on *dicebant* (line 7) through the rest of the chapter.

eorum: *Belgarum*.

habere explorata: nearly = *exploravisse*; B. 337. 6; A. 292. c; H. 640. 2. *Explorata* is a predicate adjective agreeing with *omnia*, object of *habere*.

Remi: see page 42, line 12.

7. **propterea quod**: see note on page 1, line 7. It introduces *cognoverint*.

propinquitatibus: plural; relations of nearness, *ties of blood*.

8. **quisque**: each delegate in the *concilium* of the Belgae.

9. **pollicitus sit**: indirect question, *quantam* being interrogative; W. 590; B. 300. 1; A. 338; H. 649. II.

10. **cognoverint**: subjunctive because a subordinate verb (causal clause) in indirect discourse; W. 605; B. 314; A. 336. 2; H. 643. The primary tense is not according to the rule of sequence, after *dicebant*, but a narrative is often made more vivid by employing the tense used by the speakers of the report. Notice that the perfect of *cognosco* has a present sense, because *I have learned* means *I (now) know*.

Plurimum: adverbial accusative.

inter eos: *inter Belgas*.

Bellovacos: near the modern Beauvais; see map opposite page 81.

virtute: ablative of specification or cause; W. 396, 384; B. 226, 219; A. 253, 245; H. 480, 475.

12. **armata milia**: = *hominum armatorum milia*; W. 133; B. 80. 5; A. 94. e; II. 168.

13. *totius*: how is this adjective declined? W. 112; B. 66; A. 83; H. 93.

14. *Suessiones*: see page 42, line 22.

15. *possidere*: the subject is *Suessiones*.

regem: royal power or something like it still existed, apparently among the Belgae. See note on *regnum*, page 3, line 10, and Introduction, pages lxiv and lxv.

17. *cum . . . tum*: both . . . and, not only . . . but also; W. 248; B. 290. 2; A. 107; H. 657. 4. N. 1.

regionum: limits *partis*, which in turn limits *imperium*.

18. *Britanniae*: this is the earliest mention of Britain by a Roman author.

obtinerit: *had held*; see note on *cognoverint*, line 10.

20. *summam . . . belli*: *supreme command in the war*; *summam* is the subject of *deferri*.

voluntate: ablative of manner or cause; W. 391; B. 220. 2; A. 248. R; H. 475. 3; 473. 3.

21. *habere*: sc. *Suessiones* as subject.

22. *Nervios*: for the location of this and the other nations see map opposite page 81 of the text. The names of some of them survive in those of modern cities: *Atrebates* in Arras; *Ambiani* in Amiens (the ancient *Samarobriga*); *Caleti* in Calais; *Viromandui* in Vermandois; *Condrusi* in Condroz.

feri: predicate adjective; for comparison with *magis* and *maxime* see W. 129; B. 74, 75. 2; A. 89. d; H. 159.

habeantur . . . absint: subjunctives in subordinate clauses of indirect discourse; but the tenses are retained as they would be used by the speakers in direct discourse; see note on *cognoverint* above. This use of primary tenses for secondary is called *repraesentatio*.

27. *qui*: refers to the last four tribes only.

uno nomine: *by a common name*.

appellantur: indicative because the relative clause is an explanation added by the author, not properly a part of the indirect discourse.

arbitrari: sc. *posse conficere*, from line 11, or the like. The subject of *arbitrari* is *se*, i. e. *Remos*, supplied from the beginning of the chapter.

CHAPTER 5

29. *cohortatus . . . prosecutus*: these participles should be translated in the present tense; W. 647; B. 336. 5; A. 290. b; H. 640. 1.

30. *senatum*: the Romans naturally gave to Gallic institutions, etc., the name which most nearly corresponded in their own language.

convenire . . . adduci: the infinitive with its subject accusative is used regularly with *iubeo*; W. 629; B. 331. II; A. 271. b; H. 565. 3.

31. *obsides*: as *hostages*; predicate appositive to *liberos*.

Quae omnia: all *this*; W. 304. 2; B. 251. 6; A. 201. e; H. 510. The relative pronoun refers more distinctly backward and connects a sentence more closely with what goes before than a demonstrative. Latin is more precise than English, and is fonder of relative words at the beginning of sentences.

PAGE 44

1. *diligenter ad diem*: *punctually to the day*.

2. *Haeduum*: distinguish this Diviciacus from the one mentioned page 43, line 16.

quanto opere . . . intersit: *how greatly it concerns*; indirect question.

3. *rei publicae . . . salutis*: why genitive? W. 369. (a); B. 211. 1; A. 222; H. 449. 1, 2.

communis: i. e. of Romans and Haeduans.

manus . . . distineri: this clause is the subject of *intersit*.

4. *ne . . . conflegendum sit*: *that they may not be obliged to fight*; a clause of purpose; impersonal use of the second periphrastic conjugation; W. 233. 3; 507; B. 282; 337. 7. b) 1; A. 317; 294. b; H. 302. 7; 568.

5. *Id*: *this*, i. e. *manus distineri*; the infinitive clause is a substantive, and may be represented by a neuter pronoun.

feri posse: (*he says*) *can be done*; infinitive depending on *docet*, line 2. *Posse* forms the conclusion in indirect discourse, the verbs of the condition being the perfect subjunctives *introduxerint* and *coeperint*; W. 613; B. 319. A, B. a; A. 337; H. 646. The direct form would be *Id fieri potest* (or *poterit*) *si vestras copias . . . introduxeritis . . . coeperitis* (future perfect indicative).

7. *populari*: complementary infinitive with *coeperint*.
eum: *Diviciacum*.

9. *Postquam . . . cognovit*: a temporal clause; *postquam* is generally followed by the perfect indicative; W. 530, 531; B. 287. 1; A. 324; H. 538. 3; 602.

12. *flumen . . . exercitum*: two accusatives with a verb compounded with *trans*; W. 320; B. 179. 1; A. 239. 2. b; H. 413.

Axonam: now the Aisne; at the place where Caesar crossed it flows nearly west; see plan opposite page 46 of the text.

13. *ibi*: see plan, showing this camp near Berry-au-Bac.

14. *Quae*: see note on *Quae*, page 43, line 31.

res: *position*.

et . . . et: *both . . . and*.

latus unum: object of *muniebat*.

ripis: ablative of means.

15. **post eum quae erant**: *his rear*; *quae* = *ea loca quae*.

tuta . . . reddebat: *made secure*; *tuta* is predicate accusative, the direct object being *ea*, understood antecedent of *quae*; W. 317; B. 177. 1, 2; A. 239. 1. a. N. 1; H. 410. 1.

16. **commeatus**: subject of *possent*.

17. **ut . . . portari possent efficiebat**: *made it possible for supplies to be carried*; the clause *ut . . . possent* is the object of *efficiebat*; W. 522; B. 297. 1; A. 332; H. 571. 3. Notice the imperfects, *muniebat*, *reddebat*, and *efficiebat*, which describe a state of things which lasted some time, not momentary acts.

18. **In**: *over, across*.

praesidium: see plan. Traces of ancient entrenchments have been discovered at Berry-au-Bac.

19. **in altera parte**: i. e. on the south bank, for Caesar had crossed to the north bank. The arrangement described secured the line of supplies and of possible retreat.

Q. Titurium Sabinum: *Q.* = *Quintum*; always read the full name when abbreviations occur. Sabinus is prominent in the narrative, appearing in several books of the Commentaries.

21. **pedum xii**: genitive of measure; W. 354; B. 203. 2; A. 215. 6; H. 440. 3.

duodeviginti pedum: *eighteen feet broad* (at the top); see Introduction, page xlviii.

CHAPTER 6

23. **nomine**: ablative of specification; W. 396; B. 226; A. 253; H. 480.

Bibrax: appositive to *oppidum*. This place can not be certainly identified with any modern town; it may have been, perhaps, on or near the hill of Vieux-Laon.

24. **milia passuum**: see note to same words, page 2, line 26. *Milia* here is accusative of extent of space.

ex itinere: *on the march*.

25. **Aegre . . . sustentatum est**: *resistance was made, or they held out with difficulty*.

26. **eadem atque**: *the same as*; B. 341. 1. c); A. 156. a; H. 508. 5. **oppugnatio**; *method of attack*.

27. **haec**: *as follows*.

circumiecta multitudine: ablative absolute.

28. **moenibus**: indirect object of *circumiecta*; B. 187. III; A. 228; H. 429. 2.

murum : this is the general word for a *wall*; *moenia* means the whole *walls* enclosing a camp or a city, the circuit of fortifications.

iaci : complementary infinitive with *coepti sunt*, which is passive because *iaci* is; B. 133. 1; A. 143. *a*; H. 299. 1.

29. defensoribus : ablative of separation; W. 374; B. 214; A. 243; H. 462.

testudine lacta : *after forming a tortoise*; for the explanation of this maneuver see Introduction, page lvii. The construction is ablative absolute.

31. Quod : *now this*.

tum : *in the present instance*.

PAGE 45

1. coicerent : plural because *multitudo* means *multi homines*, being a "collective" noun; W. 297. 1; B. 254. 4; A. 205. *c*; H. 389. 1. The clause is both temporal and causal; W. 536, 542; B. 286. 2; 288. 1. *B*; A. 325, 326; H. 598; 600. II.

consistendi : gerund; genitive limiting *potestas*; W. 639. 1; B. 338. 1. *a*; A. 298; H. 626.

2. nulli : emphatic position at the end of the sentence; dative of possessor; W. 340; B. 190; A. 231; H. 430. How is *nullus* declined? W. 112; B. 66; A. 83; H. 93.

oppugnandi : limits *finem*; the same construction as *consistendi*.

fecisset : pluperfect subjunctive with *cum* temporal.

3. Remus : not a personal name; a *Reman*, one of the *Remi*.

summa nobilitate : ablative of quality; W. 394; B. 224; A. 251; H. 473. 2.

suos : *his countrymen*; substantive use of the possessive adjective; W. 409; B. 236. 1; A. 188, 190. *a*; H. 494.

4. oppido : dative with *prae-erat*; W. 332; B. 187. III; A. 228; H. 429.

ex eis : instead of the partitive genitive, with the cardinal numeral *unus*; B. 201. 1. *a*; A. 216. *c*; H. 444.

legati : *as envoys*; predicate appositive to *qui*.

5. eum : *Caesarem*.

mittit : historical present; W. 447 (1); B. 259. 3; A. 276. *d*; H. 532. 3.

6. sibi . . . sese : refer to Iccius, subject of *mittit*.

sustinere : *hold out*; transitive usually, but here used without an object, as was *sustentatum est*, page 44, line 25. The message sent by Iccius, if in direct form, would read : *Nisi subsidium mihi submittes, diutius sustinere non possum (or potero)*.

CHAPTER 7

7. *Eo: thither*, i. e. to Bibrax.

de: about.

isdem: ablative with usus; W. 357; B. 218. 1; A. 249; H. 477. 1.

ducibus . . . suntii: as guides . . . as messengers.

usus: translate as if present; W. 647; B. 336. 5; A. 290. b; H. 640. 1.

8. *Numidas et Cretas: these nations, especially the Cretans, were famous in ancient times as archers, and often employed as mercenaries. The same remark may be made of the Balearians as slingers.*

9. *subsidio oppidanis: two datives: W. 342, 345; B. 191. 2. b); A. 233. a; H. 433.*

mittit: historical present.

10. *cum spe defensionis: together with the hope of holding the town.*

studium: limited by propugnandi.

11. *hostibus: dative of reference; but translate: from the enemy; W. 335; B. 188. 1; A. 235; H. 427.*

12. *potiundi oppidi: gerund or gerundive? W. 640; B. 339. 1; A. 296. R; 298; H. 626, 623. 1. About the ending -undi, see W. 192; B. 116. 2; A. 12. d; H. 243.*

13. *morati: sc. hostes; only deponent verbs have a perfect active participle.*

14. *vicis . . . incensis: ablative absolute; W. 397; B. 227; A. 255; H. 489.*

quo: adverb.

15. *omnibus copiis: ablative of accompaniment; W. 392; B. 222. 1; A. 248. a. N; H. 474. 2. N. 1.*

a . . . duobus: less than two miles off. A here = adverb, away; milibus is ablative of degree of difference; W. 393; B. 223; A. 250; H. 417. 3. Minus does not affect the case of milibus; W. 382; B. 217. 1, 3; A. 247. c; H. 471. 4.

16. *castra: see plan opposite page 46 of the text.*

quae: and this.

CHAPTER 8

19. *primo: adverb.*

20. *opinionem virtutis: their reputation for valor; virtutis is an objective genitive; W. 351; B. 200; A. 217; H. 440. 2.*

proelio supersedere: to refrain from a general engagement; proelio is ablative of separation.

21. *proeliis: small combats, skirmishes.*

quid: adverbial accusative; W. 316; B. 176. 2. a); A. 240. a; H. 511. 5.

quid . . . posset: *what the enemy's courage amounted to*; lit. "what the enemy was able in respect of courage." Indirect question; W. 590; B. 300. 1; A. 210. 2; 334; H. 649. II.

22. periclitabatur: *kept trying to discover*; W. 449. 1; B. 260. 2; A. 277; H. 530, 534. 3.

24. loco . . . idoneo: *since the place was*, etc., or *since there was a place*, etc.; causal ablative absolute; W. 397; B. 227. 2. d); A. 255. d. 2; H. 489. 1.

ad aciem instruendam: gerundive expression of purpose, explaining *opportuno*; W. 639. 3; 640; B. 339. 2; A. 300; H. 628.

25. atque: how does this differ in meaning from *et*? W. 248; B. 341. 1. c); A. 156. a; H. 657. 1.

quod . . . redibat: this long sentence describing the hill explains the adjectives *opportuno* and *idoneo*.

ubi: = *in quo*.

castra: see plan.

26. tantum . . . quantum loci: *just so much space as*; *loci* is partitive genitive; *tantum* is accusative of extent of space with *patebat*, and *quantum* is the object of *occupare*.

adversus: *in front*, facing the enemy.

28. ex utraque parte: *on each side*.

lateris deiectus: *lateral slopes*; lit. *descents of the side*.

PAGE 46

2. transversam: *at right angles*—to the length of the hill; see plan.

passuum: genitive of measure; in this case, of length; W. 354; B. 203. 2; A. 215. b; H. 440. 3.

3. ad extremas fossas: *at the ends of the ditches*; W. 416; B. 241. 1; A. 193; H. 497. 4.

4. tormenta: see Introduction, pages lv and lviii.

instruxisset: this would be future perfect indicative, but is attracted into the subjunctive by *ne . . . possent*, on which it depends. *Possent* being a secondary tense, sequence requires that *instruxisset* should be also. W. 620, 462; B. 267, 324; A. 325. c; 342; H. 543.

5. quod . . . poterant: this being the statement of an actual fact, the indicative is properly used. *Poterant*: *were strong*.

multitudine: ablative of cause or means.

ab: *on*.

6. Hoc facto . . . legionibus . . . relictis: ablatives absolute. The two legions were the 13th and 14th, the raising of which was mentioned page 41, lines 18, 19.

8. *si quo*: indefinite, *if anywhere = wherever*; sc. *duci*.

si . . . esset: for *si erit* attracted into the subjunctive because of its subordination to the clause *ut . . . possent*.

subsidio: dative of purpose or "tendency"; W. 342; B. 191. 1; A. 233; H. 425. 3.

duci: infinitive, complementary to *possent*.

9. *in acie*: see Introduction, page xlii, in regard to the formation in order of battle.

10. *eductas*: translate as an indicative coördinate with *instruxerunt*; *had led out and (then proceeded to draw up)*.

CHAPTER 9

11. *Palus*: see plan; this was the low ground along the Miette.

nostrum: possessive adjective, not genitive plural of *ego*. It agrees with *exercitum* and is coördinate with the possessive genitive *hostium*, which limits *exercitum*: *our army and the enemy's*.

12. *Hanc*: *paludem*.

si: (*to see*) *whether*; W. 593; B. 300. 3; A. 334. *f*; H. 649. II. 3.

13. *si . . . fieret*: this is a future condition *si . . . fiet* put into the subjunctive mood and past time by its dependence on the purpose clause *ut . . . adgrederentur*.

15. *contendebatur*: impersonal; *a contest was going on*.

16. *secundiore . . . proelio nostris*: *though the cavalry skirmish was more favorable to our side*; ablative absolute.

17. *nostris*: why dative? W. 333; B. 192. 1; A. 234. *a*; H. 434. 2.

18. *ad flumen*: i. e. lower down-stream, where they were concealed by hills beyond the marsh.

19. *demonstratum est*: page 44, lines 12-14.

21. *eo consilio*: *with this purpose*; ablative of cause, explained by the clauses *ut . . . expugnarent . . . interscinderent*; W. 518; A. 317. *a*.

si possent: *if they should be able*; a future indicative condition put into past time and into the subjunctive by dependence upon *ut . . . expugnarent . . . interscinderent*. Similarly *si minus potuissent* is a future perfect condition dependent on *ut . . . popularentur . . . prohiberent*.

castellum: on the south bank of the Aisne; see page 44, lines 18-20.

22. *pontem*: see plan. The object was to cut off Caesar's supplies and line of retreat.

23. *si minus potuissent*: *if (having tried) they should prove unable*.

24. *nobis usui*: two datives; W. 342, 345; B. 191. 2. *a*; A. 233. *a*; H. 433.

ad bellum gerendum: gerundive expressing purpose.

25. *commeatu*: ablative of separation.

CHAPTER 10

26. *certior factus*: *being informed*.

ab *Titurio*: ablative of voluntary agent; W. 379; B. 216; A. 246; H. 468.

27. *levis armaturae*: genitive of quality; W. 354; B. 203; A. 215; H. 440. 3.

Numidas: these were trained runners, who could move almost as fast as cavalry.

28. *ponte*: ablative of the way by which.

ad *eos contendit*: *hastened against them*, i. e. the Belgae, who were trying to cross the Aisne a mile or two to the west of the bridge. The probable scene of this fight is marked on the plan.

Acriter . . . pugnatum est: *there was a sharp fight*.

PAGE 47

2. *per*: *over*.

conantes: accusative agreeing with *reliquos*.

4. *equitatu*: ablative of means or instrument, not agent.

circumventos interfecerunt: *they surrounded and killed*.

5. *Hostes*: the main body in line of battle, facing the legions.

expugnando . . . transeundo: why not gerunds? W. 640; B. 339. 2; A. 296, 301; H. 623, 631. 1.

oppido: Bibrax.

6. *spem se*: the former is the subject, the latter the object, of *fefellisse*.

neque: = *et non*.

7. *causa*: ablative of cause; limited by *pugnandi*; W. 384, 639. 1; B. 338. 1. c; A. 245. c; H. 475. 2.

8. *ipsos*: i. e. *hostes*.

res frumentaria: provisions; the Gauls had no adequate commissariat. Their campaigns were necessarily short.

9. *optimum*: predicate adjective, neuter, agreeing with the subject of *esse*, which is the clause *domum . . . reverti*; the clause *optimum esse*, etc., is direct object of *constituerunt*; W. 628; B. 331. 1; A. 331. d; H. 613.

domum suam: accusative, limit of motion; W. 325. 2; B. 182. 1. b; A. 258. 2. b; H. 418, 419. 1.

10. *quemque*: subject of *reverti*.

11. *introduxissent*: attracted from the future perfect indicative by dependence upon *convenirent*; W. 462, 620; B. 324; A. 342; H. 644. 2.

12. *convenirent*: sc. *ut*; substantive clause, second object of *constituerunt*; W. 513; B. 295. 4; A. 331. d; 332. h; H. 565.

ut . . . decertarent . . . uterentur: clauses of purpose.

13. *copiis*: here *supplies*, not "forces"; why ablative? W. 387; B. 218. 1; A. 249; H. 477.

15. *Diviciacum atque Haeduos*, etc.: Caesar had requested the Haedui to make this demonstration in his favor; page 44, lines 1-7.

16. *finibus*: dative with *ad-propinquare*; W. 332; B. 187. III; A. 228; H. 429.

17. *cognoverant*: *had learned*.

His: sc. *Bellovacis*; dative with *persuaderi* (impersonal passive); W. 330; B. 187. II. 6; A. 227; H. 426. 2. *His persuaderi non poterat*: *These (the Bellovacis) could not be persuaded*.

18. *suīs*: *to their countrymen*; substantive use of the possessive adjective. Thus Caesar succeeded in his intention of separating the Belgian forces; page 44, lines 1-5.

CHAPTER 11

19. *Ea re constituta*; ablative absolute.

secunda vigilia: ablative of time; on *vigilia* see Introduction, page lii.

streptitu: ablative of manner; W. 390; B. 220; A. 248. N; H. 473. 3. N.

20. *castris*: ablative of the place from which; the preposition *e* is included in the participle *egressi*.

nullo certo, etc.: *without any definite*, etc.

21. *cum . . . peteret . . . properaret*: *cum* causal is followed by the subjunctive; W. 542; B. 286. 2; A. 326. N. 2; H. 598.

22. *fecerunt ut . . . videretur*: *made their departure look like*, etc.; *ut . . . videretur* is the object of *fecerunt*; W. 522; B. 297. 1; A. 332; H. 571. 3.

23. *fugae*: dative with an adjective of likeness; W. 333; B. 192. 1; A. 234. a; H. 434. 2.

per: the proper preposition where an agent is regarded as the instrument of another's will; A. 246. 6; H. 468. 3. N.

24. *speculatores*: *spies*, individuals in disguise, mingling among the enemy; *exploratoribus*, line 27; *scouts*, especially small squads of horsemen.

cognita; connect with *Hac re*; ablative absolute.

25. *discederent*: subjunctive in indirect question; W. 590; B. 300; A. 334; H. 649. II.

26. *equitatumque*: the "army" means especially the legions, hence it is possible to say: *the army and the cavalry*.

castris: ablative of place and means; W. 401, 386; B. 218. 7; A. 258. f; H. 485.

Prima luce : *at daybreak.*

27. re : *the fact of the retreat of the Belgae.*

qui . . . moraretur : *relative clause of purpose ;* W. 586. 1 ; B. 282. 2 ; A. 317 ; H. 590.

novissimum agmen : cf. page 11, line 2, and see Introduction, page xlvii.

29. His : i. e. *equitibus*, implied in *equitatum* ; dative with *prae-fecit*.

Q. Pedium : see page 41, line 20, and note. For all proper names refer to the Vocabulary.

• PAGE 48

1. milia passuum : see note to same words page 2, line 26. *Milia* is accusative of extent of space ; W. 324 ; B. 181. 1 ; A. 257 ; H. 417.

2. eorum fugientium : not "of those fleeing," but *of them as they fled.*

3. cum ab extremo, etc. : *since (those) at the rear to whom (our men) had come, were making a stand.*

cum . . . consistenter : causal.

4. ventum erat : impersonal passive of an intransitive verb ; W. 233. 3 ; B. 138. IV ; A. 146. d ; H. 302. 6.

5. priores : sc. *hostes* ; the foremost in the retreating column, *those in the van.*

6. viderentur . . . continerentur : subjunctive because dependent on (*cum*) *ponerent* ; W. 620 ; B. 324. 1 ; A. 342 ; H. 652.

7. clamore : *shouting.*

8. praesidium ponerent : *sought safety.*

10. quantum . . . spatium : *as the length of daylight allowed.*

11. erat imperatum : like *ventum erat*, line 4.

CHAPTER 12

13. diei : W. 348, 720 ; B. 201. 3. a ; A. 223. e ; H. 446. 5.

prius quam se . . . reciperent : *before they could recover*, not "before they recovered" ; W. 534 ; B. 292 ; A. 327 ; H. 605.

Now follows an account of the reduction of the Belgian nations in detail, after the confederacy had been broken up.

15. Remis : dative with *proximi* ; W. 333 ; B. 192. 1 ; A. 234. a ; H. 434. 2.

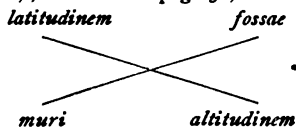
magno itinere : *by a forced march* ; in regard to the length of marches see Introduction, page xlvii.

16. Noviodunum : Celtic, "Newtown," perhaps the modern Soissons, some twenty-five miles west of the battle-field on the Aisne, but this point can not be determined with certainty. There were two other towns of this name, now, probably, Nevers and Sancerre.

17. *ex itinere*: i. e. immediately on his arrival, without stopping to form a regular siege.

oppugnare: distinguish the meaning of this from that of *expugnare*, line 19.

18. *latitudinem fossae murique altitudinem*: the second phrase reverses the order of the first; this arrangement is called *chiasmus*, from the Greek letter X (chi); see note on page 30, line 11.



W. 675; B. 350. II. c; A. 344. f. N; H. 666. 2.

19. *paucis defendentibus*: *though the defenders were few*; W. 397; B. 227. 2. c); A. 255. 3; H. 489. 1.

expugnare: *to take by assault or storm*; *oppugnare* is simply *to assault or besiege*.

20. *vineas agere*: *to move up sheds*; see Introduction, page lviii.

quaeque: = *et ea quae*; *ea*, understood, being the object of *comparare*.

ad oppugnandum: gerund expressing purpose; W. 639. 3; B. 338. 3; A. 300; H. 628.

21. *usui*: W. 342; B. 191; A. 233. a; H. 425. 3.

22. *proxima nocte*: i. e. the second night after the battle on the *Aisne*.

23. *aggere . . . turribus*: see Introduction, pages liii, liv, lv, and lviii.

24. *iacto*: *thrown up*.

magnitudine . . . celeritate: ablative of means or cause.

25. *quae*: (*the like of*) *which*.

27. *ut conservarentur*: this clause is the object both of *petentibus* and *impetrant*; W. 512; B. 295. 1; A. 332; II. 565, 566.

CHAPTER 13

29. *primis*: used as a noun, *the principal men*; W. 409; B. 236; A. 188; H. 494.

30. *Galbae*: see page 43, lines 18, 19.

PAGE 49

2. *Qui cum*: *and when they*.

3. *Bratuspantium*: perhaps near the modern Breteuil, between Beauvais and Amiens, but the identification is absolutely uncertain.

4. *circiter*: adverb; connect with *V*, i. e. *quinque*.

5. **maiores natu**: *natu* is ablative of specification; W. 396; B. 226. 1; 57. 1; A. 253; 91. c; H. 480.

6. **voce**: *tone of voice*; they could not, of course, speak Latin.

7. **fidem**: *protection*; i. e. they surrendered at discretion and trusted to Caesar's good faith.

10. **pueri**: *children*, of both sexes.

passis manibus: W. 397; B. 227. 2. e); A. 255. d. 5; H. 489; *passis* is from *pando*.

suo more: W. 391; B. 220. 3; A. 248; H. 475. 3.

11. **ab Romanis**: W. 319; A. 239. 2. c. N. 1; H. 411. 4.

CHAPTER 14

12. **his**: *Bellovacis*.

13. **eum**: *Caesarem*.

facit verba: *pleaded*.

14. **Bellovacos**, etc.: indirect discourse through the rest of the chapter, depending on *facit verba*. In direct form we should have *Bellovacii* . . . *fuissent*, etc.; W. 598, 599, 605; B. 331. 1; A. 330. B. 1; H. 641, 642.

15. **impulsos**: emphatic by its position; the idea is: (*not voluntarily, but*) *driven*, etc.

16. **dicerent**: subjunctive because in a subordinate clause of indirect discourse; W. 605; B. 314; A. 336. 2; H. 643.

17. **omnes**: *all sorts of*.

indignitates: abstract nouns in Latin are generally used only in the singular, but see W. 101. 2; B. 55. 4. c); A. 75. 3. c; H. 138. 2.

18. **defecisse** . . . **intulisse**: the subject is *Bellovacos*.

19. **Qui**: sc. *eos* as antecedent and as subject of *profugisse*.

principes: = *auctores*.

quod: *because*.

20. **civitati**: dative with *intulissent*.

in Britanniam: this gave an excuse for the invasion of Britain later.

22. **sua**: *his usual, his characteristic*.

eos: *Bellovacos*.

23. **Quod si fecerit** . . . **amplificaturum (esse)**: and *that if he (Caesar) did this* . . . *he (Caesar) would increase*; direct form *si feceris* . . . *amplificabis*; W. 613; B. 319. A. B. a; A. 307. a; 337; H. 646.

24. **quorum**: the antecedent is *Belgas*.

25. **consuerint**: sc. *Haedui*; *they were accustomed*; the perfect often has a present meaning; *consuesco*: "I am growing accustomed"; *consuevi*: "I am accustomed"; W. 455; B. 262. A; A. 143. c. N; H. 299. 2. This is the conclusion of a general condition; B. 320, 318; A. 309. c; H. 646, 644. 2.

CHAPTER 15

26. *honoris* . . . *causa* : *out of respect for*.

Diviciaci . . . *Haedunorum* : objective genitives limiting *honoris*; W. 351; B. 200; A. 217; H. 440. 2; *causa* : W. 349; B. 219; A. 245; H. 475. 2. It is almost equivalent to a preposition with the genitive case, standing after its noun.

27. *recepturum* . . . *conservaturum* : sc. *esse*, which is usually omitted with the future infinitive. Caesar's actual words were *recipiam* . . . *conservabo*.

28. *quod erat* : indicative, giving a real reason.

civitas : i. e. *Bellovacorum*.

magna . . . *auctoritate* : ablative of quality; W. 394; B. 224; A. 251; H. 473. 2.

29. *multitudine* : ablative of specification.

DC : *sexcentos*; an unusually large number of hostages.

PAGE 50

1. *oppido* : Bratuspantium.

4. *Nervii* : the fiercest of the Belgian tribes.

5. *reperiebat* : see note on *adferebantur*, page 41, line 3.

Nullum, etc. : indirect discourse from here to the end of the chapter. Direct discourse would begin : *Nullus est aditus*, etc.; W. 597, 598; B. 331. 1; A. 336; H. 641, 642, 643.

6. *mercatoribus* : dative of possessor; W. 340; B. 190; A. 231; H. 430.

nihil . . . *vini* : *vini* is partitive genitive; we should say *no wine*; *nihil* is the object of *inferri*.

pati : sc. *eos*, i. e. *Nervios*, as subject; its object is the clause *nihil* . . . *inferri*.

8. *quod* . . . *existimarent* : *because (as it was said) they thought*; W. 605; B. 314. 1; 267. 1, 2; A. 321; H. 588. II. 1.

relanguescere : verbs ending in *-sco* are called inceptives; W. 273. 1; B. 155. 1; A. 167. a; H. 277.

9. *magnae virtutis* : genitive of quality, coördinate with the qualifying adjective *feros*, connected with it by *-que*.

11. *qui* . . . *dedissent* . . . *proiecissent* : these relative clauses are not independent statements of fact, but integral parts of the indirect discourse; W. 605; B. 314. 1; A. 336. 2; H. 643. Probably these verbs would be subjunctives even in direct discourse, as embodying a reason in the mind of the accusers of the rest of the Belgae; W. 586. 4; B. 283. 3. a; A. 320. e; 341. d; H. 592.

patriam : adjective agreeing with *virtutem*.

CHAPTER 16

14. eorum : *Nerviorum*.

triduum : accusative of duration.

iter : trace the route on map opposite page 81.

fecisset : subjunctive with *cum* temporal ; W. 536 ; B. 288. I. B ; A. 325 ; H. 600.

15. Sabim : now the *Sambre*, which flows northeast into the Meuse or Maas ; as to the ending of the accusative, W. 82 ; B. 37 ; A. 56. a. 1 ; H. 102. 2.

18. Atrebatibus et Viromanduis : smaller tribes adjoining the Nervii.

19. his : dative with *persuaserant* ; W. 330 ; B. 187. II. a ; A. 227 ; H. 426. 2.

20. uti . . . experirentur : substantive clause, direct object of *persuaserant* ; W. 512. 1 ; B. 295. 1 ; A. 331 ; H. 565.

21. mulieres : direct object of *coniecisse*, line 23.

22. quique : not plural of *quisque*, but = *et (eos) qui*.

per aetatem : *on account of their age*, i. e. too young or too old.

23. coniecisse : sc. *Nervios* as subject.

quo : *in* or *ad quem*.

exercitui : dative of possessor, like *mercatoribus*, line 6.

CHAPTER 17

26. qui . . . deligant : relative clause of purpose ; W. 586. 1 ; B. 282. 2 ; A. 317. 2 ; H. 590. About the Roman camps, see Introduction, pages xlviii-lit.

ex . . . Gallis : when is *ex* with the ablative used rather than the partitive genitive ?

27. dediticiis Belgis : viz. the Suessiones, the Bellovaci, and the Ambiani.

28. una : adverb.

29. eorum dierum : *during those days*.

PAGE 51

2. inter singulas legiones : *between each legion and the next one*.

3. numerum : *quantity*.

4. neque . . . negoti : *and that it was no trouble*. In Latin the negative goes with the connecting word, and we find *neque . . . quicquam* rather than *et . . . nihil*.

5. in castra : of course this camp had to be constructed after the arrival of the troops.

venisset . . . abessent: future conditions thrown into the past in indirect discourse after *demonstrarunt*; in direct form, *venerit . . . aberunt*.

spatium: accusative of extent.

6. sarcinis: see Introduction, page xlv.

adoriri: subject of *esse quicquam negoti*.

qua . . . direptis: ablatives absolute, equivalent to conditional clauses.

7. futurum (esse): object of *demonstrarunt*, like *numerus intercedere* and *esse quicquam*; the subject of *futurum (esse)* is the following clause: *ut . . . auderet*. *Futurum esse ut . . . auderent* is a roundabout way of saying *ausuros esse*; this is the conclusion of the condition implied in the ablative absolute.

9. Adiuuabat: the object is *consilium*; the subject, the clause *quod . . . effecerant*. *Adiuuabat* occupies the position of emphasis. Translate: *What supported the advice of those, etc. . . was the fact that, etc.*

10. cum . . . possent: causal; W. 542; B. 286. 2; A. 326; H. 598.

nihil: adverbial accusative; so is *quicquid*, line 12; W. 316; B. 176. 2. b); A. 240. b; H. 416. 2.

11. neque enim: and (*that is natural*) for . . . not, or and in fact . . . not.

ei rei: *this branch (of their army)*, i. e. the cavalry; dative with *student*; W. 330; B. 187. II; A. 227; H. 426. I.

12. quo . . . impedirent: when *quo* used to introduce a purpose clause?

14. teneris arboris: young trees partly cut through (*incisis*) were bent down (*inflexis*); then their branches continued to grow, making an impenetrable hedge.

15. in latitudinem: *sideways*.

enatis: i. e. along the now horizontal trunk. Thorn-bushes were planted in the intervals (*interiectis*) between the trees. Such hedges are said to be still common in this region, and traces of similar ones are found in England, which are centuries old. They made an effective protection for farms against cavalry raids.

16. ut . . . praeberent: clause of result, object of *effecerant*.

instar muri: *like a wall*; W. 347; B. 198. 2; A. 223. e; H. 446. 4.

17. quo: *into which*.

18. posset: subjunctive by attraction to mood of *praeberent*, or because it is the verb of a characteristic clause describing *munimentum*; equivalent to *impenetrable to an enemy's entrance or even to his sight*.

19. omittendum: sc. *esse*.

20. sibi: so-called dative of agent; W. 339; B. 189. I; A. 232; H. 431.

CHAPTER 18

21. *haec* : *the following ; as follows* ; B. 246. 2 ; A. 102. *f* ; H. 507. See plan, opposite page 51.

locum : the antecedent of a relative pronoun is often repeated in Caesar ; W. 303. 2 ; B. 251. 3. A. 200. *a* ; H. 399. 1.

castris : we find the dative of purpose of *concrete* nouns in a few military expressions ; W. 343 ; B. 191. 1 ; A. 233. *b* ; H. 425. 3.

22. *Collis* : see plan.

aequaliter declivis : *sloping evenly down*.

23. *supra* : page 50, line 15.

vergebat : the imperfect is the proper tense for description.

24. *nascebatur* : *rose*.

25. *infimus* : *at the bottom* ; opposed to *ab superiore parte* ; W. 416 ; B. 241. 1 ; A. 193, 260. *b* ; H. 497. 4.

28. *in aperto loco* : notice on the plan where the woods were.

secundum : preposition.

30. *pedum . . . trium* : genitive of measure ; W. 354 ; B. 203. 2 ; A. 215. *b* ; H. 440. 3.

CHAPTER 19

PAGE 52

2. *copiis* : ablative of accompaniment ; W. 392 ; B. 222. 1 ; A. 248. *a*. N ; H. 474. 2. N. 1.

ratio ordoque : the two words embodying a single idea take a singular verb ; W. 298. 1 ; B. 255. 3 ; A. 205. *b* ; H. 392. 4.

aliter . . . ac : *otherwise than* ; B. 341. 1. *c* ; A. 156. *a* ; H. 516. 3.

se habebat : *was or were*.

4. *consuetudine* : *according to his habit* ; W. 391 ; B. 220. 3 ; A. 245 ; H. 475. 3.

5. *expeditas ducebat* : on the order of march see Introduction, page xlvii.

6. *conlocarat* : for *conlocaverat* ; W. 189 ; B. 116 ; A. 128. *a*. 1 ; H. 238.

duae legiones : the 13th and 14th ; see page 41, line 18, and note.

7. *praesidio impedimentis* : two datives ; W. 342, 345 ; B. 191. 2. *a* ; A. 233. *a* ; H. 433. Cf. *subsidio oppidanis*, page 45, line 9 ; *nobis usui*, page 46, line 24.

10. *identidem* : *repeatedly*.

13. *quem ad finem* : = *ad eum finem ad quem* ; W. 303. 3 ; B. 251. 4 ; A. 200. *b* ; H. 399. 3.

porrecta . . . pertinebant : *extended* ; translate the two words by one.

cedentes : i. e. *Nervios* ; no pronoun is needed in Latin in such cases, because of the inflection of the participle.

15. *opere* : i. e. the entrenchments of the camp.
dimenso : *staked out* ; lit. "measured off" ; passive meaning, though a deponent verb ; B. 112. *b* ; A. 135. *b*.
 17. *visa sunt* : a true passive, *was seen*, not "seemed."
quod tempus . . . convenerat : *which had been agreed on as the time*, or, *the moment which had been agreed on*. *Tempus* is a sort of appositive to the clause *ubi . . . visa sunt*.
 18. *eos* : *Nervios*.
ut : *as, just as* ; notice that *constituerant* is indicative.
 19. *ipsi sese confirmaverant* : *they had resolved*.
 25. *adverso colle* : *up the hill* ; ablative absolute.
 26. *in opere occupati* : *at work on the entrenchments*.

CHAPTER 20

27. *Caesari* : dative of agent ; translate as nominative : *Caesar had to do*, etc.
vexillum : see Introduction, page xlv.
 28. *proponendum* : sc. *erat* or *erant* with each of the gerundives in this sentence.
 29. *signum tuba* : this was the signal to fall into rank, in line of battle ; see Introduction, page xlv. *Tuba* is ablative of instrument.
opere : referring to the last sentence of the last chapter.

PAGE 53

1. *qui* : sc. *ei* as antecedent and subject of *arcessendū* (*erant*).
aggeris : *material*, to strengthen the rampart of the camp, e. g. sods and stakes, see Introduction, page xlviii.
 2. *arcessendī* : those who were beyond hearing distance had to be fetched by messengers.
cohortandi : even when the verb is deponent, the gerundive is passive.
 3. *signum* : i. e. *proeli committendī*, given by a blast of trumpets and horns.
 7. *quid . . . oporteret* : indirect question.
 9. *singulis legionibus* : *from their respective legions*.
singulos legatos : *the several lieutenants* ; or put the nouns in the singular and say *each lieutenant*, and *from his respective legion*.
 10. *nisi munitis castris* : *until after the camp had been fortified* ; ablative absolute.
 11. *nihil iam* : *no longer* ; *nihil* = emphatic *non*.
 12. *videbantur* : sc. *administranda*.

CHAPTER 21

14. *necessariis . . . imperatis* : after giving (only) the (most) necessary orders.

ad cohortandos milites : this expresses the purpose of the act of the verb *decucurrit*.

15. *quam partem* : = *eam partem quam* ; *partem* is in apposition with *milites* ; whatever part of them chance put in his way ; if we read in as part of the text, it would mean in whatever direction chance offered.

16. *devenit* : happened to come.

17. *uti . . . retinerent . . . perturbarentur . . . sustinerent* : substantive clauses of purpose depending on *cohortatus* ; W. 512. 1 ; B. 295. 1 ; A. 331 ; H. 565.

virtutis : objective genitive with *memoriam* ; W. 351 ; B. 200 ; A. 217 ; H. 440. 2.

18. *neu* : for *neve*, which is used instead of *et ne* ; B. 282. 1. *d* ; H. 568. 6.

animo : ablative of specification ; W. 396 ; B. 226 ; A. 253 ; H. 480.

19. *quod . . . aberant* : this is the reason why he *signum dedit*.

20. *quam . . . posset* : than the cast of a javelin ; lit. " than that a javelin might be thrown thither " ; *quam quo* = *quam ut eo* ; W. 521, 525 ; B. 284. 4 ; A. 320. *c* ; H. 570. 1.

21. *in alteram partem* : in the other direction, i. e. to the other wing ; from the 10th and 9th legions on the right wing, to the 12th and 7th on the left ; see plan.

22. *pugnantibus occurrit* : found them (already) fighting. No pronoun is needed, because of the inflection of the participle.

23. *hostium* : connect with *animus*.

24. *ad insignia accommodanda* : to put on their decorations, e. g. the crests of their helmets, which showed to which legion a soldier belonged, medals (*phalerae*) gained by personal valor, and the like.

25. *galeas* : worn hanging on the breast, when the soldier was not engaged in battle.

scutis : ablative of separation, or dative ; W. 337 ; B. 188. 2. *d* ; A. 229 ; H. 427. On the march the shields were carried in cases to protect them from the weather.

26. *defuerit* : failed, was wanting.

Quam : connect with *partem* ; to whatever part (of the field).

27. *casu devenit* : chanced to come.

- 28. *suis* : sc. *signis* : meaning the standard of each man's own cohort or manipule ; see Introduction, pages xlv and xlv.

CHAPTER 22

PAGE 54

1. *ut . . . ut : as . . . as.*
2. *rei militaris ratio atque ordo : military science and method.*
3. *cum : causal, introducing resisterent and impediretur ; W. 542 ; B. 286. 2 ; A. 326 ; H. 598.*
4. *aliae alia in parte : some in one place and some in another ; W. 437. 2 ; B. 253. 2 ; A. 203. c ; H. 516. 1.*
saepibus . . . interiectis : ablative absolute, indicating the cause or means of impediretur ; W. 397 ; B. 227. 2. d) ; A. 255 ; H. 489. See page 51, lines 14 sqq. The -que attached to saepibus connects resisterent and impediretur.
5. *densissimis : very thick ; W. 414. 3 ; B. 240. 2 ; A. 93. b ; H. 498.*
ante : = supra ; page 51, lines 9-18.
6. *neque : here begins the main clause of the period, of which the verb is poterant, line 8.*
certa : definite.
7. *quid . . . opus esset : indirect question, subject of provideri ; W. 590 ; B. 300. 1. a) ; A. 210. 2 ; 334 ; H. 649. II.*
quaque : ablative feminine of quisque.
9. *fortunae : genitive limiting eventus, antithetic to rerum.*

CHAPTER 23

11. *in sinistra parte : where Labienus was in command.*
12. *acie : genitive ; this form occurs sometimes in nouns of the 5th declension ; B. 52. 3 ; A. 74. a ; H. 134. 2.*
13. *pilis emissis : see Introduction, page xxxv.*
14. *Atrebatas : object of compulerunt ; see page 50, line 18.*
15. *ea pars : the left of the Roman army.*
16. *ex loco superiore : from the high ground to which the Atrebatas had run up from the river.*
17. *conantes : i. e. Atrebatas, object of insecuti.*
18. *impeditam : embarrassed in the attempt to cross the river.*
19. *Ipsi : the men of the 9th and 10th legions.*
20. *locum iniquum : the farther bank where the ground sloped up.*
21. *resistentes hostes : accusative.*
22. *alia in parte : i. e. in the center, in front of the camp.*
23. *diversae : separately ; W. 412 ; B. 239 ; A. 191 ; H. 497.*
24. *Viromanduis : see page 50, line 18.*
25. *ex : starting from.*
26. *totis fere castris : totis has the emphatic position ; this separation of totis and castris is a case of hyperbaton ; W. 740 ; B. 350. II. a) ; A. 386 ; H. 751. 5.*

23. *a . . . a : in . . . on.*

nudatis : the 8th and 11th in front and the 9th and 10th on the left, by leaving their places to pursue the enemy, had exposed the camp, except on the right, where the 12th and 7th still stood.

24. *non magno . . . intervallo : at no great distance.*

25. *confertissimo agmine* : ablative of manner.

26. *duce Boduognato* : ablative absolute.

summam imperi : the chief command.

27. *aperto latere* : *on the exposed flank* ; this expression ordinarily means the right side, because the left of each man was protected by his shield. By going around the right flank of the legions the Nervii could reach the rear of the Roman camp.

28. *sumum castrorum locum* : *the height occupied by the camp.*

CHAPTER 24

PAGE 55

1. *levis armaturae pedites* : see Introduction, page xxxviii ; *armaturae* is genitive of quality ; W. 354 ; B. 203 ; A. 215 ; H. 440. 3.

2. *una* : adverb.

3. *pulsos* : sc. *esse*.

dixeram : page 52, lines 21, 22.

4. *adversis* : *face to face*.

hostibus : dative ; W. 332 ; B. 187. III ; A. 228 ; H. 429.

5. *decumana porta* : see Introduction, page li ; the rear of the camp was probably higher than the front toward the Sambre.

6. *nostros victores* : the center and left wing.

8. *respexissent . . . vidissent* : W. 536 ; B. 288. I. B ; A. 325 ; H. 600. II.

hostes : *Nervios*.

9. *praecipites* : *headlong* ; it agrees with *calones*. See note to page 54, line 20.

eorum qui, etc. : refers to the baggage-train coming up with the 13th and 14th legions.

10. *clamor* : *shouting* ; *fremitus* : *uproar* in general ; the two words constitute virtually one notion, and therefore *oriebatur* is singular.

11. *alii aliam in partem* : *each in a different direction* ; W. 437. 2 ; B. 253. 2 ; A. 203. c ; H. 516. 1.

perterriti : what is the force of *per-* ? A. 170. c. N ; H. 374. 10.

ferebantur : reflexive in meaning, not passive ; W. 442. 3 ; B. 256. 1 ; A. 111. a ; H. 517.

13. *quorum* : possessive genitive ; *virtutis* : objective genitive ; *virtutis opinio* : *reputation for valor*.

14. *a civitate* : ablative of personal agent with *missi* ; the state is thought of as a collective person.

15. *cum* : introduces *vidissent*, line 18 ; the idea of cause enters largely into this sentence.

compleri : *was filling (being filled)*, not "was filled" ; this and the following infinitive clauses are objects of *vidissent*.

16. *legiones* : the 7th and 12th, on the right wing.

17. *Numidas* : light-armed troops from Africa.

19. *domum* : limit of motion ; W. 325. 2 ; B. 182. 1. *b* ; A. 258. 2. *b* ; H. 418, 419. 1.

pulsos superatosque : sc. *esse* ; the clause is object of *renuntiaverunt*.

20. *castris impedimentisque* : ablative with *potitos (esse)* ; W. 387 ; B. 218. 1 ; A. 249 ; H. 477. 1.

hostes potitos (esse) : object of *renuntiaverunt*.

CHAPTER 25

22. *Caesar* : subject of *processit*, page 56, line 9, and *iussit*, line 11 ; the participles *profectus*, line 23, and *cohortatus*, page 56, line 10, agree with *Caesar* ; the chief subordinate clause is *ubi . . . vidit*, which is so long that *vidit*, line 25, is repeated in line 6, page 56.

23. *signis* : the standards of the cohorts. They were crowded into a confused mass by the sudden onset of the Nervii.

24. *sibi ipsos* : to each other ; *ipse* agrees with the subject not with the object of a reflexive verb.

sibi . . . impedimento : see page 52, line 7, *praesidio impedimentis* and note.

25. *quartae cohortis* : on the left of the line. See Introduction, page xlii, for the arrangement of the cohorts of a legion in battle array. However, we are not sure that the regular order was preserved so far as that in this sudden, desperate fight.

28. *in* : *among*.

primipilo : see Introduction, page xxix ; connect with *confecto*, ablative absolute.

PAGE 56

1. *Baculo* : he survived these wounds and appears again, page 64, line 26, and page 164, line 12.

fortissimo : W. 414. 3 ; B. 240. 2 ; A. 93. *b* ; H. 498.

2. *iam . . . non* : *no longer*.

3. *tardiores* : *rather slack* ; W. 414. 2 ; B. 240. 1 ; A. 93. *a* ; H. 498.

ab novissimis : *in the rear* ; so again in line 8.

4. *neque* : coördinate with *et*, line 5.

5. *ex inferiore loco*: i. e. from the river-bank.
 6. *rem esse in angusto*: *that the situation was critical*.
 7. *subsidium*: *reserve*; the 13th and 14th legions were still too far off to be of use.
 8. *militi*: dative with a verb of "taking away"; W. 337; B. 188. 2. *d*); A. 229; H. 427.
eo: adverb.
 10. *nominatim*: Caesar was personally acquainted with a great many even of his private soldiers.
 11. *signa inferre*: *to advance*.
manipulos laxare: *to open out their ranks*.
quo: when is *quo* used to introduce a clause of purpose? W. 507; B. 282. 1. *a*; A. 317. *b*; H. 568. 7.
 12. *gladiis*: ablative with *uti*; W. 387; B. 218. 1; A. 249; H. 477. 1.
Cuius: *his*, Caesar's.
 13. *militibus*: dative with *in-lata*; W. 332; B. 187. III; A. 228; H. 429.
 14. *in . . . navare*: *in the utmost personal danger (nevertheless) to do his best*.

CHAPTER 26

17. *iuxta*: *next to the 12th*, whose situation has just been described.
constiterat: *was standing*.
 19. *ut . . . inferrent*: *that the legions (7th and 12th) gradually draw together, face in opposite directions (back to back), and charge the enemy*. These substantive clauses are the objects of *monuit*.
 20. *alii alii*: *to each other*.
 21. *ne*: after a verb of "fearing"; W. 516; B. 296. 2; A. 331. *f*; H. 567. 1.
aversi: *in their rear, from behind*.
ab hoste: the plural of this word is more common than the "collective" singular.
 23. *legionum duarum*: the 13th and 14th.
 25. *proelio nuntiato*: the time of this participle is prior to that of *incitato*.
cursu incitato: *at full speed*.
in summo colle . . . conspiciabantur: i. e. they began to appear over the edge of the hill above the camp.
 26. *Labienus*: at the head of the 9th and 10th legions, he had driven the Atrebatæ across the river (first part of chapter 23), and captured the enemy's camp; now he could look back across the valley to the Roman camp.
 27. *quæ res . . . gererentur*: in direct question.

28. **X** : = *decimam*.

29. **Qui** : referring to *milites*, implied in *legionem*, line 28.

30. **quo . . . esset** : *how matters stood*.

PAGE 57

1. **versaretur** : *were involved* ; it agrees with the nearest of the several subjects ; W. 298. 1 ; B. 255. 2 ; A. 205. *d* ; H. 392.

nihil . . . fecerunt : *came up as fast as they could*, lit. *left nothing undone for speed*.

2. **reliqui** : partitive genitive with *nihil*.

CHAPTER 27

4. **etiam (ei) qui** : *even such as*.

procubuissent : subjunctive in a clause of characteristic ; W. 587 ; B. 283. 2 ; A. 320 ; H. 591. 1.

5. **scutis** : ablative with *innixi* ; W. 389 ; B. 218. 3 ; A. 254. *b* ; H. 476. 3 ; *innitor* is used also with the dative and with *in* and the accusative. **calones** : nominative ; **hostes** (line 6) : accusative.

6. **inermes** : agrees with *calones*.

inermes armatis : Latin often puts close together words that are related in etymology ; B. 350. 10.

9. **praeferrent** : *tried to show themselves superior* ; third verb of the clause of result introduced by the *ut* in line 4 ; *ut . . . delecent*, line 7, is a clause of purpose.

At : marks the transition from the Romans to the enemy.

in extrema spe : *in utter despair* ; lit., "at the end of hope."

10. **primi** : *the foremost*.

11. **iacentibus** : *the fallen* ; dative with *insisterent*.

12. **his** : refers to *proximi*.

13. **qui superessent** : *the survivors*.

ut : *as if* ; connect with *ex tumulo*.

14. **coicerent . . . remitterent** : sc. *ut* ; subjunctives of result, co-ordinate with *insisterent* and *pugnarent*.

ut non, etc. : a clause of result depending on the statements of the preceding sentence ; translate in the order : *ut iudicari deberet homines tantae virtutis non nequiquam*, etc.

17. **quae** : *actions which*.

facilia . . . redegerat : *had rendered easy* ; how are *facilis* and *difficilis* compared ? W. 123 ; B. 71. 4 ; A. 89. *b* ; H. 152. 3.

This was the most desperate and sudden of all Caesar's battles. His army was saved from destruction only by the steadiness of perfect discipline and the presence of a great commander.

CHAPTER 28

19. *ad internecionem* . . . *redacto*: not precise, for three years later the Nervii were persuaded to revolt (Bk. V, ch. 38), and five years later they were able to send 6,000 men to serve in the Gallic war of independence (Bk. VII, ch. 75).

21. *pueris*: *children*.

aestuaria: *tidal rivers and inlets*.

22. *dixeramus*: page 50, lines 21-24.

23. *impeditum* . . . *tutum*: sc. *esse*; depending on *arbitrarentur*.

27. *vix* ad D: *to barely five hundred*.

possent: subjunctive, because it is in a subordinate clause of the indirect quotation depending on *dixerunt*, line 28; W. 605; B. 314. 1; A. 336. 2; H. 649. 1. But this might be a subjunctive of characteristic in direct quotation.

28. *Quos*: *and these*.

29. *usus* (*esse*): *usus* is attracted into the nominative, the case of the subject of *videretur*; W. 631. 3; B. 328. 2; A. 330. *b*. 1; H. 611. 1; 612. 1.

misericordia: Caesar's dealings with barbarians were in ordinary cases comparatively merciful, judged by the standard of his time and nation. It is not fair to judge by modern standards.

CHAPTER 29

PAGE 58

4. *Atuatuci*: see map, opposite page 81.

supra: page 50, lines 20, 21.

5. *auxilio Nervii*: W. 342, 345; B. 191. 2. *b*); A. 233. *a*; H. 433.

venirent: *were on the way*.

7. *oppidum*: a fortified stronghold, possibly what is now the citadel of Namur at the junction of the Sambre and Meuse or Maas, more probably at Mont Falhize, on the Meuse, a few miles below Namur, but not to be certainly identified with any modern site.

8. *Quod cum*: *and while this*.

9. *partibus*: *sides*.

10. *in latitudinem*: *in breadth*.

11. *pedum CC*: genitive of measure; connect with *aditus*.

13. *praeacutas*: *with pointed ends*.

in muro: *on*, not *in*, *the wall*; the beams and stones were intended for missiles to be thrown down upon their assailants.

ex Cimbris Teutonisque: ablative of source; W. 378; B. 215; A.

244. *a*. R; H. 467; see page 29, line 12, and note.

15. *impedimentis*: flocks and herds as well as goods.

16. *agere*: referring to cattle; *portare*: referring to inanimate property.

17. *custodiam*: = *custodes*.

praesidium: a garrison.

18. *vi milia hominum*: this was originally a Teutonic military colony, which was afterward adopted into the nation of the *Atuatuci*.

Hi: the 6,000; *eorum*: the main body of Cimbri and Teutoni.

19. *obitum*: *destruction*; i. e. in the battles of Aquae Sextiae and Vercellae in 102 and 101 B. C.

alias . . . *alias*: adverbs.

20. *inlatum (bellum) defenderent*: *defended themselves against invasion*.

21. *hunc* . . . *locum*: land between the Maas and the Scheldt.

CHAPTER 30

23. *primo adventu*: ablative of time.

25. *pedum xii*: i. e. in height.

26. *xv milium*: the number seems far too large. Probably it has been wrongly copied in the MSS.

27. *oppido*: ablative of place and means; B. 218. 7; A. 258. *f*; H. 485; cf. *castris continuit*, page 47, line 26, and note.

vineis . . . *aggere* . . . *turrim*: see Introduction, pages lviii, lii, liii, liv, and lv.

28. *procul*: the tower, built out of range of the enemy's shots, was afterward advanced on rollers close to the city wall (*turris ambulatoria*).

inridere . . . *inreptare*: historical infinitives; W. 631. 1; B. 335; A. 275; H. 610.

29. *quod* . . . *institueretur*: the cause is represented by the subjunctive not as a fact, but as the reason in the minds of the townspeople; W. 545; B. 323; A. 321, 341. *d*; H. 588. II.

PAGE 59

1. *a tanto spatio*: *so far off, at so great a distance*; *a* is an adverb here; *spatio*, ablative of degree of difference.

Quibusnam: the enclitic *-nam* gives a sarcastic emphasis to the interrogative pronoun.

3. *Gallis* . . . *contemptui*: W. 342, 345; B. 191. 2. *a*; A. 233. *a*; H. 433.

6. *confiderent*: a question put into indirect discourse, if a real one expecting an answer, takes its verb in the subjunctive; W. 590; B. 315; A. 338; H. 642. 2, 3.

CHAPTER 31

7. *moveri*: sc. *turrim*; that it was actually moving.

9. *locuti*: *speaking*; agreeing with *qui*, the subject of *dixerunt*, line 13.

10. *Non*: connect with *sine* in translating.

non se existimare . . . possent: indirect quotation, object of *locuti*.

12. *se suaque*: objects of *permittere*; the subject of *permittere* is *se*, line 10. *Se . . . permittere*, indirect quotation, object of *dixerunt*, line 13. So is the remainder of the chapter.

13. *Unum*: *one thing only*, explained by the clause *ne . . . despoliaret*.

petere . . . deprecari: depend on *dixerunt*.

14. *si . . . statuisset*: direct discourse would be *si . . . statuisset*.

pro sua, etc.: *in accordance with his usual*, etc.

quam . . . audirent: *which they were (always) hearing of*.

16. *Sibi*: dative with *inimicos*; W. 333; B. 192. 1; A. 234; H. 434. 2.

17. *virtuti*: dative with *invidere*; W. 332; B. 187. II. a; A. 227, H. 426. 2.

a: *against*.

18. *traditis armis*: *if they should give up their arms*; W. 397; B. 227. 2. b; A. 310. a; H. 489. 1.

possent: subjunctive in subordinate clause of indirect discourse; W. 605; B. 314. 1; A. 336. 2; H. 643.

Sibi: dative of reference.

praestare: *that it was better*.

si . . . deducerentur: future condition put into indirect discourse, after historical perfect *dixerunt*; direct form: *si deducemur*.

19. *quamvis . . . pati*: *to endure any treatment whatever*; *quamvis*, accusative feminine of *quavis*. This clause is the subject of *praestare*.

21. *consuessent*: for *consuevisissent*; W. 189; B. 116. 1; A. 128. a; H. 238.

CHAPTER 32

22. *consuetudine sua*: ablative of manner or cause; W. 391; B. 220. 3; A. 245; H. 475. 4.

23. *merito*: ablative of cause.

conservaturum, si . . . dedidissent: in direct discourse: *conservabo, si . . . dederitis*; W. 613; B. 319. A., B. a; A. 337; H. 646.

24. *aries*: it was a practice of ancient conquerors to destroy cities which were not surrendered before the battering-ram touched the wall.

attigisset: attracted from the future perfect indicative of direct discourse; W. 605. 462; B. 291, 292, 314. 1; A. 327. *a*; H. 649. II; 543.

26. in: *in the case of*.

fecisset: W. 605; B. 314. 1; A. 336. 2; H. 643.

27. ne quam, etc.: substantive clause with a verb of commanding; W. 512; B. 295. 1; A. 331; H. 565.

28. ad suos: used rather than *suis*, because the messengers had to go back and carry the message; *ad suos* is the limit of motion.

quae imperarentur facere dixerunt: *said that they would do (at once) what was commanded*; sc. *eos* or *suos* as subject of *facere*; *imperarentur*, subjunctive in a subordinate clause of indirect discourse; *facere*, present instead of future, because the idea is *to do immediately*; A. 276. *c*; H. 618. 1. The subject of *dixerunt* is the envoys (speaking on their return to Caesar after consulting their countrymen at home).

29. multitudine: connect with *iacta*; ablative absolute.

PAGE 60

2. summam muri, etc.: it was the chasm between the town wall and the end of the embankment (*agger*) built by the besiegers which was filled up by the arms thrown into it.

5. pace sunt usi: *they remained quiet*.

CHAPTER 33

6. Sub: *toward*.

ex oppido exire: notice the repetition of *ex*.

7. quam: *any*; connect with *iniuriam*.

8. Illi: i. e. *oppidani*.

9. praesidia: *guards, outposts*, along the line of works.

10. denique: *at least*.

12. ex cortice . . . viminibus: ablatives of material; A. 244. *c*; H. 467.

13. pellibus: ablative of means, *quae* being the object of *induxerant*.

14. tertia vigilia: see Introduction, page lii.

qua: *where*.

17. Celeriter: emphasized by its position.

ignibus: by flaming torches.

18. eo: *thither*.

concursum est: impersonal passive; B. 138. IV; A. 146. *d*; H. 302. 6.

19. ut a viris fortibus . . . pugnari debuit: *as brave men were bound to fight*.

20. in extrema spe: see page 57, line 9, and note.

iniquo loco: ablative of place without a preposition; W. 402. (2); B. 228. 1. *b*; A. 258. *f*; H. 485. 2.

21. *iacerent*: subjunctive of characteristic.

22. *una virtute*: *valor alone*.

ad: *about*; adverb with *milibus iiii*, the case of which it does not affect.

24. *diei*: W. 348, 720; B. 201. 3. *a*; A. 214. *g*; H. 446. 5.

iam: *any longer*.

25. *sectionem*: *booty, spoil*; probably so called from "cutting" it up into lots for division. This included the prisoners of war, sold as slaves. But it appears from Bk. V, ch. 38 and 39, that some of the *Atuatuci* were left in the country.

27. *capitum*: *individuals, souls*; i. e. the number of slaves bought was reported by the buyers.

CHAPTER 84

PAGE 61

1. *P. Crasso*: cf. page 39, line 10; also Bk. III, ch. 7, 8, 9, 11, and 20-27.

legione una: the 7th, as appears from page 66, line 5.

2. *Venetos*, etc.: for these nations, see map, frontispiece. The name of the Veneti appears in that of the French town of Vannes, that of the Redones in Rennes. The story of the campaign against the Veneti in the following year forms an important part of Bk. III.

Coriosolitas: this form of accusative plural, in the third declension, is found in Celtic names.

3. *maritimae civitates*: in the territory of modern Brittany and Normandy.

4. *Oceanum*: the Atlantic; the Mediterranean was *mare*.

CHAPTER 85

8. *perlata*: *spread from tribe to tribe (per)*.

9. *incolerent*: subjunctive because in a clause logically depending on *uti . . . mitterentur*; W. 620; B. 324. 1; A. 342; H. 652.

10. *se*: refers not to *qui*, but to *nationibus*, line 8, as is shown by the feminine participles *daturas, facturas*.

11. *pollicerentur*: subjunctive in a relative clause of purpose.

Italiam: Cisalpine Gaul, as it was called, i. e. northern Italy as far south as the Rubicon; see note on page 7, line 15.

12. *Illyricum*: one of the provinces under Caesar's jurisdiction; see Introduction, page lxii.

13. *Carnutes*, etc.: see map, frontispiece. These names survive, Carnutes in Chartres, Andes in Anjou, Turonos in Tours. The legions were thus quartered along the line of the Loire, in the middle of Gaul.

14. *quaeque civitates* : = *et civitates quae*.

15. *gesserat* : sc. *Crassus* ; these nations were far from the country where Caesar had been fighting.

hiberna : see Introduction, page lii.

17. *supplicatio* : a solemn thanksgiving, usually lasting three or four days. The longest one up to this time, lasting ten days, had been in honor of Pompey after the war against Mithradates (Cic. *Prov. Cons.* 11, 27). Caesar's party was now in power at Rome, and his services received full recognition from the government.

quod : sc. *id*, referring to the statement just made ; W. 304. 2 ; B. 247. 1. *6* ; A. 200. *e*. N ; H. 399. 6.

18. *nulli* : very emphatic in its position. How is *nullus* declined ? W. 112 ; B. 66 ; A. 83 ; H. 93.

BOOK THREE—B. C. 56

CONQUEST OF NORTHWEST AND SOUTHWEST GAUL. Caesar's lieutenant Galba, stationed in the Alps for the winter, is obliged by the hostility of the natives to withdraw (ch. 1-6). In the spring, Caesar proceeds against the tribes of Aremorica, in the northwest of Gaul. A tedious campaign against the Veneti, the principal nation of that region, is finally decided by a naval battle, after which the Veneti are severely punished for their resistance (ch. 7-16). Sabinus, another lieutenant, subdues the Venelli along the northern coast (ch. 17-19). Crassus conducts a successful expedition into Aquitania, resulting in the submission of most of that country (ch. 20-27). Caesar finishes the year's campaign by laying waste the territory of the Morini and Menapii along the northern coast (ch. 28, 29).

Chapters 1-6 relate to events in the late autumn of 57 B. C.

CHAPTER 1

PAGE 62

1. *in Italiam*: Caesar's destination being the prominent idea, these words occupy an emphatic position at the beginning of the sentence; see note to page 40, line 18.—*Ser. Galbam*: he became *praetor urbanus* in 54 B. C.; was one of the conspirators against Caesar in 44; his great-grandson was emperor in 68-69 A. D.

2. *legione xii*: Caesar had eight legions at this time; see note on *duas legiones*, page 41, line 18.—*Nantuates*, etc.: see map, opposite page 10.

3. *qui a finibus*, etc.: Geneva, at the west end of Lac Lemman, was at the northeastern corner of the Allobrogian territory.

4. *summas*: *the tops of*; W. 416; B. 241. 1; A. 193; H. 497. 4.

5. *iter per Alpes*: the famous Great St. Bernard pass, which was then the shortest route over the Alps and to Octodurus (*Martigny*) in the Rhone Valley. Napoleon crossed by it in 1800.

6. *magno cum periculo*: *but only with great danger*; ablative of accompaniment or attendant circumstance.—*portoriis*: *transit dues, tolls*.—*mercatores*: see note on page 1, line 9.

7. *Huic*: *Galbae*.

8. *si . . . arbitraretur*: future condition in informal indirect discourse.—*uti . . . conlocaret*: object clause of purpose, depending on *permisit*; W. 512; B. 295. 2; A. 331; H. 564. I.

10. *proeliis factis*, etc.: five ablatives absolute, indicating successive events, all prior to the time of *constituit*.

12. *cohortes*: see Introduction, page xxix.

13. in *Nantuatibus*: in the vicinity of the modern St. Maurice.—*reliquis*: viz. eight.

14. *vico*: an unwall'd village.

16. *adiecta*: *adjoining*.

17. *hic*: sc. *vicus*.—*flumine*: the *Drance*, which flows into the Rhone below Martigny, which is generally agreed to have been on the site of *Octodurus*; i. e. *Octodurus* lay between Martigny-Ville and Martigny-Bourg, which are one mile apart.

18. *Gallis*: i. e. the inhabitants of the village.

CHAPTER 2

PAGE 63

2. *eo*: i. e. into that part of the village occupied by Galba's troops.—*iussisset*: sc. *Galba*.

3. *quam . . . concesserat*: indicative: an independent statement of fact, not part of the indirect quotation depending on *certior factus est*; but *impenderent*, line 5, is treated according to the general rule for verbs in subordinate clauses in indirect discourse.

4. *omnes*: sc. *Gallos*.—*montes*: the lower heights commanding the valleys.

5. *impenderent*: W. 605; B. 314. 1; A. 336. 2; H. 643.

7. *Id*: refers to the following clause, *ut . . . caperent*, a substantive clause of result in apposition with and explaining *id*, the subject of *acciderat*.

9. *neque eam plenissimam*: *and that not having its full complement of men*, a fact explained in the two following ablatives absolute. There had been a heavy loss in the battle with the Nervii. As to the number in a legion, see Introduction, page xxx.

10. *detractis . . . duabus*: see page 62, line 13.—*singillatim*: *as individuals*.

11. *commeatus petendi causa*: W. 639. 1; 640; B. 339. 1; A. 296, 298. c; H. 626. 1.

12. *tum etiam*: = *deinde*.

13. *cum . . . decurrerent . . . coicerent*: in direct discourse this would be future indicative, *cum . . . decurremus . . . coicimus*.—*ipsi*: the natives.

15. **Accedebat, quod**: *there was the further fact that*, or simply *and besides*. The *quod*-clause is the subject of *accedebat*.

16. **abstractos (esse)**: infinitive with subject accusative depending on *dolebant*; B. 331. V; A. 333. *b*; H. 614.

17. **nomine**: *by way of; as*; lit: "by the name of."

20. **sibi persuasum habebant**: *were convinced*; *persuasum* agrees with the clause *Romanos . . . conari*.

CHAPTER 3

21. **cum**: causal.—**opus**: *the work of constructing or fitting up*. He took the Gallic houses, but built the usual camp fortifications.

22. **perfectae**: agrees with the nearest subject; W. 298. 1; B. 235. B. 2. *b*) 77); A. 205. *d*; H. 392.

23. **esset provisum**: *provision had been made*.

25. **consilio**: who composed the *consilium*? Introduction, page xxx.

26. **Quo**: W. 304. 2; B. 251. 6; A. 201. *e*; H. 510.

27. **praeter opinionem**: *contrary to expectation*.

29. **subsidio**: dative of purpose; W. 343; B. 191. 1; A. 233; H. 433. 1. Translate *neque subsidio veniri (posset)*: *neither could help come*; W. 233. 3; B. 138. IV; A. 146. *d*; H. 302. 6.

PAGE 64

5. **ad salutem**: *to (a place of) safety*.—**Maiori . . . parti placuit**: *the majority voted*.

6. **ad extremum casum**: *for a last resort*.

CHAPTER 4

8. **spatio**: sc. *temporis*.—**vix ut**, etc.: *scarcely enough to allow time*, etc.—**rebus . . . administrandis**: gerundive, dative of purpose. This is not as frequent as the accusative with *ad* or *in*.

10. **decurrere . . . coicere**: historical infinitives; W. 631. 1; B. 335; A. 275; H. 610.

11. **gaesa**: heavy Gallic javelins; their particular shape is not known.—**integris viribus**: ablative absolute; *while their strength was still unimpaired*.

12. **propugnare**: this and the other infinitives in the sentence are historical.—**neque ullum**: the Latin prefers this to *et nullum*, which would correspond to the English idiom.

13. **loco superiore**: i. e. the rampart of the camp.

14. **defensoribus**: ablative of separation; W. 374, 375; B. 214. 1. *b*); A. 243; H. 462.

15. *hoc superari* : they were at a disadvantage (lit. "surpassed") in this respect.

17. *alii . . . succedebant* : while others took their places.

18. *non modo* : here = *non modo non* ; B. 343. 2. *a* ; A. 149. *e* ; H. 656. 3.

19. *defesso* : indirect object of *dabatur*.—*excedendi* : gerund limiting *facultas*, as also do *relinquendi* and *recipiendi*.

20. *sui recipiendi* : gerund or gerundive? W. 642 ; B. 339. 5 ; A. 298. *a* ; H. 626. 3.

CHAPTER 5

22. *Cum iam . . . pugnaretur* : when the fight had been going on. The Latin uses the imperfect because the fight still continued ; W. 449. 4 ; B. 260. 4 ; A. 277. *b* ; H. 535. 1.

24. *languidioribusque nostris* : and as our men became more weary ; ablative absolute.

25. *vallum scindere* : i. e. by breaking down or pulling up the palisades.—*fossas* : there probably was but one ; we say "walls" when there is but one ; each side of the camp is thought of separately.

27. *Baculus* : cf. what was said about him in Bk. II, ch. 25.—*Nervico* : notice how the Latin avoids prepositional phrases, such as "with the Nervii," when attributive to nouns, and prefers adjectives agreeing with the nouns.—*proelio* : ablative of time. This battle is described in Bk. II, ch. 19-28.

29. *tribunus militum* : Introduction, page xxxix.—*consili* : resourcefulness.

PAGE 65

1. *unam* : only one.—*esse . . . experirentur* : in direct discourse : *una est spes . . . si . . . experiemus*. The future condition becomes imperfect subjunctive after the historical present *docent*, which is regarded here as a secondary tense ; W. 470, 613 ; B. 268. 3 ; 319. *A, B* ; A. 287. *e* ; 337 ; H. 546, 646.

4. *certiores facit* : usually "informed" ; here *ordered, commanded* ; "told" has both senses ; historical present.—*intermitterent* : in direct discourse would be *intermittite* ; W. 602 ; B. 316 ; A. 339 ; H. 642. The construction of the four following imperfect subjunctives is the same.

5. *missa* : thrown at them.—*exciperent* : catch on their shields. Their own missiles being nearly exhausted, they were to gather up and throw back those of the enemy.

CHAPTER 6

8. *Quod* : sc. *id* as antecedent and object of *faciunt*.—*iussi sunt* : sc. *facere*, of which *quod* is the object.—*portis* : ablative of the "way by which"; W. 386; B. 218. 9; A. 258. *g*; H. 476. See plan of a camp, Introduction, page li.

10. *sui colligendi* : cf. *sui recipiendi*, page 64, line 20, and see note. —*facultatem* : connect with *cognoscendi* as well as with *colligendi*.

11. *potiundorum* : as to the spelling see W. 192; B. 116. 2; A. page 89, foot-note 2; H. 243.

12. *circumventos interficiunt* : *cut off* (from the main body) *and killed*.

13. *ex . . . milibus* : equivalent to a partitive genitive; connect with *tertia parte*.

16. *locis . . . superioribus* : see page 63, lines 4-6.

17. *armis* : ablative of separation; *exutis* agrees with *copiis*; their arms were thrown away in their flight.

20. *alio . . . aliis* : *one (purpose) . . . other (results)*; W. 437. 2; B. 253; A. 203; H. 516. He had come expecting to pass a quiet winter, securing good order by the mere presence of his troops.

22. *eius vici* : sc. *Octoduri*.

24. *incolumem* : predicative, *brought it safe*.

CHAPTER 7

27. *cum* : concessive.

PAGE 66

2. *inita* : *at the beginning of*.—*Illyricum* : this country formed part of Caesar's jurisdiction; see Introduction, page lxii.

4. *haec* : *the following*.

5. *P. Crassus* : see page 39, line 10, and page 61, line 1.

6. *proximus* : *very near or nearest* of Caesar's lieutenants.—*mare Oceanum* : *the (Atlantic) ocean*; accusative with *proximus* as if it were *prope*; W. 242; B. 141. 3; A. 234. *e*; H. 435. 2; it is also used with the dative.—*Andibus* : see map, frontispiece; the name survives in the modern Anjou; they were not on the seacoast.

7. *praefectos* : officers of the auxiliaries; *tribunos* : officers of the legions.

8. *complures* : connect with *civitates*.

CHAPTER 8

12. *Huius . . . civitatis* : i. e. *Venetorum*, corresponding approximately with the modern department of Morbihan in Brittany.

13. *omnis orae maritimae* : = *omnium orae maritimae civitatum*; *of all the coast states of those parts (earum regionum)*.

14. **Veneti** : a rugged, seafaring people, chief of the nations of *Aremorica* (now Brittany); they carried on trade between Gaul and Britain. The population of the region is still Celtic. It furnishes the best seamen for the French navy. The Veneti and their allies then controlled a commerce extending from Ireland to Spain.—**Britanniam** : Britain was an important Celtic country maintaining extensive commercial, social, and political relations with the Continent.

15. **consuerunt** : *are accustomed*; W. 455; B. 262. *A* ; A. 279. *e. R* ; H. 199. 2.—**scientia . . . usu** : ablatives of specification.

18. **omnes . . . habent vectigales** : *levy tolls on almost all*; *vectigales* is predicate accusative; lit. "they hold all tributary."—**eo mari uti** : *to sail that sea*.

19. **retinendi** : we should say *by detaining*.—**Sili atque Velani** : see line 11.

20. **per** : *in exchange for*.—**suos . . . obsides** : object; **se**, subject of *recuperaturos* (*esse*).

22. **Gallorum subita**, etc. : there are several references, in Caesar, to the national fickleness of the Gauls; e. g. page 68, line 11; page 84, lines 2, 3; page 117, line 25; and page 195, line 4.

26. **acturos . . . esse laturos** : *sc. se*.

28. **quam . . . quam** : *which . . . rather than*; *magis* is not needed with the second *quam*, being included in *malint*; *malle* = *magis velle*.

PAGE 67

1. **Si velit . . . remittat** : indirect discourse for *si vis . . . remitte*. The present subjunctive is used because *mittunt*, historical present, is here counted as a primary tense and is therefore followed by primary tenses of the subjunctive. The same principle applies to *sollicitant* (page 66, line 27) . . . *malint* (page 66, line 29).

CHAPTER 9

4. **aberat longius** : *was too far away* to take action in person. Caesar was at Lucca, in Etruria, till some time in April. He reached the army in May.—**naves . . . longas** : *galley*s; see Introduction, page lix. The Gallic ships had sails only, as appears from page 71, lines 11, 12.

5. **in** : *on*.—**Ligeri** : the Loire; see maps, frontispiece, and opposite page 70.

6. **institutui** : *to be trained or to be procured*.

8. **cum primum** : *as soon as*.

10. **Veneti . . . civitates** : subjects of *instituunt*, line 16.

11. **quod** : connect with *intellegebant*.—**quantum . . . admisissent** : indirect question; *in se admittere* = *to commit*.

12. *legatos . . . retentos*, etc. : a phrase explaining *facinus*; translate: *in that ambassadors had been*, etc. They were not really ambassadors, and Caesar is not quite candid in so calling them.—*quod nomen* : a title which, i. e. the title of ambassador.—*ad* : = *apud*.

16. *instituunt* : *begin*.—*hoc* : ablative of cause.—*spe* : ablative of attendant circumstance or manner; W. 391; B. 221; A. 248; H. 473. 3.—*multum* : adverbial accusative.

17. *natura* : *confido* takes an ablative of cause or means; W. 385; B. 219. 1; A. 254. b; H. 476. 3.—*Pedestria . . . itinera* : *land routes*.

19. *inscientiam locorum* : i. e. on the part of the Romans.

20. *neque* : = *et* (with *confidebant*) *non* (with *posse*).

21. *ut* : *although*, the only instance of this meaning in the *Gallie War*; W. 571; B. 308; A. 313. a; H. 586. II.

22. *plurimum* : adverbial accusative.

23. *posse* : this and *habere*, line 24, *novisse*, line 25, *esse*, line 26, all depend upon *perspiciebant*, line 27.—*facultatem* : *means of obtaining*.

24. *gesturi essent* : subjunctive in dependent clause of indirect discourse.

26. *aliam . . . atque* : *other than, different from*.—*concluso* : *land-locked*, meaning the Mediterranean. There is no perceptible tide in the Mediterranean.

28. *frumenta* : *the crops*.

PAGE 68

1. *Socios* : predicate accusative with *adiscunt*, the direct objects being *Osismos*, etc. The name of the *Lexovii* survives in Lisieux, of the *Namnetes* in Nantes, of the *Diablintes* in Jablins. The tribes named extended along the coast as far as modern Flanders.

3. *auxilia ex Britannia* : these furnished a pretext for Caesar's subsequent invasion of Britain.

CHAPTER 10

5. *hae* : *the foregoing*.

7. *iniuria retentorum*, etc. : *the wrongful detention*; B. 337. 5; A. 292. a; see ch. 8; these so-called envoys, being military tribunes, were of equestrian rank.

8. *rebellio* : *renewal of war*, not "rebellion."

9. *ne . . . arbitrarentur* : (*the fear*) *lest the other tribes might think*; this clause is coordinate with *iniuria, rebellio, defectio, coniuratio*, and in apposition with *multa*.

10. *idem* : neuter accusative, subject of the impersonal *licere*.

11. *novis rebus studere* : *were fond of change* (especially of government); W. 330; B. 187. II. a; A. 227. e. 3; H. 426. 1.

12. *excitari* : present expressing a general truth.
 13. *natura* : causal ablative.
 14. *odisse* : perfect in form, present in sense ; W. 230 ; B. 133. 2 ; A. 279. *c* ; H. 299. 2.
 15. *conspirarent* : W. 534, 605 ; B. 292, 314. 1 ; A. 327, 336. 2 ; H. 605, 642.

CHAPTER 11

17. *Treveros* : see map opposite page 81.
 18. *flumini* : dative with *proximi* ; W. 333 ; B. 192. 1 ; 141. 3 ; A. 234. *a*, *c* ; H. 434. 2. Cf. *proximus mare*, page 66, line 6.
 19. *adeat* . . . *contineat* . . . *prohibeat* : commands in direct discourse ; here object clauses after *mandat* ; W. 599, 602 ; B. 316 ; A. 339, 331. *f*. R ; H. 642.—*officio* : *obedience*.
 20. *auxilio* : dative of purpose.—*arcessiti (esse) dicebantur* ; W. 607 ; B. 332. *c* ; A. 330. *a*, *b* ; H. 643. 1.
 21. *si* . . . *conentur, prohibeat* : in direct discourse *si* . . . *conabuntur, prohibe*.
 22. *Crassum* : see page 66, line 5.—*cohortibus legionariis* : see Introduction, page xxix. The auxiliaries were organized into cohorts, but not into legions.
 23. *Aquitaniam* : S. W. Gaul ; see page 1, line 2, and note ; being of alien stock, the *Aquitani* took little interest in the doings of the Celtic Gauls.
 27. *Venellos*, etc. : nations living in what is now Normandy.—*qui* . . . *curet* : relative clause of purpose.
 28. *distinendam* : W. 644. 2 ; B. 337. 7. *b* 2) ; A. 294. *d* ; H. 622.—*D.* : *Decimum*.—*Brutum* : this able and trusted officer was one of Caesar's murderers in 44 B. C.

PAGE 69

1. *classi* . . . *navibus* : indirect objects of *præficit*.—*Pictonibus* . . . *Santonis* : in modern *Poitou* and *Saintonge*.
 3. *cum primum* : *as soon as*.
 4. *pedestribus* : see page 67, line 17, and note.

CHAPTER 12

5. *ferē* : *generally*.
 6. *extremis* : *at the ends of*.—*lingulis* . . . *promunturiis* : low spits of sand running out into the sea ; high, rocky capes.—*pedibus* : *by land*.
 7. *cum* . . . *incitavisset* : i. e. at high tide.

9. *rursus minuente*: *when it ebbed again*.—*adflictarentur*: *would be stranded*. *Quod accidit*, lines 7, 8 (indicative), expresses a fact independently true under all circumstances; *quod . . . adflictarentur* (subjunctive), what would be true if ships happened to be caught by the ebb-tide.

10. *utraque re*: *in either case*.

11. *si quando*: *if ever*.

12. *superati*: agrees with the subject of *coeperant*.—*aggere ac molibus*: *massive dikes*; hendiadys; W. 740; B. 374. 4; A. 385; H. 751. 3. N. 1. See diagram in lower left-hand corner of map opposite page 70. —his . . . *adaequatis*: ablative absolute; *moenibus*, dative.

13. *fortunis*: dative with *desperare*; W. 330; B. 187. II. a; A. 227. b; H. 405. I. N.

14. *coeperant*: sc. *oppidani*.—*cuius rei*: i. e. the action of bringing up the vessels (*adpulsio*). Translate the sentence: *which it was very easy for them to do*.

17. *eo facilius*: *all the more easily*; *eo*, causal ablative explained by *quod . . . detinebantur*.

18. *partem*: accusative of duration.

19. *summa*: connect with *difficultas*: what is hyperbaton? W. 740; B. 350. II. a; A. 386; H. 751. 5.

20. *vasto . . . portibus*: causal ablatives absolute.

CHAPTER 18

22. *Namque*: elliptical; (but the Veneti had no such difficulties) *for*. —*ipsorum*: *Venetorum*.—*hunc*: *the following*.

23. *armatae*: *fitted out and rigged*.—*planiores*: sc. *erant*.

28. *quamvis*: *no matter how great*; accusative of *quivis*, "any at all"; "any whatever."

29. *ex pedibus . . . trabibus*: *consisting of timbers a foot thick from top to bottom (in altitudinem)*.

PAGE 70

1. *crassitudine*: W. 394; B. 224. 2; A. 251; H. 473. 2; there is no adjective limiting this ablative of quality, but a genitive, *digiti pollicis*.

2. *funibus*: *rope cables*.—*pelles*: (untanned) *skins*.—*alutae*: tanned skins, *leather*.

3. *tenuiter confectae*: *worked thin*, so dressed as to be thin, and comparatively light.

4. *eius*: i. e. *lini*.

6. *tanta onera navium*: = *tam onerosae naves*.

7. *velis* : by *canvas* sails, but the ancient canvas was linen, not cotton.
—*non satis* : *not very*.

8. *nostrae classi* : dative of reference or possessor, but may be translated as if genitive.

9. *una* : only.—*praestaret* : (the Roman fleet) *excelled, had the advantage*.

10. *reliqua* : neuter plural nominative ; *everything else*.—*illis* : *Venetis*.

11. *eis* : dative with *nocere* ; W. 330 ; B. 187. II. *a* ; A. 227 ; H. 426.
1. —*nostrae* : sc. *naves*.

12. *rostro* : the beak of an ancient war galley was a projecting prow heavily armed with metal, intended to crush in the hull of an enemy's ship.

13. *adigebatur* : = *adigi poterat*.

14. *minus* : *not*.—*copulis* : the Romans not being very expert in sea tactics, aimed to grapple the enemy's ships, board them, and win by a hand-to-hand fight.

15. *Accedebat, ut* : *Besides, it was true that, etc.* ; the *ut* clause is the subject of *accedebat*.

16. *se vento dedidit* : *they had let themselves run before the wind*.

17. *consisterent* : *rode at anchor, or perhaps grounded*.—*ab aestu* : the use of the preposition personifies *aestu*, as if a voluntary agent.
—*relictæ* : *if or when left*.—*nihil* : adverbial accusative.

18. *navibus* : personified as if they were conscious of fear.

19. *casus* : *the occurrence*.

CHAPTER 14

22. *captis* : by taking.—*noceri* : impersonal passive of an intransitive verb ; W. 331 ; B. 187. II. *b* ; A. 146. *d* ; H. 518. 1 ; 426. 3.

23. *classem* : see page 69, lines 1-4.—*Quae ubi* : *and when it*.

25. *paratissimæ* : *fully fitted out*.—*armorum* : *equipments* of all sorts, tackle, cordage, etc., as well as weapons.—*ornatissimæ* : *thoroughly provided*.

26. *ex portu* : see plan. The scene of this battle, the first naval battle on the Atlantic recorded in history, was probably, though by no means certainly, in the bay of Quiberon. The fleet of Caesar, issuing from the Loire, sailed to the N. W. The fleet of the *Veneti* may have come out of the Auray estuary and through the Morbihan entrance into the bay.—*neque satis Bruto . . . constabat* : *and Brutus was not quite decided*.

27. *tribunis militum* : the fleet was nothing more than a temporary auxiliary of the army, and was commanded by army officers.

29. *quid agerent . . . insisterent*: indirect deliberative question; direct form, *quid agamus . . . insistamus*.

PAGE 71

1. *turribus . . . excitatis*: *even if towers were erected*; the concessive character of this ablative absolute is shown by *tamen*.—*has*: i. e. *turres*.

2. *ex . . . navibus*: *on the ships, or of the ships*.

4. *missa*: sc. *tela*.

5. *magno usui*: W. 342; B. 191; A. 233; H. 433. 1.

6. *non absimili*, etc.: *of a shape not unlike that of wall hooks*; *falsum* limits *formae* (dative) understood. See Introduction, page lvi.

7. *cum funes . . . adducti erant*: *whenever the ropes*, etc. The perfect indicatives indicate a recurring action; W. 532. 2; B. 288. 3; A. 322, 309. c; H. 601. 4.

9. *navigio*: i. e. the Roman ship which had caught the rigging of an enemy.—*Quibus*: sc. *funibus*.

11. *navibus*: dative of reference.

12. *usus*: *control*.

13. *erat . . . positum*: *depended*.

15. *in conspectu Caesaris*: Caesar and the portion of the army not engaged on the fleet were watching the battle from the shore.

16. *paulo fortius*: *especially brave*.

CHAPTER 15

19. *cum . . . circumsteterant*: another temporal clause of the same kind as *cum . . . adducti erant*, lines 7, 8.—*singulas*: sc. *naves*; i. e. of the *Veneti*.—*binæ ac ternæ naves*: *two or three* (Roman) *ships*. This does not necessarily imply that Brutus had more ships than the *Veneti*, but only that he concentrated his attacks on single ships at a time.

21. *transcendere in*: *to board*.—*Quod postquam*: translate as if it were *Postquam id*.

23. *ei rei*: i. e. the boarding of their ships by the Romans. Thus the battle was won by substantially the same device as the famous grappling bridges used by the Romans in their first great naval battle in the Mediterranean at *Mylae* in 260 B. C.

25. *quo ventus ferebat*: *in which the wind was blowing*; *quo* = *in quam (partem)*.

26. *malacia ac tranquillitas*: in that region, in the latter part of summer, it is usually breezy in the morning and calm in the afternoon.

PAGE 72

1. *hora* . . . *iiii (quarta)*; see Introduction, page lii, foot-note. We do not know the exact date of the battle, but from the time needed to build and drill the fleet, etc., we conclude it must have been rather late in the summer.

CHAPTER 16

4. *cum . . . tum*: *not only . . . but also*; W. 248; B. 290. 2; A. 107, 208. d; H. 657. 4. N. 1.

5. *gravioris*: *mature*.—*consili*: *judgment*.

6. *navium quod*: *whatever ships*; *navium* is partitive genitive.

8. *neque quo se . . . habebant*: *they had no place of refuge nor any means of defending their towns*. The clauses introduced by *quo* and *quem ad modum* are clauses of purpose; lit. "they had no (place) whither they might flee and no (means) how they might defend their towns."

10. *eo*: causal.—*gravius . . . statuit*: *decided that they must be the more severely punished*.

11. *quo*: *in order that*; *quo* is used instead of *ut* in connection with comparative adjectives or adverbs in clauses of purpose.

12. *ius legatorum*: the inviolability of envoys has been respected in all ages, and offenses against it regarded as very grave. But it must be remembered that Caesar's emissaries hardly possessed the character of "envoys." They were officers sent to get supplies for his army; page 66, lines 6–11.

13. *sub corona*: *into slavery*; a wreath was put on the head of a captive or slave exposed for sale. The nation of the *Veneti* was not entirely destroyed, but the northwestern tribes gave Caesar no more trouble. They sent, however, a small contingent for the relief of Alesia; Bk. VII, ch. 75.

CHAPTER 17

14. *geruntur*: historical present with *dum*; W. 533, 447 (1); B. 293. 1; A. 276. e; H. 533. 4.—*Sabinus*: see page 44, line 19; page 46, lines 22, 26; page 68, line 26.

15. *eis copiis*: three legions; see page 68, line 26.

16. *Venellorum*: along the Channel coast in Normandy.

18. *magnasque copias*: this seems to imply that in addition to the usual or regular army certain irregular troops were levied.

19. *his paucis diebus*: *within a few days* (of Sabinus's arrival).—*Aulerci Ebuovices*: this branch of the *Aulerci* lived south of the lower Seine.

21. *nolebant*: as subject sc. *senatores* from *senatu*.—*clauserrunt*: i. e. against the Romans.

23. *perditorum*: *desperate*; this was already the third year of the war in Gaul.

26. *omnibus rebus*: *in all respects*.

27. *cum*: concessive.

28. *spatio*: ablative of degree of difference, measuring the distance by which Sabinus and Viridovix were separated.

29. *ut*: *so that*; result.—*hostibus*: dative of reference; W. 335; B. 188. 1; A. 235; H. 425. 4.

PAGE 73

2. *non nihil*: *somewhat*; W. 316; B. 176. 2. *b*); A. 240. *a*; H. 306.—*opinionem timoris*: *impression that he was a coward*.

5. *eo absente*: i. e. Caesar. A *legatus* had ordinarily no *imperium* of his own; see Introduction, page xl.

6. *teneret*: subjunctive in a subordinate clause of indirect discourse, depending on *existimabat*.

7. *legato*: W. 339; B. 189. 1; A. 232; H. 431.—*dimicandum*: sc. *esse*; impersonal passive of an intransitive verb.

CHAPTER 18

13. *pro*: *as if, in the character of*.

15. *prematur*: subjunctive of indirect question.—*neque longius abesse quin*, etc.: *and that not later than the next night Sabinus would*, etc. The clause *quin . . . profisciscatur* is the subject of *abesse*; W. 576; B. 298; A. 319. *d*; H. 595. 1.

19. *negoti bene gerendi*: *of winning a victory*.

20. *iri*: W. 233. 3; B. 138. IV; A. 146. *d*; H. 302. 6.

22. *superiorum*: *preceding*.

24. *spes . . . belli*: they had not yet heard of the result of the campaign against the Veneti; see page 74, lines 15 and 16.—*quod . . . credunt*: *the fact that most men are glad to believe*, etc.; substantive clause, coördinate with *cunctatio, confirmatio*, etc., in apposition to *Multae res*, line 21; W. 549; B. 299. 1; A. 333; H. 588. II. 3.

26. *non prius . . . quam*: *not . . . until*; W. 534; B. 292; A. 327; H. 605.

29. *ut explorata victoria*: ablative absolute; *as if victory were assured*.—*sarmentis virgultisque*: *fagots and brushwood*.

30. *quibus . . . compleant*: relative clause of purpose.

CHAPTER 19

PAGE 74

1. *ab imo*: *from the bottom*.

2. *magno cursu*: *at full speed, double-quick*.

3. *spati*: sc. *temporis*; partitive genitive with *minimum*, as *little time as possible*.

4. *exanimatique*: and . . . (consequently) *out of breath*.

5. *cupientibus*: dative.

7. *Factum est*: *it came to pass, the result was*.

8. *opportunitate*: this and the coordinate ablatives are causal.

10. *ut . . . ferrent . . . verterent*: sc. *hostes*; substantive clauses, subjects of *Factum est*.

11. *Quos*: the antecedent is the following *eorum*.

13. *equites*: nominative; sc. *nostri*.

17. *ut . . . sic*: *while . . . yet*.

18. *animus*: *disposition, spirit*.

19. *mollis*: *infirm*.—*minime resistens*: *not at all steadfast*.

20. *mens*: *purpose*. See note on *subita . . . consilia*, page 66, line 22.

CHAPTER 20

21. *Crassus*: with twelve cohorts and a large cavalry force; page 68, lines 22, 23.

22. *ante*: page 1, line 2.

23. *tertia pars*: this is of course an inaccurate statement, but the ancients were very ignorant of geography. It was, however, one of the three main divisions of Gaul; see page 1, lines 1-3.

25. *gerendum*: sc. *esse*.—*paucis ante annis*, etc.: twenty-two years earlier, in 78 B. C., Praeconinus and Manlius had been defeated by Hirtuleius, quaestor of Sertorius. Then the Aquitani united with Sertorius.

28. *non mediocrem*: what is litotes? W. 740; B. 375. 1; A. 209. c; H. 752. 8.

PAGE 75

2. *Tolosa*, etc.: now Toulouse, Carcassonne, and Narbonne; the first was an ancient Gallic town, the third was a Roman colony, established 118 B. C. and the capital of the "Province"; see note to page 1, line 8.

3. *finitimae*: agrees with *civitates*.

4. *evocatis*: see Introduction, page xxxvii, on *evocati*.—*Sotiatium*: southeast of Bordeaux—the name survives in the small town of Sôls, in the department of Lot-et-Garonne.

10. *Hi*: referring to *copias*, which consisted of men; this is construction according to sense; W. 294. 2; A. 182. a; H. 397.

CHAPTER 21

12. *cum*: causal.

13. *victoriis*: ablative with *freti*; W. 386; B. 218. 3; A. 254. b. 2; H. 476. 1.

14. *quid . . . possent* : indirect question, subject of *perspici*.—*imperatore* : the commander-in-chief, holding *imperium*, military authority in his own right ; any subordinate officer was properly called *dux*, the general word for a leader or commander.

15. *adulescentulo duce* : ablative absolute.

18. *oppidum* : perhaps the modern Sôs.

19. *vineas turresque . . . cuniculis . . . aggerem* : see Introduction, pages lii–lviii.

20. *Illi : hostes*.—*alias . . . alias : now . . . again*.

21. *cuius rei* : i. e. in the digging of mines ; W. 352 ; B. 204. 1 ; A. 218. a ; H. 451.

22. *locis* : W. 402. (2) ; B. 228. 1. b) ; A. 258. f. 1 ; H. 485. 2.

23. *aerariae* : *copper-mines*.—*securae* : *quarries*.—*diligentia* : causal ablative ; i. e. in digging counter-mines.

27. *faciunt* : *they did so*, i. e. *tradunt*.

CHAPTER 22

29. *summam imperi* : *the chief command*.

PAGE 76

1. *soldurios* : (*paid*) *retainers* ; a Gallic word ; cf. German *Sold*, *Soldat*, English *soldier*.

2. *condicio* : *terms of association*.

3. *commodis* : ablative with *fruantur* ; W. 387 ; B. 218. 1 ; A. 249 ; H. 477. 1.—*amicitiae* : dative.

4. *accidat* : used commonly in an unfavorable sense ; cf. page 13, line 16, and page 14, line 28.

5. *sibi mortem consciscant* : see page 4, line 6, and note.

6. *memoria* : ablative of time within which ; W. 407 ; B. 231 ; A. 256 ; H. 487.

7. *devovisset* : subjunctive by attraction ; W. 620 ; B. 324. 1 ; A. 342 ; H. 652.

8. *recusaret* : subjunctive of characteristic ; W. 588. 2 ; B. 283. 2 ; A. 320. a ; H. 591. 1.—*his* : i. e. *DC devotis*, resuming the narrative after the explanatory digression.

11. *eadem* : *the same* as the rest of the Sotiates.

CHAPTER 23

13. *Vocatium et Tarusatium* : to the north and west of the Sotiates.

16. *quibus* : *from the time when, after*.

17. *quoque versus* : *in every direction* ; *quoque* is adverbial, the ablative of *quisque*, as *quo* from *qui* ; *versus* as in *ad-versus*.

20. *citerioris Hispaniae*: *Hither or Nearer Spain*, i. e. counting from Rome. The Iberian peoples in Spain were kindred of the Aquitani. Spain had been subject to Rome for a century and a half, but was often mutinous; e. g. the Sertorian war lasted ten years, 82-72 B. C.

21. *adventu*: ablative of time when.

23. *Duces*: predicate nominative; W. 317; B. 167, 168. 2. *δ*; A. 185; H. 410. 1.

24. *Sertorio*: the great partizan of Marius and the democratic party, who set up and maintained for years in defiance of the Roman government a virtually independent authority in Spain.

26. *consuetudine populi Romani*: learned from Sertorius. The *Aquitani* were superior to the Gauls in the science of war; see page 187, line 6.

29. *Quod ubi*: *now when*.

PAGE 77

3. *in dies*: *day by day*.—*non cunctandum (esse) quin*: *that he ought, without delay, to, etc.*; B. 298; A. 319. *d*; H. 595.

CHAPTER 24

7. *duplici acie*: this made a longer front than the usual triple line, for which his numbers were too small in this case.

8. *auxiliis*: auxiliaries were ordinarily put on the wings. These were taken into the center in order that, raw and untrustworthy as they were, they might be kept steady by the legionaries on both sides of them. See line 26.

9. *expectabat*: *was waiting to see*.

12. *tutius esse*: the subject is *potiri* below, the whole clause being the object of *arbitrabantur*.—*obsessis . . . intercluso*: ablatives absolute, denoting means.

14. *sese recipere*: *to retreat*.—*impeditos . . . infirmiores*: sc. *Romanos* or *eos*.

15. *infirmiores animo*: *dispirited*; W. 396; B. 226; A. 253; H. 480.

17. *castris*: ablative of place and means.

19. *opinione timoris*: *impression of their cowardice*.—*hostes*: subject of *effecissent*.—*alacriores*; predicate accusative, agreeing with *milites*.

21. *expectari . . . oportere . . . iretur*: (*saying*) *that there ought to be no further delay in going, etc.*; *quin . . . iretur*; W. 576; B. 284. 3; 298; A. 319. *d*; H. 595.—*ad*: *against*. This is the only attack by Romans on a fortified camp, mentioned in the *Gallic War*.

CHAPTER 25

24. *telis coniectis*: *by hurling spears*.

25. *vallo*: note the absence of a preposition; W. 376; B. 214. 2; A. 243; H. 463, 464.

26. *quibus*: dative or ablative with *confidebat*; W. 330, 385; B. 187. II. *a*; 219, I. *a*; A. 227, 254. *b*; H. 426. I; 476. 3.

27. *lapidibus . . . comportandis*: ablatives of means.—*ad*: *for, to make*.

28. *aggerem*: Crassus was building a mound of turf to equal the height of the camp rampart.—*speciem . . . praeberent*: *appeared to be and created the impression that they were combatants*.

PAGE 78

2. *ex loco superiore*: i. e. from the rampart of the camp; see the same phrase, page 64, line 13.

3. *circumitis . . . castris*: *after riding around the enemy's camp*.

5. *ab*: *on the side of*, or simply *at*.—*decumana porta*: see plan of camp, Introduction, page li.

CHAPTER 26

9. *devectis*: *bringing along*.

14. *prius . . . quam . . . posset*: W. 534; B. 292. I. *b*); A. 327; H. 605. I, II.

15. *videri*: sc. *possent*.

16. *rei*: partitive genitive with *quid*; *quid rei* = *what*; do not translate *rei* separately.

18. *quod*: refers to the fact expressed in *redintegratis viribus*.—*consuevit*: *is accustomed*.

20. *per*: *over*.

22. *apertissimis campis*: this is a circumstantial ablative; the pursuit was *over* the open plains, and the open plains made the pursuit possible; the *why* as well as the *where* is expressed in the phrase, and technically we call the ablative "absolute" for want of a better name.

23. *quae*: neuter to agree with *milium*; accusative subject of *convenisse*.—*Cantabris*: a hardy nation of the western Pyrenees.

24. *multa nocte*: *late in the night*.

CHAPTER 27

28. *Tarbelli*, etc.: all tribes between the Garonne and the Pyrenees; some of their names appear in the French Tarbes, Bagnères-de-Bigorre, Eauze, Auch, Garonne, Saubusse.

PAGE 79

1. *ultima*: *most remote*; two adjectives with one noun; H. 492. 1.

CHAPTER 28

The story of Caesar's own operations, interrupted at the end of ch. 16, is here resumed.

3. *prope exacta*: see note to page 72, line 1.

4. *omni . . . pacata*: concessive; *though all the rest of Gaul was subdued*.—*Morini Menapiique*: along the low Flemish coast.

5. *supererant qui . . . essent*: *alone remained in arms*; W. 588. 2; B. 283. 2; A. 320. a; H. 591. 1.

6. *arbitratus*: translate by the present participle; W. 647; B. 336. 5; A. 290. b; H. 640. 1.

7. *qui*: *they*, i. e. the *Morini* and *Menapii*.

8. *alia . . . ac*: *other than* or *different from*; B. 341. 1. c; A. 247. d; H. 516. 3.

10. *continentes*: *continuous, unbroken*.

11. *habebant*: construe with *quod*, like *intellegebant*, line 9.—*eo*: *in eas*.

15. *evolaverunt . . . fecerunt*: sc. *hostes*.

18. *longius*: *too far*; connect with *secuti*.—*impeditioribus locis*: *over difficult ground*.

CHAPTER 20

20. *Reliquis deinceps diebus*: *during the days next following*.

21. *inermibus . . . militibus*: ablative absolute; *while the soldiers were without their arms and off their guard*.

23. *conversam ad hostem*: *with the limbs pointing toward the enemy*.—*pro*: *as, by way of*.

25. *confecto*: *cleared*.

26. *extrema impedimenta*: *the rear of their baggage trains*.—*tenerentur*: *were about to be seized*.

PAGE 80

3. *sub pellibus*: the tents were of leather; see Introduction, page lii.

6. *Aulercis Lexoviisque*: along the Seine near Evreux and Lisieux.

BOOK FOUR—B. C. 55

FIRST EXPEDITION INTO GERMANY, ch. 1-19. Various German tribes having crossed the Rhine, and some having made conquests in Gaul, Caesar resolved to make war on these invaders. They refused to leave the country at his command, but tried to gain time by insincere negotiations. He outwitted them, surprised their camp, and defeated them with great loss, and thereafter built a bridge over the Rhine, by which he crossed into Germany, where he spent eighteen days, no one daring to offer any resistance to his movements.

FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN, ch. 20-38. Though the summer was nearly over, Caesar decided to make a short expedition into Britain, from which the Gauls were in the habit of getting assistance in war. There was some delay in collecting a fleet, but at last the Channel was successfully crossed and a landing made in spite of some resistance. The Britons were at first submissive, but after the Roman fleet had suffered severely in a storm, they prepared for hostilities. After defeating them in battle, the Romans returned safely to Gaul.

CHAPTER 1

PAGE 81

1. *qui* : agrees with the predicate noun *annus* rather than with its antecedent *hieme* ; W. 301. 1 ; B. 250. 3 ; A. 199 ; H. 396. 2.—*annus* : 55 B. C. ; Pompey and Crassus were Caesar's associates in the First Triumvirate ; see Introduction, page xiv. The calendar was at this time so confused that what we call January 1, 55 B. C., was really in November, 56 B. C.

2. *consulibus* : see note to page 2, line 9.—*Usipetes . . . Tenceteri* : beyond the Rhine.—*Germani* : the general term in apposition with the particular names of tribes.

4. *Rhenum* : the historic boundary for ages between Celts and Germans. As to migrations of the Germans, see Bk. I, ch. 31 ; Bk. II, ch. 4 ; Bk. VI, ch. 24. Caesar's conquests stopped the German invasions for four or five hundred years.—*quo* : = *in quod*.

5. *Suebis* : a comprehensive term, embracing several independent tribes occupying the central part of Germany.

6. *cultura* : ablative of separation.

9. *centum pagos* : very likely there is confusion here. Caesar may have heard about the "hundred," a local division common among German peoples, brought afterward by the Saxons to England, where the name is still applied to many districts.

10. *singula milia* : *one thousand each*.

11. *bellandi causa* : purpose ; notice that *causa*, ablative, always follows the gerund ; cf. *causa transeundi*, line 5, where *causa* is nominative.

12. *illos* : those in the field.—*hi . . . illi* : *the latter . . . the former*.

13. *anno post* : W. 393 ; B. 223 ; A. 259. *d* ; H. 488. 2.

14. *ratio atque usus* : *theory and practice*.

15. *privati . . . agri* : individual ownership of land was not yet recognized, and tillage was done in common.—*neque longius anno* : they cultivated but a small portion of their land, and constantly moved to fresh places. Their methods were rude and primitive ; see Bk. VI, ch. 22. The communities were composed of kinsfolk.

17. *frumento* : ablative of means ; *vivunt* = *vescuntur*. Their life was still half nomadic, their flocks more important than their fields.—*maximam partem* : *for the most part* ; adverbial accusative.

18. *sunt in* : *engage in*.

19. *quae res* : *a habit which*, not "which habit" ; subject of *alit*, line 1, and *efficit*, line 2, of the next page.—*genere, exercitatione, libertate* : causal ablatives.

20. *a pueris* : *from childhood up*.—*officio, disciplina* : ablatives with *adsuefacti* ; B. 218. 7 ; H. 476. 3.

PAGE 82

1. *immani corpore* : as to the tall stature of the Germans, see page 27, line 27, and note.

2. *eam* : = *talem* : correlative with *ut* in the following result clause.

3. *locis frigidissimis* : *though their country is very cold* ; we must remember that Caesar was an Italian.—*vestitus* : partitive genitive.

CHAPTER 2

7. *aditus* : i. e. *ad Germanos*.—*eo* : *on this account* ; explained by the purpose clause *ut . . . habeant*.

8. *ceperint* : subjunctive by attraction.—*quibus vendant* : a clause of purpose ; *persons to whom they may sell*.—*quam quo* : *than because* ; an implied negative, like *non quo*, followed by the subjunctive ; W. 547 ; B. 286. 1. *b* ; A. 341. R ; H. 588. II. 2.

9. *iumentis* : *horses* ; connect with *utuntur*.—*quibus* : ablative ; B. 219. 1 ; A. 254. *b*.

13. *summi . . . laboris*: (*capable*) of (*enduring*) the utmost toil; W. 354; B. 203. 1; A. 215; H. 440. 3.
 15. *eodem . . . vestigio*: used like *loco*, without *in*.
 16. *usus est*: *it is necessary*.
 17. *moribus*: W. 391; B. 220. 3; A. 248. R; H. 475. 3.
 19. *quamvis pauci*: *no matter how few*.
 20. *Vinum*: cf. what is said of the *Nervii*, page 50, line 6. The *Suebi* made beer and honey-mead.

CHAPTER 3

23. *Publice*: *for a nation, as a community*.
 24. *significari*: its subject is the clause *magnum numerum . . . posse*.
 26. *una ex parte*: *on one side*. This vacant land was probably on the east.
 27. *agri . . . dicuntur*: personal construction; W. 631. 3; B. 332. c); A. 330. 6. 1; H. 611. 1.
 28. *Ubii*: northwest of the *Suebi*, in the vicinity of Cologne.
 29. *captus*: noun; *standard*.—*paulo*: connect with *pauciores*.

PAGE 83

3. *ventitant*: a frequentative verb.
 4. *moribus*: see note on *officio*, page 81, line 20.—*cum*: concessive.
 5. *experti*: active in meaning.—*amplitudinem*: *large population*.
gravitatem: *importance*.
 6. *vectigales, humiliores, infirmiores*: predicate accusatives agreeing with *Ilos*, line 4, the direct object.

CHAPTER 4

9. *causa*: *situation, condition*.
 10. *supra*: see page 81, lines 5–7.
 11. *ad extremum*: *at last*.
 13. *quas regiones*: North Brabant and the north bank of the Rhine.
 14. *ad utramque ripam*: *along both banks*.
 15. *tantae multitudinis*: i. e. of the *Usipetes* and *Tencteri*.
 16. *trans*: on the north bank.
 17. *cis*: on the south bank.
 19. *vi contendere*: *force a passage*.
 24. *oppresserunt*: do not translate “oppressed.”
 26. *trans*: to the north bank.
 29. *transierunt*: sc. *Usipetes et Tencteri*.

CHAPTER 5

PAGE 84

1. *infirmatatem*: *weakness (of purpose), fickleness.*
3. *nihil his committendum (esse)*: *that no confidence should be placed in them.*
4. *Gallicae consuetudinis*: *characteristic of the Gauls*; W. 359; B. 198. 3; A. 214. d; H. 447.
5. *uti . . . cogant*, etc.: *substantive clauses explaining hoc*, line 4.
6. *quid . . . cognoverit*: *indirect question, object of quaerant.*
10. *rebus, auditionibus*: *facts, reports.*
11. *quorum*: *genitive with paenitere*; W. 368. (1); B. 209. 1; A. 221. b; H. 457.—*in vestigio*: *immediately*; cf. *eodem vestigio*, page 82, line 15.
12. *cum*: *causal.*—*serviant*: *are slaves to.*—*plerique*: *i. e. viatores* (line 5), *et mercatores* (line 7).
13. *ad voluntatem . . . respondeant*: *make answers invented to suit the wish of their questioners.*

CHAPTER 6

14. *graviori*: *too serious* (to manage). Caesar feared that the Gauls might make common cause with the Germans against him.
15. *maturius*: *earlier in the season.* We do not know how early; the first year's campaign began in March, the second in June; we are now at the beginning of the fourth year.—*ad exercitum*: see the last sentence of Bk. III and note.
17. *facta, missas*: *sc. esse.*
18. *ab Rheno*: *i. e. forward into Gaul.*
19. *omnia*, etc.: (*with the promise*) *that everything*, etc. The direct quotation would be: *omnia quae postulaveritis a nobis parata erunt, or parabuntur.*
26. *constituit*: *decided* or perhaps *announced his decision.*

CHAPTER 7

27. *equitibus delectis*: *i. e. from the quotas of cavalry furnished by the Gallic allies.*
28. *iter . . . facere*: *to march.*—*locis*: Caesar often repeats the antecedent in the relative clause.

PAGE 85

3. *Germanos neque priores*: *that the Germans were not the first to*, etc., *i. e. not the first aggressors.*
4. *recusare . . . quin*: *refuse to.*

6. *resistere* : sc. *eis*, antecedent of *quicumque*.

7. *deprecari* : sc. *eos*.—*dicere* : sc. *se*; depending on *haec fuit oratio*.—*venisse*, *posse* : sc. *se*; depending on *dicere*.

9. *eis* : *Romanis*.—*sibi* . . . *attribuant vel patiantur*, etc. : indirect for *nobis agros attribuite vel patimini eos tenere*.

11. *unis* : *only*.

12. *possint* . . . *possint* (line 13): the former perhaps, the latter certainly, would be subjunctive of characteristic in direct discourse.—*reliquum* . . . *neminem* : *no one else*.—*in terris* : *in the world*.

CHAPTER 8

14. *visum est* : *seemed proper*; sc. *respondere*.

16. *verum* : *fair, just*.

17. *occupare* : the subject is *eos* understood, antecedent of *qui*.

18. *qui* . . . *possint* : a clause of characteristic.

19. *licere* : sc. *eis*.

20. *quorum sint*, etc. : *whose envoys (he said) were (then) with him*.

22. *hoc* . . . *imperaturum (esse)* : *that he would command the Ubii to that effect*. He held hostages of the *Ubii*; see page 90, lines 12, 13.

CHAPTER 9

24. *post diem tertium* : like *tertio die post*; *the next day but one*; the Romans counted inclusively, 1) to-day, 2) to-morrow, 3) day after to-morrow.

25. *propius se* : B. 141. 3; A. 234. *e*; H. 420. 5.—*id ne* . . . *moveret*, i. e. two days' delay.

26. *ab* : *from*, not "by."

PAGE 86

1. *trans* : to the west bank; the main body was between the Meuse (Maas) and the Rhine.

CHAPTER 10

3. *Vosego* : in fact the Meuse (Maas) flows not from the Vosges Mountains, but from the plateau of Langres. It is the Moselle which rises in the Vosges.

4. *parte* : *branch*. The Rhine divides in this low, marshy country, and one branch of it, the Waal (*Vacalus*) runs into the Meuse (Maas) near Bois-le-Duc (Hertogenbosch).

6. *inde milibus* . . . *lxxx* : i. e. eighty miles from its junction with the Waal.

7. *ex* : *in the country of*. The source of the Rhine is in the canton of the Grisons, eastern Switzerland.

8. *longo spatio*: about 850 miles.—*Nantuatium*: this tribe, in Bk. III, ch. 1, is placed on the Rhone, south of the Lake of Geneva. The list of nations on the Rhine, moreover, is not complete.

10. *citatus*: swiftly.

11. *partes*: *branches*; there are, besides the Waal, the New Yssel, the Lek, and the Vecht.

13. *sunt qui . . . existimantur*: *some are thought*.

15. *capitibus*: *mouths*; oftener it means "sources."

CHAPTER 11

16. *milibus*: ablative of degree of difference with *abesset*; *amplius* does not affect the case of nouns with numerals as an ordinary comparative. Caesar had advanced nearer to the Germans while the envoys were absent; see page 85, lines 25, 26.

17. *ut erat constitutum*: referring to the return of the envoys; see page 85, lines 23, 24.

18. *congressi*: *meeting him*.

20. *antececessissent*: subjunctive because logically subordinate to *praemitteret*, being stated as a part of the request of the ambassadors.

21. *praemitteret*: *send word forward*.—*sibi*: the *Usipetes* and *Tencteri*.

22. *quorum si*: *and if their*.

23. *fidem fecisset*: *should give a pledge*; *fecisset* agrees with its nearest subject, *senatus*.

24. *se usuros (esse)*: *that they* (the *Usipetes* and *Tencteri*) *would accept*.

25. *daret*: sc. *petebant ut*.

26. *eodem illo pertinere*: *had the same purpose*, i. e. to gain time; lit. "tended in that same direction."

PAGE 87

1. *aquationis causa*: to get water; a small stream, the Niers, lay between him and the German camp; i. e. supposing the two armies to have been near the ancient junction of the Maas and Waal; see page 89, lines 12, 13, and note.

2. *convenirent*: direct discourse, *convenite*.

4. *qui nuntiarent ne*: (*men*) *to tell them not to*, etc.

7. *accessisset*: in direct discourse this would be subjunctive, but perfect tense, *sustinete quoad accesserim*; W. 533; B. 293. III. 2; A. 328; H. 603. II.

CHAPTER 12

9. *cum* : *while, although*.

10. *equites* : accusative, the case not being affected by *amplius*. Tacitus (*Germania* 32) says that the Tencteri were famous for their cavalry.

11. *trans Mosam* : see chapter 9.

13. *indutiis* : *for a truce*, dative of purpose.—*his* : the latter, i. e. *nostris*.

16. *subfossis . . . deiectis* : *after stabbing the horses and unhorsing a good many of our men*.

19. *agminis* : the main body of the army, who were following.

20. *ex equitibus* : when is the ablative with *ex* preferred to the partitive genitive? The German cavalry was better than the Gallic, and was used later by Caesar, as appears repeatedly in Book VII.

21. *Piso Aquitanus* : no doubt an Aquitanian who had obtained Roman citizenship, and assumed, as usual, a Roman name ; see note on *Procellum*, page 36, line 2.

22. *genere* : ablative of source.—*regnum* : see note on *regnum*, page 3, line 10.

23. *obtinerat* : do not translate : "had obtained."—*amicus* : see note on *amicus*, page 3, line 11.

CHAPTER 13

PAGE 88

1. *iam* : *any longer* ; Caesar could not trust his Gallic cavalry after the German cavalry arrived.

4. *expectare* : this is the subject of *summae dementiae esse* ; *that it was (a proof) of the utmost folly to expect*.

6. *dementiae* : predicate genitive, like *consuetudinis*, page 84, line 4.

7. *eos* : *Gallos*.—*auctoritatis* : *prestige*.

8. *quibus* : i. e. *Gallis* ; indirect object of *dandum*.

9. *nihil spati* : *no time*.

11. *quaestore* : see note on *singulos*, etc., page 38, line 24. The quaestorship was an office, like most Roman magistracies, lasting one year. But the *legati* served an indefinite period.—*ne quem diem*, etc. : *in order not to miss any opportunity of battle*.

13. *diei* : W. 348 ; B. 201. 3. *a* ; A. 223. *e* ; H. 446. 5.—*perfidia* : by accusing the Germans, Caesar diverts attention from his own rather sharp practice at this point. It is hard to explain why so many of the Germans put themselves into his power if their designs were treacherous.

15. *simul . . . simul* : *not only . . . but also, or partly . . . partly*.

16. *purgandi sui* : W. 642 ; B. 339. 5 ; A. 298. *a* ; H. 626. 3 —*contra atque* : *contrary to what* ; B. 341. 1. *c* ; A. 247. *d* ; H. 508. 5 ; 516. 3.

CHAPTER 4

28. *evocaverat*: sc. *Caesar*.

PAGE 107

2. *eius*: *Cingetorigis*.—*intellegebat*: sc. *Caesar*.—*magni interesse*: W. 361, 369. (c); B. 211. 3; A. 252. a; H. 449. 3.—5. *graviter tulit*: *took to heart, was deeply grieved at*.—6. *et qui*: *and although he*; W. 586. 7; B. 283. 3. b); A. 320. c; H. 593. 2.

CHAPTER 5

10. *Meldis*: generally supposed to be the tribe about the modern Meaux, on the Marne (*Matrona*), near its junction with the Seine (*Sequana*); but there are reasons for supposing that another tribe somewhere near the channel coast may be meant.—14. *numero*: ablative of specification.—15. *in se fidem*: *loyalty to himself*.

CHAPTER 6

20. *ante*: Bk. I, ch. 16–20.—23. *Accedebat huc quod*, etc.: *besides this Dumnorix had said*.—25. *graviter ferebant*: the *Haedui* elected annual magistrates (*vergobreti*, page 11, line 29, and note), and would resent such interference by Caesar. We do not know that Caesar ever said anything of the sort to Dumnorix, but see the cases of Commius, Bk. IV, ch. 21; Tasgetius, Bk. V, ch. 25; Cavarinus, Bk. V, ch. 54.—29. *Ille*: Dumnorix.

PAGE 108

1. *navigandi*: *insuetus* is followed by the genitive, dative, or accusative with *ad*; W. 352; B. 204. 1; A. 218. a; H. 453. 2.—2. *religionibus*: *religious scruples*.—7. *feri*: infinitive of indirect discourse; *saying* is implied in *territare*.—10. *fidem*: . . . *interponere*: *gave a promise to the rest* (those not in Caesar's hands); historical infinitive.—11. *ex usu*: *to the interest of*, lit. "of use to."

CHAPTER 7

14. *Qua re*: the speech of Dumnorix in the council of the *Haedui*.—15. *dignitatis*: *respect*.—18. *quid*: adverbial accusative.—19. *eo loco*: i. e. *Portus Itius*.—20. *Corus*: a northwest wind.—21. *omnis temporis*: *of every season*.—22. *dabat operam*: *was taking pains*.—24. *tempestatem*: see note to page 95, line 4.—26. *impeditis*: *busy, occupied*.

18. *capitum*: *souls*; cf. page 20, line 11, and note.—~~ccccxxx~~
miliū: 430,000 seems an incredible number; the same proportion as among the Helvetians in Book I would give 130,000 fighting men. No words are so often copied erroneously as numbers.

20. *discedendi potestatem*: if they had been as treacherous as Caesar alleged, we wonder why he treated them so leniently.

22. *libertatem*: *permission to remain*. When the Roman Senate voted a thanksgiving for this victory, Cato, Caesar's enemy, proposed to surrender Caesar to the Germans on account of his breach of faith with them.

CHAPTER 16

25. *illa*: *the following*.

26. *iustissima*: *the strongest*.

27. *suis quoque rebus*: *on their own account also*; emphasis on *suis*.

29. *Accessit . . . quod*: *and besides*.

PAGE 90

2. *quam . . . commemoravi . . . transisse*: *which, as I mentioned above, had crossed*, etc. Here Caesar the author speaks in the first person; Caesar the actor in the narrative is in the third person.—*supra*: ch. 9.

5. *Sugamborum*: living north of the *Ubi*.

6. *Ad quos*: i. e. *Sugambros*.

7. *intulissent*: subjunctive by attraction, depending on *dederent*.—*dederent*: on the absence of *ut* see B. 295. 8; A. 331. f. R; H. 565. 4.

8. *imperium Rhenum*: respectively object and subject of *finire*.

9. *se invito*: *against his (Caesar's) will*; ablative absolute.

10. *imperi, potestatis*: predicative possessive genitives.

11. *postularet*: in direct discourse, *postules*; deliberative subjunctive; W. 493; B. 277; A. 268, 334. *o*; H. 559. 4.

12. *Ubi autem*, etc.: another reason for Caesar's crossing the Rhine.—*nni*: *alone, only*.

15. *occupationibus rei publicae*: *by the demands of public business*.—*id facere*: a subjunctive with *ne, quo minus*, or *quin* is more usual after a verb of hindering or preventing; W. 514; B. 295. 3; A. 331. *c*. 2; H. 568. 8; 595. 2.

17. *transportaret*: coordinate with *ferret*, line 14, depending on *orabant*; the direct quotation would be *fer . . . transporta*.

18. *futurum (esse)*: sc. *saying*, from *orabant*, line 14.

19. *eius*: i. e. *Caesaris*.—*Ariovisto pulso*: *since the defeat of Ariovistus*; described in Bk. I, ch. 47–53.

22. *possent*: sc. *Ubi*.

CHAPTER 17

24. Rhenum transire: it can not be determined with complete certainty where Caesar's bridge was built; most probably it was somewhere between Coblenz (Confluentes) and Andernach. There is, moreover, a strong reason for thinking that the rout of the Usipetes and Tencteri was near the junction of the Rhine and Moselle. There are also arguments in favor of Bonn as the site of the bridge. Mr. T. Rice Holmes, in his *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul*, comes to the conclusion that this bridge, as well as the second one described in Bk. VI, ch. 9, was "built between Andernach and Coblenz." This opinion has received strong confirmation by the discoveries and excavations of Nissen and Koenen, below Urmitz, a village midway between Andernach and Coblenz, an account of which was published in *Caesars Rheinfestung* (*Sonderabdruck aus Bonner Jahrbücher*, Heft 104).

25. neque satis tutum: because his communications and line of retreat might be cut off.

27. dignitatis: predicate genitive.

28. proponebatur: *presented itself*.—**latitudinem**: about 1,400 feet. The depth varies much.

PAGE 91

1. Rationem: plan.—**Tigna bina sesquipedalia**: *pairs of timbers a foot and a half thick*, doubtless unhewn, driven into the bed of the river.

2. dimensa: *of length proportioned*.

3. intervallo, etc.: the timbers were in pairs, those of each pair being separated from each other by a space of two feet. They were driven into the bed of the river slanting (*prone ac fastigate*) down-stream (*ut secundum . . . procumbent*).

4. cum: *whenever, when in each instance*; W. 532. 2; B. 288. 3; A. 280. (2); H. 601. 4.

5. sublicae modo: *like a pile*, i. e. perpendicularly.

7. secundum naturam: *in the direction of the current*.—**eis . . . contraria**: *opposite these*.

8. duo: sc. *tigna sesquipedalia*. Each of these pairs was forty feet (measured on the bottom of the river, or on the surface of the water) below the corresponding pair of the former timbers. These latter pairs slanted up-stream.

9. quadragenum: genitive plural; B. 25. 6; A. 40. e; H. 169. The distributive numeral is properly used, because the distance was forty feet in each instance.—**ab inferiore parte**: *at the bottom*.—**contra . . . conversa**: *slanting against*.

10. *Haec utraque . . . distinebantur*: these two pairs were held apart.

11. *bipedalibus trabibus*: each *trabs bipedalis* just fitted into the two-foot space between the two timbers of each pair of *tigna sesquipedalia*.—*quantum . . . distabat*: as much as the space between the timbers of each pair.

12. *binis . . . parte*: by a pair of cross-ties at the upper end (of each pier). A *fibula* is ordinarily a clasp on the principle of a "safety-pin." These may have been wooden clamps with an iron bolt run through them, or, more probably, they may have been bound in their places with cords.

13. *quibus disclusis . . . revinctis*: when these (the pairs of timbers) had been held apart and braced in opposite directions, i. e. slanting up and down the stream.

15. *rerum*: the structure, considered as consisting of many parts.—*quo maior . . . hoc artius*: the greater . . . the more closely.

17. *Haec derecta materia*, etc.: These (*bipediales trabes*) were connected by timber laid on them, running lengthwise of the bridge (*derecta*) and covered over with planks (*longuriis*) and wickerwork (*cratibus*).

18. *sublicae . . . agebantur*: piles were driven down slantwise (*oblique*) below the piers (*ad inferiorem partem fluminis*) to act as buttresses (*pro ariete*).

21. *aliae item*: other piles were driven a short distance above the bridge, perhaps in groups of three, to protect the piers against the blows of any heavy bodies floated down by the enemy in order to break them. The arrangement of these piles can be only guessed at.

22. *spatio*: degree of difference with *supra*.

24. *neu* = *neve*; and that . . . not; B. 282. 1. *d*; H. 568. 6.

CHAPTER 18

26. *Diebus x, quibus*: within ten days from the time when. A very rapid piece of work. There are now very few bridges over the Rhine. Caesar's engineers were excellent, but his own inspiring presence always made work go on faster than it did in his absence.—*coepta erat*: passive because *comportari* is so; B. 133. 1; A. 143. a; H. 299. 1.

28. *praesidio*: a garrison, in a fort (*castellum*) at each end of the bridge; what is called a *tête-de-pont*.—*in fines Sugambrorum*: i. e. to the northeast of the place of crossing.

PAGE 92

3. *eis*: those who escaped over the Rhine from the slaughter described in ch. 15.—*ex*: of the number of.

5. *in*: takes the accusative on account of the idea of motion in *se . . . abdidérant*, had gone and hidden themselves.

CHAPTER 19

6. eorum : i. e. *Sugambrorum*.

9. pollicitus : sc. *se daturum*, conclusion of *si . . . premerentur* ; direct discourse: *dabo, si . . . prememini* ; W. 615 ; B. 319 ; A. 337 ; H. 646.

12. uti . . . demigrarent : depends on *hortantes* or some similar word implied in the expression *nuntios . . . dimisisse*. The subject of *demigrarent* is the *Suebi* in general.

15. Hunc : sc. *locum*.—medium fere : predicative ; *as being about in the center*.

17. decertare : *to decide the issue*, by a battle.

18. omnibus eis rebus confectis : *as he had accomplished all the objects* ; *rebus* is explained by its appositives, the three following *ut*-clauses.

21. obsidione : the Ubii had been constantly beset by the Suebi, overpowered by them, and made to pay tribute ; see page 83, lines 4–8.

23. profectum (*esse*) : from *proficio* not *proficiscor* ; *satis* is its subject.—*arbitratus* : *thinking* ; see note on page 43, line 29. Caesar accomplished by this expedition very little in the way of material results. It is likely, however, that he intended little more than to produce a moral effect by a “demonstration in force” on the German side of the Rhine.

CHAPTER 20

25. Exigua . . . reliqua : ablative absolute.

26. quod . . . vergit : *since all Gaul lies far north*, i. e. as compared with Italy.

28. omnibus . . . bellis : ablative of time when.

29. subministrata auxilia : this may have been a pretext rather than a reason ; the help furnished can not have been of very material importance ; see page 68, lines 3, 4 ; page 49, lines 19–21. Caesar was the first Roman, so far as we know, to visit Britain, and the earliest ancient author to write from a personal knowledge of the country.—*si* : = *etsi*.

PAGE 93

2. adisset : for the future perfect of direct discourse ; *magno mihi usui erit si . . . adiero*, etc. ; *modo* is here an adverb, *only*.

4. quae omnia : *and all these things*. But the Veneti must have known about them.

5. Neque . . . temere . . . quisquam : *hardly any one* ; *temere* with a negative = *facile*.

6. his ipsis : i. e. *mercatoribus* ; *and even to them*.

7. Gallias : plural, because the separate divisions of Gaul are thought of, *Celtica* and *Belgica*.—*vocatis . . . mercatoribus* : *though he called the traders*.

8. *neque . . . neque . . . poterat*: *could find out neither . . . nor*, etc.

9. *quanta . . . quae . . . quem*, etc.: the indirect questions introduced by these words depend upon *reperire*.

10. *incolerent*: sc. *eam*, i. e. *insulam*.—*usum*: *skill*.—*belli*: objective genitive.

CHAPTER 21

15. *idoneum*: yet he did not actually succeed in his errand.—*navi longa*: see Introduction, page lix.

18. *Morinos*: this tribe lived nearest to Britain, which was visible in clear weather from their shores, and in their territory are situated Boulogne, Calais, and Ostend.

19. *Huc*: to the coast of the *Morini*.

20. *quam . . . classem*: = *eam classem quam*.—*ad*: *for*.—*ad Veneticum bellum*: see page 67, lines 4-7.

24. *polliceantur*: subjunctive of purpose.—*dare*: i. e. *se daturus esse*; the use of the present infinitive with a verb of promising is colloquial, but not rare in Caesar.

25. *imperio*: dative with *ob-temperare*.

28. *Atrebatibus*: conquered along with the Nervii in B. C. 57; see page 43, line 23; page 50, line 18; page 54, lines 11-17.

29. *ibi*: among the *Atrebates*.

30. *fidelem*: yet he too turned against the Romans in B. C. 52; see pages 216, 217.

PAGE 94

1. *magni*: genitive of indefinite value.

2. *possit*: W. 620; B. 324. 1; A. 342; H. 652.—*adeat . . . hortetur . . . nuntiet*: W. 512; B. 295. 8; A. 331; H. 565.

3. *fidem sequantur*: *put themselves under the protection of, give their allegiance to*.—*se*: i. e. *Caesarem*.

5. *qui*: *inasmuch as he*; a clause of characteristic. Caesar seems to be laughing at Volusenus, whose opportunities for investigation were certainly very limited.

7. *quaeque . . . perspexisset*: *and what he had observed*: indirect question.

CHAPTER 22

8. *in his locis*: in the country of the *Morini*.

9. *moratur*: historical present with *dum*.

10. *superioris temporis*: the preceding year; see page 79, lines 4-6.

11. *quod . . . fecissent* : implied or informal indirect discourse, the statement of the envoys.—*homines barbari* : *being barbarians*.—*consuetudinis* : i. e. the habit of kindly receiving nations which submitted ; genitive with *imperiti* ; W. 352 ; B. 204. 1 ; A. 218. a ; H. 451. 1.

13. *imperasset* : = *imperavisset* ; (*se*) *facturos (esse)* ; indirect form : *quae imperaveris faciemus*.

15. *belli gerendi* : connect with *facultatem*.

16. *anni tempus* : it was now August ; cf. *Exigua parte aestatis reliqua*, page 92, line 25.

17. *tantularum* : *so trifling*.—*occupationes* : plural of an abstract noun ; A. 75. 3. c ; H. 138. 2.

18. *cis* : i. e. *Morinis*.

21. *duas . . . legiones* : the 7th, see page 100, line 4 ; and 10th, see page 96, line 20 ; allowing 3,600 men for each, we should have 90 men to a ship.

22. *quod . . . navium longarum* : *what (of) galleys, the galleys which*.

24. *Huc accedebant* : *there were besides*.

25. *a . . . viii* : *eight miles off*. The harbor where the eighteen *naves onerariae* were may have been Ambleteuse if *Portus Itius* was Boulogne ; Calais, if it was Wissant.—*tenebantur quominus* : *were prevented from*, etc.

26. *eundem portum* : *Portus Itius*, probably ; see page 105, line 16. This may have been Boulogne or, more probably, Wissant. It must have been somewhere between Boulogne and Calais. The coast is much altered since Caesar's time.—*equitibus* : their number is not stated. It is likely that 200 or 300 horsemen were ordinarily attached to a legion, and two legions were taken on this expedition. See Introduction, page xxxviii.

29. *ducendum* : connect with *exercitum* ; W. 644. 2 ; B. 337. 7. b) 2) ; A. 294. d ; H. 622.

CHAPTER 28

PAGE 95

4. *tempestatem* : *weather*, good or bad, as the context implies.—*iii . . . vigilia* : i. e. about midnight ; see Introduction, page lii. It has been calculated that on August 26th the tide was high at 7.30 P. M. ; ships could go out at half-tide.—*solvit* : sc. *naves* ; *cast off* ; we say *weighed anchor*, or *set sail*.

5. *ulteriorem portum* : see note to page 94, line 25.

6. *paulo tardius* : they sailed three days later ; page 98, lines 9-12.—*esset administratum* : *the movement was executed*.

7. *hora . . . iiii* : at that date the fourth hour was about 8.30 to 9.40 A. M. ; the phrase ordinarily means either the period from the beginning to the end of the hour ; or, if a point of time, the close of the hour, not its beginning ; see Introduction, page lii, foot-note. The distance from Boulogne to Dover is about thirty miles. Caesar lay at anchor off Dover till about 3.30 P. M.

8. *Britanniam attigit* : near Dover.

10. *ita . . . anguste . . . continebatur* : *was so closely hemmed in* ; referring to the perpendicular cliffs (*montibus*) which rise from a narrow beach.

13. *dum . . . convenirent* : *till the rest of the ships could come up* ; W. 533 ; B. 293. III. 2 ; A. 328 ; H. 603. II. 2.

14. *horam nonam* : 2.20 to 3.30 P. M.

15. *quae . . . cognovisset . . . vellet* : indirect questions.

16. *Voluseno* : see page 93, line 15.

17. *monuit* : the clause depending directly on this word is *aa nutum . . . omnes res . . . administrarentur*.—*ut . . . ut : as . . . as*.—*rei militaris ratio* : *the art of war*.—*maritimae res* : *the conditions of navigation*.

18. *postulerent* : attracted from *postulant* by dependence on *administrarentur*.—*ut quae . . . haberent* : *since they involve* ; a clause of characteristic ; W. 587 ; B. 283. 3. a) ; A. 320. e ; H. 592 ; *quae* here is *maritimae res*.

19. *ad nutum* : *at the signal*.

20. *administrarentur* : subjunctive in substantive clause, object of *monuit*, line 17.—*dimissis* : *sent to their posts* ; *di*- has a distributive sense.

21. *aestum* : at this point the tide must have turned eastward and northward about 6.30 P. M.—*secundum* : favorable.

23. *progressus* : toward the northeast.—*aperto . . . litore* : between Walmer and Deal, seven miles northeast of Dover.

CHAPTER 24

25. *essedariis* : *fighters in war-chariots* ; described in ch. 33.—*quo . . . genere* : *a kind (of combatants) which*.

26. *navibus egredi* : *from disembarking* ; infinitive instead of the more usual *ne*- or *quominus*-clause after a verb of hindering.

29. *militibus* : dative of agent with *desiliendum*, etc.

PAGE 96

2. *pressis* : agrees with *militibus* ; *weighed down as they were*.

4. *cum* : *while* ; it introduces a clause describing the situation rather than defining the time of the main action.—*illi* : the enemy.

6. *insuefactos* : *trained*.

CHAPTER 25

10. *naves*: subject of *removeri*, *incitari*, and *constitui*.

11. *inusitatio*: *less familiar* than that of the *naves onerariae*, which were propelled by sails, not by oars.

13. *latus apertum*: here, as usual, the right flank, as the shields were carried on the left arms.

14. *inde*: from the galleys.—*tormentis*: *engines*; see Introduction, page lviii.

15. *quae res*: *a maneuver which*.

20. *qui*: = *is qui* (the *aquilifer*; see Introduction, page xlv); *is*, understood, is the subject of *inquit*.—*x legionis*: as usual, it is the famous 10th legion which distinguishes itself.—*obtestatus*: *invoking*; his words directly quoted would be: *Quod vobis feliciter eveniat, desilite*, etc.—*ea res*: *his act*.

22. *ego certe . . . officium praestitero*: *I at least shall have done my duty*; W. 459; B. 264. a; A. 281. R; H. 540. 1.

24. *magna*: *loud*.

26. *inter se*: *each other*.—*dedecus*: i. e. *the loss of the legionary eagle*; see Introduction, page xlv.

27. *universi*: *all together, in a body*.

28. *conspexissent*: the subject of this verb and of *adpropinquaverunt* is *ei* (*qui in proximis navibus erant*).—*subsecuti*: *hos* is the object of this as well as of *conspexissent*.

CHAPTER 26

PAGE 97

1. *ab utrisque*: *on both sides*.

2. *firmiter insistere*: *to get a solid footing*.

3. *poterant*: this and the following imperfects are descriptive.—*alius alia*, etc.: *men from different ships*, etc.; W. 437. 2; B. 253. 2; A. 203. c; H. 516. 1.

6. *ubi . . . conspexerant . . . adoriebantur*: these tenses express repeated occurrence; W. 532. 2; B. 287. 2; A. 322, 309. c; H. 602. 2.

8. *plures* (sc. *hostes*) *paucos* (sc. *Romanos*).

10. *scaphas*: *rowboats, skiffs*.

11. *speculatoria navigia*: *scouting vessels*, light and swift.—*quos . . . conspexerat . . . submittebant*: compare this with *ubi . . . conspexerant . . . adoriebantur*, line 6.

13. *simul*: = *simul atque*, as soon as.—*in arido*: *on dry land*.—*suis omnibus consecutis*: *and all their comrades had joined them*.

15. *neque*: *and yet . . . not*.—*longius*: *very far*.

16. *equites* : they were still in port waiting for a favorable wind ; see page 94, lines 24-27.—*capere* : to reach, to “make.”

17. *pristinam fortunam* : *his former* (i. e. *his usual*) *luck*. Caesar firmly believed in his Fortune ; see Introduction, page xix.

CHAPTER 27

21. *daturos (esse)* : *sc. se.*—*quaeque* : = *et ea quae.*—*impressasset* : direct discourse : *quae imperaveris faciemus.*

23. *supra* : page 93, line 28.—*demonstraveram* : again the author, as such, speaks in the first person ; cf. *dixeramus*, page 41, line 4, and note.

24. *egressum* : *when he had landed.*—*cum* : concessive.

25. *oratoris modo* : *in the character of an envoy.*

29. *ignosceretur* : impersonal ; *sc. sibi.*

PAGE 98

2. *bellum sine causa* : this is rather cool, when they were simply resisting an armed invasion of their country.

3. *ignoscere* : *sc. se.*

5. *arcessitam* : = *cum arcessita esset.*

CHAPTER 28

9. *post diem quartum* : = *quarto die post* ; *three days later*, according to our method of counting, i. e. August 30th.

11. *supra* : in ch. 22.—*sustulerant* : *had picked up, taken on board.*

12. *superiore portu* ; referred to, page 94, lines 24, 25.—*solverunt* : *sc. naves* ; as page 95, line 4 ; see note.

14. *tempestas* : here *a storm* ; it blew down the strait of Dover from the North Sea.

16. *inferiorem partem* : a lower point on the coast, southwest of Deal.

18. *deicerentur* : *were driven.*

19. *complerentur* : *they began to fill.*—*adversa nocte* : *though night was coming on*, lit. “in the face of night.”—*in altum provectae* : *putting out to sea.*

20. *continentem* : *the mainland, the coast of Gaul.*

CHAPTER 29

21. *Eadem nocte* : probably August 30th-31st, when the moon was full at 3 A. M.—*qui dies* : *and this day*, i. e. this period of the moon.

22. *aestus* : the tide in the Mediterranean is hardly perceptible, while at Dover the highest tide is said to rise nineteen feet and at Boulogne twenty-five feet,

- 24. *naves* : object of *complebat*.
- 27. *adflictabat* : *dashed about*.
- 28. *administrandi* : *of managing, handling*.
- 29. *funibus . . . amissis* : *from the loss of cables, etc.*

PAGE 99

- 2. *magna . . . perturbatio* : hyperbaton ; W. 740 ; B. 350. II. a) ; A. 386 ; H. 751. 5.
- 4. *quibus . . . possent* : relative clause of characteristic after a negative antecedent.
- 5. *usui* : dative of tendency, or purpose, or service, as it is variously called.
- 6. *omnibus constabat* : *all were sure, it was generally agreed*.
- 7. *in hiemem* : *for the winter*.

CHAPTER 30

- 8. *principes* : subject of *duxerunt*, line 14.
- 12. *quae . . . erant* : *which was*, not "were," agreeing with *castra*.
—*hoc* : *for this reason*.
- 13. *impedimentis* : the heavier baggage had been left in Gaul.
- 14. *optimum* : predicate accusative with *duxerunt*, neuter to agree with *prohibere* and *producere* ; *factu* : W. 655 ; B. 340. 2 ; A. 303. R ; H. 635.
- 15. *frumento, commeatu, reditu* : ablatives of separation.—*rem . . . producere* : *to prolong the campaign*.
- 16. *his . . . interclusis* : ablatives absolute, equivalent to conditional clauses.
- 19. *ex castris* : i. e. from the Roman camp where they had gathered about Caesar.—*suos* : *their followers*.

CHAPTER 31

- 21. *cognoverat* : *knew*, not "had known" ; B. 262. A ; A. 279. e ; H. 299. 2.
- 22. *ex eventu navium* : *from the fate of his ships*.—*ex eo* : *from the circumstance*.
- 23. *suspiciabatur* : *was beginning to suspect*.
- 24. *ad omnes casus* : *for any emergency*.
- 26. *quae . . . naves, earum* : translate as if it were *earum navium quae*.
- 27. *aere* : used to sheathe the beaks of galleys and for the bolts, etc., of all the vessels.
- 28. *ad eas res* : *for that purpose*.

PAGE 100

1. reliquis: sc. *navibus*.—2. *satis commode*: with tolerable comfort.

CHAPTER 32

5. cum: causal.—*hominum*: the natives.

6. *ventitaret*: frequentative verb; W. 273. 2; B. 155. 2; A. 167. 6; H. 364.

7. *in statione*: on guard; usually a cohort guarded each of the four gates.

8. *quam consuetudo ferret*: than usual.

9. *in ea parte*: in that direction.

10. *id quod erat*: as the fact was.—*novi*: connect with *consili*; partitive genitive.

11. *initum*: sc. *esse*.—*cohortes*: of the 10th legion; Caesar took with him the four that were guarding the gates, ordered two others to take their places at the gates, and the remaining four to follow him as soon as they could get ready.

13. *armari*: reflexive; W. 442. 3; B. 256. 1; A. III. a; H. 407. We use the active voice in this way, *to arm*.

15. *paulo longius*: some little distance.—*suos*: the men of the 7th legion.

16. *sustinere*: were holding their own, standing their ground.—*conferta*: crowded together.

19. *una*: only one.—*suspicati*: supposing.

20. *dispersos, occupatos*: sc. *nostros*, object of *adorti*.

22. *incertis ordinibus*: as their ranks were in disorder.

CHAPTER 33

24. *ex essedis*: an adjective phrase, modifying *pugnae*. These war-chariots were not armed with scythes, like those of the Persians. They were drawn by two horses and carried several fighters (*essedarii*) and a driver (*auriga*). After approaching close to the enemy the fighters leaped out and the driver withdrew a little; if the fighters were hard pressed the chariots drove up and rescued them.

26. *equorum*: subjective genitive; caused by the horses.—*ordines*: of their enemies.

27. *cum se . . . insinuaverunt*: when they have worked their way in among.—*equitum turmas*: we can not be sure whether the Britons or the Romans are intended by this phrase.

PAGE 101

1. illi: the fighters.
2. expeditum: ready, easy.
3. praestant: display.
4. tantum . . . efficiunt: they become so expert.
5. incitatos: at full speed.—sustinere: to check.
6. brevi: in a moment; sc. tempore or spatio.
7. iugo: this rested on the necks of the horses and held up the pole of the chariot.

CHAPTER 34

9. perturbatis nostris: dative, indirect object of tulit.
13. alienum: unfavorable.
14. suo: favorable (to himself).
15. nostris omnibus occupatis: i. e. fortifying their camp and gathering supplies.—qui erant, etc.: i. e. the Britons.
16. discesserunt: i. e. to join the army of defense, or into strong places.
18. quae . . . continerent . . . prohiberent: such as to confine . . . prevent.

CHAPTER 35

26. idem: subject of fore, explained by the clause ut . . . effugerent.
28. equites . . . xxx: so small a number were of no use in battle, but valuable in pursuit of the routed foe.
29. ante: page 93, lines 28–31.

PAGE 102

2. diutius: very long.
3. ac: but.—tanto spatio: distance may be regarded as degree of difference (ablative) or extent of space (accusative).
4. secuti: sc. nostri, which is the subject of occiderunt.—quantum . . . potuerunt: as far as their strength enabled them to run.

CHAPTER 36

10. ante: page 98, lines 3, 4.
11. æquinocti: the equinox is, or is thought to be, a stormy time. Napoleon III puts the return to Gaul on September 11th or 12th, making the whole stay in Britain nearly three weeks.
12. hiemi: stormy weather.—non: put the negative, in translating, with subiciendam.
16. capere: to "make," i. e. to reach.

17. *paulo infra*: i. e. to the southwestward. The tide runs west along the French coast while still running east in mid-Channel. We are not told whether the two ships were stranded or reached a harbor.

CHAPTER 87

18. *Quibus*: the two ships last mentioned.—*circiter ccc*: we can not make any inference as to the size of a legion, because there is no reason to suppose the ships were of uniform size, and the largest of them would be apt to be most unmanageable.

19. *castra*: probably P. Sulpicius Rufus's camp at the harbor of Boulogne or Wissant; page 95, line 1.

21. *primo*: adverb.—*non ita*: *not so very*.

22. *circumsteterunt*: sc. *eos*, i. e. the three hundred soldiers.

23. *ponere*: = *deponere*, to lay down.—*orbe facto*: *forming a circle*, so as to face in all directions at once. The officers and the baggage, if there was any, would occupy the center.

24. *ad*: *on hearing*, or *in answer to*.

CHAPTER 88

PAGE 103

4. *eis legionibus*: 7th and 10th.

6. *siccitates*: the plural indicates the condition of several swamps.

7. *quo se recipere*: *to retreat to*; W. 586. 1; B. 282. 2; A. 317. 2; H. 590.

8. *superiore anno*: see Bk. III, chs. 28, 29.

10. *in Menapiorum fines*: see page 94, lines 27–30.

13. *in Belgis . . . hiberna*: the legions would thus be nearer to Britain in the spring, and in the meantime would keep the Belgic Gauls in good order.

16. *neglexerunt*: sc. *obsides mittere*. Thus the tangible results of the invasion were insignificant.

17. *supplicatio*: see note on page 61, line 17. The mind of the Roman public was greatly impressed by Caesar's crossing of the Rhine and of the Channel.

BOOK FIVE—B. C. 54

SECOND INVASION OF BRITAIN, ch. 1-23. Having resolved upon a more effective invasion of Britain, Caesar orders a fleet to be assembled at Portus Itius, where, after quieting disturbances in Illyricum and settling a dispute between rival chiefs of the Treviri, he gathers his troops for the voyage. Dumnorix, the Haeduan, intending to take advantage of Caesar's absence, deserts on the eve of his departure, but is pursued and slain. Landing on the south coast of England, Caesar puts the natives to flight. The narrative is interrupted by an account of the island and its inhabitants. Caesar marches inland in spite of vigorous resistance, receives the submission of many tribes, and then returns to Gaul.

THE WAR WITH AMBIORIX, ch. 24-54. Grain being scarce, Caesar divides his army for the winter. One camp, that of Sabinus and Cotta, is attacked, and by treacherous promises of Ambiorix the Romans are induced to leave it. On the march they are destroyed by the enemy. Quintus Cicero, in command of another detachment, when similarly attacked, defends himself gallantly until he is rescued by Caesar's advance to his relief. The proposed attack on the camp of Labienus is abandoned for the time, but almost all Gaul is stirred up. Later Indutiomarus attacks Labienus, but is defeated and slain. The episodes of this season are the most exciting in the whole narrative of the Gallic War.

CHAPTER 1

PAGE 104

1. *L. Domitio Ap. Claudio consulibus*: 54 B. C.; see note to page 2, line 9.—2. *hibernis*: see page 103, line 14.—*Italiam*: i. e. his province of Cisalpine Gaul, called Italy, as opposed to Gaul beyond the Alps; see note to page 7, line 15.—3. *uti . . . aedificandas . . . curret*: *that they should have built*; W. 644. 2; B. 337. 7. *b*) 2); A. 294 *d*; H. 622.—5. *Earum*: the new ones, of course.—*modum formamque*: *measurements and plan*.—6. *Ad*: *with a view to*.—7. *humiliores*: lower above the water-line and with less depth of hold.—*nostro mari*: the Mediterranean.—8. *id eo magis*: *all the more on this account*.—9. *minus magnos*: "choppy" seas are characteristic of the Channel.—11. *transportandam*: agrees with the

nearest noun.—**paulo latiores**: sc. *eas fecit*.—**12. actuiarias**: *provided with oars*; predicative.—**14. Hispania**: from Spain came the broom plant used to make ropes, and metal for anchors. It was a highly civilized province and friendly to Caesar; see Introduction, page xiii.—**15. conventibus**: see note to page 40, line 18.—**citerioris** = *Cisalpinæ*.—**Illyricum**: see note to page 61, line 12.—**18. imperat**: *orders to furnish*.—**19. convenire**: sc. *milites*.—**21. omnibus rationibus**: *in every way*.

CHAPTER 2

PAGE 105 .

8. ad exercitum; Caesar had left the army in Belgium about January 1st, had held the courts in Cisalpine Gaul and Illyricum, had quelled the disturbances in Illyricum, and was back with the army in May or June after an absence of about five months and having traveled about two thousand miles.—**10. singulari . . . studio**: *by the extraordinary zeal of the troops*; connect with *instructas (esse)* and *abesse*, as cause.—*in*: *in spite of*.—**11. supra**: in ch. 1.—**13. neque . . . abesse . . . quin . . . possint**: *and were not far from being able*; the *quin*-clause is the subject of *abesse*; A. 332. d; H. 595. 1.—**16. portum Itium**: see note to page 94, line 26.—**17. cognoverat**: by observation the year before.—**18. milium . . . xxx**: 30 Roman = 27½ English miles.—**19. huic rei**: *for this business*, i. e. probably, to take care of the port and the ships left there.—**militum**: partitive, with *quod*.—**22. concilia**: *assemblies*, appointed by Caesar to regulate the affairs of conquered nations.

CHAPTER 3

24. Haec civitas: sc. *Treverorum*; see page 55, line 12.—**26. supra**: page 68, line 17.—**demonstravimus**: Caesar as the author speaks in the first person.—**duo . . . contendebant**: Caesar's regular policy was to foster dissensions among the peoples he wished to subdue, to espouse the cause of one party, and thus get both into his power. The Roman maxim was *divide et impera*.—**28. alter**: *the latter*.

PAGE 106

2. neque: connect with *defecturos*, not with *confirmavit*.—**13. petere**: *to ask favors*.—**civitati consulere**: *have regard for the interests of the state*.—**15. Sese**: (*saying*) *that he* (Indutimarus).—**18. imprudentiam**: do not translate "imprudence."—**laberetur**: *should fall away*, i. e. be led astray.—**19. si Caesar permetteret**: if he came without permission Caesar would naturally treat him as an enemy.

CHAPTER 4

28. *evocaverat*: sc. *Caesar*.

PAGE 107

2. *eius*: *Cingetorigis*.—*intellegebat*: sc. *Caesar*.—*magni interesse*: W. 361, 369. (c); B. 211. 3; A. 252. a; H. 449. 3.—5. *graviter tulit*: *took to heart, was deeply grieved at*.—6. *et qui*: *and although he*; W. 586. 7; B. 283. 3. b); A. 320. c; H. 593. 2.

CHAPTER 5

10. *Meldis*: generally supposed to be the tribe about the modern Meaux, on the Marne (*Matrona*), near its junction with the Seine (*Seguana*); but there are reasons for supposing that another tribe somewhere near the channel coast may be meant.—14. *numero*: ablative of specification.—15. *in se fidem*. *loyalty to himself*.

CHAPTER 6

20. *ante*: Bk. I, ch. 16–20.—23. *Accedebat huc quod*, etc.: *besides this Dumnorix had said*.—25. *graviter ferebant*: the *Haedui* elected annual magistrates (*vergobreti*, page 11, line 29, and note), and would resent such interference by Caesar. We do not know that Caesar ever said anything of the sort to Dumnorix, but see the cases of Commius, Bk. IV, ch. 21; Tasgetius, Bk. V, ch. 25; Cavarinus, Bk. V, ch. 54.—29. *Ille*: Dumnorix.

PAGE 108

1. *navigandi*: *insuetus* is followed by the genitive, dative, or accusative with *ad*; W. 352; B. 204. 1; A. 218. a; H. 453. 2.—2. *religionibus*: *religious scruples*.—7. *fieri*: infinitive of indirect discourse; *saying* is implied in *territare*.—10. *fidem* . . . *interponere*: *gave a promise to the rest* (those not in Caesar's hands); historical infinitive.—11. *ex usu*: *to the interest of*, lit. "of use to."

CHAPTER 7

14. *Qua re*: the speech of Dumnorix in the council of the *Haedui*.—15. *dignitatis*: *respect*.—18. *quid*: adverbial accusative.—19. *eo loco*: i. e. *Portus Ilius*.—20. *Corus*: a northwest wind.—21. *omnis temporis*: *of every season*.—22. *dabat operam*: *was taking pains*.—24. *tempestatem*: see note to page 95, line 4.—26. *impeditis*: *busy, occupied*.

PAGE 109

2. *se absente*: in his (Caesar's) absence.—*pro sano*: like a man in his senses.—*praesentis*: sc. Caesaris.—3. *Ille*: Dumnorix.—6. *Illi*: refers to *magnam partem equitatus*.

CHAPTER 8

9. *continenti*: the mainland, Gaul.—12. *pro tempore et pro re*: according to circumstances.—13. *v legionibus*: one of these was the 7th; see page 110, line 20.—14. *ad*: toward, about. It was late June or early July.—15. *Africo*: southwest wind; the name given in Italy is not appropriate on the English Channel.—17. *longius delatus*: carried too far, to the northeast, into the North Sea. Then at the change of the tide the ships were rowed back to the landing-place of the year before, near Dover.—22. *laudanda*: praiseworthy.—27. *cum*: although.—29. *quae cum . . . tempore*: of which, counting those of the year before, etc.—more than eight hundred had been seen at once.—*privatis* (*navibus*): belonging to individuals who accompanied the expedition on a commercial venture, to trade, buy slaves, etc.

CHAPTER 9

PAGE 110

5. *cohortibus x*: not one legion, but ten cohorts from different legions, probably two from each of the five mentioned at page 109, line 13.—6. *tertia vigilia*: see note to page 8, line 22.—7. *navibus*: dative.—12. *equitatu atque essedis*: ablative of accompaniment without *cum*; W. 392; B. 222. 1; A. 248. a. N; H. 474. 2. N. 1. See note on *essedis*, page 100, line 24.—*flumen*: this may have been the lesser Stour. Caesar would be approaching it from the east.—18. *rari*: in small numbers.—*propugnabant*: came out . . . to fight.—20. *testudine, aggere*: see Introduction, pages lvii and lv.—25. *castrorum*: this camp may have been on Barham Downs.

CHAPTER 10

28. *aliquantum itineris*: some distance.—29. *iam*: still.—*extremi*: the hindmost of the detachment sent out by Caesar.

PAGE 111

2. *adfectas*: knocked about.—5. *concursum*: collision.

CHAPTER 11

8. *in itinere resistere*: to halt.—10. *coram*: we should say, with his own eyes.—12. *fabros*: many of the soldiers were skilled mechanics.—13. *Labieno*: at *Portus Itius*.—14. *eis legioni-*

bus: by means of, by the help of those legions.—16. *subduci*: should be hauled up on shore, the usual practice in ancient times.—21. *ante*: see page 110, lines 5, 6.—22. *eodem*: to the place captured from the enemy, as told in the latter part of ch. 9, and from which he had started on hearing of the wreck of his fleet.—27. *a mari*: i. e. from the place where Caesar had landed.

CHAPTER 12

PAGE 112

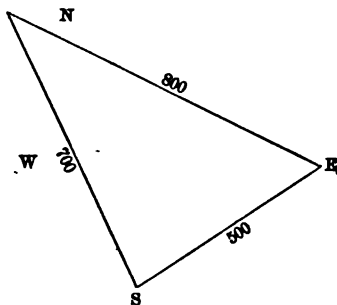
2. *memoria proditum (esse)*: that there is a tradition; the subject is *quos natos (esse)*, etc. The Britons were in fact a branch of the Celtic race and akin to the Gauls. See page 43, line 18; page 66, line 14, and note.—4. *isdem nominibus*: e. g. Atrebatas, Belgae and Parisii were found in Britain as well as in Gaul.—7. *Hominum: population*.—8. *consimilia*: see page 129, line 28; page 159, lines 1-3.—10. *taleis: bars*.—12. *Nascitur: occurs, is found*.—*plumbum album: tin*, not "white lead"; the tin-mines in Cornwall are supposed to have been worked since 900 or 1000 B. C.—*mediterraneis: inland*.—13. *ferrum*: this may have been found in Sussex.—14. *aere . . . importato*: little copper was mined in England until within the last two centuries.—*cuiusque: every*; the beech and fir are said to be indigenous in England, and at any rate they are now abundant.—16. *fas non putant*: the reason is not known; it may have been connected with the Druidical doctrine of the transmigration of souls.—17. *animi . . . causa: for amusement*.—18. *temperatiora*: the climate has less extremes of heat and cold on account of the insular position and the influence of the Gulf Stream.

CHAPTER 18

20. *natura: in shape*.—21. *ad Cantium: on the coast of Kent*.—22. *adpelluntur: land*; distinguish *adpellere* from *adpellare (appellare)*.—23. *inferior*: the southwest angle of the island.—24. *milias . . . D*: the length of the south coast is really about 325 miles in a straight line.—25. *Alterum: sc. latus*.—*vergit: faces*; Tacitus, a century and a half later, makes the same mistake, supposing Spain to lie west of Britain; Tac., *Agricola*, 10.—26. *qua ex parte: in this direction*.—*dimidio minor: less by half*, i. e. half as large.—27. *pari . . . atque: the same as*.—*spatio: ablative of quality*.—*transmissus: genitive; limits spatio*.—28. *In . . . cursu: half-way across*, very inaccurate if *Mona* means Anglesea as it does in Tacitus, less so if it means the Isle of Man.

PAGE 113

1. *obiectae*: *off the coast*.—2. *non nulli*: perhaps Greek geographers.—*dies*: accusative of duration; of course the statement is not true even for the Shetland Islands.—3. *esse*: *lasts*.—4. *certis ex aqua mensuris*: *by exact measurements made with water-clocks*. These instruments were used in camp to time the *vigiliae*. They worked on the same principle as the sand-glass.—*ex aqua*: a phrase attributive to *mensuris*.—6. *illorum*: referring to *non nulli*, line 2.—8. *Tertium*: sc. *latus*.—12. *vicies centum milium*: genitive of measure. The actual coast line is much more than 2,000 miles; straight lines connecting the three outer corners of the island would amount to about 1,500 miles.



Caesar's Idea.



The Correct Idea.

CHAPTER 14

13. *his omnibus*: the Britons.—15. *consuetudine*: manner of life. The customs of the Gauls are described in Bk. VI, ch. 11–20.—16. *plerique*: *for the most part*.—*frumenta*: *crops of grain*.—17. *vitro*: *wood*.—18. *caeruleum*: *bluish*.—24. *habentur*: *are counted, considered*.—*quo*: *ad quos*.—*deducta est*: sc. *domum*; *deductio* was the formal conducting of a bride to her husband's house. The correctness of Caesar's statement in this particular is very much to be doubted.

CHAPTER 15

27. *partibus*: W. 402; B. 228. 1. *δ*); A. 258. f. 1; H. 485.

PAGE 114

1. *illi*: the Britons.—*intermisso spatio*: = *post aliquod tempus*.—2. *munitioe castrorum*: the daily practice of the Romans; see

Introduction, pages xlviii-lil.—3. *in statione*: *on guard*.—5. *primis* (*cohortibus*): the first cohort of each legion was composed of picked men.—7. *novo*: *strange*; they were not accustomed to the British chariots.—8. *per medios*: they drove into the middle of the cohorts as described in Bk. IV, ch. 33.

CHAPTER 16

13. *intellectum est*: *it became clear*.—*nostros*: the soldiers of the legions.—15. *possent . . . auderent*: subjunctives because in clauses subordinate to the infinitive *aptos esse*.—18. *illi*: *the enemy*.—*cederent*: *would fall back*; in direct discourse it would be imperfect indicative.—20. *pedibus*: *on foot*.—22. *Accedebat huc ut*, etc.: *besides this, it was a fact that, etc., it was also true that, etc.*—24. *stationes dispositas*: *reliefs stationed at intervals*.—*alios alii deinceps exciperent*: *successively replaced one another*.

CHAPTER 17

28. *rari*: *a few at a time*.—29. *proelio*: ablative.

PAGE 115

1. *iii legiones*: cf. page 100, lines 3, 4; this was a very large force to send foraging.—4. *sic . . . absisterent*: *so that they came close to the standards of the legions*.—6. *subsidio*: *the support* (of the legions); what case? W. 385; B. 219. 1; A. 254. b. 1; H. 476. 3.—7. *praecipites*: *headlong*.—10. *Ex*: *after*.—11. *auxilia*: i. e. of the Britons.—12. *summis copiis*: in full force.

CHAPTER 18

13. *consilio*: explained in ch. 19.—14. *fines Cassivellauni*: corresponding to Middlesex and Bucks. Caesar crossed the Thames near Kingston. There are many fords on the upper course of the river; he means there was only one in the neighborhood where he crossed.—18. *præfixis*: *planted pointing out from the bank into the stream*.—19. *defixæ*: *driven into the bed of the river*. Bede, in his Ecclesiastical History, I, ii, says that remains of these stakes, as thick as a man's thigh, were still visible in his time (673-735 A. D.).—22. *ea . . . eo*: = *tanta . . . tanto*.

CHAPTER 19

27. *contentionis*: of (*continuing*) the struggle.—*amplioribus*: *the greater part of*.—28. *essedariorum*: see Bk. IV, ch. 33.

PAGE 116

8. *Relinquebatur ut: the only thing left for Caesar was not to, etc.*
 —11. *in labore atque itinere: on a toilsome march.*

CHAPTER 20

13. *Trinovantes: in Essex and Suffolk; their chief town was Camalodunum, afterward Colonia Castrum, Colchester.*—14. *Caesaris fidem secutus: seeking Caesar's protection, i. e. submitting to Caesar.*
 —15. *venerat: this visit is not elsewhere mentioned.*—21. *qui praesit . . . obtineat: relative clauses of purpose.*—24. *ad numerum: according to the number demanded.*

CHAPTER 21

27. *Cenimagni: in Norfolk, Suffolk, and Cambridgeshire; the other nations are marked on the map, frontispiece.*—29. *eo loco: where he was at the time, a place unknown.*—*oppidum Cassivellauni: probably at or near St. Albans.*

PAGE 117

1. *satis magnus: quite large.*—3. *cum: whenever; followed by the indicative; B. 288. B. 3; H. 601.* 4.—*impeditas . . . munierunt: blockaded and fortified.*—4. *incursionis, etc.: they were strongholds or refuges, not permanent residences. Remains of some still exist in England.*—5. *conserunt: they are accustomed.*—7. *duabus ex partibus: on two sides.*—9. *non tulerunt: could not stand.*—11. *multi: of the Britons.*

CHAPTER 22

13. *supra: page 113, line 14.*—16. *castra navalia: Caesar's camp where his ships were laid up; see page 111, lines 16, 17.*—24. *cum: causal.*—25. *repentinos . . . motus: cf. page 66, lines 22, 23.*—27. *extrahi: wasted, in long-drawn, fruitless operations.*—28. *vectigalis: partitive genitive with quid. No force was left in Britain, the tribute was never paid, and British independence was virtually unaffected by the invasion. But no doubt a great impression was made upon the minds of the Gauls, seeing that Caesar was no more stopped by the Channel than by the Rhine.*—29. *Interdicit atque imperat: He strictly forbids.*

CHAPTER 23

PAGE 118

2. *refectas: see ch. 10 and 11 of this book.*—*deductis: drawn down to the water, launched, from where they had been beached and sur-*

rounded by fortifications; see page 111, line 17.—4. *commeatibus: trips.*—7. *superiore anno*: B. C. 55; see Bk. IV, ch. 20–36.—8. *inanes*: those returning for a second load, and new ones built in Gaul by Labienus.—11. *locum caperent*: *reached their destination.*—14. *aequinoctium suberat*: it was about the middle of September. Caesar had been about two months in Britain; see Bk. IV, ch. 36, and note on page 102, line 11.—*necessario angustius . . . conlocavit*: *was obliged to crowd the soldiers somewhat.*—16. *inita*: *at the beginning of*; i. e. about 9 P. M.

CHAPTER 24

18. *Subductis*: see note on *subduci*, page 111, line 16.—*Samarobrivae*: chief town of the *Ambiani*, now Amiens.—19. *frumentum . . . provenerat*: *the grain-crop had been short.*—20. *siccitates*: see same word, page 103, line 6, and note.—*aliter ac*: *otherwise than*; B. 341. 1. c; A. 247. d; H. 516. 3.—24. *Q. (Tullio) Ciceroni*: brother of *Marcus Tullius Cicero*, the great orator.—29. *proxime*: in 57 B. C.; see page 41, lines 18, 19.

PAGE 119

1. *in Eburones*: this camp was at *Atuatuca*, as we learn from page 160, lines 6–9. The *data* for the identification of this place with any modern site, either at *Tongres* or elsewhere, are insufficient.—6. *inopiae: medeor* is followed by either the dative or the accusative; W. 330; B. 187. II; A. 227. b; H. 424. 3.—9. *milibus . . . continebantur*: it is hard to say just what this means; it is true that a circle of one hundred miles radius included all the camps, also that no camp was more than one hundred miles from the nearest one. See map opposite page 81 of the text.—10. *quoad*: when is this followed by the subjunctive? W. 533; B. 293. III. 2; A. 328; H. 603. 2.

CHAPTER 25

15. *in se*: to Caesar.—16. *singulari . . . usus*: *had found his help of the utmost value.*—17. *locum*: *rank.*—*Tertium . . . regnantem*: *in the third year of his reign.*—19. *Ille*: Caesar.—20. *quod . . . pertinebat*: *because many were involved.*—21. *L. Plancum*: see page 118, line 27.—23. *cognoverit*: sc. *Plancus.*—24. *comprehensos . . . mittere*: *arrest and send to him (Caesar).*—26. *hiberna*: see Introduction, page lii.—*perventum* (sc. *esse*): impersonal passive; *that they had come.*

CHAPTER 26

28. *Diebus . . . quibus*: *About fifteen days after.*

PAGE 120

1. Ambiorige et Catuvolco : see page 119, line 3.—2. praesto fuissent : *had met.*—3. Treveri : appositive to Indutiomarus.—10. aliqui : for the usual *aliquis*.—11. de re communi : *of interest to both parties.*

CHAPTER 27

15. ante : adverb.—16. quos : i. e. Arpineius and Junius.—17. Sese, etc. : indirect discourse to the end of the chapter.—18. ei : *Caesari*.—debere : sc. *se (Ambiorigem)*.—stipendio : *tribute.*—20. ei : = *sibi (Ambiorigi)*.—22. apud se : i. e. *Atuatucos.*—25. iuris in se : *authority over him.*—30. imperitus rerum : *unsophisticated, ignorant of the world.*

PAGE 121

7. Quibus . . . satisfecerit : *since he had done for them all that his duty (to his country) required.*—habere . . . rationem : *was considering the claims.*—10. conductam : *hired, to serve for pay.*—11. Ipsorum . . . consilium : *it was their own (the Romans') business to consider.*—12. velintne : sc. *an non.*—eductos . . . deducere : *translate by two infinitives.*—17. Quod cum faciat : *in doing this.*

CHAPTER 28

20. legatos : i. e. *Sabinus and Cotta.*—25. ausam : sc. *esse.*—credendum : *credible.*—26. consilium : the council of officers, including the centurions "of the first ranks."—28. primorum ordinum : cf. page 30, line 29 ; see Introduction, page xxx.

PAGE 122

2. sustineri : *be resisted.*—3. rem : *the fact, referring to quod . . . sustinuerint.*—4. ultro : *besides.*—inlatis : *inflicted (on the enemy).*

CHAPTER 29

9. sero : *too late.*—clamitabat : *vociferated* ; his voice was loud, his manner excited.—11. proximis : the detachment of Sabinus and Cotta was one of the most remote. Its natural rallying-point was the nearest of the other detachments. Quintus Cicero and Labienus were about equally distant.—13. neque . . . fuisse capturos neque . . . venturos : conclusion of a condition contrary to fact ; W. 617. 2 ; B. 321. A, B ; A. 337. b ; H. 647.—16. nostri : objective genitive.—hos-

tem auctorem: the enemy's advice.—17. *rem: the actual state of the case.*—18. *Ariovisti mortem: we know nothing of the time or manner of Ariovistus's death. No mention has been made of him since the end of Bk. I.*—21. *sibi persuaderet: would believe.*—23. *in utramque partem: in either case.*—24. *si . . . durius: if nothing worse happened.*—26. *unam . . . salutem: what is hyperbaton?* W. 740; B. 350. 11. a; A. 386; H. 751. 5.—28. *consilium: subject of habere; infinitive in a rhetorical question in indirect discourse; W. 603; B. 315. 2; A. 338; H. 642. 2.*

CHAPTER 30

PAGE 123

1. *in utramque partem: on both sides.*—2. *Vincite: have your own way.*—4. *is . . . qui . . . terrear: a man to be frightened; W. 588; B. 283. 2; A. 320; H. 591. 2.*—5. *ex vobis: equivalent to a partitive genitive.*—6. *Hi: the soldiers.*—*gravius quid: anything serious; quid rather than aliquid, because the sentence is introduced by si.*

CHAPTER 31

11. *Consurgitur: they rise.*—*comprehendunt: (the officers) take them by the hand.*—12. *rem: their business, their task.*—17. *dat . . . manus: yields.*—18. *Pronuntiatur: notice is given.*—19. *sua . . . circumspiceret: was examining his possessions.*—21. *instrumento: furniture.*—24. *ut quibus esset persuasum: as men convinced; a clause of characteristic.*—26. *longissimo agmine: this long straggling line of march was very dangerous in the presence of an enemy. Sabinus's conduct on this occasion was unbusiness-like, yet he had done good service against the Venelli; see Bk. III, ch. 17–19. We can not help suspecting that Cotta was subordinated to him by Caesar. A divided command would seem a worse error than making the better officer inferior in authority.*

CHAPTER 32

PAGE 124

1. *bipertito: at two places; lit. in two divisions.*—*a milibus . . . duobus: about two miles away (from the camp).*—3. *se . . . demississet: had descended.*—6. *nostris: connect with iniquissimo.*

CHAPTER 33

8. *qui . . . providisset: W. 586. 4, 7; B. 283. 3. a), b); A. 320. e; H. 592, 593. 2.*—9. *trepidare, etc.: historical infinitives.*—10. *ut: in such a way that.*—*omnia: all resources; subject of deficere; eum is its object.*—11. *quod: = id quod, id referring to the clause*

omnia deficere.—*in ipso negotio*: after a crisis has arrived.—13. *qui cogitasset*: cf. *qui . . . providisset*, line 8.—14. *auctor*: in favor of, lit. "adviser."—18. *per se*: in person.—19. *obire*: attend to.—20. *possent, iusserunt*: sc. *Sabinus et Cotta*.—21. *relinquerent, consisterent*: sc. *milites*.—*in orbem*: see Introduction, page xlviii.—23. *cecidit*: not *cecidit*.—*militibus*: dative of reference; W. 335; B. 188. 1. N; A. 235; H. 425. 4. N.—25. *non sine*: = *cum*; litotes; W. 740; B. 375. 1; A. 386; H. 752. 8.—27. *quaque*: *-que* connects *discederent* with *properaret*, line 29; the latter is singular to agree with *quisque*, the subject of *haberet*.—29. *fletu*: not necessarily a sign of weakness. South Europeans express feelings which Anglo-Saxon dignity conceals.

CHAPTER 34

PAGE 125

1. *consilium*: *cunning*.—5. *existimarent*: for *existimate* of direct discourse.—14. *se*: the object of *recipientes*, which agrees with *nostros* understood, object of *insequantur*.

CHAPTER 35

15. *eis*: i. e. *Gallis*.—16. *cum . . . excesserat*: a temporal clause expressing repetition of the action, "iterative"; W. 532. 2; B. 288. 3; A. 322, 5th example; H. 601. 4.—17. *refugiebant*: imperfect for a repeated action.—*eam partem nudari*, etc.: as each cohort charged, it left a vacant place in the main body (*orbis*), and its own flanks were, of course, exposed to the enemy when it left its supports.—18. *ab latere aperto*: i. e. the right flank, the shields being carried on the left arms; in other senses both flanks were equally exposed, so far as we can tell.—21. *proximi*: the enemy on the flanks of the cohort in question.—24. *confictati*: *though harassed*.—26. *horam octavam*: see note to page 18, line 12.—28. *Balventio*: dative of reference; probably an *evocatus*, for which and for *primum pilum* see Introduction, pages xxxvii and xxix.—29. *auctoritatis*: *influence*.

PAGE 126

1. *eiusdem ordinis*: i. e. *primus pilus*.—4. *in adversum os*: *right in the face*.

CHAPTER 36

7. *Cn. Pompeium*: probably the father of the historian *Pompeius Trogus*.—8. *Si . . . licere*: conditional sentence in indirect discourse; W. 613; B. 319. A, B; 314; A. 337; H. 646.—9. *impe-*

trari posse: *that the request might be obtained.*—10. quod . . . per-
tineat: *so far as the safety of the soldiers was concerned.*—ipsi:
Titurio Sabino.—11. nocitum iri: future passive infinitive.—in-
terponere: *he pledged.*—12. Ille: Sabinus.—communicat: *pro-*
poses.—14. sua: *their own*, Sabinus's and Cotta's.

CHAPTER 37

17. quos tribunos: = *eos tribunos . . . quos.*—in praesentia: *at the time.*—19. Ambiorigem: accusative with *propius*, same construc-
tion as with *prope*; W. 242; B. 141. 3; A. 234. e; H. 420. 5.—24.
conclamant, tollunt: *sc. hostes.*—28. cum . . . premeretur: con-
cessive.

PAGE 127

2. Illi: the Romans in the camp.—3. ad unum: *to a man*, every
one. No other disaster comparable with this occurred during the whole
war. Fifteen cohorts, probably about 5,400 men, perished. Suetonius, in
his Life of Caesar, ch. 67, tells how Caesar vowed not to cut his hair or
beard until he had taken vengeance. See Bk. VI, ch. 43.—5. ad T.
Labienum: among the Remi on the borders of the Treveri, probably
about sixty miles to the south; see page 118, lines 25. 26; see map op-
posite page 81.

CHAPTER 38

9. noctem . . . diem: *i. e. one night and one day.*—12. sui:
W. 642; B. 339. 5; A. 298. a; H. 626. 3.—13. Romanos: object of
ulciscendi.—14. legatos; Sabinus and Cotta.—15. nihil esse
negoti: *that it would be no trouble.*—16. oppressam . . . inter-
fici: *to overpower and kill*; the infinitive with its subject accusative *le-*
gionem is the subject of *nihil esse negoti.*—Cicerone: see page 118,
line 24.

CHAPTER 39

19. Ceutrones, etc.: all near neighbors of the Nervii on the east.
—21. eorum: *i. e. Nerviorum.*—22. de improvviso: *of a sud-*
den, unexpectedly.

PAGE 128

1. vallum: the soldiers stood on the embankment, *vallum*, behind the
palisades, *valli.*—is dies sustentatur: = *cum diem sustentant*; *they*
held out during that day.

CHAPTER 40

5. litterae: here *letters*, usually *a letter.*—6. pertulissent: as
object, *sc. eas (litteras)*; as subject, *nuntii.*—9. admodum: *fully,*

quite.—**cxx**: the camp of one legion normally measured 4,600 feet in circumference; this would make less than forty feet from tower to tower, a distance easily commanded by missiles thrown by hand.—**excitantur**: *were built up.*—**14. reliquis deinceps diebus**: *on the succeeding days.*—**15. ad laborem intermittitur**: *their toil was suspended.*—**18. praeustae**: *charred at the ends* (to harden them); they were heavy pointed stakes hurled by engines (*tormenta*).—**muralium pilorum**: heavy pikes to be hurled down from the height of walls or embankments.—**19. contabulantur**: *are flooded over.*—**pinnae**: *wooden battlements*, see Introduction, page xlix.—**20. loricae ex cratibus**: *breastworks of wickerwork*, interwoven branches; ablative of material; B. 353. 5. N; A. 244. e; H. 467.—**cum . . . esset**: concessive.—**21. valetudine**: ablative of quality.—**23. sibi parcere**: *to take care of himself.*

CHAPTER 41

25. sermonis: *for an interview.*—**26. potestate**: *opportunity.*
—**29. reliquorum**: *sc. legatorum.*

PAGE 129

2. Errare eos: *that they* (Cicero and his men) *were mistaken.*—**3. praesidi**: partitive genitive.—**suis rebus**: *their own condition.*—**4. hoc . . . animo**: ablative of quality.—**6. hanc . . . consuetudinem**: *this habit* (of wintering among them).—**illis**: *i. e. Romanis.*—**per se**: *as far as they* (the *Nervii*) *were concerned.*—**7. quascumque in partes**: *in quascumque partes.*—**9. modo**: *only.*—**11. utantur . . . mittant**: *they might employ . . . send*; they would be imperatives in direct discourse.—**12. se**: *i. e. Ciceronem.*—**eius**: *i. e. Caesaris.*

CHAPTER 42

14. spe: *i. e. of deceiving Cicero.*—**pedum x**: *i. e. in height.*—**15. pedum xv**: *i. e. in breadth at the top*; so we say a "ten-foot wall," a "fifteen-foot ditch."—**17. exercitu**: the Roman army.—**nulla . . . copia**: ablative absolute; *as they had no supply.*—**18. quae essent**: relative clause of characteristic.—**21. multitudo**: *the (large) number*; yet the *Nervii* were represented in Bk. II, ch. 28, as well-nigh exterminated.—**22. millium passuum iii**: most MSS. have *xv*, which is obviously wrong, but we can not be sure what Caesar really wrote.—**23. turres**: *sc. ambulatoriae*; towers moved on rollers.—**24. testudines**: *tortoise-sheds* ("turtlebacks"); see Introduction, pages lvii and lviii.

CHAPTER 43

27. *serventes* . . . *glandes*, etc.: balls of clay, heated red hot and thrown from slings.—*ex argilla*: ablative of material.—*fervefacta*: either the heads were heated or some burning stuff was attached to them.—28. *casas*: *huts*, winter barracks, taking the place of tents, in a permanent camp.—more Gallico: see page 112, line 8, and note.

PAGE 130

1. *distulerunt*: 'sc. *ignem*: *spread*; the subject is *Hae (casae)*.—*sicuti*: *as if*.—2. *explorata*: *assured*.—3. *agere*: *to move up* (near the rampart).—4. *praesentia animi*: *self-possession*.—*cum*: *although*.—7. *fortunas*: *property*.—9. *tum*: *then especially*.—13. *ut . . . constipaverant*: *as they stood crowded together*.—14. *recessum*: *chance to fall back*.—17. *loco*: in translating connect it with *eo*, not with *quo*.—19. *quorum*: = *sed eorum*.

CHAPTER 44

23. *primis ordinibus*: i. e. they had almost risen to the rank of *primus pilus*; but see Introduction, pages xxix and xxx.—*adpropinquarent*: subjunctive of characteristic.—24. *controversias*: *a rivalry, competition*.—25. *anteferretur*: subjunctive in indirect question.—*de loco*: *for rank, for precedence*.—28. *locum*: *occasion, opportunity*.

PAGE 131

1. *quaeque pars*: = *et in eam partem . . . quae*.—3. *vallo*: ablative of place and means.—4. *Mediocri spatio*: i. e. between Pullo and the enemy.—6. *quo, hunc* (line 7): the dead Gaul; *illum* (line 8): Pullo.—9. *Pulloni*: dative of reference, but translate as if it were genitive.—11. *conanti*: *as he (Pullo) was trying*; again a dative of reference.—12. *Succurrit*: this is the third sentence in succession beginning with a verb; emphasis is thus laid on actions, quick and strenuous.—*inimicus*: *his rival*.—17. *in . . . inferiorem concidit*: *he stumbled into a hollow and fell down*.—18. *rursus*: *in turn*.—22. *utrumque versavit*: *gave each a chance*.—23. *uter utri*: *which . . . to the other*.

CHAPTER 45

25. *Quanto*: correlative with *tanto* (line 28); *the more . . . the more*.—27. *res . . . pervenerat*: *the force had dwindled*.—28. *ad Caesarem*: at Samarobriua (Amiens) with Trebonius.—30. *intus*: *inside the camp*.

PAGE 132

1. *a prima*: at the beginning of.—3. *fidem praestiterat*: had shown his loyalty.—4. *litteras*: a letter; not as page 128, line 5.—5. *in iaculo*: the dart may have had a hollow shaft.—6. *versatus*: mingling, going and coming.

CHAPTER 46

8. *hora xi*: one hour before sunset, but we do not know the date exactly.—9. *in Bellovacos*: Crassus is believed to have been at *Montdidier*; see map opposite page 81.—M. *Crassum*: brother of Publius Crassus, who had returned to Rome in 55 B. C.—11. *proficisci*: from the camp of Crassus.—12. *Alterum*: sc. *nuntium*.—14. *si . . . possit . . . veniat*: in direct form *si . . . poteris . . . veni*.—*rei publicae commodo*: consistently with the public interest; *commodo*; W. 391; B. 220. 3; A. 253. N, or 248; H. 475. 3, or 473. 3. As usual, more discretion is allowed to Labienus than to any other *legatus*. He was not only the ablest of Caesar's officers, but perhaps held a higher rank (*pro praetore*) than any of the others; see page 15, line 18, and note.—16. *reliquam partem exercitus*: the divisions with Roscius and with Plancus; see page 118, lines 25 and 27, and map opposite page 81.

CHAPTER 47

19. *Hora . . . iii*: half-way from sunrise to noon.—*antecursoribus*: sent ahead by Crassus.—23. *civitatum*: Gallic states.—*litteras publicas*: state papers, such as accounts, despatches, etc.—26. *occurrit*: sc. *Caesari*.

PAGE 133

1. *quos . . . sciret*: since he knew that they, etc.; a relative clause of characteristic expressing cause; W. 586. 4; 587; B. 283. 3. *a*; A. 320. *e*; H. 592.—2. *remittit*: i. e. in reply to Caesar's letter to him, page 132, line 14.—*quanto . . . esset*: indirect question.—3. *rem*: i. e. the loss of the army of Sabinus and Cotta.

CHAPTER 48

7. *opinione*: expectation of having.—8. *deiectus*: disappointed.—*reciderat*: he was reduced.—*unum . . . auxilium*: his only reliance.—9. *celeritate*: extraordinary swiftness of movement was Caesar's prime characteristic.—*magnis itineribus*: see Introduction, page xlvii.—14. *Graecis . . . litteris*: Latin written in Greek

characters. Yet all educated Romans knew something of Greek, and some of the more southern Gauls knew the Greek alphabet; see page 20, lines 6, 7; page 150, line 23.—17. *amentum*: the hurling strap; it perhaps gave the javelin a twisting motion, like that of a bullet fired from a rifle, and on the same principle insured greater accuracy of aim.—18. *scribit*: sc. *Caesar*.—24. *perlectam*: after he had himself read it through.

CHAPTER 49

PAGE 134

2. *Gallum* . . . *repetit*: asks again for the Gaul, or, if the original messenger had not returned, it would mean "asks for another Gaul."—*supra*: page 132, lines 1-4.—4. *faciat*: subjunctive in a substantive clause, object of *admonet*; W. 512; B. 295. 8; A. 331. R. under *f*; H. 565. 4.—10. *trans*: connect not with *progressus*, but with *conspicatur*.—13. *remittendum (esse) de celeritate*: that he might slacken his speed.—15. *haec* . . . *exigua*: both agree with *castra*.—16. *hominum milium vii*: consisting of 7,000 men; two legions, barely 3,500 to a legion, showing heavy losses in their campaigns; *milium* is a noun, *hominum* is partitive genitive.—17. *viarum*: the streets of this camp; he made them narrow and so reduced the size of the camp; see Introduction, page li.—19. *hostibus*: with or in the eyes of the enemy; dative of reference.

CHAPTER 50

22. *ad aquam*: near the stream in the valley.—25. *suum locum*: a place favorable to himself, i. e. the ground sloping upward from the stream to his camp.

PAGE 135

4. *concursari*: impersonal passive.

CHAPTER 51

5. *traducunt*: i. e. over to Caesar's side of the stream.—7. *deductis*: withdrawn from the ramparts to increase the appearance of fear.—12. *in speciem*: for appearance' sake; it was a wall of turf, only one sod thick, looking to the enemy like a solid embankment.—14. *ea*: that way, i. e. through the gates.—16. *eruptione facta*: it was easy for the soldiers, as they ran out, to throw down the thin walls of turf.—17. *omnino* . . . *nemo*: no one at all; the emphasis is on *nemo*, placed last.

CHAPTER 52

23. *Institutas*: by Cicero.—24. *producta*: paraded for inspection.—25. *decimum quemque*: one in ten.—29. *appellat*: addresses.

PAGE 136

2. *certius*: i. e. as compared with the first account received through Labienus, page 127, lines 4-6; page 133, lines 2-4.—4. *quod*: whereas.—5. *legati*: Sabinus.

CHAPTER 53

10. *per Remos*: through the country of the Remi, on whose border lay the camp of Labienus.—12. *abasset*: sc. *Labienus*.—13. *eo*: to Cicero's camp.—*ante mediam noctem*: as it was probably late autumn or early winter, the ninth hour was about 2 P. M., giving about ten hours' interval to midnight—no extraordinary speed in this case. See page 169, lines 21-27, for the Gallic method of sending news rapidly across the country.—16. *Indutiomarus*: see page 120, lines 3, 4; it was he who prompted the attack on Sabinus and Cotta.—20. *Fabium . . . in hiberna*: among the *Morini* (ch. 24); he had gone with Caesar to the relief of Cicero, page 132, lines 24-26.—21. *iii legionibus*: i. e. Cicero's legion and the two which formed the relieving force.—*trinis*: distributive numerals are used with nouns which have no singular.—27. *quid reliqui consili*: it is better to take *reliqui* as agreeing with *consili* than with *Galli*, understood.—30. *quin . . . acciperet*: without his receiving.

PAGE 137

1. *In his*: sc. *nuntiis*; among others.—2. *Roscio*: see page 118, line 25.—4. *sui*: i. e. *Roscius*.

CHAPTER 54

10. *officio*: allegiance, obedience.—13. *frater Moritasgus*: sc. *regnum obtinuerat* or *obtinebat*.—*in Galliam*: accusative because *adventu* is a noun of motion.—19. *senatum*: council of elders.—*dicto audientes*: cf. page 28, line 25, and note.—21. *valuit*: its subject is the following infinitive clause.—22. *principes . . . inferendi*: leaders in making war.—27. *nobis*: dative of reference or agent.—30. *praeferebantur*: used to be considered superior.—*opinionis*: reputation.—*deperdidisse*: depends on *dolebant*; B. 331. V; H. 614.

CHAPTER 55

PAGE 138

4. *quin . . . mitterent* : *without sending*.—8. *persuaderi* : impersonal passive; translate as if *civitati* were the subject.—9. *cum . . . dicerent* : *since, as they said, they had tried*.—*Ariovisti bello* : ablative of time; see Bk. I, ch. 30-54.—*Tencterorum transitu* : see Bk. IV, ch. 1-15.—11. *lapsus* : *disappointed*.—16. *publice privatim* : *as states, as individuals*.

CHAPTER 56

18. *intellexit* : sc. *Indutiomarus*.—19. *facinoris* : this "crime" was only an attempt to regain their liberty; cf. a similar sentiment of the author, *bellum sine causa intulissent*, page 98, lines 2, 3.—22. *Hoc* : nominative; i. e. *armatum concilium indicere*.—23. *quo* : *to which*.—24. *novissimus* : *last, latest*.—27. *supra* : ch. 3.

PAGE 139

2. *huc* : *to those states*; on the way he would naturally pass through the country of the *Remi*.

CHAPTER 57

6. *castris* : ablative of place and means.—7. *ne . . . dimitteret* : *how not to lose*.—*rei bene gerendae* : *of gaining an advantage, of a success*.—13. *alias . . . alias* : adverbs.—16. *timoris opinio-nem* : *the impression that he was afraid*; cf. the same stratagem, page 73, lines 1-3; page 134, lines 15-19; page 135, line 4.

CHAPTER 58

18. *in dies* : *day by day*, denoting progression.—19. *intromissis* : *brought into his camp*; Labienus had no cavalry of his own.—20. *curaverat* : *had caused to be*.—27. *ubi visum est* : *when they thought best*, lit. "when it seemed (good)".—28. *dispersi, dissi-pati, discedunt* : notice the successive words beginning with the same syllable.

PAGE 140

1. *praecipit* : connect with *unum . . . petant*.—*interdicit* : connect with *neu quis . . . vulneret*.—5. *mora reliquorum* : *through the delay caused by following the others*; *reliquorum* is a subjective genitive; they caused the delay.—6. *occiderint* : sc. *Indutiomarus*.—7. *Comprobat* : *justifies*.—*hominis* : *his*, as if it were a pronoun.—8. *fortuna* : *success*.—*unum* : *him alone*.—9. *fluminis* : perhaps the *Ourthe*, a tributary of the *Meuse*, perhaps the *Meuse* itself.—13. *paulo* : connect with *quietiorem*.—*habuit* : *found*.

BOOK SIX—B. C. 53

There being much restlessness among the tribes of Belgic Gaul, Caesar increases his forces, and reduces the natives to order (ch. 1-8).

SECOND INVASION OF GERMANY, ch. 9-28. Having built a second bridge, Caesar crosses the Rhine again. The Suebi retire into the interior. A detailed account of the manners and customs of the Gauls and Germans is inserted here, in the absence of important military movements to be recorded.

CAMPAIGN AGAINST AMBIORIX AND THE EBURONES, ch. 29-44. Returning to Gaul, Caesar devotes himself to vengeance upon the destroyers of the army of Sabinus and Cotta, inviting the coöperation of the Gauls against the Eburones. The Sugambri crossing the Rhine, make an unsuccessful attack upon Cicero at Atuatuca. The year's operations close with the laying waste of the enemy's country.

CHAPTER 1

PAGE 141

1. *causis*: the expedition to Britain had been well-nigh fruitless, Dumnorix had deserted and been killed, the army of Sabinus and Cotta had been destroyed. Indutiomarus had led a revolt. The year just past had been such as to encourage the general desire for freedom, which burst out all over Gaul in the great revolt of the following year, the story of which is in Bk. VII.—4. *Cn. Pompeio*: Pompey the Great; he had been consul in 70 and 55 B. C. At this time he was proconsul of Spain, but managed that country by his deputies, while he himself remained at Rome. He had six legions under his command.—*ad urbem*: near the city (Rome), but not in it, because, holding an *imperium*, he was forbidden to enter it.—5. *cum . . . remaneret*: since (as Caesar said) he was remaining.—*rei publicae causa*: in the public service; he had charge of the corn supply (*annona*) at the capital, but his real purpose in remaining there was to watch the political situation and to strengthen his own position.—*quos . . . rogasset*: those whom he when consul (in 55 B. C.) had enlisted in Cisalpine Gaul, which was Caesar's province.—6. *sacramento*: the military oath of obedience; the soldiers were asked if they would be faithful, hence *rogare sacramento*, "to ask by the oath," means "to enlist."—*rogasset*: subjunctive by attraction, because subordinate

to *iuberet*.—7. *iuberet*: subjunctive depending on *petit*.—8. *opinionem*: the opinion of the Gauls in regard to the power of Rome.—11. *augeri*: the word does not apply to *quid . . . detrimenti*, but to Caesar's army, which is implied in *maioribus . . . copiis*.—13. *per suos*: sc. *legatos*.—*tribus . . . legionibus*: i. e. thirty cohorts, twice as many as had been lost with Sabinus and Cotta, i. e. the 14th legion and five cohorts not belonging to any legion. Of the three new legions, one, the 1st, was borrowed from Pompey: the other two were the 14th and 15th, the new 14th taking the place of the 14th which had been destroyed; see page 41, line 18, and note. The first was returned to Pompey in 50 B. C., at which time the 15th was also sent to him to serve against the Parthians. Both were used against Caesar in the Civil War, 49–48 B. C.

CHAPTER 2

18. *ut . . . docuimus*: page 140, line 9.—*propinquos*: a son and relatives of Indutiomarus were held by Caesar as hostages at the time of the second invasion of Britain, page 106, line 27.—20. *Germanos sollicitare*: see Bk. I, ch. 31; page 121, lines 10, 11.

PAGE 142

3. *inter se confirmant*: *strengthen (the bond) between them*.—*obsidibus . . . cavent*: *guarantee the payment of money by giving hostages*.—6. *Cisrhenanis*: i. e. those settled in Gaul.—10. *maturius*: earlier in the season (than usual). He had spent the winter with the army; see page 136, line 23.

CHAPTER 3

12. *proximis*: three at *Samarobriva*, doubtless those of Crassus, Cicero, and Trebonius, and that of Fabius among the *Morini*; see page 136, lines 20–22; page 118, line 23.—19. *ut instituerat*: *as his practice was*.—22. *postponere*: *to make . . . secondary, subordinate*.—*videretur*: *it seemed (best)*.—*Lutetiam Parisiorum*: the first mention of Paris in history. It was on the island (La Cité) where the cathedral of Notre-Dame now stands, but was not important till 500 A. D.—24. *civitatem . . . coniunxerant*: *had united with the Senonian state*, made one out of two—not a very close union, as appears from the next sentence.—25. *consilio*: i. e. the plan of general revolt.—*Hac re*: the revolt of the *Senones*, *Carnutes*, and *Treviri*.—26. *pronuntiata*: at the council at *Lutetia*.

CHAPTER 4

28. *Acco*: see also page 167, line 22; page 168, line 14.—*princeps*: *leader*.

PAGE 143

1. *Conantibus*: dative.—3. *per*: with the support of, with the intercession of.—4. *in fide*: under the protection.—6. *instantis belli . . . esse*: ought to be devoted to the impending war.—8. *Eodem*: probably to *Agedincum*, the chief town of the Senones, now Sens.—9. *Remis*: friendly to Caesar since B. C. 57; see page 42, lines 11–19; page 43, lines 29, 30; page 137, line 24.

CHAPTER 5

12. *totus et mente et animo*: heart and soul.—13. *Cavarinum*: see page 137, lines 11–20.—15. *huius*: objective genitive, referring to *Cavarinum*.—20. *perpetuis*: unbroken, continuous.—22. *hospitium*: see note on *hospitem*, page 40, line 3.—23. *venisse*: sc. *Ambiorigem*.—*Germanis*: dative of reference.—26. *congrēdi* = *se coniungere*.—28. *mittit*: sc. *Caesar*.

CHAPTER 6

PAGE 144

4. *pontibus*: there being no bridges over the streams, Caesar had to build them.—8. *hostium . . . numero*: in the category of (i. e. as) enemies.—10. *Commium*: see page 93, line 28.

CHAPTER 7

15. *in eorum finibus*: see page 118, lines 25, 26.—18. *a . . . xv*: 15 miles off.—26. *flumen*: perhaps the *Ourthe*, but we can not be sure.—27. *habebat in animo*: intended.—28. *Augebatur*: sc. *hostibus*.

PAGE 145

1. *in dubium non devocaturum*: that he would not risk.—3. *ut*: as, because.—4. *rebus*: cause.—5. *primis ordinibus*: = *centurionibus primorum ordinum*.—7. *suspicionem*: impression.—8. *quam . . . consuetudo*: than is usual with the Romans.—11. *in*: on account of.

CHAPTER 8

14. *cum*: this is a case of "*cum inversum*"; W. 537; B. 288. 2; A. 325. *b*; H. 600. I. 1; the verb which it introduces is *dubitant* (line 20).—*inter se*: each other.—15. *longum esse*: (saying that) it would be tedious.—26. *nobis*: i. e. to Labienus.—27. *imperator*: the commander-in-chief, Caesar; distinguish *dux* and *imperator*; see page 56, line 14; page 71, line 15; page 207, lines 6–8.—28. *signa . . . converti*: to face about.—29. *aciem derigi*: to form battle-line.—30. *dimissis*: detaching.

PAGE 146

7. *recepit*: *recovered* (from rebellion).—9. *propinqui Indutio-mari*: see page 141, line 18.—12. *demonstravimus*: page 105, line 28; page 106, line 4; page 138, lines 26–29.

CHAPTER 9

14. *Caesar*, etc.: he resumes the narrative of ch. 6; ch. 7 and 8 are parenthetical, concerning Labienus's operations.—15. *causis*: regarding the reasons for the first expedition see Bk. IV, ch. 16.—17. *Ambiorix*: see page 127, line 3 and note; Bk. VI, ch. 29, 30, 33; page 166, lines 21–25.—19. *pontem*: this second bridge was not far from the first one, described in Bk. IV, ch. 17. In 1896 a line of ancient piles was discovered below Urmitz, which lies about half-way between Coblenz and Andernach. Extensive remains of apparently Roman earthworks, opposite the line of piles, on the left bank, were discovered in 1898, and excavated in that and the following year. These may be the remains of the fortified camp built by Caesar to defend his bridge, as implied in the words: *Firmo in Treveris ad pontem praesidio relicto*, lines 21, 22.—*Nota . . . ratione*: *inasmuch as the plan was familiar and had been already followed*; referring to the first bridge.—20. *studio*: *enthusiasm*.—29. *obsidum*: partitive genitive with *amplius*.

CHAPTER 10

PAGE 147

3. *fit*: sc. *Caesar*.—*Ubiis*: see Bk. IV, ch. 3.—*Suebos*: see Bk. IV, ch. 1.—4. *in unum locum*, etc.: as at page 92, line 14.—5. *denuntiare*: cf. page 137, line 9.—12. *quaeque*: *que* connects *mittant* and *cognoscant*; *quae* is the subject of *gerantur*.—19. *Bacenis*: between the *Cherusci* and the *Suebi*; a great forest region stretching across central Germany eastward from Thuringia.—22. *initium*: i. e. the western end.

CHAPTER 11

24. *alienum*: *inappropriate*.—26. *proponere*: *to state*. The moral effect of this expedition was the only one. Some think that this valuable *excursus* was intended to divert attention from the lack of military result.

PAGE 148

1. *eorum*: sc. *Gallorum*.—2. *quorum*: does not refer to *eorum*.—*summa . . . rerum*: *the general conduct of affairs*.—3. *redeat*: characteristic subjunctive.—*Id . . . institutum videtur*: *the custom appears to have been established*.—5. *auxili*: genitive with *egeret*.—

quisque: i. e. each leader or chieftain.—9. *divisae sunt*: see note on *est divisa*, page 1, line 1.

CHAPTER 12

11. *Hi*: *Sequani*; earlier the Arverni were the leading Gallic nation; see page 21, line 21.—13. *clientelae*: *dependent states*.—*Germanos . . . adiunxerant*; see Bk. I, ch. 31, 32.—15. *iacturis*: *sacrifices, cost*.—20. *publice*: *as a state*.—24. *infecta re*: *without accomplishing his purpose*.—30. *uti*: *enjoyed*.

PAGE 149

2. *quos . . . intellegebatur*: *and because it was understood that they (the Remi) enjoyed as much of Caesar's favor (as the Haedui)*.

CHAPTER 13

10. *aliquo . . . numero*: *of any account*, we say of insignificant persons: "They do not count."—13. *aere alieno*: *debt* (lit. "another's money").—16. *in*: *over*.—17. *de*: *of*.—*druidum*: predicate genitive limiting *alterum* (*genus*).—18. *divinis*: *religious*.—*intersunt*: *preside over*.—19. *procurant*: *attend to*, not "procure."—*religiones interpretantur*: *explain rites and ceremonies*.—20. *disciplinae*: = *discendi*.—21. *hi*: the Druids.—*eos*: *sc. Gallos*.—23. *quod*: indefinite adjective pronoun.—24. *idem*: *nomina-tive plural*; *likewise, also*.—26. *sacrificiis interdicunt*: this is religious excommunication, analogous to the Roman *interdictio aqua et igni*, fire and water representing all the necessities of human life.

PAGE 150

2. *honos*: = *honor*; earlier form.—4. *Hoc mortuo*: *when he dies*.—9. *loco consecrato*: said to have been a grove, near Dreux.—11. *Disciplina*: *system*.—12. *reperta, translata*: Druidism, then declining in Gaul, was still flourishing unimpaired in Britain. This fact explains why it was thought to have originated in the latter country.—13. *eam rem*: *that subject*.

CHAPTER 14

16. *pendunt*: *pay*, lit. "weigh."—20. *versuum*: *lines*. Verse is more easily committed to memory than prose.—22. *litteris*: *to writing*.—23. *Graecis litteris*: Greek characters, Gallic words; cf. page 20, line 6; page 133, line 14.—25. *quod . . . velint*: *because (as they say) they do not wish*, etc.—28. *quod*: = *id quod*.—30. *animas*: *the soul*.

PAGE 151

3. *ab aliis*, etc.: the doctrine of transmigration of souls, or *metempsychosis*.—*hoc*: *this belief*.—4. *terrarum*: = *orbis terrarum*, *the earth*.—*rerum natura*: *nature*.

CHAPTER 15

7. *Alterum*: cf. page 149, lines 17, 18.—*cum*: *whenever*.—8. *incidit*: *breaks out*.—11. *genere*: *birth, family, social position*.—12. *plurimos*: Orgetorix had 10,000 retainers.—13. *Hanc . . . noverunt*: *this is the only kind of influence and power that they know*.

CHAPTER 16

15. *dedita*: *devoted*.—17. *versantur*: *are involved*.—18. *pro*: *as*.—20. *pro . . . vita . . . reddatur*: cf. Gen. ix, 6.—22. *habent instituta*: = *instituerunt*.—23. *simulacra*: large hollow images of wickerwork.—25. *quibus*: the antecedent is *simulacra*. Cruelty is common in an imperfect state of civilization. It is not surprising to find it among the Gauls; for instances, see page 138, lines 24-26; page 153, lines 6-12; page 170, lines 26-30; page 193, line 1; page 208, line 5.

CHAPTER 17

PAGE 152

1. *Mercurium*: like other Latin writers, Caesar gives to the foreign gods the names of Roman ones; thus: Mercury = Teutates; Apollo = Belenus; Mars = Esus (*Hesus*); Jupiter = Taranis, "Thunderer."—3. *viarum atque itinerum ducem*: if any distinction is intended, the meaning is that Mercury points out the roads (*viae*) and accompanies those who make journeys (*itineria*).—11. *ceperint*: informal indirect discourse after *devovent*; perfect subjunctive for future perfect indicative of direct discourse.—16. *posita*: *set aside, set apart*, as offerings.

CHAPTER 18

19. *patre*: a title here given to *Dis (Pluto)* as the supposed ancestor of the Gauls.—20. *Ob eam causam*: i. e. because *Dis* was the god of the underworld of darkness.—21. *spatia*: *periods*.—*numero . . . noctium*: cf. Tac. *Germania*, 11. We have "sennight," "fortnight," "twelfth-night."—22. *finiunt*: = *definiunt*. It is easier for primitive peoples to measure time by the moon than by the sun.—24. *ab reliquis*: *from other nations*.—27. *adsistere*: *to appear*.—28. *ducunt*: *consider*.

CHAPTER 19

PAGE 153

1. *Viri*: husbands.—*pecunias*: property.—*nomine*: by way of.
 —3. *communicant*: they put along with.—4. *ratio*: account.
 —*fructus*: income.—*uter*: whichever; husband or wife.—5.
vita superavit: survives; *vita*: ablative of specification.—*ad eum*:
 to him or her.—6. *in*: over.—8. *inlustriore loco natus*: of
 high rank.—9. *Si res . . . venit*: if suspicion arises (in regard
 to the cause of his death).—10. *uxoribus*: the higher classes were
 apparently polygamous.—*in servilem modum*: the Romans tortured
 slaves on the death of their masters under suspicious circumstances. *Dig.*
xxiv, v.—12. *excruciatas interficiunt*: they torture and kill.—
pro cultu: considering the degree of civilization.—14. *cordi*: W.
 342, 345; B. 191. 2. a); A. 233. a; H. 433.—15. *supra hanc*
memoriam: before our time; *hanc* means "now existing."—16.
iustis: complete.

CHAPTER 20

18. *Quae*: = *eae* . . . *quae*.—*rem publicam*: public affairs.
 —20. *de re publica*: of interest to the state.—*rumore ac fama*:
 the former is more vague than the latter, like rumor and report; cf. page
 84, line 12, and page 127, line 23.—25. *quae visa sunt*: sc. *occul-*
tanda; which they have thought best to conceal.—*ex usu*: cf. page 20,
 line 22, and note.—26. *De re publica*: about politics.—*per*: at.

CHAPTER 21

29. *druides*: yet they had a regular priesthood.

PAGE 154

1. *Deorum*: the religion of the Germans was a sort of nature worship,
 but not quite so simple as this account makes it; see Tac. *Germania*, 9.
 Notice what is said of one of their superstitions, page 38, lines 4-9.—
 3. *Vulcanum*: i. e. "Fire."—*ne . . . acceperunt*: they have not even
 heard of.—4. *venationibus*: hunting expeditions; cf. page 81, line
 18.—5. *in . . . militaris*: in warlike pursuits.—6. *impuberes*:
 chaste, unmarried. The Italians come to physical maturity earlier than
 northern races.—7. *staturam*: the Germans were much larger than
 the Italians; see page 27, lines 26, 27; page 59, lines 2, 3.

CHAPTER 22

15. *in*: of.—17. *in annos singulos*: year by year.—*genti-*
bus cognationibusque: families and clans.—19. *agri*: depends on
quantum.—20. *alio*: to another place.—21. *consuetudine*:

residence.—22. *cultura*: W. 395; B. 218. 5; A. 252. c; H. 478. 4.
 —*latos fines*: the development of large estates (*latifundia*) in Italy
 had even before Caesar's time begun to ruin the country by driving out
 the small proprietors.—24. *accuratius*: *with too much care.*—
 26. *animi aequitate*: *contentment.*

CHAPTER 23

29. *maxima laus*, etc.: cf. page 82, lines 23–26.—30. *pro-
 prium*: *a proof.*

PAGE 155

1. *neque quemquam*: B. 341. 2. *d.*—4. *bellum . . . inlatum
 defendit*: *repels an invasion.*—5. *praesint*: cf. Tac. *Germ.* 12;
 military power is by election, perhaps by lot, from the number of ex-
 isting magistrates.—7. *communis*: i. e. over a whole nation.—
regionum, pagorum: *districts, villages.*—10. *Latrocinia*: this
 view is common to all barbarous peoples, who do not distinguish brigand-
 age from regular war.—*habent*: *involve.*—14. *profiteantur*: *that
 those . . . are to give in their names.*—16. *ex his*: i. e. of those who
 promise to follow.—18. *his*: dative with a verb of "taking away."
 These two chapters (22 and 23), together with Tacitus's *Germania*, are
 the chief ancient sources of information about the institutions of Teutonic
 society.

CHAPTER 24

25. *trans Rhenum*: into Germany; cf. page 81, line 4.—
 27. *Hercyniam silvam*: a great forest region stretching eastward
 through South Germany, north of the Danube Valley.—28. *Graecis*:
 we do not know which ones.—*video*: i. e. Caesar read the statements
 in books.—29. *Volcae Tectosages*: the Volcae were divided into
Arecomici and *Tectosages*, both living near the eastern end of the Pyrenees.
 Caesar thinks that those of this nation who lived in Germany had migrated
 from Gaul.—31. *sese continet*: *has maintained itself.*

PAGE 156

1. *opinionem*: *reputation for.*—3. *provinciarum*: Cisalpine
 Gaul and the "Province" in Transalpine Gaul.—7. *ipsi*: *Galli.*
 —*illis*: *Germanis*; cf. Tac. *Agricola*, II, *Plus tamen ferociae Bri-
 tanni*, etc.

CHAPTER 25

8. *supra*: in the last chapter.—*demonstrata*: *mentioned.*—
 9. *latitudo*: from south to north.—*expedito*: *for a rapid traveler.*
 We might allow 25 miles or more a day.—10. *mensuras*, etc.: they

had no system of measures of distance, but reckoned by time ; the modern Germans, in walking, count by hours rather than by miles.—*nove-runt* : sc. *Germani*.—*Oritur* : sc. *silva Hercynia* ; it begins.—12. *recta* . . . *regione* : *along the line of*.—13. *Dacorum* : in what is now Hungary.—*sinistrorsus* : *to the left* ; the river, in fact, turns to the right, southward.—*diversis* . . . *regionibus* : *in a different direction from the river*.—16. *huius* : *of this part of* (i. e. the western part).—*initium* : i. e. the eastern edge.—19. *quae* : *such as* ; the verb is in the subjunctive of characteristic.

CHAPTER 26

22. *bos*, etc. : perhaps the "reindeer," but Caesar had evidently not seen it, and the description is very wrong. One horn only would appear in profile.—25. *sicut* : *as it were*.—*palmae* : the hand with fingers extended ; *palmae ramique* ; hendiadys ; *branches like the fingers of the extended hand*.—*Eadem* . . . *natura*, etc. : the female deer, in fact, has shorter horns than the male.

CHAPTER 27

29. *capris* : = *figurae caprarum*.—*varietas pellium* : *mottled hide*.

PAGE 157

1. *antecedunt* : *surpass* (the reindeer).—*mutilae* : the horns of the elk are broad and blunt.—2. *sine nodis et articulis* : *without joints* ; an absurd mistake ; the same error was long current about the legs of the elephant.—*quietis causa* : *in order to sleep*.—5. *ad* . . . *adplicant* : *they lean against*.—8. *subruunt* : *undermine*.—9. *accidunt* : *cut partly through*.—*ut* . . . *relinquatur* : *so that they keep every appearance of standing (firm)*.

CHAPTER 28

13. *uri* : *Urochs* in German, a kind of bison, now extinct, of which skeletons are found.—18. *se* . . . *durant* : *harden* (i. e. *train*) *themselves*.—20. *quae sint* : *purpose* ; *to be*.—22. *parvuli* : *when very young*.—24. *ab labris* : *around the rim*, at the large end.—26. *utuntur* : sc. *his* from *Haec* (line 24). The Germans were hard drinkers, chiefly of beer ; see page 82, line 20 ; Tac. *Germania*, 22, 23.

CHAPTER 29

27. *Caesar*, etc. : the narrative broken off at the end of Chapter 10 is now resumed.—29. *supra* : page 81, lines 15-18 ; page 154, line 14.—*demonstravimus* : editorial "we," Caesar as the author speaking in the first person ; see page 41, line 2, and note.

PAGE 158

2. *auxilia*: forces coming to help rebellious Gauls.—5. *in extremo ponte*: on the end of the bridge, in the river.—10. *frumenta*: why plural? It was now about the end of July or beginning of August.—13. *milibus*: sc. *passuum*.—14. *D*: much exaggerated, or perhaps a copyist's error.—15. *si*: to see whether.—*celeritate*: Caesar's prime characteristic.—18. *subsequi*: present for immediate future.

CHAPTER 30

22. *quo in loco*: = *ad eum locum in quo*.—25. *ipsum*: *Ambiorigem*.—*incideret*: sc. *Basilus*.—26. *eius adventus*: his (*Basilus*'s) actual arrival.—27. *magnae fuit fortunae*: predicate possessive genitive; it was (a matter) of the greatest good luck; sic . . . *fuit* corresponds to *ut* . . . *accidit* (line 24). The clauses *ut* . . . *incideret* . . . *videretur* are subjects of *accidit*; the clause *ipsum effugere* of *fortunae fuit*.—28. *habebat*: sc. *Ambiorix*.—29. *ipsum*: *Ambiorigem*.

PAGE 159

3. *propinquitates*: abstract noun in the plural; places near.

CHAPTER 31

9. *iudicio*: *deliberately*.—10. *tempore exclusus*: prevented by (lack of) time.—13. *sibi* . . . *consulere*: to look out for himself.—15. *continentes*: unbroken in extent.—18. *alienissimis*: perfect strangers.—21. *omnibus* . . . *Ambiorigem*: invoking all manner of curses on the head of *Ambiorix*.

CHAPTER 32

24. *Segni Condrusique*: west of the Rhine; see map opposite page 81.—26. *ne* . . . *duceret*: not to treat them.—28. *unam*: one and the same; predicate adjective.

PAGE 160

3. *fecissent* . . . *violaturum*: for *feceritis* . . . *violabo* of direct discourse.—6. *Atuaticum*: see note to page 119, line 1.—*castelli*: a stronghold, a fortress of refuge; this may mean that *Atuaticum* is a German word meaning the same as the Latin *castellum*.—10. *munitiones*: the camp of Cotta and Sabinus, constructed the year before, Bk. V, ch. 26-37, page 164, lines 5-7.—11. *sublevaret*: sc. *Caesar*.—12. *proxime conscriptas*: see page 141, lines 13-17, and note to line 13.

CHAPTER 33

16. legionibus tribus: one legion was left at *Atuatuca* with Cicero, three each went with Labienus, Trebonius, and Caesar. This accounts for all ten. Hence the twelve cohorts left to guard the Rhine bridge (ch. 29) must have been withdrawn, or the legions must have been incomplete, or those cohorts must have been auxiliary or supernumerary troops. The first alternative seems less likely in view of what is said at page 162, lines 11-14.—**21. Scaldim**: the *Scheldt* does not now flow into the Meuse (Maas); the *Sambre* does; hence though the *MSS.* all say *Scaldim*, many editors think Caesar made a mistake and therefore write *Sabim*. It appears, however, that a few centuries ago there was a connection between the Scheldt and the Old Meuse (Oude Maas) near the island of Tholen.—**24. quam ad diem**: feminine, because it means *date* rather than "day"; yet we find *quem ad diem*, page 162, line 2.—**25. in praesidio**: at *Atuatuca*.—**deberi**: *was due*; i. e. the legion had been supplied up to that time, when a new supply would have to be served out.—**26. rei publicae commodo**: *consistently with the public interests*; cf. page 25, line 27; page 132, line 15.

CHAPTER 34

PAGE 161

1. supra: page 159, line 9.—**manus . . . nulla**, etc.: i. e. among the Gauls.—**4. valles**: nominative singular.—**abditas**: *secluded*.—**6. vicinitatibus**: = *vicinis*; *neighbors*.—**7. summa**: *the whole*.—**10. ex parte**: *to some extent*.—**13. confertos**: *in masses*.—**14. sceleratorum**: Caesar calls them villains because they had treacherously destroyed the fifteen cohorts of Cotta and Sabinus.—**20. Ut . . . difficultatibus**: *considering the nature of the difficulties*.—**21. ut potius**, etc.: *so as rather to do less damage to the enemy . . . than to cause any harm to his own soldiers while trying to hurt the enemy*.

CHAPTER 35

PAGE 162

2. dies . . . vii: see page 160, lines 23, 24.—**3. reverti**: i. e. to *Atuatuca*; see page 160, line 6.—**7. adferret**: subjunctive of characteristic.—**11. supra docuimus**: page 90, lines 1-5.—**13. pons, praesidium**: see page 146, lines 18-23; page 158, lines 2-9.—**18. latrocinii**: see page 155, line 10, and note.—**22. tenuem**: *trifling*.—**25. praesidi tantum**: *so small a garrison*; *tantum* means "only so much."—**26. cingi possit**: *can be manned*.—**29. duce**: *as a guide*, predicate appositive to *eodem*.

CHAPTER 36

PAGE 163

1. **Cicero**: in autumn of year before, 54 B. C., Q. Cicero had successfully withstood the furious siege of his camp by the Nervii; Bk. V, ch. 38-52.—**qui . . . continuisset**: W. 586. 7; B. 283. 3. 6); A. 320. e; H. 593. 2.—5. **progressum**: sc. *eum esse*.—6. **audiebat**: sc. *Cicero*.—7. **illius**: *Ciceronis*.—8. **siquidem**: *inasmuch as*.—10. **quo . . . posset**: *by which harm could be suffered in (a march of only) three miles*.—13. **quas inter**: = *inter quas*.—**unus**: *only one*.—14. **ex legionibus**: the nine legions on the expeditions already spoken of.—15. **hoc spatio**: i. e. since Caesar's departure.—16. **sub vexillo**: lit. *under a flag*, i. e. in one body or detachment; see Introduction, page xlv.—18. **facta potestate**: *taking advantage of the chance, or getting permission*.

CHAPTER 37

21. **ab**: *on the side of*.—**decumana porta**: see Introduction, page li; which side of the camp?—22. **objectis . . . silvis**: *as they were screened by the woods*; ablative absolute. It was a bad plan to encamp near a forest; perhaps it was unavoidable in this case.—23. **usque eo**: *so near*.—**sub vallo**: i. e. outside. The traders and camp followers were outside the fortifications.—**tenderent**: *were encamped*.—26. **Circumfunduntur**: *swarmed around*.—27. **si**: (*to see*) *whether*.—29. **locus ipse**: probably it was a hill.

PAGE 164

2. **quo . . . ferantur**: *whither to advance*.—**quam . . . conveniat**: *where to rally*.—6. **religiones**: *superstitions*.—**calamitatem**: see Bk. V, ch. 26-37.—7. **occiderint**: subjunctive in informal indirect discourse giving the thought of the soldiers.—8. **barbaris**: translate as if genitive.

CHAPTER 38

12. **Baculus**: the reader's attention is directed to this hero and nothing is said about Cicero, with whom Caesar deals very leniently in this story. He had done the fullest justice to Cicero's gallantry of the year before.—13. **primum pilum . . . duxerat**: *had been first centurion of a legion*; see Introduction, page xxix.—**apud**: *under, in the army of*.—14. **proeliis**: *in (telling of) . . . battles*.—19. **in statione**: *on duty*.—20. **proelium sustinent**: *keep up the fight*.—**Relinquit animus**: i. e. he faints.

CHAPTER 39

27. *Hic . . . nulla munitio* : they were three miles from camp ; see page 163, lines 11, 12.—28. *modo* : *lately* ; see page 141, lines 13, 14 ; page 160, lines 11–15.—*usus* : genitive with *imperiti*.

PAGE 165

2. *quin* : = *qui non* ; *as not to be*, negative result.—5. *paucitate* : i. e. 5 cohorts and 300 convalescent veteran legionaries. See page 163, lines 12 and 16.

CHAPTER 40

7. *in signa manipulosque* : *into the ranks of the cohorts and companies* (for safety).—10. *quoniam . . . sint* : informal indirect discourse ; the reason alleged by them.—15. *docuimus* : page 163, line 16.—*inter se* : *each other*.—C. Trebonio : not the *legatus* of this name, who was away in command of three legions ; see page 160, line 18.—20. *nullo . . . usu . . . percepto* : *not having gained any experience*.—23. *eam* : sc. *vim celeritatemque* ; the two nouns constitute a single notion.—27. *virtutis causa* : *on account of their valor* ; the centurions were, of course, veterans, with a proud reputation to sustain.

PAGE 166

1. *pars . . . periiit* : amounting to two cohorts ; see page 167, lines 18, 19.

CHAPTER 41

8. *fidem non faceret* : *he could not make them believe*, i. e. Cicero and his men.—10. *alienata mente* : *bereft of reason*, i. e. crazed with fear.—*deletis . . . recepisse*, depends on *dicerent*.—12. *neque* : connect with *oppugnatos fuisse*.—*incolumi exercitu* : ablative absolute ; the Roman army is meant.—13. *contenderent* : *insisted*.

CHAPTER 42

15. *eventus* : *chances*.—*unum* : *only*.—17. *casui* : *for an accident*.—*relinqui debuisse* : *ought to have been left*.—18. *multum . . . potuisse* : cf. page 158, lines 23, 24 ; page 3, lines 19, 20.—19. *amplius* : sc. *fortunam potuisse*.—21. *admirandum* : sc. *hoc*, referring to clause *quod . . . obtulerant*.

CHAPTER 43

PAGE 167

1. *praeda* : chiefly cattle, hence *agebatur* ; see page 162, line 15, *magno pecoris numero*, etc.—2. *frumenta* : *crops*.—4. *anni*

tempore: the autumn rains had begun.—8. *ut . . . captivi*: that the persons whom they captured were looking about for Ambiorix, whom they had just seen in flight.—10. *consequendi*: of overtaking him.—14. *ille*: Ambiorix. In Bk. VIII, ch. 24, he is still eluding pursuit; cf. Florus, *Epitome*, i. 45. 8.

CHAPTER 44

18. *duarum cohortium damno*: see page 166, lines 1, 2.—19. *Durocortorum*: accusative, limit of motion; now Rheims.—22. *princeps*: instigator, ringleader.—23. *more maiorum*: the ancestral practice was to flog traitors to death. This is a euphemistic phrase.—25. *Aqua atque igni*: the necessities of life. Everybody was forbidden to furnish them to the culprit.—27. *Agedinci*: now Sens.—28. *in Italiam*: i. e. into Cisalpine Gaul; see page 7, line 15, and note.—29. *ad conventus agendos*: see page 40, lines 18, 19, and note.

BOOK SEVEN—B. C. 52

THE GREAT WAR FOR GALLIC INDEPENDENCE. Before the close of the winter, certain Gallic tribes having revolted, under the leadership of the Arvernian Vercingetorix, Caesar returns in haste from Italy, invades the country of the Arverni, relieves the Boii, and captures three cities in the center of Gaul (ch. 1-13). The Gauls having resolved, as a military measure, to destroy all their towns which could afford strongholds to the Romans, spare Avaricum in the land of the Bituriges. Caesar besieges it, captures it after a long and heroic resistance, and to teach the patriots a severe lesson, destroys it. The policy of Vercingetorix is justified by the fate of Avaricum (ch. 14-31). The next great struggle was about the stronghold of Gergovia, in the Arvernian country (ch. 32-52). This Caesar fails to take, and having found the Haedui treacherous, conducts an expedition against them and sends Labienus against the Parisii (ch. 53-62). Uniting again with Labienus, Caesar defeats Vercingetorix, who retreats to the hill of Alesia in the district of the Mandubii (ch. 63-67). Caesar invests the place. The Gauls nearly all over the country join the revolt and raise an army for the relief of Alesia. By elaborate siege-works Caesar succeeds in hemming in the town completely and in defending his own rear. When the final struggle came against both the besieged and the vast army of relief, the genius of Caesar and the disciplined heroism of his army triumphed over the tremendous numbers and wild courage of the enemy. With the fall of Alesia and the surrender of Gaul's ablest leader perished the last reasonable hope of its independence (ch. 68-90).

CHAPTER 1

PAGE 168

1. *Quieta Gallia*: this was the calm before the storm.—3. *Clodi caede*: Clodius, a partizan of Caesar and a prominent demagogue, was murdered Jan. 20, 52 B. C., in an encounter with T. Annii Milo. Riots followed and military forces were called out.—4. *iuniores*: the men of military age.—*coniurarent*: should take the (military) oath in bodies, not as in times of leisure, one by one.—7. *quod*: = *id quod*.—*res*: the situation.—8. *urbano motu*: disturbances in the

capital.——14. *Acconis*: a Senonian chief, put to death by Caesar the year before for heading an insurrection; see page 167, lines 22–24.——16. *omnibus*: *all sorts of.*——18. *in libertatem vindicent*: *establish the freedom of.*——*rationem esse habendam*: *measures must be taken.*——21. *legiones*: six at Agedincum, two among the Lingones, two on the frontier of the Treveri; see page 167, lines 25–28.

CHAPTER 2

PAGE 169

6. *principes . . . facturos*: *would be the first to make.*——8. *obsidibus cavere*: *to give security by exchange of hostages.* They could not exchange hostages without attracting the attention of the Romans.——10. *conlatis . . . signis*: this gathering together of the standards was a symbol of unity. They went armed to the war council; see page 138, lines 22–24.

CHAPTER 3

16. *Cenabum*: now Orléans.——17. *negotiandi causa*: i. e. loaning money, dealing in grain, etc., farming revenues; Cic. *pro Font.* V. 11.——18. *honestum*: *respectable.*——22. *clamore*: men were stationed previously in relays at short distances.——25. *quae . . . gesta essent*: *concessive.*——*ante . . . confectam*: *before the end of.*

CHAPTER 4

PAGE 170

1. *Vercingetorix*: the great leader in the united rising of Gaul.——3. *Galliae*: i. e. *Celticae*; see page 21, lines 19–21: *Galliae totius factiones esse duas*, etc.——4. *regnum*: *sovereignty, royal power.*——5. *clientibus*: see page 151, line 12, and note.——10. *Gergovia*: 2,400 feet above the sea, 8 miles southeast of the Puy-de-Dôme, 4 miles south of Clermont.——12. *adit*: *meets.*——15. *quoque versus*: *in every direction.*——20. *imperium*: *chief command.*——23. *quodque ante tempus*: *and before what time.*——27. *necat sc. eos qui maius delictum commiserant.*

CHAPTER 5

PAGE 171

5. *fide*: *protectorate*; the Haedui were still allies of Rome.——13. *quibus id consili*, etc.: *whose plan, they heard, was*, etc.——14. *ipsi*: the Bituriges, who would hem in the Haedui from the north, while the Arverni did the same on the south.——17. *nihil . . . constat*: *we are not at all sure.*

CHAPTER 6

21. *urbanas res*: *affairs in the city* (Rome).—*virtute*: *energy*.
 —25. *provinciam*: i. e. *Gallia Narbonensis*; see Introduction, page lxi.—27. *eis*: i. e. *Gallis*.

CHAPTER 7

PAGE 172

2. *Nitiobroges*: on the *Garonne River*, in the extreme southwest of Celtic Gaul.—4. *versus*: this preposition follows its noun.—6. *antevertendum* (*esse*): its subject is *ut . . . profiscisceretur*, its indirect object is *consiliis*. Translate: *that he must anticipate all these plans by starting for Narbo*.—8. *provincialibus*: i. e. that part of the *Ruteni* who lived in the Province.—11. *supplementum*: the new levies of Cisalpine Gaul; see page 168, line 4.—12. *in Helvios*: = *in fines Helviorum*; connect with *convenire*.

CHAPTER 8

15. *praesidia*: the line of garrisoned posts established by Caesar.—*putabat*: sc. *Lucterius*.—16. *profisciscitur*: sc. *Caesar*.—17. *tempore*: midwinter in reality, late February by the calendar, which was then about six weeks ahead of time; see note on page 81, line 1; see page 187, lines 27–29.—18. *discussa*: cleared away.—28. *suīs*: i. e. *Arvernorum*.—*se*: *Arvernos*.

CHAPTER 9

PAGE 173

4. *haec de Vercingetorige*: *these movements on the part of Vercingetorix*.—5. *usu ventura*: *would come to pass*, lit. "in experience."—*praeceperat*: *had anticipated*.—6. *per causam*: *on the pretext*; he had no such intention, but took care to conceal his real purpose even from his own men, lest the Gauls should hear of it.—7. *Brutum*: the same who distinguished himself in the campaign against the *Veneti*, Bk. III, ch. 11–15.—9. *se*: sc. *Caesarem*.—11. *Viennam*: on the Rhône, a few miles south of Lyons.—12. *nactus recentem equitatum*: *finding the cavalry fresh*.—13. *neque . . . intermisso*: *marching day and night without stopping*.—15. *duae . . . hiemabant*: see page 167, line 26.—*quid . . . de sua salute . . . consili*: *any plan involving his own existence*.—17. *Eo*: among the *Haeduan*s.—18. *in unum locum*: apparently *Agedincum* (Sens), in the Senonian country; see page 174, line 8.—21. *Gorgobinam*: south of and not very far from *Noviodunum* (Nevers), but the exact site can not be determined.—*Boiorum . . . quos*, etc.: see page 20, lines 1–5.

CHAPTER 10

26. *ne . . . deficeret*: depending on the thought, "he feared," implied in the preceding sentence.—*stipendiariis*: i. e. the Boii.—28. in *eo*: *Caesare*.

PAGE 174

1. *duris subvectionibus*: by the difficulty of transporting supplies.—6. *qui*: as antecedent understand *nuntios*.—in *fide*: faithful, staunch.—9. *ad Boios*: i. e. to *Gorgobina*.

CHAPTER 11

10. *Vellaunodunum*: it is not possible to identify the site of this town; it lay on the route from *Agedincum* to *Cenabum*. The location given on the map in this book is that of *Montargis*.—12. *quo*: instead of *ut* because of the comparative, *expeditiore*. He did not wish the line to his base of supplies to be endangered by leaving a town in his rear in the enemy's hands.—16. *quam primum*: as soon as possible.—17. *Cenabum*: Orléans.—19. *eam . . . iri*: that the siege would be prolonged.—20. *quod . . . mitterent*: clause of purpose.—23. *diei tempore*: he arrived late in the afternoon.—in *posterum*: sc. *diem*.—24. *quaeque*: = *et quae*.—*sint*: subjunctive of characteristic.—26. *profugerent*: sc. *oppidani*.—27. in *armis excubare*: to sleep on their arms.—30. *expeditas*: in fighting trim.

PAGE 175

1. *perpaucis . . . caperentur*: had not a very few been missing, the whole number would have been captured.—5. *praedam*: probably the people as well as their property. They would be sold as slaves.

CHAPTER 12

7. *oppugnatione*: of *Gorgobina*. See page 173, line 21.—9. *Ille*: *Caesar*.—*Noviodunum*: on the Loire, now Nevers.—11. *suæ . . . consuleret*: spare their lives; the sentences *ut sibi . . . ignosceret . . . consuleret* are the objects of *oratum*.—12. *ut . . . conficeret*: Caesar's purpose.—*qua*: the antecedent is *celeritate*.—19. *Quem*: the cavalry of Vercingetorix.—*simul atque*: as soon as.—in *spem . . . venerunt*: began to hope.—21. *complere*: to man.—22. *significatio*: behavior.

CHAPTER 13

28. *ab initio*: i. e. of the Gallic wars; see page 209, lines 24-30; page 210, line 3; page 211, lines 10-13; page 212, line 24; page 220, lines 25-27; note to page 87, line 20.

PAGE 176

4. *comprehensos . . . perduxerunt* : seized and brought.—
9. *regione* : governed by *in*, before *finibus*.—*recepto* : captured.

CHAPTER 14

14. *alia . . . atque* : B. 341. 1. c); A. 247. d; H. 516. 3.—
18. *anni tempore* : it was probably March by the calendar; cf. note to page 172, line 17.—19. *aedificiis* : i. e. barns and granaries.—
21. *rei familiaris commoda* : considerations of private property.—
22. *hoc spatio . . . quo* : for as great a distance . . . as.—24. *ipsis Gallis*.

PAGE 177

2. *proposita* : convenient.—4. *Haec* : refers to what precedes.—
—*illa* : what follows.

CHAPTER 15

12. *amissa* : neuter plural used as substantive.—14. *Procum-bunt* : emphatic position for a verb.—*Gallis* : dative of reference, but translate as if it were genitive limiting *pedes*.—15. *pulcherrimam* : it had a fine situation and many open squares.—19. *flumine*, etc. : see plan opposite page 178.—*et* : (after *habeat*) omit in translating.—
—20. *Datur . . . venia* : this was the first great mistake made by the Gauls in this campaign.

CHAPTER 16

24. *minoribus* : shorter.—27. *in . . . tempora* : from hour to hour.

PAGE 178

1. *observabat* : he kept a watch on.—3. *quantum . . . iretur* : so far as could be calculated in advance, our men met the difficulty by going at uncertain times and by different routes.

CHAPTER 17

7. *supra* : page 177, lines 18–20.—8. *aggerem, vineas, turre* : see Introduction, pages lii, liii, and lviii.—11. *alteri . . . alteri* : sc. *Haedui . . . Boii*.—12. *studio* : enthusiasm. Cf. their half-hearted conduct, Bk. I, ch. 16, when they gave trouble to Caesar about supplies.—
—14. *quod* : i. e. *frumentum*.—15. *adfecto* : involved in.—
—21. *in opere* : (engaged) in the work of building the agger, etc.—
—22. *singulas* : one by one.—26. *hoc . . . loco* : that they would feel it as a disgrace.—28. *praestare* : that it was better.—

quam non : = *quam ut non* ; *than not to*.——30. *parentarent* : the subjunctive is used after *quam*, with or without *ut*.

CHAPTER 18

PAGE 179

6. *expeditis* : light-armed foot-soldiers, as described, page 36, line 26—page 37, line 5. German tactics were adopted by Vercingetorix ; so was the Roman style of camping, page 187, line 6.——10. *pervenit* : sc. *Caesar*.

CHAPTER 19

16. *Collis* : line 13.——18. *non latior* : concessive.——19. *generatim* : *by tribes*.——22. *haesitantes* : *sticking fast* in the mire.——23. *qui* : *if one* ; so also in line 25.——24. *prope aequo Marte* : *on almost equal terms*.——25. *inani simulatione* : *in mere parade*.——27. *suum* : *of them* ; i. e. *Caesar's soldiers*.——30. *ne cesse sit constare* : *would inevitably cost*.

PAGE 180

1. *sua* : sc. *Caesaris*.——2. *iniquitatis* : genitive with a verb of condemning.

CHAPTER 20

7. *proditionis* : genitive with a verb of accusing.——9. *imperio* : = *imperatore*.——13. *illum* : subject of *malle*.——15. *Quod . . . movisset* : *as to his having moved*.——17. *qui* : sc. *locus*.——21. *is* : any one to whom he might have delegated the command.——22. *cui rei* : i. e. battle with the Romans.——24. *fortunae* : sc. *habendam gratiam (esse)* from next line.——26. *eorum* : sc. of the Romans.——31. *explorata* : *assured*.——*quin etiam* : *nay even* ; *quin* is not here a consecutive conjunction.——*remittere* : (*he was ready*) to resign.

PAGE 181

9. *si . . . possent* : (*to see*) *whether they could*.——12. *imperatorum* : *Caesar*.

CHAPTER 21

20. *armis concrepat* : i. e. striking their spears on their shields ; cf. Tac. *Germania*, 11.——21. *in eo . . . cuius* : *in the case of one whose*.——22. *Summum . . . ducem* : *the best of leaders*.——23. *maiore ratione* : *with greater skill*.——26. *communem* : i. e. of all the Gauls.——27. *in eo* : *eo* (= *ea re*) refers to the *si*-clause following.——*in eo . . . constare* : *depended upon their retaining this town* ; lit. "depended upon this, whether they should retain," etc.

CHAPTER 22

PAGE 182

1. *sollertiae*: *cleverness*.—2. *quoque*: *any one*.—*laqueis*: *nooses*.—*falces*: i. e. *murales*; heavy hooks used to pull stones out of walls; see Introduction, page lvi.—3. *tormentis*: *windlasses*.—4. *cuniculis*: *mines*.—*subtrahebant*: *drew away* the material of which the *agger* was built.—5. *ferrariae*: iron is still mined about *Bourges*, and there is a cannon-foundry in the city.—7. *contabularerant*: *they had built up*.—11. *cotidianus agger*: the daily increase in the height of the *agger*.—12. *commissis . . . malis*: *by splicing the upright timbers* which formed the corners of their towers, or *by uniting the upright timbers*, by means of successive horizontal beams, as they raised the structure within the tall corner masts.—13. *apertos cuniculos*: perhaps the *open ends of passages or galleries* in the *agger*, where they emerged toward the wall; or perhaps of subterranean tunnels or mines intended to run under the walls; see Introduction, page liv.—15. *morabantur*: *obstructed*.

CHAPTER 23

17. *Muri*: remains of such walls have been found at Beuvray, and at Murscheint near Cahors.—18. *derectae*: at right angles to the length of the wall.—*perpetuae in longitudinem*: *along the whole length*.—20. *revinciuntur*: i. e. by tie-beams (40 ft. long) running lengthwise of the wall, probably mortised.—23. *idem . . . intervallum*: i. e. two feet.—24. *neque . . . contingant*, etc.: i. e. the beams of each course rested on the stones of the course below.—27. *iusta*: *complete, full*.—28. *cum . . . tum*: *not only . . . but also*.—29. *alternis . . . saxis*: i. e. the face of the wall had a checker-board appearance.

PAGE 183

1. *materia*: *timber*.—2. *introrsus revincta*: cf. page 182, line 20, and note.

CHAPTER 24

5. *frigore*: it was still winter; see page 187, lines 27, 28.—7. *latum pedes cccxxx*, etc.: these dimensions are not improbable, Göler thinks (*Gall. Krieg*, p. 254). A large number of trained men was available to do the work. But we need not understand that it was a solid embankment of this width. More probably two narrow ones were connected at the ends by a third running parallel, and close to the wall.—*altum pedes lxxx*: i. e. at the end next to the city.—12. *fumare*: it is evident that the *agger* was built largely of wood.—*cuniculo*: *by*

means of a counter-mine.——14. *ab utroque latere* : i. e. one on each side.——17. *quo* : *to what place* ; interrogative.——18. *vix . . . posset* : *a decision could scarcely be formed.*——19. *instituto Caesaris* : according to Caesar's practice.——22. *turres* : they were movable, and so could be drawn back along the *agger*.——23. *interscindere : cut . . . in two*, to prevent flames from spreading back its whole length.

CHAPTER 25

27. *pluteos turrium* : wooden bulwarks in the different stories of the towers, somewhat like the *loricae* described at page 128, line 20.——28. *nec* : = *et* with *animadvertēbant*, *non* with *facile*.——*apertos* : *sc. milites, exposed.*——29. *recentes* : *fresh.*

PAGE 184

2. *nobis* : the author.——3. *quod* : *a thing which.*——5. *per manus . . . traditas* : *passed from hand to hand*, and finally to him.——6. *e regione* : *in a line with, directly in front of*, a tower on the *agger*.——7. *scorpione* : see Introduction, page lvii.——*ab latere* : his own side.——8. *iacentem* : *as he lay*. Caesar always frankly admired courage in his enemies.

CHAPTER 26

18. *non* : connect with *magna*.——21. *tardabat* : would delay.——23. *proiectae* : reflexive, *casting themselves.*——24. *suorum* : *sc. virorum.*——29. *non recipit* : *does not admit, allow.*——30. *Quo timore* : *by fear of this.*

CHAPTER 27

PAGE 185

3. *derectis* : *put in position.*——*operibus* : here means *engines.*——9. *expeditis* : participle, not attributive adjective : *getting the legions ready for action.*——11. *praemia* : see Introduction, pages xxxvi, xxxvii.

CHAPTER 28

15. *re nova* : *with surprise.*——17. *obviam veniretur* : *an advance should be made by the Romans.*——20. *circumfundī* : impersonal passive.——25. *Cenabensi caede* : *the massacre (of Romans) at Cenabum* mentioned in chap. 3.——26. *confectis* : *infirm.* This dreadful massacre was intended to frighten the whole Gallic nation into submission. Caesar did not enjoy cruelty, but always punished treachery or what he considered rebellion with frightful severity. Here, moreover, he was avenging the Romans murdered at *Cenabum* ; page 169, lines 16–20.——28. *Denique* : *in short.*

PAGE 186

1. multa . . . nocte: late in the night.—3. procul: at a distance from his camp.—4. disparandos . . . curavit: he had them divided and escorted to their own countrymen.—5. quae . . . obvenerat: to that part of the camp which from the beginning had been allotted to each state. Desjardins (*Géographie de la Gaule Romaine*, vol. ii, 676) thinks that if the wishes of Vercingetorix had been carried out, *Avaricum* would have been a Moscow to Caesar.

CHAPTER 29

7. consolatus, etc.: sc. *Vercingetorix*.—8. ne . . . demitterent: not to lose heart entirely.—9. Non virtute, etc.: cf. the thought at page 9, lines 22–26.—12. si qui: whoever.—13. *Avaricum* defendi, etc.: see page 177, lines 20–22.—14. factum [*esse*]: it had occurred; viz. uti . . . acciperetur.—21. effectum habere: = *effecisse*.

CHAPTER 80

25. quod ipse . . . non . . . fugerat: Gallic leaders, as a rule, after one defeat gave up the fight and fled for their lives.—29. re integra: in the beginning.

PAGE 187

4. in spem veniebant: they were encouraged.—6. castra munire: i. e. in Roman fashion; cf. page 179, lines 5–7, and note, in regard to the German cavalry tactics adopted by Vercingetorix.—7. insueti laboris: although unaccustomed to labor.

CHAPTER 81

13. capere: win over to the Gallic cause.—16. quem, etc.: (*saying*) what, etc.—23. conduxerat: had hired. The *Aquitani* did not join the general revolt; see note on page 68, line 23.

CHAPTER 82

PAGE 188

1. sive . . . sive: to try whether . . . or.—2. legati: appositive to the subject *principes*.—3. necessario: urgent.—4. rem: the state.—5. magistratus: see page 11, lines 28–30.—14. cuiusque: sc. *esse*; each of them had.—Quod si: Now if, But if.—16. Id ne accidat: subject of *positum* (*esse*).—positum (*erat*) in: depended on.

CHAPTER 33

22. *aluisset, ornasset*: subjunctive by attraction because subordinate to *descenderet*.—23. *descenderet*: *should go so far as to resort to*.—*sibi*: refers to *pars*.—26. *eis*: indirect object of *liceret*.—27. *ne quid . . . videretur*: connect with *ipse statuit*, etc., not with preceding sentence.—29. *quos inter*: = *eos inter quos*.—30. *Decetiam*: now Décize (on the Loire).

PAGE 189

2. *alio . . . oportuerit*: at a place and time other than what was right.—3. *fratrem*: *Cotus*.—*fratre*: *Valetiacus*.—*renuntiatum*: declared elected.—4. *duo*: subject of *creari*, for *duos*.—*vivo utroque*: while both are living.—7. *sacerdotes*: the Druids.—more *civitatis intermissis magistratibus*: as was usual in the state when there were vacancies in the magistracy. Druids filled the place, as they had a right to do in a vacancy, because the retiring Vergobret had failed to appoint his successor legally. In fact, Caesar no doubt strengthened his own position among the Haedui.

CHAPTER 34

11. *omnibus . . . rebus*: everything (else).—12. *devicta*: = *cum devicta esset*.—18. *Elaver*: the *Allier*, which runs into the Loire a little below Nevers (*Noviodunum*).—19. *illi*: *Labieno*.—21. *ab altera parte*: i. e. on the west side; Caesar at *Decetia* was on the east bank, but had to cross the *Allier* to reach *Gergovia*, which was some distance to the west.

CHAPTER 35

23. *e regione*: in line with, directly opposite to.—*dispositis*: by *Vercingetorix*.—27. *non fere ante autumnum*: now, because of the gradual filling up of the channel, it is usually fordable in summer.

PAGE 190

5. *constare*: to be complete. Caesar made his four legions on the march look like six by detaching (*distractis*) some of the cohorts to make up the two sham legions.—8. *coniecturam caperet*: he calculated.—*in castra*: i. e. that they had had time for a full day's march.—9. *pars inferior*: i. e. the part below the surface of the water.

CHAPTER 36

15. *eo loco*: where he had encamped after crossing the river.—*quintis castris*: in five days, camping each night.—*Gergoviam*:

Vercingetorix was already there. The town lay upon a high plateau 2,400 feet above the sea, four miles south of Clermont, and was easily accessible only on the south and southeast.—20. *expedisset*: *he had arranged*.—*castris*: the Gallic camp, marked on the plan opposite page 190.—23. *iugi*: *ridge*.—*qua dispici poterat*: *wherever there was a view*.—24. *horribilem*: i. e. to the Romans.—30. *suorum*: limits *quoque*, ablative of *quisque*.

PAGE 191

1. *e regione*: *directly opposite*; i. e. to the south.—*collis*: a spur of limestone called La Roche-Blanche, "White Rock."—2. *circumcisis*: *scarped*, i. e. cut into precipices all round.—3. *aquae*: the brook *Auson*.—4. *hostes*: accusative.—6. *castris*: the location of Caesar's *maiora castra* has been shown by excavations.—9. *duodenum* = *duodenorum*.—*minora*: with two legions; there were four in the larger camp, also auxiliaries and cavalry.

CHAPTER 37

13. *demonstravimus*: in ch. 32, 33.—17. *praemium*: the *pecunia*, mentioned three lines above.—18. *imperio*: dative of purpose.—23. *sic tamen*: *but only so far as*.—30. *ratio*: *method*.

PAGE 192

1. *temere*: *without some good reason*.—2. *x illis milibus*: dative, with *praeficeretur*.—3. *mitterentur*: *were about to be sent*, as requested by Caesar, page 189, line 13.—4. *fratres*: they were to try to win over the Haeduan troops serving under Caesar.—5. *religiosa*: subject of *agi*.

CHAPTER 38

6. *exercitu*: the 10,000 soldiers referred to in line 2.—9. *Omnis . . . interiit*: this was a falsehood, as also was the statement about Eporedorix and Viridomarus, who were favorites of Caesar.—11. *indicta causa*: *unheard in their own defense*.—14. *pronuntiare*: *from declaring*.—15. *Producuntur ei*, etc.: compare the *ruse* of Vercingetorix page 181, lines 3-19.—18. *conlocuti*: sc. *esse*.—21. *sibi*: refers to the subject of the main verb *obsecrant*.—22. *consili*: *for deliberation*.—27. *persequamur*: *let us avenge*.—29. *cives Romanos*: perhaps in charge of the supplies mentioned in next line.—*praesidi*: *armed escort*.

PAGE 193

1. *excruciatos*: on the cruelty of Gauls, see note to page 151, line 25.
 —2. *civitate*: why is there no preposition?—3. *permovet*:
 object supplied from *tota civitate*, line 2.—4. *atque*: as.

CHAPTER 39

9. *traditum*: *introduced*.—11. *ab eo*: by Caesar.—12. *illa ... controversia*: described at page 188.—13. *summis opibus*: *with all their might*.—17. *quod ... provideat*: subjunctive because considered a subordinate clause of *oratio obliqua*.—19. *propinqui*: sc. *possint*.

CHAPTER 40

25. *ad contrahenda castra*: *to reduce the size of the camp*, so as to fit the two legions left behind.—*posita (esse) in*: *to depend upon*.—27. *Fratres Litavicii*: see page 192, line 4.

PAGE 194

1. *necessario tempore*: *in the emergency*.—2. *omnibus*: refers to Caesar's soldiers.—5. *quemquam*: more emphatic than *quem*, which is usual after *ne*.—6. *illi*: the Haeduan soldiers. They had been deceived by Litaviccus; see page 192, lines 9–11.—10. *mortem deprecari*: to beg they might not be put to death.—11. *more Galorum*, etc.: see Bk. III, ch. 22.

CHAPTER 41

15. *conservatos*: sc. *eos ... esse*.—18. *quanto ... fuerit*: *how perilous the situation had been*.—20. *integri*: i. e. *Galli*.—*succederent*: *took the place of, relieved*.—23. *in vallo*: *on the rampart*.—25. *tormenta*: see Introduction, page lviii.—26. *eorum*: *of the enemy*.—*relictis*: *leaving open*.—*obstruere*, etc.: the present infinitive implies that the work was going on when the messengers started.—29. *ante ortum solis*, etc.: he had started about midnight; see page 193, line 15; lines 23, 24; marched 25 miles, rested three hours, and was back in camp before sunrise of the second day; say twenty-eight hours in all for the 50 miles.

CHAPTER 42

PAGE 195

4. *illi ... generi*: cf. e. g. page 66, line 22, and note.—5. *ha-beant pro re comperta*: *consider certain*.—7. *Adiuvat rem proclinatam*: *helps to precipitate matters*.—10. *ad legiones*: probably

at Gergovia.——11. *Cavillono*: now Châlon-sur-Saône; see page 226, line 11.——*idem facere*: i. e. to leave Cavillunum. About traders see note to page 169, line 17.

CHAPTER 43

24. *ea res*: i. e. either the profit or the act of plundering.——28. *Nihil . . . gravius . . . iudicare*: *was not very severe in his judgment.*

PAGE 196

4. *omnem exercitum contraheret*: i. e. unite again with the four legions under Labienus; see page 189, line 16.

CHAPTER 44

7. *Haec*: i. e. how to get away from Gergovia without seeming to flee.——8. *minora castra*: on La Roche-Blanche; cf. *collis*, page 191, lines 1-10, and note on line 2; plan, after page 196.——9. *collem*: part of Risolles Heights.——13. *Constabat inter omnes*: *all agreed.*——*quod*: = *id quod*.——15. *eius iugi*: the northern slope of Risolles Heights, along which was a narrow approach to the town, through the woods.——16. *alteram partem*: the west side, farthest from the Roman camp.——17. *illos*: the Gauls.

CHAPTER 45

23. *eo*: where the Gauls were fortifying. This was to divert attention from his intended point of attack, their camp. Caesar was trying to make the Gauls fear an attack from the west and northwest, while in fact he intended a surprise from the southeast of Risolles and the saddle connecting those heights with the town.——25. *impedimentorum*: here means *packhorses*.——26. *stramenta*: *pack-saddles*.——29. *easdem . . . regiones*: i. e. southwest of the smaller camp, toward Chanonat.

PAGE 197

2. *neque*: *and yet not*.——6. *illo*: *thither*.——*munitiōem*: *the work of fortifying*.——8. *insignibus*: i. e. the crests of their helmets.——9. *raros*: *in small parties; a few at a time*.——16. *occasio- nis*: *surprise*. He did not intend to hold the Gallic camp, but only to make a successful dash at it and then retreat from Gergovia with undiminished prestige.——17. *alio ascensu*: marked on the plan, "Route of the Haedui."

CHAPTER 46

19. *recta regione*: *in a straight line*.——21. *clivum*: the plateau of Gergovia is about 500 feet above the top of La Roche-Blanche.——23.

ferebat: *permitted*.——25. *inferiore . . . spatio*: the half of the hill below and outside of the wall.

PAGE 198

1. *Nitiobrogum*: living on the north bank of the *Garumna* (Garonne).

CHAPTER 47

5. *animo*: dative.——*proposuerat*: Caesar is accused of attempting by his language to disguise a failure. But if he had really attempted more than he here says he would have been open to contradiction by his lieutenants to whom he had given orders that day, and some of whom, after the war, became his enemies.——*receptui*: dative of purpose.——6. *legionisque x*: always the favorite.——7. *constiterunt*: *halted*.——8. *valles*: west of the village of Merdogne; see on the plan the successive positions of the 10th legion. The signal was given from the first position.——10. *retinebantur*: conative; an unsuccessful attempt was made to hold them back.——18. *hostem*: the Romans.——19. *vestem*; collective; *clothing*.——23. *per manus*: by holding the hands of persons on the wall.——*demissae*: *letting themselves down*.——26. *Avaricensibus*: *gained at Avaricum*. The troops had been allowed to plunder the town; see Chapter 28.——29. *rurus*: *in turn*.

CHAPTER 48

PAGE 199

1. *supra*: page 196, lines 20, 21.——5. *ut quisque primus venerat*: *when the foremost arrived*.——6. *sub*: *at the foot of*, on the outside.——8. *matres familiae . . . coeperunt*: cf. page 38, lines 21–23.

CHAPTER 49

18. *sub infimo colle*: *at the base of the hill*, on which the smaller camp was located; see *Sextius*, 1st position, on plan.——22. *progressus*: i. e. on the return; see 10th legion, 2d position, on plan.

CHAPTER 50

24. *loco, numero, virtute*: ablatives with *confident*.——25. *Haedui*: directed to attack the town from the east; they were now to the north of the retreating Romans.——27. *manus distinendae causa*: *to divide the enemy's forces*.——28. *similitudine*: i. e. to those of the other Gauls.

PAGE 200

2. *insigne pactum*: *the sign agreed upon*, by which they were to be recognized as friends of the Romans.—5. *L. Fabius*: see page 198, line 24.—7. *eiusdem legionis*: i. e. the 8th.

CHAPTER 51

22. *deiecti*: *forced down*.—*intolerantius*: connect with *insequentes*.—24. *aequiore loco*: see plan, 10th legion, 3d position.—26. *locum superiorem*: see plan, Sextius, 2d position.—*Legiones*: driven down the hill by the Gauls, on reaching level ground they turned and drove back the Gauls, with the help of the 10th and 13th legions.—30. *desiderati*: *missing*.

CHAPTER 53

PAGE 201

6. *quid iniquitas loci posset*: *what the effect of a disadvantageous position is*.—8. *exploratam*: *assured*; yet see page 179, line 27—page 180, line 6. Caesar was not so sure at the time.—10. *Quanto opere . . . tanto opere*: *the more . . . the more*.

CHAPTER 53

18. *ad extremum*: *at the end of his speech*.—22. *ante*: see page 196, lines 2-6.—23. *idoneo loco*: Caesar wished to tempt Vercingetorix to a general engagement, but Vercingetorix was too sagacious.—26. *satis . . . factum*: this fails to conceal from the reader that the siege of Gergovia was a failure.

CHAPTER 54

PAGE 202

4. *Ibi*: east of the Allier, in the Haeduan country.—*appellatus*: *appealed to*.—6. *opus esse*: they wished an excuse to get away from Caesar. They were going to turn against him.—8. *perspectam habebat*: = *perspexerat*.—12. *eis*: Viridomarus and Eporedorix.—13. *quam humiles*, etc.: see page 22, lines 2-14; Bk. VI, ch. 12.—18. *omnium*: *all (previous)*.

CHAPTER 55

21. *Noviodunum*: Nevers, Caesar's base of supplies.—28. *Bi-bracte*: *locative*.

PAGE 203

8. *negotiandi causa*: see page 169, line 17, and note.—9. *obsides*: pledges of loyalty to the Romans; see page 208, line 4.—12. *potuerunt*: sc. *avere*.—13. *flumine*: by *(throwing it*

into) the river.——20. *ex nivibus*: from the melting of the snows on the mountains. It was now July, harvest-time; cf. *frumentum in agris*; page 204, line 8.

CHAPTER 56

23. *si . . . periclitandum*: in case he should have to risk (a battle) while building bridges.——24. *eo*: at the Loire.——26. *non nemo . . . existimabat*: some thought.——27. *cum*: correlative with *tum*, line 29; not only . . . but also.——29. *Labieno*: dative.——30. *quas una miserat*: page 189, line 16.

PAGE 204

3. *vado*: we can not tell where this ford was.——*pro . . . opportuno*: good enough in the emergency.——9. *instituit*: = *coepit*. He was aiming to reach Sens (*Agedincum*).

CHAPTER 57

11. *supplemento*: see page 168, lines 4, 5; page 172, line 11.——13. *Lutetiam*: see page 142, line 22, and note.——19. *perpetuam . . . paludem*: a continuous marsh; probably along the little river Essône, extending back from its confluence with the Seine. The Gauls were posted on the north side of it.

CHAPTER 58

23. *vineas agere*: Labienus's purpose was, under cover of these mantelets, to build a road across the marsh by throwing in fascines and earth.——25. *difficilius*: apparently because of the softness of the ground in the marsh.——26. *Metiosedum*: later *Melodunum*, whence comes the modern name *Melun*; he returned along the left bank to Melun, captured it, and then proceeded down the right bank, unhindered, to Paris.

PAGE 205

2. *eo*: upon them.——4. *ponte*: over the Seine.——6. *secundo flumine*: down river.——9. *e regione*: directly opposite.

CHAPTER 59

11. *Caesar . . . audiebatur*: people were hearing that Caesar, etc.——14. *itinere et Ligéri*: from marching and from (crossing) the Loire.——19. *aliud . . . atque*: other than.——23. *altera ex parte*: i. e. to the north.——24. *opinionem*: reputation. They could put 100,000 men into the field.——*alteram*: sc. *partem*.——26. *praesidio*: at *Agedincum*, on the other bank of the Seine.

CHAPTER 60

PAGE 206

3. *singulas equitibus*: each to a knight. These members of the equestrian order were with the army, waiting for commissions.—5. *iiii milia passuum*: perhaps at the site of the modern village of Point-du-Jour.—9. *adverso flumine*: up river.—12. *partem*: direction.—13. *eum locum*: i. e. four miles down-stream.

CHAPTER 61

19. *transmittitur*: across the Seine below the Gallic camp.—21. *tumultuari*: impersonal.—25. *tribus locis*: up river, down river, and at the camp. Hence they divided their forces to oppose the several divisions of the Romans.—29. *tantum*: only so far.—*progrede-retur*: was to advance.

PAGE 207

1. *naves*: the boats being rowed up-stream *magno sonitu*. See page 206, line 11.

CHAPTER 62

3. *nostri*: three legions and cavalry—five cohorts were in camp, five had gone up river.—4. *hostium acies*: the division which had marched down river from their camp.—6. *Caesarem . . . praesentem*: cf. page 145, lines 25–28.—9. *ab*: on.—13. *suspicionem*: indication.—14. *quisquam*: emphatic position for subject.—*aderat*: was assisting.—18. *post tergum*, etc.: i. e. executed a flank movement and turned the enemy's rear.—24. *ceperunt*: reached.—*neque*: = *et tamen non*, or *sed non*.—28. *ubi . . . erant*: see page 174, lines 8, 9.—30. *Caesarem*: Caesar had been marching to the north of the *Loire*, and he met Labienus coming from *Agedincum*. It is impossible to say where the meeting took place. Several weeks elapsed before Caesar turned southward again to succor the Province.

CHAPTER 63

PAGE 208

4. *obsides . . . apud eos*: at *Noviodunum*; see page 202, lines 22–25.—7. *communicet*: sc. *secum* (i. e. *Haeduis*).—11. *suffragiis . . . permittitur*: is put to vote.—14. *illi*: both Remi and Lingones.—19. *requirunt*: miss.—21. *Eporedorix et Viridomarus*: see page 192, line 10; also ch. 39.

CHAPTER 64

23. *Ille*: Vercingetorix.—*ei rei*: i. e. *obsidibus dandis*.—25. *peditatu*: connect with *contentum*.

PAGE 209

2. *corrumpant, incendant* : would be imperative in direct discourse. — *aedificia* : this was the same policy that Vercingetorix had proposed at the start ; see ch. 14. — *qua . . . iactura . . . videant* : since they saw that by this sacrifice. — 4. *consequi* : we might have expected the future tense. — 6. *huc* : = *his* or *ad hos*. — 8. *Allobrogibus* : in the Province. — *Altera ex parte* : on the west. He directed the tribes outside the Province against the nearest nations inside. — 13. *superiore bello* : in 61 B. C. they had been severely punished by the Romans for insurrection ; see page 5, lines 5-8.

CHAPTER 65

25. *interclusis . . . itineribus* : if all the roads should be blocked by the enemy's cavalry. — 26. *provincia* : i. e. in Transalpine Gaul. — *Italia* : i. e. Cisalpine Gaul. — 27. *eas civitates* : the *Ubi* were friendly ; see Bk. IV, ch. 16 ; we do not know which tribes are meant. — 28. *superioribus annis* : B. C. 55 and 53 ; see Bk. IV, ch. 16-19 ; Bk. VI, ch. 9-28. — 29. *qui . . . consuerant* : see page 36, line 26—page 37, line 5. Caesar had had German cavalry before ; see page 175, lines 26, 27. German tactics had been adopted by Vercingetorix ; see page 179, line 6. — 30. *minus idoneis* : as to the German horses, see page 82, line 12.

PAGE 210

2. *evocatis* : see Introduction, page xxxvii ; they were perhaps mounted for staff service.

CHAPTER 66

9. *trinis castris* : It can not be certainly determined where the battle described in this chapter and the next took place. One of the best supported of many opinions puts it near Dijon, locating the three camps of Vercingetorix on the farther bank of the river Ouche. The only certain information is that after the battle Vercingetorix retreated forthwith to the strong position at *Alesia*, and that Caesar, following him, arrived there the next day (*altero die* ; page 211, line 29). — 12. *Gallia* : i. e. *Gallia* proper, the land of the *Cellae* or *Galli*, page 1, lines 2, 3. — *id* : the retreat of the Romans. — 16. *Si pedites* : Vercingetorix's plan would either hinder the retreat of the Romans or else cut them off from their baggage. — 20. *spoliatum iri* : future infinitive passive, a form not much used. — 21. *quin . . . audeat* : depends on *dubitare*, line 22.

——22. *Id* : the movement proposed by Vercingetorix.——23. *copias . . . pro castris* : in order to inspire the cavalry with courage. The cavalry had all the work to do.

CHAPTER 67

29. *ius iurandum* : the oath contained in last sentence.

PAGE 211

1. *a primo agmine : in the van*.——5. *impedimenta . . . recipiuntur* : we may suppose that each legion had been followed thus far by its own baggage-train, the usual arrangement on a march ; but that now the legions formed a "hollow square" with the baggage of the whole army inside.——10. *Germani* : Caesar's German cavalry ; see ch. 65.——20. *Eporodorix* : not the one mentioned in ch. 38, 39, 40, 54, 55, 63, 64, 76.

CHAPTER 68

23. *Alesia* : this site has been certainly determined. The ancient *Alesia* stood on the plateau of Mont Auxois ; the modern Alise-Ste-Reine lies on its western slope, near the top. Thorough excavations, ordered by Napoleon III, revealed the whole system of entrenchments corresponding with Caesar's descriptions. Elaborate models may be seen in the Museum of St. Germain.——29. *altero die* : *on the following day* ; the place fixed by Napoleon's opinion for the battle described in the last chapter, viz. on the Vingeanne River, is 42 miles from *Alesia* ; Napoleon would have to translate *altero die*, "on the next day but one." From Dijon to *Alesia* is but 31 miles.

CHAPTER 69

PAGE 212

4. *in . . . loco* : *having a very elevated position at the top of a hill*.——6. *flumina* : the brooks Ose and Qserain.——8. *in longitudinem* : i. e. to the west.——10. *pari altitudinis fastigio* : *of equal height*.——12. *fossam et maceriam* : see plan after page 214, P, Q, R, S.——14. *munitionis* : a series of fortified camps with numerous redoubts (*castella*) in the intervening spaces.——15. *tenebat* : *extended*.

CHAPTER 70

22. *supra* : lines 7, 8.——24. *Germanos* : it is interesting to see how prominent all through Bk. VII are Caesar's German allies ; see page 175, line 28, and note.——26. *Praesidio* : *support*.——28. *angustioribus portis relictis* : *since the (spaces) left (in the wall for) gates were quite narrow*.

PAGE 213

5. *veniri* : *that the enemy were coming*.——7. *portas* : i. e. of the city.——*castra* : east of the city.

CHAPTER 71

11. *consilium* : explained by the infinitive clause *omnem . . . dimittere*.——16. *neu* : = *neve*, which is commonly used rather than *et . . . ne*.——*meritum* : participle.——19. *Ratione* : *calculation*.——21. *parcendo* : i. e. by shortening rations.——22. *erat . . . intermissum* : *there was a gap in our works*.——23. *Frumentum . . . iubet* : he established martial law in the city.——25. *paruerint* : characteristic subjunctive.——28. *pro oppido* : on the east.

CHAPTER 72

PAGE 214

3. *derectis* : *perpendicular*.——*solum* : *bottom*. Trench f, f, f, on plan. The whole length was discovered by excavation.——6. *esset . . . complexus, cingeretur* : subjunctives by attraction, subordinate to *ne . . . advolaret*.——7. *totum opus*, etc. : *the entire circuit of works could not be manned by the soldiers*.——*corona* : *a ring, cordon*.——10. *Hoc . . . spatio* : 400 feet.——11. *duas fossas* : see plans after pages 214, 216.——*eadem altitudine* : *(both) of the same depth*. Excavations show it was 8 or 9 feet.——12. *interiorem* : *the inner one* (sc. *fossam*), nearer the city.——13. *flumine* : the Oserain.——*Post* : *behind*, i. e. the outer ditch was at the foot of the rampart of earth. See plan after page 216.——14. *loricam* : see plan after page 216.——15. *cervis* : *stag's-horns, chevaux-de-frise*; see plan.——16. *pluteorum* : *parapets*, all the woodwork above the earthwork; plan after page 216.——17. *opere* : *line of works*.——18. *pedes lxxx* : see page 128, line 9, and note on *cxx*.

CHAPTER 73

27. *delibratis* : *peeled* (*de, liber, bark*) in order to make them slippery.——28. *perpetuae* : *continuous*.——29. *stipites* : plan after page 216, "*cippi*."——*revincti* : *fastened* to cross-pieces which were buried in the earth.

PAGE 215

1. *ab ramis eminebant* : *projected with their branches (only)*.——*Quini* : five rows, one in each ditch.——3. *vallis* : *dative*; he means the pointed branches.——*cippos* : the whole thing, distinguished from the branches taken separately. The name, *boundary-stones*, is, of course,

a comic one.—6. *scrobes*: funnel-shaped pits; see plan after page 216.—8. *feminis*: see Vocabulary, *femur*.—15. *taleae*: *crow's-feet*; wooden blocks or short stakes with barbed iron points fastened in them; see plan after page 216. Five of these iron points were found during the excavations, and are preserved in the museum at St. Germain.—16. *totae*: the whole length of the wood was buried, leaving the iron only to project.

CHAPTER 74

21. *munitiones*: an outer line of works for defense against the Gallic army of relief.—*diversas*: *facing the opposite way*, outward.—24. *cum periculo*: *at a risk*.—25. *dierum xxx*: they had, however, not enough for the whole siege; cf. Caesar, *Bel. Civ.* iii. 47.

CHAPTER 75

29. *convocandos*: *sc. esse*.

PAGE 216

1. *imperandum*: *sc. esse*.—3. *rationem habere*: *form a system*.—4. *Haeduis*, etc.: for these national names see map of Gaul. The Aquitani did not join the rebellion (see note on page 68, line 23; note on page 187, line 23), nor the Remi, Lingones, and Treveri (page 208, lines 13-17). All the rest of the Transalpine Gauls took part in it.—23. *Commio*: see Bk. IV, ch. 21, 27, 35; Bk. V, ch. 22; Bk. VI, ch. 6; Bk. VII, ch. 75, 76, 79.—*pro*: *out of regard for*.

CHAPTER 76

24. *antea*: page 93, line 28; page 97, line 22; page 117, line 23.—27. *jura legesque*: see page 42, line 23, and note.—*ipsi*: to Commius personally.—29. *vindicandae*: *asserting*.

PAGE 217

1. *moveretur*: *he was touched*.—*omnesque*: *but all*.—8. *delecti*: participle used as a noun.—10. *ad*: *toward*.—11. *modo*: *merely*.—13. *aucipiti*: *on both sides* (of the Romans).—14. *foris*: *on the outside*.

CHAPTER 77

15. *die*: feminine because a particular day is meant.—19. *quorum*: feminine, referring to *sententiis* rather than to the persons who entertained them.—23. *auctoritatis*: genitive of characteristic.—27. *mihi res est*: *I take issue*.—29. *ista*: contemptuous.

PAGE 218

1. *offerant*: characteristic subjunctive; so is *ferant*, line 2.—
 4. *dignitas*: i. e. of those who advocated the view he is opposing.—
 6. *respiciamus*: hortatory subjunctive.—7. *Quid . . . animi*: *what feelings*.—*milibus lxxx*: Vercingetorix's army in Alesia.—10. *hos*: the army of relief.—15. *eorum*: the Gauls.—16. *animi causa*: *for amusement*.—17. *illorum*: the Gauls.—18. *his*: the Romans.—19. *eorum*: the Gauls.—*adventum*: emphatic position.—22. *Cimbrorum Teutonumque*: they ravaged Gaul and parts of Spain before they were destroyed by Marius; see page 29, line 12, and note on line 11.—27. *institui*: *be set*.—28. *quid*, etc.: *what resemblance had that war (to this)?*

PAGE 219

4. *alia condicione*: *on any other terms*.—6. *fnitimam*: *the neighboring part of*, i. e. the Province.—7. *securibus*: *axes* were carried in the *fascēs* (bundles of rods); these rods and axes were emblems of the authority of the Roman governors, carried before them by their attendants (*lictores*).

CHAPTER 78

12. *utendum, subeundam*: sc. *esse*.—14. *Mandubii*: the inhabitants of *Alesia*.—18. *receptos*: *to receive them and*.—19. *recipi prohibebat*: these poor wretches must have perished between the city and the Roman works. Yet we can hardly blame Caesar, who had not enough food for his own army.

CHAPTER 79

22. *colle exteriore*: southwest of the city; see plan after page 214, "Gallic army of relief."—26. *demonstravimus*: page 212, lines 7, 8.

PAGE 220

1. *Concurrunt*: i. e. the Gauls in the town.—3. *proximam*: nearest the city; see plan after page 214.

CHAPTER 80

6. *utramque partem*: i. e. on the inner and outer lines.—9. *castris*: see plan after page 214, G, H, I, K.—11. *Galli . . . interiecerant*: see page 179, line 6, and note.—15. *complures*: i. e. of Caesar's cavalry.—20. *ululatu*: see page 126, line 25.—22. *recte aut turpiter factum*: *a gallant or a cowardly act*.—25. *pugnaretur*:

the battle had been going on.—Germani: see page 175, line 28, and note; page 209, lines 27-30, and note to line 29.—27. *sagittarii*: they could not keep up with the horses, as the Germans did; see page 36, line 27—page 37, line 5.—29. *cedentes*: used as noun.

CHAPTER 81

PAGE 221

3. *spatio*: *interval* (of time).—4. *harpagnum*: intended to pull down the Roman breastworks.—5. *campestres*: on the plain, west of the city.—6. *qua*: = *ut ea*.—8. *crates proicere*: in order to fill or cover the trench.—9. *vallo*: the outer Roman rampart, which extended from the Ose across the plain, and part way up the Flavigny Heights. Excavations have shown this to be so.—14. *fundis librilibus*: stones weighing a pound and having a short strap or rope attached, by which they were hurled.—15. *sudibus*: stakes pointed and hardened by fire, used for javelins; cf. *præustae sudes*, page 128, line 18.

CHAPTER 82

24. *stimulis*: cf. page 215, line 15, and note on *talae*.—25. *transfodiebantur*: *were impaled*.—*pilis muralibus*: heavy javelins thrown from the ramparts of a city or camp.—28. *superioribus castris*: on the Flavigny Heights, perhaps also on the high ground to the north.

PAGE 222

1. *interiores*: the Gauls in the city.—2. *fossas*: first f, f, f, on the plan after page 214, then two parallel *fossae* 400 ft. west (page 214, line 5); there were obstructions in the intervening space (ch. 73). *Priores fossas* would seem to mean merely the first trench, f, f, f.—5. *re infecta*: *without succeeding*.

CHAPTER 83

6. *Bis*: the first time is described in ch. 80.—8. *a septentrionibus*: on the north, probably Mont Réa.—11. *declivi*: sloping to the south down toward the town and the plain.—*castra*: D on the plan.—16. *opinionem*: *reputation*.—22. *itinere*: on the plan, "Route of the Gallic army of relief": *post montem*: behind Mont Réa.—24. *supra*: lines 8-12, above.—26. *campestres*: as at page 221, line 5.

CHAPTER 84

29. *falces*: see page 182, line 2, and note on *falces*. Roman methods and instruments had been adopted.

PAGE 223

1. *Pugnatur . . . temptantur*: chiasmus.—6. *post tergum pugnantis*: *behind the backs of the combatants*.—7. *suum periculum*: *their own (deliverance from) danger*.

CHAPTER 85

10. *idoneum locum*: Plan, JC, shows where he may well have chosen his post of observation.—12. *Utrisque*: i. e. *Gallis et Romanis*.—13. *conveniat*: *it behooved them*.—17. *demonstravimus*: page 222, line 19, etc.—20. *Agger . . . coniectus*: fascines and rubbish were thrown into the Roman ditches to enable the Gauls to scale the ramparts.

CHAPTER 86

26. *deductis . . . pugnet*: *to draw off his cohorts and make a sally*.

PAGE 224

1. *Interiores*: the Gauls in the city, as at page 222, line 1.—2. *loca praerupta*: probably on the north side of Flavigny Heights.—*ascensu temptant*: *try to scale*.—3. *ea*: their siege instruments; see page 222, line 29.—4. *propugnantes*: accusative; sc. *Romanos*.—5. *vallum, loricam*: see page 214, line 14, and note.

CHAPTER 87

7. *Brutum*: see page 68, line 28; page 70, line 27; page 173, line 7.—13. *circumire*: i. e. to make a flank movement and turn their rear.

CHAPTER 88

20. *colore*: what the ancients called purple, more nearly what we call scarlet, was the color of a general's *paludamentum*; see Introduction, page xxxvi. This being a chapter of vivid narrative, conjunctions are omitted as far as possible.—23. *haec declivia et devexa*: *these descending slopes*. Caesar went down the northwest slope of the Flavigny Heights, plainly seen by enemy. No smoke obscured ancient battles.—24. *excipit*: *follows*.—26. *rem gerunt*: *fight*.—27. *tergum*: sc. *hostium*.

PAGE 225

4. *Conspicati ex oppido*: = *Ei qui in oppido erant, conspicati*.—7. *Quod*: cf. page 10, line 8. *Quod si veteris*, etc., and note.—*crebris subsidiis*: *by constantly relieving each other*.

CHAPTER 89

16. *ad utramque rem: for either alternative.*—19. *Ipse: Caesar.*—20. *Vercingetorix deditur: Plutarch* says (*Life of Caesar*, 27): "Those who were in Alesia, having given themselves and Caesar much trouble, surrendered at last; and Vercingetorix, who was the chief spring of all the war, putting his best armor on, and adorning his horse, rode out of the gates, and made a turn about Caesar as he was sitting, then quitting his horse, threw off his armor, and remained quietly sitting at Caesar's feet, until he was led away to be reserved for the triumph."

The ancients were cruel to conquered heroes. Vercingetorix was kept in chains until he adorned Caesar's triumph at Rome in 45 B. C., after which he, as was customary in such cases, was put to death.—22. *si: to see whether.*—23. *capita singula: a captive apiece.*

CHAPTER 90

26. *recipit: recovered* to loyalty.—28. *in hiberna: distributed* so as to command the whole country, and to afford mutual support. There was now little danger of a general rebellion.

PAGE 226

6. *Remis: see note to page 143, line 9.*—7. *Bellovacis: subdued* the next year, B. C. 51; as we learn from Bk. VIII, ch. 6-23. The eighth book of the Gallic War was not written by Caesar, but by his officer Aulus Hirtius.—15. *supplicatio: see page 61, line 17, and note*

VOCABULARY

VOCABULARY

A

A., Aulus, a Roman praenomen.

ā, ab, abs [cf. Gr. *ἀπό*, Eng. *of, off*], adv. in comp. and preposition with abl., *from, away from, out of* [cf. *ex*]. Of place, *from, away from*; of time, *from, after, since*; of agency, *by, on the part of, at the hands of*. In various senses; e. g., **a dextro cornu**, *on the right wing*; **a fronte**, *in front*; **a milibus passuum viii**, *eight miles off, away*.

abditus, -a, -um, p. p. of **abdo**.

abdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus [**ab-do**, *put*], 3. v. a., *put away, remove, put out of sight, hide, conceal*; **se abdere**, *hide one's self*; **abditus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *hidden, remote*.

abdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus [**ab-ducō**], 3. v. a., *lead away or off, draw away, withdraw, take or carry off* (of persons or animals, which can move).

abēō, -īre, -itī, -itūrus [**ab-eō**], irr. v. n., *go away, retire, depart*.

abesse; see **absum**.

abiciō, -icere, -ieci, -iectus [**ab-iacio**], 3. v. a., *throw away, throw down, hurl*.

abiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of **abicio**.

abiēs, -ietis, F., *fir-tree, spruce-tree* (or wood).

abiunctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **abiungo**.

abiungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus [**ab-iungo**], 3. v. a., *disjoin, separate, detach*.

abs; see **ab**.

abscidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cisus [**ab-caedo**], 3. v. a., *cut off, cut away, lop*.

abscisus, -a, -um, p. p. of **abscido**.

absēns, -entis, pres. part. of **absum**, *absent, in one's absence*.

absimilis, -e [**ab-similis**], adj., *unlike*.

absistō, -sistere, -stiti, no p. p. [**ab-sisto**], 3. v. n., *stand off, withdraw, desist*.

abstineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentus [**ab-teneo**], 2. v. n., *hold off, hold back, refrain or abstain from, spare*.

abstrāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **abstraho**.

abstrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus [**abstraho**], 3. v. a., *drag away or off, carry off by force*.

absum, -esse, āfui, āfutūrus [**ab-sum**], irr. v. n., *be away, be absent, be wanting*; **longe abesse**, *be far away*; **a bello abesse**, *take no part in the war*.

abundō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus [**ab-unda**, *a wave*], 1. v. n., *overflow, abound in, be richly provided with*.

ac; see **atque**.

accēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessurus [**ad-cedo**], 3. v. n., *come or go to, approach, draw near, be added*; with *quod* or *ut*, *there was also the fact that, moreover, besides*.

accelerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [**ad-celerō**; cf. **celer**], 1. v. a. and n., *hasten, make haste*.

acceptus, -a, -um, p. p. of **accipio**, as adj., *pleasant, welcome, agreeable, beloved*.
accessus, -a, -um, p. p. of **accedo**.
accidō, -cidere, -cidī, no p. p. [**ad-cado**], 3. v. n., *fall, fall upon, fall to, befall, happen, occur, turn out*.
accidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsus [**ad-caedo**], 3. v. a., *cut into, cut partly through*.
accipio, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [**ad-capio**], 3. v. a., *take, receive, accept, get, learn, incur, suffer*.
acclivis, -e [**ad-clivus**], adj., *sloping toward, rising, up-hill, sloping upward*.
acclivitas, -tātis [**acclivis**], F., *upward slope, rise, ascent, sleepiness*.
Accō, -ōnis, M., a leader of the Senones.
accommodō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [**ad-commodo**], 1. v. a., *fit on, put on, adjust*; **accommodātus**, -a, -um, p. p., as adj., *suiting, suitable, fitted, adapted*.
accūrātē [**accuratus, ad-cura**], adv., *carefully, with care, with pains*.
accurrō, -currere, -curri (-cucurri), -cursum [**ad-curro**], 3. v. n., *run to, run up, hasten to*.
accūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [**ad-causo**; cf. **causa**], 1. v. a., *call to account, accuse, charge, blame, find fault with, censure, reproach*.
ācer, -cris, -cre [cf. **acus, needle**], adj., *sharp, keen, active, enterprising*.
acerbē [**acerbus**], adv. *bitterly*.
acerbitās, -tātis [**acerbus**], F., *bitterness*; plur., *sufferings, hardships*.
acerbus, -a, -um [**acer**], adj., *bitter* (to the taste or to the heart), *cruel, hard, severe, harsh*.
ācerimē, adv., superl. of **ācriter**.
acervus, -ī, M., *a heap, a pile*.
aciēs, -ēi (gen. **aciē**, page 54, line 11) [cf. **acer**, etc.], F., *edge, point, sharpness of sight, keen looks*; esp., of an army, *line of battle, battle array*.

ācriter [**acer**], adv., *sharply, fiercely, hotly, vigorously, violently*.
āctuarius, -a, -um [**actus, movement, fr. ago**], adj., *easily moved or driven, swift, fast sailing* (of ships having both oars and sails).
actus, -a, -um, p. p. of **ago**.
acuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus [cf. **acer, acus, needle, acies**], 3. v. a., *sharpen*.
acūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of **acuō**, as adj., *sharpened, sharp, pointed*.
ad, adv. in comp. and prep. with **accus**, *to, toward, in the direction of; at, near, by; among; till, until, against; for, in order to, for the purpose of; in regard to, according to; with modum, in; with numerals, about*.
a. d.; see **ante diem**.
adāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **adigo**.
adaequō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [**ad-aequus**], 1. v. a., *make equal to, make level with, equal, keep up with*.
adamō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [**ad-amō**], 1. v. a., *fall in love with, take a fancy to, covet*.
addō, -dere, -didī, -ditus [**ad-do**], 3. v. a., *give to, put to, add, join, annex*.
adducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductus [**ad-duco**], 3. v. a., *lead to, draw to, bring to; induce, influence, drive*.
adductus, -a, -um, p. p. of **adduco**.
adēptus, -a, -um, p. p. of **adimo**.
adeō, -ire, -iī (-īvi), -itus [**ad-eo**], irr. v. a. and n., *go to, come to, approach, draw near, visit, reach, encounter, accost, attack*.
adeō [**ad-eo** (thither)], adv., *to that point, to that extent, to that degree, so, so far, so much*.
adeptus, -a, -um, p. p. of **adipiscor**.
adequito, -āre, -āvi, no p. p. [**ad-equito, ride**; cf. **eques**], 1. v. a. and n., *ride toward, ride up to*.
adfectus, -a, -um, p. p. of **adfacio**.
adferō, **adferre**, **attuli**, **adlātus** [**ad-fero**], irr. v. a., *bring to, bring, carry, convey, deliver, offer, bring forward, allege, announce, occasion, cause*.

adfcio, -ficere, -fēci, -fectus [ad-facio], 3. v. a., *do something to, affect, treat, use, inflict upon, afflict with, visit with*; passive, *suffer, be affected or afflicted or treated with something.*

adfigo, -figere, -fixi, -fixus [ad-figo, fasten], 3. v. a., *fasten to, fix upon, attach to.*

adfiŋgō, -fiŋgere, -fiŋxi, -fiŋctus [ad-fiŋgo], 3. v. a., *make up or invent in addition, add falsely.*

adfiniŋtās, -tātis [adfinis, ad-finis], F., *nearness, relationship (especially by marriage), connection, alliance.*

adfirmātiō, -ōnis [adfirmo, assert], F., *assertion, declaration, assurance.*

adfixus, -a, -um, p. p. of **adfigo**.

adfiŋctō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ad-fiŋcto, frequent. of **adfiŋgo**], 1. v. a., *dash against, strand, wreck, shatter, damage.*

adfiŋctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **adfiŋgo**.

adfiŋgō, -fiŋgere, -fiŋxi, -fiŋctus [ad-fiŋgo], 3. v. a., *dash upon or against, throw or knock down, shatter, injure, damage.*

adfore; see **adsum**.

adgredior, -gredi, -gressus [ad-gradior, step, walk], 3. v. dep., *go to or toward or against, approach; attack, fall upon; attempt.*

adgregō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ad-grego; cf. **grex**, flock], 1. v. a., *collect, gather, unite, assemble; se adgregate, gather around, flock to, join.*

adhaereō, -haerere, -haesi, -haesurus [ad-haereo], 2. v. n., *stick (to), cling (to), get caught (in).*

adhaerescō, -ere [ad-haeresco], 3. v. n., *same meaning as adhaereo.*

adhibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus [ad-habeo], 2. v. a., *have in, hold toward; call in, admit, summon; apply, use, employ.*

adhortor, -ārī, -ātus [ad-hortor], 1. v. dep., *encourage, rouse, urge, rally.*

adhūc [ad-huc], adv., *hitherto, thus far, of place or time; till now, as yet, up to this time.*

adiaceō, -iacere, -iacuī, no p. p. [ad-iaceo], 2. v. n., *to lie near, border on, adjoin.*

Adiatunnus, -ī, M., a chief of the Sotiates.

adiŋciō, -icere, -iēci, -iectus [ad-iacio], 3. v. a., *throw to, hurl, cast; join to, add.*

adiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of **adiŋcio**.

adigō, -igere, -ēgi, -actus [ad-ago], 3. v. a., *drive to, up, or in; move up; compel, force, bind.*

adimō, -imere, -ēmi, -ēemptus [ad-emo, take], 3. v. a., *take away, remove, deprive of.*

adipiscor, -ipisci, -eptus [ad-apis-cor, lay hold of], 3. v. dep., *obtain, get, secure, acquire, win.*

aditus, -ūs [ad-itus, cf. adeo], M., *coming, arrival, approach, access, admittance, means of access.*

adiudicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ad-iudico], 1. v. a., *award, assign, adjudicate.*

adiungō, -iungere, -iūnxi, -iūnctus [ad-iungo], 3. v. a., *join to, attach to, unite to or with, annex to, add to.*

adiutor, -tōris [adiuvo], M., *helper, assistant.*

adiūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of **adiuvo**.

adiuvō, -iuvāre, -iūvi, -iūtus [ad-iuvo], 1. v. a., *help, aid, assist, encourage.*

adlātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **adfero**.

adliciō, -licere, -lexi, -lectus [ad-lacio, allure], 3. v. a., *entice, allure, invite, attract.*

admātūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ad-maturo], 1. v. a., *bring to ripeness, ripen, hasten, bring to a head.*

administer, -tri [ad-minister, servant], M., *helper, assistant, attendant, servant, minister; in religious rites, a celebrant.*

administrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ad-ministro, serve], 1. v. a., *manage, carry on or out, execute, perform, direct.*

admiror, -ārī, -ātus [ad-miror], 1. v. dep., *wonder at, be surprised at, admire; admirandus, -a, -um, as adj., surprising, astonishing;*

admiratus, -a, -um, p. p., *surprised, wondering*.
admissus, -a, -um, p. p. of **admitto**.
admittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus [ad-mitto], 3. v. a., *let go (to); commit, allow*; **equo admisso**, *at full speed*; **in se admittere**, *commit, incur*.
admodum [ad-modum], adv., *up to the limit, exceedingly, extremely, quite, very, fully, at least*.
admoneō, -ēre, -ui, -itus [ad-moneo], 2. v. a., *warn, advise, urge, remind*.
adolescō, -olēscere, -olēvi, -ultus [ad-olesco, grow], 3. v. n., *grow up, mature*.
adolēscēns; see **adulescens**.
adorior, -oriri, -ortus [ad-orior], 4. v. dep., *rise up against, attack, assail, fall upon, attempt*.
adortus, -a, -um, p. p. of **adorior**.
adpellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus; see **appello**.
adpellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsus [ad-pello, drive], 3. v. a. and n., *land (ships), bring to land, bring in*.
adpetō, -petere, -petivi, -petitus [ad-peto], 3. v. a. and n., *seek after, strive for, desire; approach, be at hand*.
adplicō, -plicāre, -plicāvi (-ui), -plicātus (-plicitus) [ad-plico, fold], 1. v. a., *bend toward, join, attack; with se, lean against*.
adportō, -portāre, -portāvi, -portātus [ad-porto, carry], 1. v. a., *carry to, convey, bring*.
adprobō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ad-probo, esteem good, cf. **probus**, good], 1. v. a., *approve, agree with, favor, commend*.
adpropinquō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus [ad-propinquo], 1. v. n., *approach, draw near, come near*.
adpulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **adpello**.
adquirō, -quirere, -quisivi, -quisitus [ad-quaero], 3. v. a., *get in addition, get, obtain, procure*.
adsciscō, -sciscere, -scivi, -scītus [ad-scisco, approve, fr. **scio**], 3. v. a., *join to one's self (by a for-*

mal decision), attach, unite, receive, admit.
adsiduus, -a, -um [ad-siduus, cf. **sedeo**, sit], adj., *sitting by, constant, continual, incessant, diligent*.
adistō, -sistere, -stiti, no p. p. [ad-sisto, stand], 3. v. n., *stand by, assist, appear*.
adsuēfaciō, -facere, -feci, -factus [ad-suetus, -facio], 3. v. a. and n., *accustom, train, familiarize*.
adsuēfactus, -a, -um, p. p. of **adsuēfacio**.
adsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvi, -suētus [ad-suesco, get accustomed], 3. v. n., *become accustomed, get used*.
adsuētus, -a, -um, p. p. of **adsuesco**.
adsum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus [ad-sum], irr. v. n., *be near, be at hand, be present, appear; help, assist*.
adolēscēns, (adol-) -entis [p. of **adolesco**], adj., *young*; as noun, *a young man, a youth*.
adolēscēntia (adol-), -ae, F., *youth* (the period of youth).
adolēscēntulus (adol-), -i, M., *a very young man, stripling*.
adventus, -ūs [ad-venio], M., *coming, arrival, approach*.
adversārius, -a, -um [ad-versus from **verto**], adj., *turned toward or against, opposed, hostile*; as noun, *opponent, foe, enemy, antagonist*.
adversus, -a, -um, p. p. of **adverto**.
adversus [adverto], prep. with acc., *against, opposite to*.
advertō, -vertere, -verti, -versus [ad-verto], 3. v. a., *turn to or toward; animum advertere, turn attention to, notice*; see **animadvertere**; *turn against*. **Adversus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *turned toward, facing, in front of, opposite, opposed, face to face, unfavorable*; **res adversae**, *adversity, trouble*; **adverso flumine**, *up-stream*.
advocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ad-voco], 1. v. a., *call (to one's self), summon*.

advolo, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus [advolo]. I. v. n., *fly to, hasten to; rush upon, fly at.*

aedificium, -i [cf. aedifico], N., *a building.*

aedificō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [aedes, house, -facio]. I. v. a., *build* (houses or ships).

aeger, -gra, -grum, adj., *sick, disabled, feeble.*

aegerrimē, superl. of aegre.

aegrē [aeger], adv., *feebly; with difficulty, barely, scarcely, hardly.*

Aemilius, -i, M., *Lucius Aemilius*, a Gallic decurio commanding a squad of Gallic cavalry in Cæsar's army.

aequaliter [aequalis, aequus, even, equal], adv., *evenly, uniformly.*

aequinoctium, -i [aequus, nox], N., *equinox*, the time when the days and nights are equal.

aequitās, -tātis [aequus, equal, just], F., *equality, equity, justice, fairness; aequitas animi, evenness of temper, composure, contentment, calmness.*

aequō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [aequus, equal, even], I. v. a., *equalize, make equal, put on an equality.*

aequus, -a, -um, adj., *even, equal, level; fair, just; favorable, advantageous, suitable; calm, composed (animus); on equal terms (contentio, Mars).*

aerārius, -a, -um [aes, aeris], adj., *relating to copper; as noun, F., a copper mine.*

aereus, -a, -um [aes, aeris], adj., *of copper, (made of) copper.*

aes, aeris, N., *copper* (as metal used in shipbuilding, or as money), *money; aes alienum* (another's money), *debt.*

aestās, -tātis, F., (*heat*), *summer.*

aestimatiō, -ōnis [aestimo], F., *valuation, appraisal, esteem, worth.*

aestimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, I. v. a., *value, estimate, reckon, consider, determine, judge.*

aestivus, -a, -um [aestas], adj., *of summer, hot.*

aestuārius, -a, -um [aestus], adj., *relating to the tide; as noun, N., creek, inlet, marsh, estuary.*

aestus, -tūs, M., *heat, boiling, tide, ebb and flow of the sea.*

aetās, -tātis [shortened from aevitas; cf. aevum, age], F., *age, time of life.*

aeternus, -a, -um [shortened from aeviternus; cf. aevum, age], adj., *everlasting, lasting, perpetual.*

Africus, -a, -um, adj., *of Africa, African; sc. ventus, the S. W. wind blowing from Africa (to Italy).*

āfuisse, **āfutūrus**; see **absum**.

Agēdincum, -i, N., chief town of the Senones, now *Sens*.

ager, agri, M., *land (tilled), field, country, territory, district.*

agger, -eris [ad-gero], M., (*what is carried to a place*), *a mound, rampart, dike, terrace, embankment, mole; material for a mound (earth, timber, etc.).*

agitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [freq. of ago], I. v. a., *drive, chase; vex, harass; discuss, propose.*

agmen, -minis [ago], N., *a march, line of march, an army on the march, a column; primum agmen, the van; novissimum agmen, the rear; claudere agmen, to bring up.*

agō, **agere**, **ēgi**, **actus**, 3. v. a., *set in motion, drive; direct, conduct; do, act; plead, discuss; vineas, etc., advance, move forward; praedam, drive off; conventus, hold; gratias, express, render.*

alacer, -cris, -cre, adj., *brisk, lively, quick, cheerful, active, spirited.*

alacritās, -tātis [alacer], F., *eagerness, readiness, promptness, ardor, zeal.*

ālārius, -a, -um [ala, wing], adj., *belonging to the wings; used of the auxiliary troops stationed on the wings of an army; as noun, M. plur., auxiliaries, allies.*

albus, -a, -um, adj., *white* (dull white; shining white is *candidus*); **plumbum album**, *tin.*

alcēs, -is, F., *elk*, a large deer in Germany.

Alesia, -ae, F., a city of the Mandubii, now *Alise-Sainte-Reine*.

aliās [alius], adv., *elsewhere, at another time; alias . . . alias, now . . . now, at one time . . . at another, sometimes . . . sometimes*.

aliēnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [alienus], I. v. a., *make another's, make strange, estrange, alienate, change; alienatā mente, in a frenzy*.

aliēnus, -a, -um [alius], adj., *another's, others', other people's; strange, foreign, hostile, unfavorable, unfriendly, foreign to the purpose or subject. Aliēnissimī, superl. as noun, perfect strangers*.

aliō [alius], adv., *elsewhither, elsewhere, to another place*.

aliquamdiū [aliquam-diu], adv., *for some time*.

aliquando [ali, quando, when], adv., *at some time, at last*.

aliquantus, -a, -um [ali, quantus], adj., *some, considerable; neut. as noun, somewhat, a good deal; aliquantō, abl. of measure, by a good deal, considerably*.

aliquis, -qua, -quid (-quod) [aliquis], indef. pronoun, *some, any; as a noun, M., some one, any one, anybody; N., something, anything*.

aliquot [ali-, quot], indecl. adj., *several, some*.

aliter [alius], adv., *otherwise, differently; aliter . . . ac, otherwise than*.

alius, -a, -ud, adj. pron., *another, other, different, else; alius atque, different from; alius . . . alius, one . . . another, the one . . . the other; alii . . . alii, some . . . others*.

all-; see **adi-**.

Allobroges, -um, M. plur., a Celtic nation living between the Rhone and the Alps, in the N. E. part of the "Province."

alō, alere, alui, altus, 3. v. a., *nourish, feed, support, foster, raise, sustain, maintain, keep up, continue*.

Alpēs, -ium, F. plur., *the Alps*.

alter, -era, -erum, gen. **alterius** or **alterius**, adj. pron., *one, or the other, of two; another, second; alter . . . alter, the one . . . the other; alteri . . . alteri, one party . . . the other party*.

alternus, -a, -um [alter], adj., *by turns, alternate, mutual*.

altitūdō, -inis [altus], F., *height, depth, thickness (of timber)*.

altus, -a, -um [p. p. of alo], adj., *(grown high), high, deep; as noun, altum, -i, N., the deep (sea)*.

alūta, -ae, F., *soft leather*.

am-; see **ambi**.

ambactus, -i, M., *a vassal, retainer*.

Ambarri, -ōrum, M. plur., a Gallic tribe on the *Arar (Saône)*, connected with the *Haedui*.

ambi, **amb-**, **am-**, **an-**, prep. in comp., *round, about*.

Amiāni, -ōrum, M. plur., a tribe of Belgic Gaul, whose chief town, *Samarobriua*, is now *Amiens*.

Ambibarii, -ōrum, M. plur., a small tribe in N. W. Gaul, on the coast.

Ambiliāti, -ōrum, M. plur., a small tribe south of the *Liger (Loire)*, near its mouth.

Ambiorix, -igis, M., a prince of the *Eburones*, who organized a dangerous revolt against *Cæsar*, and destroyed part of his army under *Sabinus* and *Cotta*.

Ambivareti, -ōrum, M. plur., a small tribe on the upper *Loire (Liger)*, clients of the *Haedui*.

Ambivariti, -ōrum, M. plur., a tribe of Belgic Gaul, on the left bank of the *Maas (Mosa)*.

ambō, -ae, -ō, num. adj., *both (together; uterque means both separately, each)*.

āmēns, -entis [ab-mens], adj., *mad, insane, crazy*.

āmentia, -ae [amens], F., *insanity, madness, folly, frenzy*.

āmentum, -i, N., *a thong, strap, attached to javelins to help in throwing them*.

amicitia, -ae [amicus], F., *friendship, alliance*.

amicus, -a, -um [amo, love], adj., friendly, kindly disposed; as noun, M. or F., friend, ally.

āmissus, p. p. of **amitto**.

āmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus [ab-mitto], 3. v. a., send away, let go, lose.

amor, -ōris [amo, love], M., love, affection.

amplē [amplus], adv., abundantly, largely, fully, widely, generously; **amplius**, compar., further, more, esp. with numerals, the case of which is not affected by this comparative.

amplificō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [amplus -facio], 1. v. a., enlarge, extend, increase.

amplitūdō, -inis [amplus], F., size, extent, largeness, breadth, dignity.

amplus, -a, -um, adj., large, great, wide, extensive, spacious, distinguished, splendid, noble; **amplius**, comp. as noun, N., more, a greater number.

an, interrog. conj., introducing the second member of a double or alternative question, of which the first is not always expressed; or, or indeed, or rather; -ne . . . **an** or **utrum** . . . **an**, whether . . . or.

an; see **ambi**.

Anatēs, -ium, M. plur., a nation in *Dacia*, east of the *Hercynian* forest.

Ancalites, -um, M. plur., a nation of Britain.

anceps, -cipitis [an = ambi-caput], adj., double-headed, twofold, double; doubtful; **proelium**, a battle on two fronts, front and rear at once.

ancora, -ae [Gr.], F., anchor; in **ancoris**, at anchor; **tollere**, to weigh anchor.

Andebrogius, -i, M., a leading man of the *Remi*.

Andes, -ium, M. plur., a nation north of the *Loire* (*Liger*), whose territory is now called *Anjou*.

ānfractus, (ām-f-) -ūs [ambi-, frangō], bending round, bend, curve, winding, circuit.

angulus, -i, M., corner, angle.

angustē [angustus], adv., narrowly, closely, scantily, sparingly.

angustiae, -arum [angustus], F. plur., narrowness, narrowness, narrow place or pass; straits, difficulties, crisis.

angustus, -a, -um [ango, squeeze], adj., narrow, contracted, confined, strait, close; in **angustō**, "in a tight place," in a crisis.

anima, -ae, F., breath; life, soul, spirit.

animadvertō, -vertere, -verti, -versus (also separately **animum advertere**), 3. v. a., turn the mind to, attend to; in **aliquem**, to punish; notice, observe, perceive.

animal, -ālis [anima], N., a living creature, animal.

animus, -i [cf. anima], M., breath, life, soul; more usually soul, mind, feelings; spirit, temper, disposition; thoughts, will, purpose; resolution, courage; consciousness.

annōtinus, -a, -um [annus], adj., last year's, a year old.

annus, -i, M., year.

annuus, -a, -um [annus], adj., yearly, annual.

ānser (or **hānser**), -eris, M., goose.

ante, adv. and prep. w. acc.; as adv., before, in front, previously; as prep., before, in front of, in advance of; **ante diem** (a. d.), on (such) a day before.

anteā [ante eā], adv. (of time), before, previously, once, formerly.

antecēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessus [ante-cedo], 3. v. n. and a., go before, go in advance, precede, excel, surpass.

antecursor, -ōris [ante-cursor, a runner; curro, run], M., fore-runner, courier.

anteferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus [ante-ferro], irr. v. a., carry in front, place in advance, prefer.

antemna, -ae, F., a yard (of a ship).

antepōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positus [ante-pono], 3. v. a., place in advance, prefer.

antequam, adv., *before*, with a clause; sometimes separately, **ante** with main clause, **quam** with the subordinate.

antevertō, -vertere, -verti, -versus [ante-vertō], 3. v. a., (*turn in front*), *prefer, place before*.

antiquitus [antiquus], adv., *in former times, in old times, anciently*.

antiquus, -a, -um [ante], adj., *old, ancient*.

Antistius, -i, M., *C. Antistius Reginus*, one of Caesar's *legati*.

Antōnius, -i, M., *M. Antonius*, the famous Mark Antony, one of Caesar's *legati*; *C. Antonius*, his brother, also a *legatus* of Caesar.

Ap., for **Appius**.

aperiō, -perire, -perui, -pertus [ab-pario], 4. v. a. (*get off*), *uncover, open, reveal*; **apertus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *open, exposed, unprotected*.

apertē [apertus], adv., *openly*.

apertus, -a, -um, p. p. of **aperio**.

Apollo, -inis, M., a god of the Greeks and Romans, son of Jupiter and Latona; god of medicine, and therefore identified by Caesar with the Gallic divinity of healing.

apparō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ad-paro], 1. v. a., and n., *make ready, prepare, put in order, provide*.

appellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1. v. a., *call, name, address, accost, appeal to*.

Appius, -i, M., a Roman praenomen.

Apr., **Aprilis**, -e [aperio], adj., (*the opening month*) of *April*.

aptus, -a, -um, adj., *suited, fitted, adapted, fit, suitable*.

apud, prep. w. acc., *at, with, near, by, among, in the presence of, at the house of*.

aqua, -ae, F., *water*.

aquatiō, -ōnis [aquor, fetch water], F., *getting water*.

aquila, -ae, F., *eagle*; the standard of the Roman legions was an eagle on a staff.

Aquilēia, -ae, F., a Roman colony in *Ventia* (Cisalpine Gaul), at the head of the Adriatic Sea.

aquilifer, -erī [aquila-fero], M., *eagle-bearer, standard-bearer*.

Aquitānia, -ae, F., one of the three main divisions of Gaul, bounded by the "Province," the Pyrenees, the Garonne, and the ocean.

Aquitānus, -a, -um, adj., *Aquitanian*; as noun, M., *an Aquitanian*.

Arar, -aris, acc. -im, M., the *Saône*, which rises in the Vosges Mountains, and runs into the Rhone at Lyons.

arbitr, -tri [ad-bito, go], M., *a witness*; *a referee, an umpire*.

arbitrium, -i [arbitr], N., *decision, award, judgment, authority, will, pleasure*.

arbitror, -ārī, -ātus [arbitr], 1. v. dep., *decide, judge, think, suppose*.

arbor, -oris, F., *a tree*.

arcessō, -sere, sivi, -situs [cf. accedo], 3. v. a., *cause to come, summon, send for, call in, invite*.

ārdeō, ārdere, ārsi, ārsus [cf. aridus], 2. v. n., *be hot, be on fire, burn*; *be excited, burn with eagerness, be inflamed*.

Arduenna, -ae (silva), F., the *Ardenne*s, a district of hills covered with forest, in N. E. Gaul.

arduus, -a, -um, adj., *high, steep, difficult, hard*.

Arecomici, -ōrum, M. plur., a branch of the *Volcae*, in the "Province."

Aremoricus, -a, -um [a Celtic word meaning *by the sea*], adj., *Aremoric*, the name of the states in the N. W. of Gaul, in what is now Normandy and Brittany.

argentum, -i, N., *silver*; *silver-ware*.

argilla, -ae, F., *clay, potter's clay*.

āridus, -a, -um [areo, be dry], adj., *dry*; as noun, **āridum**, -i, N., *dry land*.

ariēs, -ietis, M., *a ram*; *a battering-ram*; *a buttress, brace*.

Ariovistus, -i, M., a German king who had conquered part of Gaul along the Rhine.

Aristius, -i, M., *M. Aristius*, a tribune of the soldiers in Caesar's army.

arma, -ōrum, N. plur., *implements, equipment, arms, weapons, armor*.

armāmenta, -ōrum [armo], N. plur., *implements, equipment, tackle, rigging*.

armātūra, -ae [armo], F., *equipment*; **levis armaturae**, *light-armed*.

armō, -are, -āvī, -ātus [cf. arma], 1. v. a., *equip, arm*; **armātus**, -a, -um, p. p., as noun, **armātī**, -ōrum, M. plur., *armed men, soldiers*.

Arpinēius, -i [Arpinum, a town in Italy], M., *C. Arpinicius*, Caesar's envoy to Ambiorix.

arripio, -ripere, -ripui, -reptus [ad-rapio], 3. v. a., *snatch up, seize*.

arroganter [arrogans, *haughty*], *presumptuously, haughtily, insolently*.

arrogantia, -ae [arrogans, *haughty*], F., *insolence, presumption, pride*.

ars, artis, F., *skill, art, science, method, contrivance*.

artē [artus, *close, tight*], adv., *closely, tightly, firmly*.

articulus, -i [artus, *a joint*], M., *a little joint, a joint*.

artificium, -i [artifex, *artificer*], N., *a trade, employment, skill, trick, contrivance*.

artus, -a, -um [arceo, *confine*, or *aro, fit*], adj., *close, dense*.

Arvernus, -a, -um, adj., *Arvernian*; as noun, M. plur., *the Arverni*, a powerful Gallic nation, whose country is now Auvergne.

arx, arcis, F., *fortress, stronghold, citadel, a fortified height*.

ascendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scēnsus [ad-scando, *climb*], 3. v. a. and n., *climb up, climb, go up, mount, scale, ascend*.

ascēnsus, -ūs [ascendo], M., *climbing, going up, ascent*; means of ascent, way up, *acclivity*.

aspectus, -ūs [aspicio, *ad-specio*, *look at*], M., *sight, look, appearance*.

asper, -era, -erum, adj., *rough, harsh; fierce, violent*.

at, conj., *but, yet, but yet, at least, on the other hand*.

atque (ac) [ad-que], conj., *and, and also, and even, and especially*; after words of likeness and unlikeness, *as, than*.

Atrebās, -ātis, adj., *Atrebatian*; as noun, **Atrebātes**, -um, M. plur., a nation of Belgic Gaul, whose principal city, Nemetocenna, is now *Arras*.

Atrius, -i, M., *Q. Atrius*, an officer left in charge of the fleet on the coast of Britain.

attexō, -texere, -texui, -textus [ad-texo, *weave*], 3. v. a., *weave on, join by weaving, add*.

attingo, -tingere, -tigi, -tāctus [ad-tango], 3. v. a., *touch upon, touch, reach; border upon, adjoin*.

attribuō, -buere, -bui, būtus [ad-tribuo], 3. v. a., *assign, allot*.

attuli; see *adfero*.

Atuatuca, -ae, F., a fortress of the Eburones.

Atuaticū, -ōrum, M. plur., a warlike tribe of German origin in Belgic Gaul, on the west bank of the Maas (*Mosa*).

auctor, -ōris [augeo], *promoter, instigator, authority, voucher, adviser, approver, suggester*.

auctoritās, -tātis [auctor], F., *influence, weight, prestige, authority* (not official), *power*.

auctus, -a, -um, p. p. of *augeo*.

audācia, -ae [audax, *daring*], F., *boldness, daring, impudence, presumption*.

audācter [audax, *daring*], adv., *boldly, with daring, fearlessly*.

audeō, audēre, ausus, 2. v. a. and n., semi-dep., *dare, risk, venture, undertake*.

audiō, -dīre, -divi, -ditus, 4. v. a., *hear, hear of, listen to*; dicto **audiens**, *obedient*.

auditiō, -ōnis, F., a hearing, a report.

augeō, augēre, auxī, auctus, 2. v. a., increase, enlarge, magnify; advance, enrich.

Aulercus, -a, -um, adj., *Aulercan*; as noun, **Aulerci**, -ōrum, M. plur., a nation of Celtic Gaul in four branches: **Brannovices**, **Cēnomāni**, **Eburovices**, and **Diablintes**.

Aulus, -ī, M., a Roman praenomen.

auriga, -ae [aurea, *bridle*,—ago?], M., a charioteer, driver.

auris, -is, F., ear.

Aurunculēius, -ī, M., *L. Aurunculeius Cotta*, one of Caesar's *legati*, killed by the Eburones.

Ausci, -ōrum, M. plur., a tribe in Aquitania.

ausus, -a, -um, p. p. of *audeo*.

aut, conj., or; **aut** . . . **aut**, either . . . or.

autem, conj., but, moreover, however, on the other hand, now.

autumnus (auct-), -ī [augeo], M., (the season of increase), autumn.

auxiliāris, -e [auxilium], adj., aiding, assisting; as noun M. plur., auxiliary troops.

auxilior, -āri, -ātus, 1. v. dep., help, assist, aid.

auxilium, -ī [akin to augeo], N., aid, help, assistance, relief, remedy, resource; plur., auxiliary troops, reinforcements, allies.

Avaricēnsis, -e, adj., of *Avaricum*; M. plur., the people of *Avaricum*.

Avaricum, -ī, N., a town of the Bituriges, now *Bourges*.

avāritia, -ae [avarus, greedy], F., greed, covetousness, avarice.

āvehō, -vehere, -vexi, -vectus [ab-veho, carry], 3. v. a., carry off, carry away.

āversus, -a, -um, p. p. of *averto*.

āvertō, -vertere, -verti, -versus [ab-vertō], 3. v. a., turn away, turn aside; alienate, estrange; **aversus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., turned away (with one's back to the enemy), retreating; **aversi circumveniri**, to be surrounded in the rear.

avis, -is, F., a bird.

avus, -ī, M., a grandfather.

Axona, -ae, F., a river of Gaul (now *Aisne*), tributary of the *Isara* (*Oise*).

B

Bācēnis, -is, F. (*silva*), a forest in Germany, between the *Cherusci* and the *Suebi*.

Baculus, -ī [baculum, a staff, a stick], M., *P. Sextius Baculus*, a centurion in Caesar's army.

Baleāris, -e, adj., *Baleaic*, belonging to the Balearic islands of the east coast of Spain; the inhabitants were famous slingers.

balteus, -ī, M., a belt, a baldric, usually passing over one shoulder.

Balventius, -ī, M., a centurion in Caesar's army.

barbarus, -a, -um, adj., foreign (not Latin or Greek), uncivilized, barbarian, savage; as noun, M. plur., barbarians, savages, foreigners.

Basilus, -ī, M., *L. Minucius Basilus*, an officer in Caesar's army.

Batāvi, -ōrum, M. plur., the *Bata-vians*, a nation living about the mouths of the Rhine.

Belgae, -ārum, M. plur., the *Belgians*, a nation occupying the north of Gaul.

Belgium, -ī, N., the country of the *Belgae*.

bellicōsus, -a, -um [bellum], adj., warlike, fond of war.

bellicus, -a, -um [bellum], adj., of war, military.

bellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [bellum], 1. v. n., make war, fight, carry on war.

Bellovacī, -ōrum, M. plur., a strong nation of Belgic Gaul, between the *Seine*, *Somme*, and *Oise* rivers, about the modern *Beauvais*.

bellum, -ī [for duellum, cf. duo], N., war, warfare, a war; **gerere**, to wage war; **inferre**, make war upon, invade; **defendere**, to defend one's self from war.

bene [bonus], adv., comp. *melius*, superl. *optimē*, well, successfully.

beneficium, -i [bene-facio], N., *well-doing, a kindness, favor, service*; **beneficiō**, w. gen., *thanks to*.
benevolentia, -ae [benevolus, bene-volo], F., *well-wishing, goodwill, kind feeling, friendliness*.
Bibracte, -is, N., chief town of the Haedui, situated on *Mont Beuvray*, near Autun.
Bibrax, -ctis, F., a town of the Remi.
Bibroci, -ōrum, M. plur., a tribe in S. E. Britain.
biduum, -i [bis-dies], N., *two days' time, two days*.
biennium, -i [bis-annus], N., *two years' time, a period of two years*.
Bigerriōnes, -um, M. plur., a tribe near the Pyrenees, whose name appears in *Bigorre*.
bīni, -ae, -a [bis], distributive num. adj., plur., *two each, two by two, in pairs*.
bipedālis, -e [bis-pes], adj., *of two feet, two feet* (long, wide, high, etc.).
bipertitō [abl. of bi-partitus, *divided in two*; *partior, divide*], adv., *in two divisions*.
bis [for duis, fr. duo], adv., *twice*.
Bituriges, -um, M. plur., a nation of Celtic Gaul, across the Loire from the Haedui, around the city now called *Bourges*.
Boduōgnātus, -i, M., a leader of the Nervii.
Bōi (Bōii), -iōrum, M. plur., a Celtic nation, part of which joined the Helvetii in their emigration. The remnant of these settled with the Haedui.
bonitās, -tātis [bonus], F., *goodness, excellence*; of land, *fertility*.
bonus, -a, -um, adj., comp. *melior*, superl. *optimus*, *good*; as noun, N., *good, profit, advantage*; plur., *goods, property, possessions*.
bōs, bovis, gen. plur., boum, M. or F., *bull, cow, ox*; plur., *cattle*.
bracchium, -i, N., *an arm*; in particular, *the forearm*.

Brannovices, -um, M. plur.; see *Aulerci*.
Bratuspantium, -i, N., a stronghold of the Bellovaci, not certainly identified with any modern town.
brevis, -e, adj., *brief, short* (of space or time); *brevi*, *in a short time*.
brevitās, -tātis [brevis], F., *shortness*; *short stature*.
breviter [brevis], adv., *briefly, concisely, with few words*.
Britanni, -ōrum, M. plur., *the Britons*.
Britannia, -ae, F., *Britain*.
Britannicus, -a, -um, adj., *of Britain, Briton, British*.
brūma, -ae [brevima (brevissima), sc. dies], F., *the shortest day, the winter solstice*.
Brūtus, -i [brutus, *dull, heavy*], M., *D. Junius Brutus*, a distinguished lieutenant of Caesar, afterward one of his assassins.

C

C, for *centum*, *a hundred*.
C., for *Gaius*.
Cabillōnum, -i, N., a town of the Haedui, on the Saône (*Châlon-sur-Saône*).
Cabūrus, -i, M., *C. Valerius Caburus*, a Gaul who received Roman citizenship from C. Valerius Flaccus, after whom he and his two sons, Procillus and Domnotaurus, were named.
cacūmen, -inis, N., *the top, point, end, summit, peak*.
cadāver, -eris [cf. *cado*], N., *a corpse, a dead body*.
cadō, cadere, cecidi, cāsūrus, 3. v. n., *fall, be killed*.
Cadūrcus, -a, -um, adj., *of the Cadurci*, a tribe in Aquitania; M. plur., *the Cadurci*.
caedēs, -is [cf. *caedo*], F., *killing, slaughter, cutting down, murder, massacre*.
caedō, caedere, cecidi, caesus, 3. v. a., *strike down, cut down, fell, slay, kill*.

- caelestis**, -e [*caelum*, *sky*, *heaven*], adj., *heavenly*; as noun, **caelestēs**, -ium, M. and F. plur., *the gods*.
- Caemāni**, -ōrum, M. plur., a tribe in Belgic Gaul.
- caerimōnia**, -ae, F., *a religious rite, ceremony*.
- Caerōsi**, -ōrum, M. plur., a tribe in Belgic Gaul.
- caeruleus**, -a, -um, adj., *dark blue, deep blue*.
- Caesar**, -aris, M., *C. Julius Caesar*, the conqueror of Gaul and the author of this book; *L. Julius Caesar*, his kinsman and lieutenant.
- caespes**, -itis, M., *a sod, turf*, used in fortifications.
- caesus**, -a, -um, p. p. of *caedo*.
- calamitās**, -tātis, F., *disaster, damage, loss, defeat, misfortune*.
- Caletes**, -um, M. plur., a tribe in Normandy, on the Seine.
- Caleti**, -ōrum, M. plur., the same as *Caletes*.
- callidus**, -a, -um, adj., *skilful, cunning, shrewd, crafty*.
- cālō**, -ōnis, M., *a soldier's servant, a camp-follower*.
- campester**, -tris, -tre [*campus*], adj., *of the plain, level, flat*.
- campus**, -i, M., *a plain, level, open country*.
- Camulogenus**, -i, M., an Aulercan, commander of the Parisii against Labienus.
- Caninius**, -i, M., *C. Caninius Rebius*, a lieutenant of Caesar.
- canō**, canere, cecini, cantus, 3. v. a. and n., *sing, sound, or play with voice or instrument; retreatui canere, to sound (for) a retreat*.
- Cantaber**, -bra, -brum, M., *of the Cantabrians*, a warlike nation of northern Spain; M. plur., *the Cantabrians*.
- Cantium**, -i, N., *Kent*, the S. E. county of England.
- caper**, -pri, M., *a goat*.
- capillus**, -i, M., *hair* (of the head).
- capio**, capere, cēpi, captus, 3. v. a., *take, get, seize, capture; occupy, take possession of, gain; choose, select; arrive at, reach, "make"; to take in, deceive, beguile; to experience, suffer*.
- caprea** (*capra*), -ae [*caper*], F., *a she-goat, a roe* (small deer).
- captivus**, -a, -um [*capio*], adj., *captured, captive*; as noun, M., *a prisoner, a captive*.
- captus**, -a, -um, p. p. of *capio*.
- captus**, -ūs [*capio*], M., *seizing, grasp; capacity, character*.
- caput**, -itis, N., *head; individual, person, man, life; mouth* (of a river); **poena capitis**, *death penalty*.
- careō**, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, 2. v. n., *be without, do without, want, lack, be deprived of*.
- carina**, -ae, F., *keel, bottom* (of a ship).
- Carnutes**, -um, M. plur., a nation about Orleans, between the Loire and the Seine.
- carō**, carnis, F., *flesh, meat*.
- carpō**, -pere, -psī, -ptus, 3. v. a., *pluck; criticise, find fault with, censure, "pick to pieces"*.
- carrum**, -i, N., or **carrus**, -i, M., *a* (Gallic) *cart, wagon*.
- cārus**, -a, -um, adj., *dear, valuable, valued, precious*.
- Carvilius**, -i, M., king of a part of Kent.
- casa**, -ae, F., *a cottage, a hut, barrack*.
- cāseus**, -i, M., *cheese*.
- Cassi**, -ōrum, M. plur., a tribe in Britain.
- Cassiānus**, -a, -um [*Cassius*], adj., *of Cassius; bellum*, the war in which Cassius was beaten and killed by the Tigurini, 107 B. C.
- cassis**, -idis, F., *a* (metal) *helmet*.
- Cassius**, -i, M., *L. Cassius Longinus*, consul in 107 B. C. See *Cassianus*.
- Cassivellaunus**, -i, M., a British chief, north of the Thames, leader of the army of the Britons.

castellum, -i [dimin. of *castrum*], N., a redoubt, small fort, stronghold.

Casticus, -i, M., a chief of the Sequani.

castrum, -i, N., a fort; plur., *castra*, -ōrum; camp, encampment, the Roman camp being always fortified; *quintis castris*, in or after five days' march, lit., at the fifth camp.

cāsus, -ūs [cado], M., fall, what befalls, accident; event, occurrence, case; chance, mischance, misfortune.

Catamantaloedēs, -is, M., a chief of the Sequani.

catēna, -ae, F., a chain; either fetters for a prisoner, or a cable.

Caturiges, -um, M. plur., a tribe living in the "Province."

Catuvolcus, -i, M., a chief of the Eburones.

causa, -ae, F., reason, cause, ground, motive; excuse (alleged reason), pretext, pretense; case, condition, situation; case (at law), cause, trial; *causā* after a gen., on account of, for the sake of.

cautē [cautus, fr. *caveo*], adv., cautiously, with prudence.

cautēs, -is, rock (sharp or jagged), cliff, crag, reef.

cautus, -a, -um, p. p. of *caveo*.

Cavarillus, -i, M., a chief man of the Haedui.

Cavarinus, -i, M., a chief of the Senones, made king by Caesar.

caveō, *cavēre*, *cāvī*, *cautus*, 2. v. n. and a., be on one's guard, take care; guard against, beware of; give or take security.

Cebenna, -ae, F., the Cevennes, a region of mountains and forest between the Arverni and the "Province."

cēdō, *cēdere*, *cessī*, *cessūrus*, 3. v. n., give way, retreat, retire, yield, go away, withdraw; *cedentēs*, pres. p. as noun, M. plur., the retreating enemy.

celer, -eris, -ere, adj., swift, quick, speedy, fast, rapid, sudden.

celeritās, -tātis [celer], F., swiftness, speed, rapidity, quickness.

celeriter [celer], adv., quickly, swiftly, very soon, immediately.

cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1. v. a., hide, conceal, keep secret.

Celtae, -ārum, M. plur., the Celtic race, which inhabited Gaul and Britain and some other parts of the world; in particular, the people of the great central division of Gaul.

Celtillus, -i, M., an Arvernian, father of Vercingetorix.

Cēnabēnsēs, -ium, M. plur., the people of *Cenabum*.

Cēnabum (Gēn-), -i, N., the chief town of the Carnutes, now Orleans (from the later name *urbis Aurelianensis*).

Cēnimāgnī, -ōrum, M. plur., a tribe in Britain.

Cēnomānī, -ōrum, M. plur., a division of the Aulerici.

cēseō, *cēsēre*, *cēnsui*, *cēnsus*, 2. v. a., reckon, estimate, give or be of an opinion, think, judge, determine, decree, resolve.

cēnsus, -ūs [censeo], M., count, reckoning, enumeration, census, registration.

centum (C), indecl. num. adj., a hundred.

centuriō, -ōnis [centuria, a hundred], M., a centurion (commander of a century), one of the two commanders of a manipulus (company).

cernō, *cernere*, *crēvī*, *crētus* or *certus*, 3. v. a., separate; distinguish, see, perceive; decide, determine, resolve.

certāmen, -inis [certo, struggle, contend], N., contest, struggle, rivalry, competition.

certē [certus], adv., certainly, surely; at least, at any rate.

certus, -a, -um [p. p. of *cerno*], adj., fixed, determined, definite, sure, certain, regular, established, reliable; *certiorem facere*, to inform; *certior fieri*, to be informed, learn.

cervus, -i, M., a stag; in military engineering, a kind of obstruction, like stag's horns, *chevaux-de-frise*. (**cēterus**), -a, -um, adj., the rest of, the remainder of; usually plur., the rest, the others, all else; neut., everything else.

Ceutrones, -um, M. plur., a tribe in Belgic Gaul; another tribe in the Graian Alps, in the eastern part of the "Province."

Chēruscī, -ōrum, M. plur., a German nation north of the Suebi, between the Weser and the Elbe.

cibārius, -a, -um [cibus], adj., pertaining to food; as noun, N. plur., cibāria, -ōrum, provisions, rations; molita, ground grain.

cibus, -i, M., food.

Cicerō, -ōnis, M., Q. Tullius Cicero, brother of the great orator, a lieutenant of Caesar.

Climberius, -i, M., a chief of the Suebi.

Cimbri, -ōrum, M. plur., a German nation from Jutland, who joined the Teutons and overran Gaul; defeated by Marius and Catulus in 103 and 102 B. C.

Cingetorix, -igis, M., 1. a chief of the Treviri, loyal to Caesar and rival of Indutiomarus; 2. a Briton chief in Kent.

cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cinctus, 3. v. a., surround, encircle, enclose, invest.

cippus, -i, M., stake, post, pillar.

circinus, -i, M., a pair of compasses.

circiter [circus, circle], adv. and prep. w. acc., around, about, near.

circuitus, -a, -um, p. p. of circum-eo.

circuitus, -tūs [circumeo], M., a going round, circuit, roundabout way, way round, circumference.

circum [circus, circle], adv. and prep. w. acc., around, about, in the neighborhood of.

circumcidō, -cidere, -cīdī, -cīsus [circum-caedo], 3. v. a., cut around, cut; circumcīsus, -a,

-um, p. p. as adj., collis, isolated or inaccessible, steep.

circumclūdō, -clūdere, -clūdī, -clūsus [circum-claudō], 3. v. a., enclose, encircle, hem in, shut in.

circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datus [circum-do], 1. v. a., put around; encircle, surround; murus circumdatus (a wall put around a city, etc.), an encircling wall.

circumdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus [circum-duco], 3. v. a., lead around, draw around.

circumductus, -a, -um, p. p. of circumduco.

circu(m)ēō, -īre, -īī, -itus [circum-eo], irr. v. n., go around; in active sense, visit, make a round or tour of, inspect.

circumfundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsus [circum-fundo], 3. v. a., pour around; surround; passive, flock or crowd around, pour or rush in from all sides.

circumiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [circum-iacio], 3. v. a., throw around, cast or place around.

circumiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of circumicio.

circummittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [circum-mitto], 3. v. a., send around.

circummūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus [circum-munio], 4. v. a., fortify around, wall up, hem in.

circummūnitus, -a, -um, p. p. of circummunio.

circumplector, -plectī, -plexus [circum-plecto, twine], 3. v. dep., embrace, surround, encompass, enclose.

circumsistō, -sistere, -stetī (-stīti, no p. p. [circum-sisto, place (one's self)]), 3. v. a., stand around, rally round, surround.

circumspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus [circum-specio, look], 3. v. a., look around for; consider, think about, ponder.

circumvāllō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [circum-vallo, intrench], 1. v. a., surround with intrenchments, invest.

circumvectus, -a, -um, p. p. of **circumveho**.

circumvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectus [**circum-veho, carry**], 3. v. a., *carry around*; pass., *ride or sail around*.

circumvenio, -venire, -vērī, -ventus [**circum-venio**], 4. v. a., *come around*; *surround, invest*; *en-snare, deceive, betray*.

circumventus, -a, -um, p. p. of **circumvenio**.

cis, adv. and prep. with acc., *on this side, this side of*.

Cisalpinus, -a, -um [**cis-Alpes**], adj., *on this side of the Alps, Cis-alpine*.

Cisrhēnānus, -a, -um [**cis-Rheum**], adj., *on this side of the Rhine (toward Gaul)*; plur. as noun, *the people on this side of the Rhine*.

Cita, -ae, M., *C. Fufius Cita*, a Roman knight, in business at Cenabum.

citer, -ra, -rum [cf. **cis**], adj., *on this side*.—Usually **citerior**, -ius (comparative), *hither, nearer*.

citō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [intens. of **cieo, move**], 1. v. a., *put in rapid motion*; **citātus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *rapid, in haste, hurried*.

citō [**citus**, fr. **cieo, put in motion**], adv., *rapidly, quickly*; superl., **citissimē**, *with the utmost speed*.

citrā [**citer**], adv. and prep. with acc., *on this side of, within*.

citrō [**citer**], adv., *to this side*; **ultrō citrōque**, *to and frō, back and forth*.

civis, -is, M. and F., *a citizen, a fellow citizen*.

civitās, -tātis, F., *citizenship* (especially Roman); *body of citizens, city, state, community, nation* (politically).

clam, adv. and prep. with abl., *secretly, unknown to*.

clāmitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [freq. of **clamō, shout**], 1. v. a., *cry out loudly or repeatedly, shout*.

clāmor, -ōris [**clamo, shout**], M., *shout, cry, outcry*.

clandestinus, -a, -um [**clam, secretly**], adj., *secret, hidden, clandestine*.

clārus, -a, -um, adj., *bright, clear*; *famous, renowned*; of the voice, *loud, distinct*.

classis, -is, F., *a fleet*.

Claudius, -i, M., *Ap. Claudius Pulcher*, praetor in 57 B. C., consul 54 B. C., brother of the demagogue Clodius.

claudō, claudere, clausī, clausus, 3. v. a., *shut, close*; **agmen**, *bring up the rear*.

clausus, -a, -um, p. p. of **claudo**.

clāvus, -i, M., *nail, spike*.

clēmētia, -ae, [**clemens, mild**], F., *kindness, gentleness, mildness, humanity*.

cliēns, -entis [**cluens**, p. of **clueo, hear, obey**], C., *a dependent, retainer, vassal, adherent*.

clientēla, -ae [**cliens**], F., *clientship, vassalage*; *protection*; plur., *clients, body of clients, dependencies*.

clivus, -i [cf. **clino, lean**], M., *slope, acclivity or declivity, hill*.

Clōdīus, -i (= **Claudius**), *P. Clodius*, the demagogue, a bitter enemy of Cicero, killed by Milo.

Cn., for **Gnaeus**.

coacervō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**con-acervo, heap up**], 1. v. a., *heap together, pile up, accumulate*.

coactus, p. p. of **cogo**.

coactus, -tūs [**cogo**], M., *compulsion*.

coagmentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1. v. a., *join or fasten together*.

coartō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**con-ar(c)to, squeeze**], 1. v. a., *press or crowd together*.

Cocosātes, -um, M. plur., a tribe of northwestern Aquitania.

coēmō, -emere, -ēmī, -ēptus [**con-emo**], 3. v. a., *buy up*.

coeō, -ire, -ivī (il), no p. p. [**con-eo**], irr. v. n., *go or come together, meet, unite*.

coepti, -isse, -coeptus, def. v. a., *begin, commence*.

coeptus, -a, -um, p. p. of **coepti**.

coërceō, -ercēre, -ercuī, -ercitus [con-arceo, confine], 2. v. a., *confine, restrain, check, keep back*.
 cōgitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [con-agi-to], 1. v. a., *revolve, discuss, meditate, consider; intend, plan, design*.
 cōgnātiō, -ōnis [con-gnatio, birth], F., *kinship, connection by birth; family, kinsfolk*.
 cōgnitus, -a, -um, p. p. of cognosco.
 cōgnōscō, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, -gnitus [con-gnosco, learn], 3. v. a., *become acquainted with, learn, ascertain; know, recognise; inquire into, investigate*.
 cōgō, cōgere, cōgī, cōactus [con-ago], 3. v. a., *bring together, collect, gather; compel, force*.
 cohors, -hortis, F., *a cohort, one of the ten divisions of a legion*.
 cohortātiō, -ōnis [cohortor], F., *an encouraging, encouragement, an address to soldiers before battle*.
 cohortor, -ārī, -ātus [con-hortor], 1. v. dep., *encourage, cheer, rally, urge, exhort*.
 coll-; see conl-.
 colligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus [con-lego, gather], 3. v. a., *gather together, collect, assemble; sē colligere, to gather or come together; recover one's self; rally*.
 collis, -is, M., *a hill*.
 colō, colere, coluī, cultus, 3. v. a., *till, cultivate (land); honor, pay court to, worship (persons, gods)*.
 colōnia, -ae [colonus, settler, from colo], F., *colony, settlement*.
 color, ōris, M., *color; of persons, complexion*.
 com- (con-, co-) [= cum], adv. in composition, *with, together*; often merely intensive with the idea of *thoroughly, completely*.
 combūrō, -būrere, -bussī, -būstus [con-buro, burn; cf. uro], 3. v. a., *burn, burn up, consume*.
 comes, -itis, M. and F., *companion, comrade*.
 comitātus, -a, -um, p. p. of comitor.

comitium, -I, N., *assembly-place, part of the Forum at Rome; plur., comitia, -ōrum, an assembly of the people at Rome, an election*.
 comitor, -ārī, -ātus [comes], 1. v. dep., *accompany, attend, follow*.
 commeātus, -tūs [com-meatus, fr. commeo], M., *going to and fro, back and forth, trip, journey, voyage, communications, supplies*.
 commemorō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [commemoro, call to mind], 1. v. a., *remind some one of something, call to mind, mention*.
 commendō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [commando, commit], 1. v. a., *commit, intrust, recommend*.
 commentārius, -I [commentor, think over], M., *note-book, memorandum, memoir*.
 commeō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [commeo, go], 1. v. n., *go back and forth, to and fro, visit, resort to*.
 commilitō, -ōnis [com-miles], M., *fellow soldier, comrade in arms*.
 comminus [com-manus], adv., *hand-to-hand, at close quarters*.
 commissūra, -ae [committo], F., *joint, seam*.
 commissus, -a, -um, p. p. of committo.
 committō, -mittere, -misi, -missus [con-mitto], 3. v. a. (*let go together*), *join, connect, unite, attach; intrust, put into one's hands; admit, suffer, allow (to happen), commit (do), perpetrate*.
 Commius, -I, M., *a chief of the Atrabates, for a long time loyal to Caesar*.
 commodē [commodus], adv., *conveniently, advantageously, fitly, readily, easily*.
 commodus, -a, -um [com-modus], adj., *convenient, fit, suitable, proper, advantageous, easy; as noun, commodum, -I, N., profit, advantage, interest, comfort, convenience*.
 commonefaciō, -facere, -feci, -factus [com-moneo-facio], 3. v. a., *remind, admonish*.

- commoror**, -ārī, -ātus [com-moror], I. v. dep., *stay, remain, linger, delay*.
- commōtus**, -a, -um, p. p. of **commoveo**.
- commoveō**, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus [com-moveo], 2. v. a., *move, disturb, agitate, alarm, disquiet, excite, influence*.
- communīcō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [communis], I. v. a., *share, divide with, impart; consilia, take common counsel*.
- communiō**, -īre, -īvī, -ītus [communio], 4. v. a., *fortify (strongly), intrench*.
- communis**, -e [com-munus, or munia, duties], adj., *common, in common, public, general*.
- commūtātiō**, -ōnis [commuto], F., *change, alternation, turn (of the tide)*.
- commūtō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [commuto, change], I. v. a., *change, alter, exchange*.
- comparō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [comparo], I. v. a., *get ready, prepare, procure, get together, acquire, gain*.
- comparō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [compar, like], I. v. a. (pair), *compare, match*.
- compellō**, -pellere, -puli, -pulsus [com-pello], 3. v. a., *drive together, collect, constrain, compel*.
- compendium**, -ī [com-pendo], N., *gain, profit, saving, advantage*.
- comperiō**, -perīre, -perī, -pertus [com-pario], 4. v. a. (get together), *learn, discover, find out, get knowledge of, ascertain*.
- complector**, -plectī, -plexus [com-plecto, fold, twine], 3. v. dep., *clasp, embrace, surround, inclose, include*.
- compleō**, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētus [com-pleo], 2. v. a., *fill, fill up, fill full, complete, cover (a mountain), man (walls)*.
- complexus**, -a, -um, p. p. of **complector**.
- complūrēs**, -plūra (-ia) [com-plus], adj., plur., *several, a good many, quite a number*.
- comportō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [comporto], I. v. a., *bring together, collect, bring in*.
- comprehendō**, -hendere, -hendi, -hensus [com-prehendo], 3. v. a., *catch, seize, grasp, capture, arrest, lay hold of or hands on*.
- comprobō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [com-probo], I. v. a., *approve (fully), justify, sanction, vindicate*.
- compulsus**, -a, -um, p. p. of **compello**.
- cōnātum**, -ī [p. p. of conor, as noun], N., *attempt, undertaking*.
- cōnātus**, -ūs [conor], M., *attempt, effort*.
- concēdō**, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessus [con-cedo], 3. v. a. and n., *give up, yield, allow, grant, permit; withdraw, depart*.
- concertō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [concerto, contend], I. v. n., *contend, strive*.
- concessus**, -ūs [concedo], M., (a yielding), *concession, permission, leave*.
- concidō**, -cidere, -cidī, no p. p. [con-cado], 3. v. n., *fall, perish*.
- concidō**, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsus [con-caedo], 3. v. a., *cut up, cut to pieces, cut down, slay*.
- conciliō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [cf. concilium], I. v. a., *bring together, win over, gain, make friendly*.
- concilium**, -ī, N., *meeting, assembly, council*.
- concisus**, -a, -um, p. p. of **concidō**.
- concitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [con-cito], I. v. a., *rouse, stir up, excite, call out, provoke*.
- conclāmō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [con-clamo, cry out], I. v. n., *shout, cry out, cry aloud*.
- conclūdō**, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus [con-claudo], 3. v. a., *shut up, shut in, confine, enclose*.
- Conconnetodumnus**, -ī, M., a chief of the Carnutes.

concrepō, -crepāre, -crepui, -crepitūrus [con-crepo, *rattle*], I. v. n., *rattle, clash*.

concurrō, -currere, -curri (-cucurri), -cursus [con-curro], 3. v. n., *run together, run up, rush in, charge*.

concurso, -āre [freq. of concurro], I. v. n., *run to and fro, run about*.

concursum, -a, -um, p. p. of concurro.

concursum, -sūs [concurro], M., *running to and fro, rushing together; charge, shock* (of battle), *onset, attack*.

condemnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [condamno], I. v. a., *condemn, find guilty*.

condiciō, -ōnis [con-dico], F., *terms, stipulation, agreement, condition, state, situation*.

condonō, -āre, -āvi, -atus [condono], I. v. a., *give up, pardon, excuse, forgive*.

Condūsi, -ōrum, M. plur., a tribe of Belgic Gaul, on the Meuse or Maas, clients of the Treviri.

condūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductus [con-duco], 3. v. a., *bring together, collect, hire*.

confectus, -a, -um, p. p. of conficio.

conferciō, -ferciere, -fersi, -fertus [con-farcio, *stuff, cram*], 4. v. a., *crowd together; confertus, -a, -um, p. p., crowded, close, dense, compact, in close array, in a solid mass*.

conferō, -ferre, -tulī, -latus [con-fero], irr. v. a., *bring together, gather, collect; compare; postpone; se conferre, betake one's self*.

confertus, -a, -um, p. p. of confercio.

confestim [cf. festino, *hasten*], adv., *immediately, forthwith, in haste, speedily*.

conficiō, -ficere, -feci, -fectus [confacio], 3. v. a., *do thoroughly, accomplish, finish, perform; bring to an end, exhaust, wear out; work up, compose*.

confidō, -fidere, -fisis sum [confido, *trust*], 3. v. n. semi-dep., *trust (fully), rely on, have confidence in; confisus, -a, -um, p. p. in active sense, relying on, trusting in*.

configō, -figere, -fixi, -fixus [configo, *fix*], 3. v. a., *fasten together, fasten, join*.

confinis, -e [con-finis], adj., *bordering on, adjoining, neighboring*. confinium, -i [confinis], N., *border, boundary, frontier, limit*.

confiō, -fieri, -fectus [con-fio], irr. v. n. (sometimes used as pass. of conficio), *be done, be accomplished*.

confirmātiō, -ōnis [confirmo], F., *assurance, assertion*.

confirmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [confirmo], I. v. a., *strengthen, establish, confirm; encourage; assert, declare; se confirmare, resolve*.

confisus, -a, -um, p. p. of confido.

confiteor, -fiteri, -fessus [confiteor, *confess*], 2. v. dep., *confess, acknowledge*.

confixus, -a, -um, p. p. of configo. conflagrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [conflagro, *blaze*], I. v. n., *be in flames, be on fire, burn*.

conflictō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [freq. of configo], I. v. a., *strike or dash together (violently), dash against, assail, harass*.

confligō, -figere, -fixi, -fictus [con-fligo, *strike*], 3. v. a. and n., *dash or strike together; contend, fight*.

confluens, -entis [pres. p. of confuo], M., *a meeting of two rivers, confluence*.

confuō, -fluere, -fluxi, no p. p. [con-fluo], 3. v. n., *flow together; flock together*.

confugiō, -fugere, -fugi, no p. p. [con-fugio], 3. v. n., *flee, flee for refuge, take refuge*.

confundō, -fundere, -fudi, -fusus [con-fundo], 3. v. a., *pour together; mingle, mix, confuse, combine, unite*.

congregior, -gredi, -gressus [con-gradior, *step*], 3. v. dep., *come together, meet; unite with; encounter, fight with, engage (in battle with)*.

congressus, -a, -um, p. p. of **congregior**.

congressus, -sūs [congregior], M., *meeting, encounter, engagement*.

cōniciō (-iicio) or **cōiciō**, -icere, -icēi, -iectus [con-iacio], 3. v. a., *throw together, cast, hurl; place, station; put (ideas) together, infer*.

coniectūra, -ae [conicio], F., *guess, conjecture, inference*.

coniectus, -a, -um, p. p. of **conicio**.

coniūctim [con-iungo], adv., *jointly, in common, unitedly*.

coniūctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **con-iungo**.

coniungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūctus [con-iungo], 3. v. a., *join together, unite, connect; coniūctus*, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *united, connected, allied*.

coniūnx (coniux), -iugis [con-jugum, *yoke, or iungo*], M. and F., *spouse, husband or wife, generally wife*.

coniūratiō, -ōnis [coniuro], F., (union formed by an oath) *conspiracy, plot, confederacy*.

coniūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1. v. n., *swear together, take a common or mutual oath; conspire, plot*.

conlātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **confero**.

conlaudō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [con-laudo], 1. v. a., *praise, commend, extol*.

conligō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [con-ligo, *bind*], 1. v. a., *fasten together*.

conlocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [con-loco, *place*], 1. v. a., *place, station, set, lay, arrange; give in marriage*.

conloquium, -i [conloquor], N., *conversation, talk, interview, parley, conference*.

conloquor, -loquī, -locūtus [con-loquor], 3. v. dep., *talk together,*

converse, confer, have an interview.

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus, 1. v. dep., *try, attempt, strive, endeavor, undertake*.

conquiescō, -quiescere, -quievī, quietūrus [con-quiesco, *rest*], 3. v. n., *rest, repose*.

conquirō, -quirere, -quīslvī, -quīsītus [con-quaero], 3. v. a., *search for, seek, seek out, hunt up, bring together, procure*.

conquisītus, -a, -um, p. p. of **conquiro**.

consanguineus, -a, -um [con-sanguis], adj., *of one blood, akin, kindred, related; as noun, a relative, kinsman*.

conscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsus [con-scando, *climb*], 3. v. a., *mount, ascend, go on board (ship), embark*.

conscientia, -ae [con-scio, *know*], F., *knowledge (in common), privacy, consciousness, conscience*.

consciscō, -sciscere, -scīvi, -scītus [con-scisco, *decree*], 3. v. a., *decide, resolve, decree, appoint; sibi mortem consciscere, commit suicide*.

conscius, -a, -um [con-scio, *know*], adj., *knowing, conscious, aware of*.

conscribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptus [con-scribo], 3. v. a., *write, enroll, enlist, levy*.

conscriptus, -a, -um, p. p. of **conscribo**.

consecrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [con-sacro, *hallow*], 1. v. a., *make sacred or holy, consecrate*.

consector, -ārī, -ātus [freq. of consequor], 1. v. a., *pursue, follow up, overtake*.

consecūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of **consequor**.

consēnsiō, -ōnis [consentio], F., *agreement, unanimity, consent, harmony*.

consēnsus, -sūs [consentio], M., *agreement, harmony, united opinion*.

consentiō, -sentīre, -sēnsī, -sēnsūrus [con-sentio], 4. v. n., *think alike, agree, make common cause*.

cōsequor, -sequi, -secutus [con-sequor], 3. v. dep., *follow, pursue, overtake; obtain, join, attain, succeed in.*

cōservō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [con-servo], 1. v. a., *save, spare, protect; observe, respect, maintain.*

Cōsidius, -i, M., P. *Cōsidius*, one of Caesar's officers.

cōsīdō, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessurus [con-sido, sit], 3. v. n., *sit down; halt, encamp, take position, settle.*

cōsīlium, -ī [cf. consulo], N., *consultation, deliberation, council of war; advice, counsel; plan, purpose, design; prudence, discretion.*

cōsimilis, -e [con-similis], adj., *very like, just like, quite like.*

cōsistō, -sistere, -stīti, no p. p. [con-sisto, take one's stand], 3. v. n., *take a position, post one's self, halt, stop; remain, stay; (of ships) run aground, depend on, consist of.*

cōsōbrīnus, -ī [con-soror, sister], M., *(son of a mother's sister), cousin (often used of any first cousin).*

cōsōlor, -ārī, -ātus [con-solor, comfort], 1. v. dep., *cheer, comfort, console.*

cōspectus, -a, -um, p. p. of conspicio.

cōspectus, -tūs [conspicio], M., *sight; presence.*

cōspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectus [con-specio, look at], 3. v. a., *espy, perceive, see, behold, observe.*

cōspicor, -ārī, -ātus [con-specio, see, look at], 1. v. dep., *catch sight of, espy, descry, behold.*

cōspirō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [con-spiro, breathe], 1. v. n., *agree, conspire, plot or league together.*

cōstanter [constans, pres. p. of consto], adv., *steadily, uniformly, consistently, resolutely, firmly, constantly.*

cōstantia, -ae [constans, pres. p. of consto], F., *firmness, courage, resolution, steadiness, perseverance.*

cōsternō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [con-sterno, throw to the ground], 1. v. a., *overwhelm, alarm, dismay, frighten.*

cōsternō, -sternere, -strāvī, -strātus [con-sterno, strew], 3. v. a., *strew over, cover; (of ships) deck.*

cōnstipō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [con-stipo, press], 1. v. a., *crowd, cram, crowd together.*

cōstituō, -stituire, -stitūī, -stitūtus [con-statuo], 3. v. a. and n., *set up, establish, place, station, draw up; stop, moor (ships); determine, fix, settle, resolve, decide; offer (rewards).*

cōnstō, -stāre, -stīti, -stāturus [consto], 1. v. n., *stand together; agree (of accounts); be established, agreed upon, evident, certain; cost; depend on.*

cōnstrātus, -a, -um, p. p. of consterno.

cōnsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētus [con-suesco, get accustomed], 3. v. n., *become accustomed; in perf. tenses, be accustomed, used, wont; consuetus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., accustomed, used, wont.*

cōnsuētūdō, -inis [cf. consuesco], F., *habit, custom; manners, practice.*

cōnsuētus, -a, -um, p. p. of consuesco.

cōnsul, -ulis, M., *consul*. The chief magistrates at Rome were two consuls, elected annually. In the ablative absolute, with proper names, *in the consulship of*, etc., the usual way of expressing dates.

cōnsulātus, -tūs [consul], M., *consulship.*

cōsulō, -sulere, -sulūī, -sultus, 3. v. a. and n., *consult, take advice of; deliberate, take counsel; look out for, have regard for (the interests of some one).*

cōnsultō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [freq. of consulto], 1. v. n., *consult, deliberate, reflect, consider, take measures.*

cōsultō [abl. of p. p. *consultus*, fr. *consulo*], adv., *deliberately, purposely, intentionally, designedly*.
cōsultum, -i [p. p. *consultus*, fr. *consulo*], N., *a decision* (after deliberation), *resolution, decree, order*.
cōnsūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsī, -sūmp-tus [con-sumo], 3. v. a., *take, consume, devour, waste, exhaust, use up, destroy*.
cōnsūptus, -a, -um, p. p. of *con-sumo*.
cōnsurgō, -surgere, -surrēxī, -sur-rēctus [con-surgo, rise], 3. v. n., *rise (together), rise, stand up*.
contabulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [con-tabulo; tabula, a board], 1. v. a., *build of boards, build with floors, or in stories, floor over* (with boards).
contāgiō, -ōnis [con-tango], F., *touch, contact; esp., contagion*.
contāminō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [con-(tagmen) tango], 1. v. a., *bring into contact, mix; contaminate, defile, pollute; implicate* (in guilt).
contegō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctus [con-tego], 3. v. a., *cover up*.
contemno, -temnere, -temp-sī, -temptus [con-temno, scorn], 3. v. a., *despise, scorn, have contempt for*.
contemptiō, -ōnis [contemno], F., *scorn, slighting, despising, contempt*.
contemptus, -tūs [contemno], M., *scorn, contempt; contemptui esse, be an object of scorn, be despised*.
contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentus [con-tendo], 3. v. n., *strain, strive, struggle, exert one's self, make effort; press on, hasten, push forward; fight, contend; maintain, insist*.
contentiō, -ōnis [contendo], F., *effort, struggle; contest, dispute, controversy, fight*.
contentus, -a, -um, p. p. of *con-tendo*.
contentus, -a, -um, p. p. of *con-tineo*.

contexō, -texere, -texuī, -textus [con-texo, weave], 3. v. a., *weave together, interweave, join; weave*.
continēns, pres. p. of *contineo*.
continenter [continens], adv., *without interruption, continuously, continually, constantly*.
continentia, -ae [continens], F., *(holding together), self-restraint, moderation, temperance*.
contineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus [con-teneo], 2. v. a., *hold together, hold in, restrain, hold in check; hem in, bound, border, include; hold on to; continēns, -entis*, pres. p. as adj., *continual, continuous, contiguous; self-restrained, moderate; as noun, the mainland, continent; contentus, -a, -um*, p. p. as adj., *satisfied, contented*.
contingō, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctus [con-tango], 3. v. a. and n., *touch, reach, extend to, join; happen, befall*.
continuātiō, -ōnis [continuo], F., *continuation, (unbroken) succession*.
continuo [continuus], adv., *immediately, forthwith, straightway, directly*.
continuus, -a, -um [contineo], adj., *uninterrupted, continuous, successive*.
cōntiō, -ōnis [prob. *conventio*], F., *an assembly, meeting; an address, harangue, speech to an assembly or a crowd of soldiers*.
contrā, adv. and prep. w. acc., *opposite, over against, against, contrary to, in spite of, in reply to; differently, on the other hand; contrā atque, otherwise than*.
contrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus [con-traho], 3. v. a., *bring or draw together, gather, collect; araw in, narrow, make smaller*.
contrārius, -a, -um [cf. *contra*], adj., *opposite, opposed to, contrary; ex contrāriō, on the contrary*.
contrōversia, -ae [controversus, turned against], F., *dispute, quarrel, debate*.

contumēlia, -ae, F., *insult, abuse, outrage, indignity, affront; violence.*

convalēscō, -valēscere, -valuī, no p. p. [con-valeo], 3. v. n., *get well or strong, recover.*

convallis, -is [con-vallis], F., *valley, ravine, defile.*

convectus, -a, -um, p. p. of con-veho.

convehō, -vehere, -vēxi, -vectus [con-veho], 3. v. a., *bring together, collect.*

conveniō, -venīre, -venī, -ventus [con-venio], 4. v. a. and n., *come together, assemble, meet, fall in with; be agreed upon; be suitable, becoming, fit.*

conventus, -tūs [convenio], M., *meeting, assembly; court, assizes.*

conversus, -a, -um, p. p. of converto.

convertō, -vertere, -verti, -versus [con-verto], 3. v. a., *turn around, turn about, turn, change; face about (with signa), change front, wheel.*

Convictolitavis, -is, M., a prominent young Haeduan noble.

convictus, -a, -um, p. p. of convinco.

convincō, -vincere, -vici, -victus [con-vinco], 3. v. a., *(conquer completely), confute, convict, establish (a charge), prove, show clearly.*

convocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [convoco], 1. v. a., *call together, summon.*

coōrior, -oriri, -ortus [con-orior], 3. v. dep., *arise, spring up, break out.*

coōrtus, -a, -um, p. p. of coōrior.

cōpia, -ae [co(con)-ops], F., *plenty, abundance, supply, quantity; plur., means, resources, supplies, forces; cōpiam facere, give an opportunity.*

cōpiōsus, -a, -um [copia], adj., *abundant, plentiful, wealthy.*

cōpula, -ae, F., *(connecting bond or band), grappling hook, grapple.*

cor, cordis, N., *the heart; cordi esse, be dear, desired, agreeable.*

cōram, adv. and prep. with abl., *face to face, in person; in the presence of; coram perspicere, to see with one's own eyes.*

Coriosolites, -tum, M. plur., a tribe on the coast of N. W. Gaul, whose name survives in *Corseult*.

corium, -i, N., *hide, skin, leather.*

cornū, -ūs, N., *a horn; trumpet; fig., a wing of an army.*

corōna, -ae, F., *garland, wreath, crown, circle or line of soldiers, spectators, etc.; sub corōnā vendere, to sell at auction, sell into slavery.*

corpus, -oris, N., *body, person; a dead body; tōtum corpus, the whole line (of works).*

corrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptus [con-rumpo, break], 3. v. a., *spoil, ruin, destroy.*

cortex, -icis, M. and F., *bark (of a tree).*

Cōrus (or Caurus), -i, M., *the N. W. wind.*

cotidiānus (quo-), -a, -um [cotidie], adj., *daily, every-day, usual.*

cotidiē [quot-dies], adv., *every day, daily.*

Cotta, -ae, M., *L. Aurunculeius Cotta*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Cotuātus, -i, M., a chief of the Carnutes.

Cotus, -i, M., a young Haeduan chief, rival of Convictolitavis.

crassitūdō, -inis [crassus, fat, thick], F., *thickness.*

Crassus, -i [crassus, fat], M., (1) *M. Licinius Crassus*, consul in 55 B. C., with Pompey, member of the First Triumvirate; (2) *P. Crassus* (called *adulescens*), son of No. (1), a lieutenant of Caesar; (3) *M. Crassus*, another son of No. (1), quaestor of Caesar in 54 B. C.

crātēs, -is, F., *wickerwork, hurdle, fascine, fagot.*

crēber, -bra, -brum, adj., *thick, close, numerous, frequent.*

crēbrō [creber], adv., *frequently, in quick succession, often, constantly, at short intervals.*

crēdō, crēdere, crēdidi, crēditus, 3. v. a. and n., *trust, entrust, believe, think, suppose.*

cremō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1. v. a., *burn, consume by fire.*

creō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1. v. a., *create, make, appoint, elect, choose.*

Crēs, Crētis (Greek), M., *a Cretan, inhabitant of the island of Crete.*

crēscō, crēscere, crēvi, crētus [cf. creō], 3. v. n., *grow, increase, become strong or influential; (of a river) swell.*

Critōgnātus, -i, M., *an Arvernian chief.*

cruciātus, -tūs [crucio, torture], M., *torture, torment; cruelty; suffering.*

crūdēlītās, -tātis [crudelis, cruel], F., *cruelty.*

crūdēlīter [crudelis, cruel], adv., *cruelly.*

crūs, crūris, N., *a leg, esp. the leg below the knee.*

cubile, -is [cf. cumbo, lie], N., *bed, couch, resting-place, lair of a wild beast.*

culmen, -inis, N., *height, top, summit, roof.*

culpa, -ae, F., *blame, fault, guilt.*

cultūra, -ae [colo], F., *cultivation, tilling.*

cultus, -tūs [colo], M., *cultivation, care; manner of life, civilization, culture, dress; worship (of the gods).*

cum [same as con-, com-], prep. with abl., *with, in the company of, together with*; with personal pronouns and the relative qui, cum is an enclitic—e. g., sēcum, vōbiscum, quibuscum; com-, con-, etc., used in composition as a prefix.

cum (quom, quum), conj., *when, while, whenever; when, while, since, because, inasmuch as;*

though, although; cum . . . tum, both . . . and, not only . . . but also, while . . . yet also; cum primum, as soon as.

cunctātiō, -ōnis [cunctor], F., *hesitation, delay, reluctance.*

cunctor, -ārī, -ātus, 1. v. dep., *delay, linger, hesitate.*

cūnctus, -a, -um [co(n)iunctus], adj., *all, all together, all in a body, entire.*

cuneātim [cuneatus, fr. cuneus], *in wedge form, in a solid column of attack, in a mass.*

cuneus, -i, M., *wedge; troops formed in a wedge-shaped mass, column.*

cuniculus, -i, M., *a cony or rabbit; a burrow, mine, tunnel.*

cupidē [cupidus], adv., *eagerly, earnestly, zealously.*

cupidītās, -tātis [cupidus], F., *desire, longing, wish, eagerness, greed, zeal.*

cupidus, -a, -um [cupio], adj., *eager for, desirous, fond of, ambitious for.*

cupiō, -pere, -pīvi, -pītus, 3. (and 4.) v. a. and n., *covet, desire, be eager for, be anxious for, long for; cupiēns, -entis, pres. p. as adj., impatient.*

cūr (quor), adv., *why (relative); why? wherefore?*

cūra, -ae, F., *care, attention, anxiety, trouble.*

cūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [cura], 1. v. a. and n., *care for, attend to, provide for; with a gerundive, cause to be done, have done.*

currus, -ūs [curro, run], M., *chariot.*

cursus, -sūs [curro, run], M., *running, speed; a run, a course.*

custōdiā, -ae [custōs], F., *guard, custody, watch; plur., guards, keepers.*

custōdiō, -īre, -īvi, -ītus [custōs], 4. v. a., *guard, watch, keep guard over.*

custōs, -tōdis, M. and F., *a guard, guardian, keeper, custodian, watchman.*

D

D [half of CIO = M (1000)], quingenti, 500.

D., for Decimus.

Dăcus, -a, -um, adj., *Dacian*; M. plur., *the Dacians*, living in what is now the S. E. part of the Austro-Hungarian empire.

damnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, I. v. a., *condemn, find guilty, sentence.*

damnum, -i, N., *loss.*

Dănuvius, -i, M., *the Danube.*

datus, -a, -um, p. p. of do.

dē, adv. in composition and prep. with abl., *from, down from, away from, of, out of, proceeding from, from among; for, on account of; concerning, in regard to, about, in respect to; after, just after, during, in the course of, about.*

dēbeō, -bēre, -buī, -bitus [de-habeo], 2. v. a., *owe*; with the infinitive, *ought, must*; pass., *be due, be owed.*

dēcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessurus [de-cedo], 3. v. n., *retire, withdraw, retreat, depart; shun, avoid; depart (this life), die.*

decem (X), indecl. num. adj., *ten.*

dēceptus, -a, -um, p. p. of decipio.

dēcernō, -cernere, -crēvi, -crētus [de-cerno], 3. v. a. and n., *decide, give judgment, decree, resolve, determine; fight, contend.*

dēcērtō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [de-certo, fight], I. v. a. and n., *fight out, decide (an issue), fight a decisive (battle).*

dēcēssus, -sūs [decedo], M., *a withdrawal, departure, ebb (of the tide).*

Decetia, -ae, F., a town of the Haedui, on the Loire, now *Decise.*

dēcīdō, -cidere, -cidī, no p. p. [de-cado], 3. v. n., *fall down, fall off.*

decimus, -a, -um [decem], adj., *tenth.*

Decimus, -i, M., a Roman praenomen.

dēcīpiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus [de-capio], 3. v. a., *take (in), catch, entrap, deceive.*

dēclārō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [de-claro, make plain], *make plain, state, declare, announce.*

dēclivis, -e [de-clivus], adj., *sloping down, down-hill, descending.*

dēclivitās, -tātis, F., *a slope (downward), descent.*

dēcētum, -i [p. p. of decerno, as noun], N., *decision, vote, resolution, decree.*

dēcētus, -a, -um, p. p. of dēcernō.

decumānus, -a, -um [cf. decimus], adj. (*belonging to the tenth*), *decuman*, the name of the rear gate of a Roman camp, on the side away from the enemy; originally the tenth cohorts were located near this gate.

decuriō, -ōnis [decem], M., a commander of a decuria, or squad of ten horsemen, *a decurion.*

dēcūrrō, -currere, -currī (-cucurrī), -cursurus [de-curro], 3. v. n., *run down, hasten down.*

dēdecus, -oris [de-decus, honor], N., *dishonor, disgrace, shame.*

dēditicius, -a, -um [dedo], adj., *surrendered, subject*; plur. M., as noun, *subjects, prisoners, captives.*

dēditio, -ōnis [dedo], F., *surrender.*

dēditus, -a, -um, p. p. of dedo.

dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditus [dedo], 3. v. a., *give up, give over, surrender, devote*; with sē, *surrender, submit.*

dēdūcō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductus [deduco], 3. v. a., *lead down, away, or off, withdraw, remove; conduct, lead, induce; launch (ships), bring home (a bride), marry.*

dēductus, -a, -um, p. p. of deduco.

dēfatigatiō, -ōnis [defatigo], F., *weariness, exhaustion.*

dēfatigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [defatigo, weary], I. v. a., *wear out, tire out, exhaust.*

dēfectiō, -ōnis [deficio], F., *failing, falling off, desertion; defection, revolt, rebellion.*

dēfendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsus [de-fendo, strike], 3. v. a., *ward off, repel, defend one's self from, guard, protect.*

dēfēnsiō, -ōnis [defendo], F., *defense, protection*.

dēfēnsor, -ōris [defendo], M., *a defender, champion, protector*.

dēfēnsus, -a, -um, p. p. of *defendo*.

dēferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus [defero], irr. v. a., *bring down, carry away; bring or carry to; confer, bestow, hand over, report, announce; pass., (of ships) be borne or carried, drift*.

dēfessus, -a, -um, p. p. of *defetiscor*.

dēfetiscor (-fat-), -fetiscī, -fessus [de-fatiscor, gape], 3. v. dep., *(crack open), become weary, exhausted*.

dēficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [defacio], 3. v. a. and n., *fail, fall away, be lacking; revolt, desert; animō dēficere, become discouraged, lose heart*.

dēfigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixus [de-figo, fix], 3. v. a., *drive down, fix, fasten, plant*.

dēfiniō, -ire, -ivī, -itus [de-finio], 4. v. a., *set bounds or limits to, fix, set, appoint, determine; restrict*.

dēfixus, -a, -um, p. p. of *defigo*.

dēfluō, -fluere, -fluxī, -fluxūrus [de-fluo], 3. v. n., *flow down, flow*.

dēfore; see *desum*.

dēformis, -e [de-forma], adj., *unshapely, ill-shaped; ugly, unsightly*.

dēfugiō, -fugere, -fūgi, no p. p. [de-fugio], 3. v. a. and n., *flee from, avoid, shun*.

dēiciō (dēiiciō), -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [de-iacio], 3. v. a., *throw down, cast down, drive off, dislodge, rout, destroy, kill; cast ashore; deprive, disappoint*.

dēiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of *deicio*.

dēiectus, -tūs [deicio], M., *descent, slope (down), declivity*.

dēinceps [dein = deinde-ceps (cap), same as the root of capio], adv., *in succession, next in order*.

dēinde (dein) [de-inde], adv., *then, next, after that*.

dēlātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *defero*.

dēlectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [intens. of *delicio, allure*], I. v. a., *please, charm, delight*.

dēlectus, -a, -um, p. p. of *deligo*.

dēlēō, -lēre, -lēvi, -lētus, 2. v. a., *blot out, wipe out; destroy, annihilate*.

dēlētus, -a, -um, p. p. of *deleo*.

dēliberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [de-libra, a balance], I. v. a. and n., *weigh, balance (in the mind), consider, discuss, consult*.

dēlibrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [de-liber, bark of a tree], I. v. a., *peel, strip (of bark)*.

dēlictum, -I [delinquo, fail (in one's duty)], N., *failure, fault, offense, crime*.

dēligō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [deligo, bind], I. v. a., *bind fast, tie, fasten, moor (vessels)*.

dēligō, -ligere, -lēgi, -lēctus [de-lego], 3. v. a., *choose (out of a number), select, levy (troops), detail*.

dēlitēscō, -litēscere, -litui, no p. p. [de-latesco, cf. lateo], *hide, conceal one's self, lie hidden*.

dēmentia, -ae [de-mens], F., *folly, madness*.

dēmessus, -a, -um, p. p. of *de-meto*.

dēmetō, -metere, -messui, -messus [de-meto], 3. v. a., *reap, cut down (grain)*.

dēmigrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus [de-migro, migrate], I. v. n., *move away, change one's abode, depart*.

dēminuō, -uere, -ui, -ūtus [de-minuo], 3. v. a. and n., *lessen, make smaller, diminish, curtail, weaken, impair*.

dēminūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of *de-minuo*.

dēmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus [de-mitto], 3. v. a., *send down, let down, thrust down, bow (the head), lower; sē dēmittere, descend; sē animō dēmittere, lose heart; dēmissus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., low, low-lying*.

dēmō, dēmere, dēmpsi, dēmpsus [de-emo], 3. v. a., *take off, take away, take down, remove*.

dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [de-monstro], I. v. a., *point out, show, designate, name, mention, speak of, declare, explain.*

dēmōror, -āri, -ātus [de-moror], I. v. dep., *delay, hinder, detain, retard.*

dēmp̄tus, -a, -um, p. p. of demo.

dēmum, adv., *at length, at last, finally.*

dēnegō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [de-nego], I. v. a., *refuse, deny.*

dēnī, -ae, -a [decem], distrib. num. adj., *ten each, ten apiece, ten on each side, ten by ten.*

dēnique, adv., *at last, finally; at any rate, in short.*

dēns, dentis, M., *a tooth.*

dēnsus, -a, -um, adj., *thick, crowded, close, dense.*

dēnūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [de-nuntio], I. v. a., *announce, declare, threaten, warn, order.*

dēpellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsus [de-pello], 3. v. a., *drive off, drive away, drive out, dislodge, ward off, avert.*

dēperdō, -dere, -didit, -ditus [de-perdo], 3. v. a., *lose, forfeit.*

dēperō, -perire, -perii, -peritūrus [de-pereo], irr. v. n., *be lost, be ruined, perish, be destroyed.*

dēpōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positus [de-pono], 3. v. a., *put down, lay down, place, lay aside, give up, resign, abandon.*

dēpopulor, -āri, -ātus [de-populor], I. v. dep., *lay waste, ravage, plunder.*

dēportō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [de-porto], I. v. a., *carry off, carry away, remove.*

dēposcō, -poscere, -poposci, no p. p. [de-posco], 3. v. a., *demand (earnestly), claim, call for, require.*

dēpositus, -a, -um, p. p. of depono.

dēprecātor, -ōris [de-precor], M., *intercessor, mediator.*

dēprecor, -āri, -ātus [de-precor], I. v. dep., *pray to avert or be delivered from, beg, beg off, ask quarter, beg pardon; beseech, implore, intercede.*

dēprehendō, -hendere, -hendi, -hēnsus [de-prehendo (prendo)], 3. v. a., *seize, catch, capture; surprise, find, come upon.*

dēprehēnsus, -a, -um, p. p. of de-prehendo.

dēpūgnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [de-pugno], I. v. n. and a., *fight (fiercely or decisively), fight it out.*

dēpulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of depello.

dērēctē (dī-), adv., *straight, directly; perpendicularly.*

dērēctus (dī-), -a, -um, p. p. of dē-rigo.

dērigō (dī-), -rigere, -rēxi, -rectus (de-rego), 3. v. a., *straighten, lay straight, form, draw up, arrange; dērēctus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., straight, esp. straight up and down, vertical, perpendicular.*

dērivō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [de-rivus], I. v. a., *draw off (water), turn aside (a stream).*

dērogō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [de-rogo], I. v. a., *(repeal part of a law); diminish, take away, withdraw.*

dēscendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scēnsūrus [de-scando], 3. v. n., *(climb down), come down, go down, descend; resort to, have recourse to.*

dēsēcō, -secāre, -secul, -sectus [de-seco], I. v. a., *cut off.*

dēsērō, -serere, -serui, -sertus [de-sero, join], 3. v. a., *abandon, leave, quit, desert, forsake; dēsertus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., solitary, uninhabited, deserted.*

dēsertor, -ōris [de-sero], M., *deserter, runaway.*

dēsertus, -a, -um, p. p. of desero.

dēsīdērō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, I. v. a., *miss, feel the want of, desire, need, lack, lose; pass., be missing.*

dēsīdia, -ae [deses, -idis, idle], F., *sloth, idleness.*

dēsīgnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [de-signo], I. v. a., *mark out, point out, indicate, mean.*

dēsīliō, -silire, -silui, -sultus [de-salio, leap], 4. v. n., *leap down, jump down; jump overboard (from a ship), jump off, dismount (from a horse).*

- dēsistō**, -sistere, -stiti, -stiturus [de-sisto], 3. v. n., *stand off, cease, leave off, stop, give up, abandon*.
- dēspectus**, -a, -um, p. p. of **despicio**.
- dēspectus**, -tūs [despicio], M., *a look down, a view (from a height)*.
- dēsperātiō**, -ōnis [cf. **despero**], *hopelessness, despair*.
- dēsperō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [de-spero, cf. **spes**], 1. v. n., *give up hope, cease to hope, despair*; **dēsperātus**, -a, -um, p. p. as if transitive, *despaired of*; as adj., *hopeless, desperate*.
- dēspiciō**, -spicere, -spēxi, -spectus [de-specio], 3. v. a. and n., *look down upon, despise*.
- dēspoliō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [dēspolio], 1. v. a., *strip off, strip, rob, plunder*.
- dēstinō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1. v. a., *make fast, bind; determine, purpose, appoint, delay*.
- dēstituō**, -tuere, -tul, -tūtus [de-statuo], 3. v. a., *(set aside), abandon, desert, forsake*.
- dēstitūtus**, -a, -um, p. p. of **destituo**.
- dēstrictus**, -a, -um, p. p. of **destringo**.
- dēstringō**, -stringere, -strinxī, -strictus [de-stringo, draw], 3. v. a., *unsheathe, draw*.
- dēsum**, -esse, -fui, futurus [de-sum], irr. v. n., *(be away), be wanting, be lacking, fail*.
- dēsuper** [de-super], adv., *from above*.
- dēterior**, -ius [compar. of **deter** (not used)], adj., *worse, poorer, inferior*.
- dēterreō**, -terrere, -terrui, -territus [de-terreo], 2. v. a., *frighten off, prevent* (esp. by threats), *deter*.
- dētestor**, -ārī, -ātus [de-testor], 1. v. dep., *(call the gods to witness in order to prevent something), curse*.
- dētineō**, -tinere, -tinui, -tentus [de-teneo], 2. v. a., *hold off, keep back, restrain, detain, delay, stop*.
- dētrāctus**, -a, -um, p. p. of **detraho**.
- dētrahō**, -trahere, -trāxi, -trāctus [de-traho], 3. v. a., *draw off, drag off, snatch; take off, take away, withdraw*.
- dētrectō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [de-tracto, handle], 1. v. a., *avoid, shun, decline, refuse*.
- dētrimentōsus**, -a, -um [detrimētum], adj., *harmful, hurtful*.
- dētrimentum**, -i [detero, rub away], M., *loss, injury; repulse, reverse, defeat*.
- dēturbō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [de-turbo, disturb], 1. v. a., *thrust away or down, dislodge, drive off*.
- deūrō**, -ūrere, -ussī, -ūstus [de-uro], 3. v. a., *burn up*.
- deus**, -ī, M., *a god*.
- deūstus**, -a, -um, p. p. of **deūro**.
- dēvehō**, -vehere, -vexī, -vectus (-vexus) [de-veho], 3. v. a., *carry away, remove; bring, convey (to a place)*;
- dēvexus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *sloping*; as noun, N. plur., *slopes, hillsides*.
- dēveniō**, -venire, -vēnī, -ventūrus [de-venio], 4. v. n., *come down, reach, land* (off the sea), *come*.
- dēvexus**, -a, -um, p. p. of **deveho**.
- dēvictus**, -a, -um, p. p. of **devinco**.
- dēvincō**, -vincere, -vīcī, -victus [de-vinco], 3. v. a., *conquer* (thoroughly), *subdue*.
- dēvocō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [de-voco], 1. v. a., *call away*; in **dubium dēvocāre**, *risk, hazard*.
- dēvōtus**, -a, -um, p. p. of **devoveo**.
- dēvoveō**, -vovēre, -vōvī, -vōtus [devoveo], 2. v. a., *vow* (away), *devote, consecrate*.
- dexter**, -tera (-tra), -terum (-trum), adj., *right, on the right hand*.
- dextra**, F. (sc. manus), *the right hand* (esp. as a pledge of good faith).
- Diablintes**, -um, M. plur., *a branch of the Aulerci, in Armorica*.
- diciō**, -ōnis, F., *power, dominion, sovereignty, sway*.
- dicō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1. v. a., *dedicate, devote, offer, surrender, make over, attach, assign*.

dicō, *dicere*, *dixī*, *dictus*, 3. v. a., *say, speak, tell; name, appoint; plead* (a cause); *fix, set* (a day); *administer* (justice, i. e., declare the law).

dictiō, -ōnis [*dico*], F., *speaking, pleading* (of a cause).

dictum, -ī [p. p. of *dico*], N., *something said, statement, remark, order, command; dictō audiēns*, *obedient*.

diducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductus [*dis-duco*], 3. v. a., *draw apart, lead apart, separate, divide, distribute, disperse, scatter*.

diēs, -ēi, M. (rarely F.), *a day; time, date; in diēs*, *day by day, from day to day; diem ex diē*, *day after day; multō diē*, *late in the day*.

differō, *differre*, *distuli*, *dilātus* [*dis-fero*], irr. v. a. and n., *(carry apart), spread, scatter; put off, delay, defer, postpone*.

difficilis, -e [*dis-facilis*], adj., *hard, difficult, troublesome*.

difficultās, -tātis [*difficilis*], F., *difficulty, trouble*.

difficulus [*difficilis*], adv., *with difficulty; compar., difficilius*, *with greater difficulty*.

diffidō, -fidere, -fīsus sum [*dis-fido*], 3. v. semi-dep., *distrust, mistrust, lack confidence in, despair of*.

diffusus, -a, -um, p. p. of *diffido*.

diffundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fusus [*dis-fundo*], 3. v. a., *(pour forth); spread out*.

digitus, -ī, M., *a finger; with pollex*, *thumb*.

dignitās, -tātis [*dignus*], F., *worth, worthiness, merit; position, rank, prestige, respect*.

dignus, -a, -um, adj., *worthy, worth, deserving, suitable*.

diiudicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [*dis-iudico*], 1. v. a., *decide* (between two parties).

dilēctus, -ā, -um, p. p. of *diligo*.

dilēctus (del-), -tūs (deligo), M., *choice, selection; levy, conscription* (of troops).

diligenter [*diligens, careful*], adv., *carefully, with care, with pains, attentively*.

diligentia, -ae [*diligens, careful*], F., *care, pains, painstaking, punctuality, attention*.

diligō, -ligere, -lēxī, -lēctus [*dis-lego*], 3. v. a., *choose out, esteem, love, be fond of, prize*.

dimēsus, -a, -um, p. p. of *dimetior*, **dimētiōr**, -mētiri, -mēsus [*dis-metior*], 4. v. dep., *measure, measure off, lay out, survey*.

dimicātiō, -ōnis [*dimico*], F., *contest, fight*.

dimicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus [*dis-mico*, *brandish*], 1. v. n., *fight, decide by fighting, contend*.

dimidius, -a, -um [*dis-medius*], adj., *(divided in the middle), half; as noun, dimidium*, -ī, N., *half*.

dimittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus [*dis-mitto*], 3. v. a., *send away, let go away, let slip, let pass; dismiss, send off, send in different directions; abandon, give up; discharge, release*.

direptus, -a, -um, p. p. of *diripio*. **dirimō**, -imere, -ēmi, -ēptus [*dis-emo*], 3. v. a., *take apart, break up, break off, put an end to*.

diripiō, -ripere, -ripulī, -reptus [*dis-rapio, seize*], 3. v. a., *(snatch apart), seize, plunder, ravage, pillage*.

dis-, **di-** (*dir-*, *dis-*), inseparable prep. or adv., used only in comp., as a prefix, *apart, asunder, in different directions; among, between; un-, not*.

Dis, **Ditis**, M., *Pluto*, god of the lower world.

discēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus [*dis-cedo*], 3. v. n., *go apart, disperse, depart, retire, leave, go away; forsake, fail*.

disceptātor, -ōris [*discepto, decide*], M., *arbitrator, umpire, judge*.

discernō, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētus [*dis-cerno*], 3. v. a., *distinguish, separate, know apart*.

discessus, -sūs [cf. *discedo*], M., *departure, withdrawal, going away*.

disciplina, -ae [discipulus, *pupil*], F., *instruction, system of doctrine, training*.

disclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus [dis-claudio], 3. v. a., *shut apart, keep apart, separate, divide*.

discō, discere, didici, discitūrus, 3. v. a. and n., *learn*.

discrimen, -inis [discerno], N., *separation, decision; a decisive moment, crisis, peril, danger*.

discussus, -a, -um, p. p. of discutio.

discutiō, -cutere, -cussī, -cussus [dis-quatio, *shake*], 3. v. a., *shake or strike apart, shatter, clear away, remove, dislodge*.

disiciō, -icere, -ieci, -iectus [dis-iacio], 3. v. a., *throw apart, drive asunder; scatter, disperse, rout, (of sail-yards) carry away*.

disiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of disicio.

dispār, -paris [dis-par], adj., *unequal, unlike, different, inferior*.

disparō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [dis-paro], 1. v. a., *separate, divide*.

dispergō, -spargere, -spersi, -spersus [dis-spargo, *scatter*], 3. v. a., *scatter, disperse*.

dispersus, -a, -um, p. p. of dispergo.

dispiciō, -spicere, -spexi, -spectus [dis-specio, *look at*], 3. v. a., *behold, discern, descry, perceive*.

dispōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positus [dis-pono], 3. v. a., *set at intervals or in various places, distribute, post, station*.

dispositus, -a, -um, p. p. of dispono.

disputātiō, -ōnis [disputo], F., *discussion, debate, dispute*.

disputō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [dis-puto], 1. v. n. and a., *debate, argue; treat, discuss, investigate*.

dissensiō, -ōnis [dissentio], F., *difference of opinion, disagreement*.

dissentiō, -sentire, -sēnsi, -sēnsurus [dis-sentio], 4. v. n., *think or feel differently, differ in opinion, disagree*.

disserō, -ere [dis-sero], 3. v. a., *plant here and there, plant at intervals*.

dissimulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [dis-simulo], 1. v. a. and n., *pretend (that something is not so), conceal (something which is), disguise, dissemble*.

dissipō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1. v. a., *scatter, disperse*.

dissuādēō, -suādēre, suāsi, -suāsus [dis-suadeo], 2. v. a., *advise against, persuade not to do something, oppose*.

distineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentus [dis-teneo], 2. v. a., *keep apart, hold apart, separate; cut off; hinder, prevent, detain*.

distō, -stāre [dis-sto], 1. v. n., *stand apart, be distant*.

distrāhō, -trahere, -trāxi, -trāctus [dis-traho], 3. v. a., *drag apart, pull asunder, separate*.

distribuō, -buere, -bui, -būtus [distribuō], 3. v. a., *divide, apportion, assign, distribute*.

ditissimus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of dives.

diū [cf. dies], adv., *long, for a long time; quam diū, as long as*.

diurnus, -a, -um [cf. dies], adj., *of the day, in the daytime, by day*.

diūtinus, -a, -um [diu], adj., *long, long-continued, lasting*.

diūtissimē, adv., superl. of diu.

diūtius, adv., compar. of diu.

diūturnitās, -tātis [diuturnus], F., *long continuance, long duration, length of time*.

diūturnus, -a, -um [diu], adj., *long, lasting, long-continued*.

diversus, -a, -um, p. p. of divertō.

divertō, -vertere, -verti, -versus [dis-vertō], 3. v. a. and n., *turn aside, separate; go apart; diversus*, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *separate, different, opposite, distant*.

dives, -itis, adj., *rich*.

Dīviciācus, -i, M., (1) a leading man among the Haedui, brother of Dumnorix; (2) a chief of the Suessiones.

Dīvicō, -ōnis, M., leader of the Helvetii in the war against Cassius.

dividō, -videre, -visi, -visus, 3. v. a., *separate, divide.*

divinus, -a, -um [divus, divine], adj., *of the gods, divine, sacred, religious.*

dō, dāre, dedī, datus, irr. v. a., 1. *give, give up, grant, offer, allow; in fugam dare, put to flight; manūs dare, surrender, submit; operam dare, take pains; 2. in compounds, place, put.*

doceō, docēre, docuī, doctus, 2. v. a., *teach, inform; declare, show, tell.*
documentum, -i [doceo], N., (*means of showing*), *evidence, proof; warning, example.*

doleō, dolēre, dolui, dolitūrus, 2. v. n., *suffer, be grieved.*

dolor, -ōris [doleo], M., *pain, grief, sorrow, trouble, suffering, distress, indignation, resentment, annoyance, mortification.*

dolus, -i, M., *guile, deceit, artifice, stratagem, cunning.*

domesticus, -a, -um [cf. domus], adj., *of the home, of one's own house or household, internal, native, one's own, civil (war).*

domicilium, -i [domus], N., *home, abode, dwelling, residence, habitation.*

dominor, -ārī, -ātus [dominus], 1. v. dep., *be master, bear rule.*

dominus, -i, M., *lord, master, owner.*

Domitius, -i, M., *L. Domitius Ahenobarbus*, consul in 54 B. C.

domus, -i (-ūs), F., *house, home; domi*, locat., *at home; domum*, acc., *home (homeward); domō*, *from home.*

Domnotaurus, -i, C. *Valerius Domnotaurus*, a leader of the Helvii; see *Caburus*.

dōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [donum], 1. v. a., *give, bestow, grant, present (a gift); also present (a person with a gift).*

dōnum, -i [do], N., *gift, present.*

dorsum (-us), -i, N., *the back; a long ridge like an animal's back, the ridge or brow of a hill, or mountain.*

dōs, dōtis [do], F., *dowry, dower, marriage portion.*

Druides, -um, M., *Druids*, the priestly order in Gaul and Britain.
Dubis, -is, M., a river of Gaul, tributary of the Saône (Arar), now the *Doubs*.

dubitātiō, -ōnis [dubito], F., *doubt, hesitation, uncertainty.*

dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [dubius], 1. v. n., *doubt, be uncertain; hesitate.*

dubius, -a, -um, adj., *uncertain, doubtful.*

ducenti, -ae, -a [duo-centum], num. adj., *two hundred.*

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, 3. v. a., *lead, guide, conduct, draw (living things); lead, march (with object omitted); make (a trench or wall, which is drawn out in a long line); prolong, draw out, put off; consider, reckon, think; marry (a wife).*

ductus, -a, -um, p. p. of *duco*.

ductus, -tūs [cf. duco], M., *leading, leadership, command.*

dum, conj., *while, so long as; till, until.*

Dumnorix, -Igis, M., a leading man of the Haedui, brother of Diviciacus.

duo, -ae, -o, num. adj., *two.*

duodecim [duo-decem], indecl. num. adj., *twelve.*

duodecimus, -a, -um [duodecim], num. adj., *twelfth.*

duodēni, -ae, -a [duodecim], num. adj., *twelve each, twelve at a time.*

duodēviginti [duo-de-viginti], *twenty*, indecl. num. adj., *eighteen.*

duplex, -plicis [duo-plico, fold], adj., *twofold, double, in two lines.*

duplicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [duplex], 1. v. a., *double, make double.*

dūritia, -ae [durus], F., *hardness, hardship, hard living.*

dūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [durus], 1. v. a., *harden, toughen, make hardy.*

Dürocortorum, -i, N., chief town of the Remi, now *Rheims*.

dūrus, -a, -um, adj., *hard, severe, difficult.*

Dūrus, -i, M., *Q. Laberius Durus*, a tribune of the soldiers, killed in Britain.

dux, ducis [duco], M., *leader, guide; commander, general.*

E

ē; see **ex**.

eā [is], adv., *in that way, thus; on that side, there.*

Eburōnes, -ōnum, M. plur., a Belgian nation, north of the Treviri, of whom they were dependents.

Eburovices, -um, M. plur., a division of the *Aulerici*. The name appears in *Evreux*.

ēdiscō, -discere, -didici, no p. p. [ex-disco], 3. v. a., (*learn off*), *learn by heart, commit to memory.*

ēditus, -a, -um, p. p. of **edo**.

ēdō, -dere, -didi, -ditus [ex-do], 3. v. a., *put forth, give out, exhibit*; **ēditus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *elevated, high, raised, lofty.*

ēdoceō, -docere, -docui, -doctus [ex-doceo], 2. v. a., *teach, show forth, tell, inform, instruct.*

ēducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductus [ex-duco], 3. v. a., *lead out, lead forth, bring out, draw (a sword).*

ēductus, -a, -um, p. p. of **educō**.

effēminō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [cf. *femina*], 1. v. a., *make womanish, weaken, enfeeble, enervate.*

effercio (-farcio-), -fercīre, -fertus [ex-farcio], 4. v. a., *stuff out, stop up, fill in.*

effero, efferre, extuli, ēlātus [ex-fero], irr. v. a., *carry out, bring forth, carry away; spread abroad, publish; puff up, elate, lift up.*

efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [ex-facio], 3. v. a., *make out, bring about, accomplish, cause, produce, effect; make, render; construct, build.*

effodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossus [ex-fodio], 3. v. a., *dig out, gouge out.*

effossus, -a, -um, p. p. of **effodiō**.

effugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus [ex-fugio], 3. v. a., *escape, flee; shun, avoid.*

egēns, -ntis, pres. p. of **egeō**.

egeō, egēre, egui, no p. p., 2. v. n., *want, need, lack, be in want, be destitute*; **egēns**, -entis, pres. p. as adj., *needy, destitute, poor.*

egestās, -tātis [egens], F., *distinction, want, poverty.*

ego, mei, personal pron., *I*; plur., **nōs**, nostrum, *we.*

egomet, **nōsmet** [ego-met, enclitic suffix], personal pron., *I myself, we ourselves.*

ēgredior, -gredi, -gressus [ex-gradior, step], 3. v. dep., *go out, go forth, leave, depart, march out, evacuate*; (from ships) *land, disembark.*

ēgregiē [egregius], adv., *admirably, remarkably, finely.*

ēgregius, -a, -um [e grege, out of the herd], adj., *remarkable, eminent, fine, admirable, distinguished, excellent, uncommon.*

ēgressus, -a, -um, p. p. of **ēgredior**.

ēgressus, -sūs [egredior], M., *going out; landing, disembarking.*

ēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [ex-iacio], 3. v. a., *cast out, throw out, drive out; cast up (on shore); sē ēicere, rush forth, sally out.*

ēiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of **ēiciō**.

ēiusmodi [eius modi], adj. phrase, *of this kind, of that kind, such.*

ēlābor, -lābi, -lāpsus [ex-labor], 3. v. dep., *slip out, slip away, escape.*

ēlāpsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **ēlābor**.

ēlātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **ēfferō**.

Elaver, -veris, N., the *Allier*, a tributary of the Loire.

ēlēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **eligo**.

elephantus, -i [Greek], M., *elephant.*

Eleuteti, -ōrum, M. plur., a tribe in Aquitania.

ēliciō, -licere, -licui, -licitus [ex-lacio], 3. v. a., *entice (out or forth), draw out, bring out.*

ēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctus [ex-lego], 3. v. a., *choose, select*; **ēlēctus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *chosen, picked.*

Elusātēs, -ium, M. plur., a nation in Aquitania, whose name appears in *Eause*.

ēmigrō, -āre, -āvī, -āturus [**ex-migro**], 1. v. n., *remove, emigrate*.
ēmineō, -ēre, -uī, no p. p. [**ex-mineo**, *project*], 2. v. n. *stand out, project*.

ēminus [**e manu**, *hand*], adv., *at a distance, from far off, at long range*.

ēmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus [**ex-mitto**], 3. v. a., *send out, send forth, let out, let go; throw, hurl, discharge; throw away*.

emō, *emere*, ēmi, ēmptus, 3. v. a., (*take, in compounds only*); *buy, purchase*.

ēnāscor, -nāsci, -nātus [**ex-nas-cor**], 3. v. dep., *spring out, shoot out, grow out*.

ēnātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *enas-cor*.

enim, conj., postpositive, *for, in fact, really*.

ēnūtiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**ex-nun-tio**], 1. v. a., *report, make known, tell, announce, reveal, disclose*.

eō, *ire*, ivi (ii), itūrus, irr. v. n., *go, march, proceed, pass*.

eō; see *is*.

eōdem [*idem*], adv., *to the same place, to the same purpose*.

ephippiātus, -a, -um [**ephippium**], adj., *saddled; riding on saddles*.

ephippium, -i [Greek], N., *saddle, housing*.

epistula (-tola), -ae [Greek], F., *a letter, note, written message, despatch*.

Eporēdorix, -Igis, M., the name of two chiefs of the Haedui.

epulum, -i, N. plur., *epulae*, -ārum, F., *feast, banquet*.

eques, -itis [*equus*], M., *horseman, rider, trooper, cavalryman; a knight, Roman or Gallic; a member of the order of knights*.

equester, -tris, -tre [*eques*], adj., *of cavalry*.

equitātus, -tūs [*eques*], M., *cavalry*.

equis, -i, M., *a horse*.

Eratosthenēs, -is [Greek], M., a Greek philosopher, born 276 B. C., died about 196 B. C., librarian at Alexandria, famous as a geographer and astronomer.

ērēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of *erigo*.

ēreptus, -a, -um, p. p. of *eripio*.

ergā, prep. with acc., *toward* (not of motion, but of feeling and behavior).

ergō, adv. or conj., *therefore, then*.

erigō, -rigere, -rēxi, -rēctus [**ex-rego**], 3. v. a., *set up straight, raise, lift, erect*; **ērēctus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *high, straight, upright*.

ēripiō, -ripere, -ripui, -reptus [**ex-rapio**], 3. v. a., *snatch away, take away, wrest; rescue, save*.

errō, -āre, -āvī, -āturus, 1. v. n., *wander, stray; be mistaken*.

ērumpō, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptus [**ex-rumpo**], 3. v. a. and n., *burst out, sally forth*.

ēruptiō, -ōnis [*cf. erumpo*], F., (*bursting forth*), *sally, sortie*.

essedā, -ae (-um, -i), F., or *essedum*, -i, N., *a war-chariot* (Gallic and British).

essedārius, -i [*essedā*], M., *one who fights from a chariot*.

Esuvii, -ōrum, M. plur., a nation of central Gaul, between the Seine and the Loire.

et, conj., *and*; **et . . . et**, *both . . . and*.

etiam [*et iam*], conj., *also, even, besides*; **quin etiam**, *nay more*; **nōn solum . . . sed etiam**, *not only . . . but also*.

etsi [*et si*], conj., *even if, though, although*.

ēvādō, -vādere, -vāsi, -vāsurus [**ex-vado**, *go*], 3. v. n., *escape*.

ēvellō, -vellere, -vellī (-vulsi), -vulus [**ex-vello**, *pluck*], 3. v. a., *pull out, pluck out*.

ēvenio, -venire, -vēni, -venturus [**ex-venio**], 4. v. n., *come out, result, turn out, happen*.

ēventus, -tus [*evenio*], M., *outcome, issue, result*.

ēvocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [**ex-voco**], I. v. a., *call out, call forth, summon, invite, challenge*; **ēvocātus**, -ī, p. p. as noun, M., *a veteran voluntarily reenlisted after his discharge from the army.*

ēvolō, -āre, -āvi, -atūrus [**ex-volo**, *fly*], I. v. n., *fly out, rush forth, dash out.*

ex [ē], adv. in comp. and prep. with abl., *out of, from; of, from among; of (made of); (time) from, since, after; (cause) from, by, by reason of, in consequence of, according to.*

exāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **exigo**.

exagitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [**ex-agito**, freq. of **ago**], I. v. a., *disturb, harass, persecute.*

exāminō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [**examen**, means of examining, tongue of a balance], I. v. a., *weigh.*

exanimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [**ex-anima**], I. v. a., *deprive of breath or of life, kill*; **exanimātus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *out of breath, exhausted.*

exārdescō, -ārdescere, -ārsi, no p. p. [**ex-ardesco**, incep. of **ardeo**], 3. v. n., *take fire; be incensed, enraged, excited.*

exaudiō, -īre, -īvi, -ītus [**ex-audio**], 4. v. a., *hear distinctly, hear (from a distance).*

excēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessurus, 3. v. n., *go out, go away, depart, leave, withdraw, retire.*

excellō, -cellere, -cellui, -celsus, 3. v. a. and n., *raise up, rise, surpass, excel*; **excelsus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *high, raised, lofty.*

excelsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **excello**. **exceptō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [**ex-capto**, freq. of **capiō**], I. v. a., *catch up, take up.*

exceptus, -a, -um, p. p. of **ex-cipio**.

excīdō, -cidere, -cidi, -cisus [**ex-caedo**], 3. v. a., *(cut out or off), cut down, break down, destroy.*

excipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus [**ex-capiō**], 3. v. a., *take out, take up, seize, take hold of, catch; follow,*

come after, come next, succeed; break (the force of a current).

excitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [**ex-cito**], I. v. a., *stir up, rouse, stimulate; raise, erect (buildings); kindle (fire).*

exclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsi, -clūsus [**ex-claudio**], 3. v. a., *shut out, cut off, prevent, hinder.*

exclūsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **ex-cludo**.

excōgitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [**ex-co-gito**], I. v. a., *think out, contrive, devise.*

excruciō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [**ex-crucio**, *torture*; **crux**, *a cross*], I. v. a., *torture, torment.*

excubitor, -tōris [cf. **excubo**], M., *sentinel.*

excubō, -cubāre, -cubui, -cubiturus [**ex-cubo**, *lie*], I. v. n., *lie outside (of the tent or the camp), keep watch (at night), stand guard.*

exculcō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [**ex-calco**, *tread*], I. v. a., *tread down, make firm by stamping.*

excursiō, -ōnis [**ex-curro**, *run*], F., *a running out, sally, sortie.*

excūsatiō, -ōnis [**excuso**], F., *apology, defense, excuse.*

excūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [**ex-causa**], I. v. a., *give as a reason, as an excuse; excuse, exculpate, defend.*

exemplum, -ī [**eximo**, *take out*], N., *a sample, specimen, instance, example, copy, precedent.*

exeō, -īre, -īvi (-īi), -ītus [**ex-eo**], irr. v. n., *go forth, go out, march out, depart, emigrate, remove.*

exerceō, -ercēre, -erui, -ercitus [**ex-arceo**, *restrain*], 2. v. a., *(keep at work), train, practise, discipline; pass, toil.*

exercitātiō, -ōnis [**exerceo**], F., *practice, training.*

exercitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [freq. of **exerceo**], I. v. a., *train; exercitātus*, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *trained, well trained.*

exercitus, -tūs [**exerceo**], M., *(training; a trained body of troops), an army.*

- exhauriō**, -haurire, -hausi, -haustus [ex-haurio, drink up], 4. v. a., *drain off; carry out, take out.*
- exigō**, -igere, -ēgi, -actus [ex-ago], 3. v. a., *drive out, lead out; (of time) pass, spend, finish, complete.*
- exiguē** [exiguus], adv., *scantily, barely, hardly.*
- exiguitās**, -tātis [exiguus], F., *scantiness, meagerness, smallness, fewness, shortness.*
- exiguus**, -a, -um [exigo], adj., *small, scanty, meager, narrow, little, slight, short.*
- eximius**, -a, -um [eximo, take out], adj., *exceptional, remarkable, excellent, uncommon, very high (opinion).*
- existimātiō**, -ōnis [existimo], F., *opinion, judgment, estimate; reputation.*
- existimō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ex-aestimo], 1. v. a., *reckon, think, believe, suppose, judge, consider.*
- exitus**, -tūs [cf. exeo], M., *a going out; passage; outcome, issue, end, result, event.*
- expediō**, -īre, -ivī, -ītus [ex-pes], 4. v. a., *(get the foot free), disentangle, disengage, set free; make ready, arrange; expeditus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., unencumbered, free, without baggage, in light marching order; (of a road) easy, practicable.*
- expeditiō**, -ōnis [cf. expedio], F., *getting ready, despatching; light-armed march; expedition, campaign.*
- expellō**, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsus [expello], 3. v. a., *drive out, drive away, dispel.*
- expetior**, -petiri, -pertus, *try, prove, test, await (an issue).*
- expertus**, -a, -um, p. p. of **expetior**.
- expiō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ex-pio, appease], 1. v. a., *atone for, expiate; make good, retrieve, make amends for.*
- expleō**, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētus [expleo, fill], 2. v. a., *fill up, fill full, complete, fill out.*
- explōrātor**, -tōris [exploro], M., *a scout.*
- explōrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1. v. a., *search, seek out, investigate, examine, reconnoiter; explōrātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., ascertained, certain, sure, settled.*
- expōnō**, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus [ex-pono], 3. v. a., *put out, set out; array, marshal, draw up; set on shore, disembark; explain, set forth.*
- expōrtō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ex-porto], 1. v. a., *carry away.*
- exposcō**, -poscere, -poposci, no p. p. [ex-posco], 3. v. a., *ask earnestly, demand, implore, beg, request.*
- exprimō**, -primere, -pressī, -pressus [ex-premo], 3. v. a., *force out, press out; extort; raise up (a building).*
- expūgnātiō**, -ōnis [cf. expugno], F., *taking by storm, assault, storming (of a city).*
- expūgnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [expugno], 1. v. a., *take by storm, capture by assault.*
- expulsus**, -a, -um, p. p. of **expello**.
- exquirō**, -quīrere, -quīsivī, -quīsītus [ex-quæro, seek], 3. v. a., *seek out, search for, ask for, inquire into, investigate.*
- exquisītus**, -a, -um, p. p. of **exquirō**.
- exsequor**, -sequī, -secūtus [ex-sequor], 3. v. dep., *follow out, follow up, maintain, carry out, enforce.*
- exserō**, -serere, -seruī, -sertus [ex-sero, twine], 3. v. a., *thrust out, bare, uncover.*
- exsertus**, -a, -um, p. p. of **exsero**.
- existō**, -sistere, -stitī, -stitūrus (?) [ex-sisto], 3. v. n., *stand out, appear, emerge, rise, come out, project; ensue.*
- exspectō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [exspecto], 1. v. a., *look for, wait for, expect, await.*
- exspoliō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [exspolio], 1. v. a., *(strip off), deprive of, rob.*

exstinctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **exstinguo**.

exstinguo, -stinguere, -stinxī, -stinctus [**ex-stinguo**, *quench*], 3. v. a., *put out, quench, extinguish, destroy, put an end to*.

extō, -stāre, -stitī, -statūrus (?) [**ex-sto**], 1. v. n., *stand out, be above*.

extructus, -a, -um, p. p. of **extruo**.

extruo, -struere, -struxī, -strūctus [**ex-struo**, *pile*], 3. v. a., *pile up, heap up, build up*.

exsul, -ulis, M. and F., *an exile, banished person*.

exter (**exterus**), -tera, -terum, adj., *outer, outside, outward*; **extrēmus**, -a, -um, superl., *last, farthest, at the end, in the rear, rearmost*.

exterreō, -terrere, -terrui, -territus [**ex-terreo**], 2. v. a., *frighten (greatly)*.

exterritus, -a, -um, p. p. of **exterreō**.

extimēscō, -timēscere, -timui, no p. p. [**ex-timesco**, *incept. of timeo*], 3. v. a. and n., *fear greatly, dread*.

extorqueō, -torquere, -torsī, -tortus [**ex-torqueo**, *twist*], 2. v. a., *wrest from, take from by force, extort*.

extortus, -a, -um, p. p. of **extorqueō**.

extrā, adv. and prep. with acc., *outside, without; outside of, beyond, contrary to, except, besides*.

extrāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **extraho**.

extrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus [**ex-traho**], 3. v. a., *drag out, draw out; (of time) waste*.

extrūdō, -trudere, -trūxī, -trūsus [**ex-trudo**], 3. v. a., *thrust out, push back or out*.

exuō, -uere, -ui, -ūtus [cf. **induo**], 3. v. a., *strip off; strip, spoil, deprive*.

exūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ustus [**ex-uro**], 3. v. a., *burn up*.

exūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of **exuo**.

F

faber, -brī [**facio**], M., *a workman, artisan, mechanic*; esp., *a smith or a carpenter*.

Fabius, -ī, M., (1) *Q. Fabius Maximus*, conqueror of the Allobroges and Arverni in 121 B. C.; (2) *C. Fabius*, a lieutenant of Caesar; (3) *L. Fabius*, a centurion killed at Gergovia.

facile [N. of **facilis**], adv., *easily, readily, conveniently*.

facilis, -e [cf. **facio**], adj., *easy (to do), convenient*.

facinus, -oris [cf. **facio**], N., *a deed, action; misdeed, crime, guilt*.

faciō, **facere**, **fēci**, **factus**, irr. v. a. and n., *do, make, act; perform, accomplish; give, furnish; cause, render; pass, fiō, fieri, factus; factum, -ī, N. of p. p. as noun, *act, action; conduct, exploit*.*

factiō, -ōnis [**facio**], F., *making, doing; business, employment; party, side (in politics, etc.)*.

factum, -ī, N. of **factus**, p. p. of **facio**.

factus, -a, -um, p. p. of **facio**.

facultās, -tātis [**facilis**], F., *ease; ability, power; opportunity, chance; plur., means, resources*.

fāgus, -ī, F., *beech-tree*.

fallō, **fallere**, **fefelli**, **falsus**, 3. v. a. and n., *deceive, cheat, disappoint, elude, escape notice*.

falsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **fallō**, as adj., *false, unfounded, untrue*.

falx, **falcis**, F., *sickle, reaping-hook, pruning-hook*.

fāma, -ae [for, **fari**, *speak*], F., *speech, report, rumor, common talk, reputation, renown*.

famēs, -is, F., *hunger, starvation*.

familia, -ae [**famulus**, *servant*], F., *collection of servants, household, family; retinue, clan, body of vassals, retainers*.

familiāris, -e [**familia**], adj., *belonging to a household, domestic; res familiāris, property, estate*;

- as noun, M., *an intimate friend, companion.*
familiaritās, -tātis [familiaris], *intimacy, familiar friendship.*
fās [for, fari, speak], indecl. N., *right, what is right or allowed (by divine law).*
fastigātē [fastigatus, p. p. of fastigo], adv., *sloping.*
fastigium, -i, N., *top, summit, ridge; sloping side, slope, declivity.*
fastigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [cf. fastigium], i. v. a., *make pointed or slanting; fastigātus*, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *sloping, inclined.*
fātum, -i [N. of fatus, p. p. of for], N., *(what is spoken), destiny, fate, lot.*
favēō, favēre, fāvī, fautūrus, 2. v. n., *be favorable to, incline to, favor.*
fax, facis, F., *torch, firebrand.*
fēlicitās, -tātis [felix, lucky], F., *good luck, good fortune, success.*
feliciter [felix, lucky], adv., *happily, luckily, prosperously, successfully.*
fēmina, -ae, F., *woman, female.*
femur, -oris (femen, -inis), N., *the thigh.*
fera; see **ferus**.
ferāx, -ācis [cf. fero], adj., *fertile, productive, fruitful.*
ferē, adv., *about, nearly, almost; generally, usually, as a rule; nūlla ferē, hardly any.*
ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus, irr. v. a. and n., *bear, carry; endure, suffer; bear off, win, obtain; produce; report, say, tell; propose; signa ferre, advance; sē ferre, move along.*
ferrāmentum, -i [ferrum], N., *iron tool.*
ferrāria, -ae [F. of ferrarius, fr. ferrum], F., *an iron mine.*
ferreus, -a, -um [ferrum], adj., *of iron, made of iron.*
ferrum, -i, N., *iron, iron point, steel, sword.*
fertilis, -e [fero], adj., *productive, fruitful, fertile.*
fertilitās, -tātis [fertilis], F., *fruitfulness, productiveness, fertility.*
ferus, -a, -um, adj., *wild, fierce, savage; F. as noun, wild beast, game.*
servēfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factus [serveo-facio], irr. v. a., *make hot, heat, make red-hot.*
servēfactus, -a, -um, p. p. of serve-facio.
serveō (servō), servēre, servū (servī), no p. p., 2. v. n., *be hot, be red-hot, glow.*
festūca, -ae, F., *rammer, pile-driver.*
fībula, -ae [figo, fasten], F., *clasp, pin.*
fictus, -a, -um, p. p. of fingō.
fidēlis, -e [fides], adj., *faithful, loyal, true.*
fidēs, -ei, F., *promise, pledge; loyalty, good faith, fidelity; confidence, faith (in some one), reliance; protection, dependence.*
fidūcia, -ae [fidus, faithful], F., *reliance, trust, confidence; self-confidence, boldness, courage.*
figūra, -ae [fingo], F., *shape, form.*
filia, -ae, F., *a daughter.*
filius, -i, M., *a son.*
fingō, fingere, finxi, fictus, 3. v. a., *form, shape, mold; invent, contrive, make up; vultum fingere, control the countenance, assume an expression; fictus*, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *invented, imaginary, fictitious; as noun, N. plur., fictions, falsehoods.*
finiō, -ire, -ivi (ii), -itus, 4. v. a., *limit, bound, determine, measure.*
finis, -is, M., *limit, bound, end; plur., limits, boundaries, territory, country.*
finitimus, -a, -um [finis], adj., *on the borders, bordering on, neighboring, adjoining; as noun, M. plur., neighbors.*
fiō, fieri, factus, irr. v. pass. and n., *used as the passive of facio; be made, be done, become; happen, occur, come to pass; certior fieri, be informed.*
firmiter [firmus], adv., *steadily, stoutly, firmly.*

firmitūdō, -inis [firmus], F., *solidity, durability, strength*.
 firmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [firmus], *strengthen, make solid or firm, fortify, establish, confirm, encourage*.
 firmus, -a, -um, adj., *solid, firm, strong, steady, steadfast, durable*.
 Flaccus, -i, a Roman cognomen; see Valerius.
 flāgitō, -are, -āvi, -ātus, I. v. a., *ask earnestly, demand, importune*.
 flamma, -ae, F., *flame, blaze, fire*.
 flectō, flectere, flexis, flexu, 3. v. a., *bend, turn, curve; direct, guide*.
 fleō, flere, flēvi, flētus, 2. v. n. and a., *weep, weep for*.
 flētus, -tūs [fleo], M., *weeping, lamentation, tears*.
 flō, flāre, flāvi, flātus, I. v. a. and n., *blow*.
 flōrēns, -entis [pres. p. of floreō, bloom], adj., *blooming, flourishing, prosperous; influential*.
 flōs, flōris, M., a *flower*.
 fluctus, -tūs [fluō], M., (*flood*), *wave, billow*.
 flūmen, -inis [fluō], N., *stream, river; adversō flūmine, upstream; secundō flūmine, downstream*.
 fluō, fluere, flūxi, fluxus (fluxūrus, fluctūrus, fluitūrus), 3. v. n., *flow*.
 fodiō, fodere, fōdi, fossus, 3. v. a., *dig*.
 foedus, -eris [cf. fides, fidus], N., a *league, treaty*.
 fore, for futurum esse; see sum.
 forem, for essem; see sum.
 foris [abl. plur. of fora (not used), door], adv., *out of doors, outside*.
 forma, -ae, F., *shape, form*.
 fors, fortis [fero], F., *chance, accident, luck*.
 forte, abl. of fors, as adv., *by chance, accidentally, as it happened*.
 fortis, -e, adj., *strong, brave, courageous, bold*.
 fortiter [fortis], adv., *bravely, stoutly, boldly*.
 fortitudō, -inis [fortis], F., *bravery, courage*.

fortuitō [abl. of fortuitus, fr. fors], adv., *by chance, accidentally*.
 fortuna, -ae [fors], F., *chance, luck, fortune, fate, lot; good luck; plur., possessions, property, resources*.
 fortunātus, -a, -um [fortuna], adj., *lucky, prosperous, rich*.
 forum, -i, N., *market-place, public square, forum*.
 fossa, -ae [F. of fossus, p. p. of fodio], F., *ditch, trench*.
 fovea, -ae, F., *pit, pitfall*.
 frāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of frango.
 frangō, frangere, frēgi, fractus, 3. v. a., *break; wreck (ships); crush (spirits), discourage, subdue*.
 frāter, -tris, M., *brother*.
 frāternus, -a, -um [frater], adj., *of a brother, of brothers, brotherly*.
 fraus, fraudis, F., *trick, deceit*.
 fremitus, -tūs [fremo, roar], M., *murmur, uproar, din; confused noise*.
 frequēns, -entis, adj., *in large numbers, crowded, numerous*.
 frētus, -a, -um, adj., *relying on, depending on, confident in*.
 frigidus, -a, -um [frigus], adj., *cold*.
 frīgus, -oris, N., *cold, cold weather; plur., cold seasons*.
 frōns, frontis, F., *forehead, face, front*.
 fructuōsus, -a, -um [fructus], adj., *fruitful, fertile*.
 fructus, -tūs [fruor], M., *enjoyment; fruit, profit, advantage, income, interest, reward, gain*.
 frūmentārius, -a, -um [frumentum], adj., *of grain, grain-producing; rēs frūmentāria, supplies*.
 frūmentātiō, -ōnis [frumentum], F., *providing of grain, expedition for supplies, foraging*.
 frūmentor, -āri, -ātus [frumentum], I. v. dep., *get grain, obtain supplies, forage*.
 frūmentum, -i [fruor], N., *grain; plur., crops*.
 fruor, frui, fructus, 3. v. dep., *enjoy*.

frūstrā, adv., *in vain, to no purpose*.
frūx, frūgis [fruor], F., *fruit, produce*; usually in plur., *crops*.

Fūsius (Fūsus), -i, M., *C. Fufius Cita*, a Roman knight.

fuga, -ae, F., *flight, rout*.

fugiō, fugere, fūgi, fugitūrus [cf. **fuga**], 3 v. a. and n., *flee, fly from, run away; avoid, shun, escape*.

fugitivus, -a, -um [fugio], adj., *fleeing, runaway*; plur. as noun., *runaways*.

fugō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [fuga], 1. v. a., *put to flight, rout*.

fūmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [fumus], 1. v. n., *smoke*.

fūmus, -i, M., *smoke*.

funda, -ae, F., *sling*.

funditor, -tōris [funda], M., *slinger*.

fundō, fundere, fūdi, fūsus, 3. v. a., *pour; scatter, rout*.

fūnebris, -e [funus], adj., *of a funeral*; N. plur., as noun, *funeral rites*.

fungor, fungi, fūctus, 3. v. dep., *discharge, perform, do, execute*.

fūnis, -is, M., *a rope*.

fūnus, -eris, N., *death, burial, funeral*; plur., *rites of burial*.

furor, -ōris, M., *madness, rage, frenzy, fury*.

furtum, -ī [fur, thief], N., *theft, a theft*.

fūsilis, -e [fundo], adj., *liquid, mollen*.

futūrus, -a, -um; see **sum**.

G

Gabali, -ōrum, M. plur., a Gallic tribe, clients of the Arverni.

Gabinus, -i, M., *A. Gabinius*, consul with L. Calpurnius Piso, 58 B. C.

gaesum, -ī, N., a heavy Gallic javelin.

Gāius (Cāius, C.), -ī, M., a Roman praenomen.

Galba, -ae, M., a Gallic and Roman name; (1) *Servius Sulpicius Galba*, a lieutenant of Caesar; (2) *Galba*, a chief of the Suessiones.

galea, -ae, F., *a helmet* (of leather).
Gallia, -ae [Gallus], F., *Gaul*; see Introduction, page lxii.

Gallicus, -a, -um [Gallus], adj., *of the Gauls, Gaulish, Gallic*.

gallina, -ae, F., *a hen*.

Gallus, -a, -um, adj., *of Gaul, Gallic*; as noun, *a Gaul*; also a Roman family name; see **Trebius**.

Garumna, -ae, M. or F., a large river of S. W. Gaul, the *Garonne*.

Garumnī, -ōrum, M. plur., a tribe near the source of the Garonne river, in the Pyrenees.

Gates, -ium, M., a tribe in eastern Aquitania.

gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus, 2. v. semi-dep., *rejoice, be pleased, be glad, be delighted*.

gāvīsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **gaudeo**.

Geidumnī, -ōrum, M. plur., a tribe in Belgic Gaul, dependents of the Nervii.

Genāva, -ae, F., a city of the Allobroges, at the foot of *Lacus Lemannus*, *Geneva*.

gener, -erī, M., *a son-in-law*.

generātīm [genus], adv., *(by kinds), by tribes, by nations*.

gēns, gentis, F., *family, tribe, clan; people, nation*.

genus, -eris, N., *birth, descent; race, family; kind, species, class; nature, method*.

Gergovia, -ae, F., chief town of the Arverni.

Germānia, -ae [Germanus], F., Germany, the country east and north of the Rhine and Danube.

Germānicus, -a, -um [Germanus], adj., *of the Germans, German*.

Germānus, -a, -um, adj., *German*; as a noun, *a German*.

gerō, gerere, gessi, gestus, 3. v. a., *carry, carry on, wage (war), manage, administer, hold (office), conduct, perform*; **rēs gestae**, *achievements, exploits*.

gestus, -a, -um, p. p. of **gero**.

gladius, -ī, M., *sword*.

glāns, glandis, F., *acorn, nut; bullet* (for a sling).

glēba, -aē, F., a *clod* (of earth), *lump*.
glōria, -ae, F., *fame, renown, glory, reputation*.

glōrior, -āri, -ātus [cf. gloria], I. v. dep., *boast of, glory in*.

Gnaeus (Cneius, Cn.), -i, M., a Roman praenomen.

Gobannitiō, -ōnis, M., an Arvernian, uncle of Vercingetorix.

Gorgobina, -ae, F., a town of the Boii, in the country of the Haedui.

Graecus, -a, -um, adj., *of the Greeks, Greek*; as a noun, *a Greek*.

Grāioceli, -ōrum, M. plur., a tribe in the Graian Alps.

grandis, -e, adj., *large, great*.

grātia, -ae [gratus], F., *favor, good-will, regard, influence; gratitude, thanks*; grātiās habēre, *feel grateful*; grātiās agere, *express thanks, thank*; grātiām referre, *make a grateful return, requite*; grātiā with gen., *for the sake of*.

grātulatiō, -ōnis [gratulor], F., (*manifestation of joy for one's self or for others*), *rejoicing, congratulation*.

grātulor, -āri, -ātus [gratus], I. v. dep., *congratulate, wish joy*.

grātus, -a, -um, adj., *pleasing, acceptable, agreeable, grateful, thankful*; grātum, -i, N., as noun, *a favor*.

gravis, -e, adj., *heavy; severe, hard, serious, violent; important, dignified*.

gravitās, -tātis [gravis], F., *weight, importance*.

graviter [gravis], adv., *heavily, severely, warmly, bitterly, seriously, with displeasure*.

gravō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [gravis], I. v. a., *make heavy, weigh down*; pass., *be unwilling, be reluctant*.

Grudii, -ōrum, M. plur., a tribe in Belgic Gaul, dependents of the Nervii.

gubernātor, -tōris, M., *a pilot, steersman, helmsman*.

gustō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, I. v. a., *taste, eat*.

H

habēō, habēre, habui, habitus, 2. v. a. and n., *have, hold, keep, possess; consider, esteem, regard; make (an enumeration); deliver (a speech); conduct (an investigation)*; sē habēre aliter ac, *to be different from*.

Haedui, -a, -um, adj., *of the Haedui, Haeduan*; an important nation of Gaul between the Loire and the Saône; as a noun, *a Haeduan*.

haesitō, -āre, -āvi, -āturus [freq. of haereo, *stick*], I. v. n., *stick fast*.

hāmus, -i, M., *hook*.

harpagō, -ōnis [Greek], M., *hook, grappling-hook, grappling-iron*.

Harūdēs, -um, M. plur., a German people living near the lake of Constance.

haud, adv., (*negatives single words*), *not, not at all, by no means*.

Helvēticus, -a, -um [Helvetius], adj., *Helvetian*.

Helvētius, -a, -um, *of the Helvetii*, a nation in Western Switzerland; as a noun, *a Helvetian*.

Helvii, -ōrum, M. plur., a Gallic tribe in the "Province."

Hercynius, -a, -um, adj., *Hercynian*; silva Hercynia, *a great forest extending across southern Germany*.

hērēditās, -tātis [hēres, *heir*], F., *inheritance*.

Hibernia, -ae, F., *Ireland*.

hibernus, -a, -um [hiems], adj., *of winter*; N. plur., *hiberna* [sc. castra], *winter camp, winter quarters*.

hic, adv., *here, in this place*.

hic, haec, hoc, gen. huius, *demons. pronoun, this; this man, woman, thing; he, she, it; the following; such*; hic . . . ille, *the latter . . . the former*.

hiemō, -āre, -āvi, -āturus, I. v. n., *winter, pass the winter*.

hiems (-mps), -emis, F., *winter, rainy season, storm*.

hinc, adv., *hence, from here*.

Hispānia, -ae [Hispanus], F., *Spain*.

Hispānus, -a, -um, adj., *Spanish*.

homō, -inis, M. or F., *human being*, *man*; plur., *people*.

honestus, -a, -um [honos], adj., *honorable, esteemed, respected*.

honor (-ōs), -ōris, M., *respect, honor, esteem*; *dignity, office*; **honōris causā**, *out of respect*.

honōrificus, -a, -um [honor-facio], adj., *honorable (conferring honor)*.

hōra, -ae [Greek], F., *hour*, a twelfth part of the time from sunrise to sunset, varying with the seasons.

horreō, -ēre, -uī, no p. p., 2. v. n. and a., (*bristle like hair standing up*), *shudder, dread*.

horribilis, -e [horreo], adj., *dreadful, terrible*.

horridus, -a, -um [horreo], adj., *rough, wild, terrible*.

hortor, -ārī, -ātus, 1. v. dep., *encourage, cheer, urge, instigate*.

hospes, -itis, M., *host*; *stranger, guest*; *friend, guest-friend* bound by the relation of *hospitium*.

hospitium, -i [hospes], N., *relation of host and guest*, a hereditary friendship between persons of different nations, not personal in character, but concerning the family or the community at large.

hostis, -is, M. or F., *a stranger, foreigner*; *an enemy* (of the state), *the enemy* (in sing. or plur.).

hūc [hic], adv., *hither, to this place, to this amount*, etc. (when something is added).

hūiusmodī [hic modus], adj., *phrase, of this kind, such*.

hūmānitās, -tātis [humanus], F., *civilisation, culture, refinement, kindness, courtesy*.

hūmānus, -a, -um [homo], adj. (of *man, human*); *cultivated, refined, civilized*.

humilis, -e [cf. humus, ground], *low, small, insignificant*; (of ships) *shallow*.

humilitās, -tātis [humilis], F., *low-ness, shallowness*; *insignificance*.

I

I, for ūnus, -a, -um, *one*.

iaceō, iacēre, iacui, iacitūrus, 2. v. n., *lie, lie dead*; **iacentēs**, *the fallen, the dead*.

iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus, 3. v. a., *throw, cast, hurl*; *throw up* (earth-works); *drop* (anchor).

iactō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus (freq. of iacio), 1. v. a., *throw*; *loss about, back and forth*; *discuss* (a subject).

iactūra, -ae [iacio], F., *throwing* (away), *loss, sacrifice, cost, offer*.

iactus, -a, -um, p. p. of iacio.

iaculum, -ī [cf. iacio], N., *a javelin, dart*.

iam, adv., *already, now, at length, at last*; with negative, *no longer*; *at once, immediately*; *soon*; *in fact, even*.

ibi [cf. is], adv., *there, in that place*.

Iccius, -ī, M., a chief of the Remi.

ictus, -ūs [ico, strike], M., *stroke, blow, thrust, shot*.

Id, for Idūs.

idcircō [is, circum, circa], adv., *for that (this) reason, therefore*.

idem, eadem, idem [is-dem], demons. adj. pron., *the same, the very (one)*; as noun, *the same person or thing*.

identidem [idem], adv., (*the same thing over and over*), *again and again, repeatedly*.

idōneus, -a, -um, adj., *fit, suitable, convenient, proper, capable*.

Idūs, -uum, F. plur., *the Ides*, the fifteenth day of March, May, July, and October, the thirteenth of the other months.

ignis, -is, M., *fire*; plur., *camp-fires*.

ignōbilis, -e [in-(g)nobilis], adj., *not famous, unknown, obscure*.

ignōminia, -ae [in-(g)nomen], F., *disgrace, dishonor, shame*.

ignōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [cf. ignosco], 1. v. a., *not to know, be ignorant of*; *be unaware of, overlook*.

ignōscō, Ignōscere, Ignōvī, Ignōtus [in-(g)nosco], 3. v. n. and a., *overlook, pardon, forgive.*

ignōtus, -a, -um [p. p. of ignosco?], adj., *unknown, strange, unfamiliar.*

ille, -a, -ud, demons. pron., adj., or subst., *that; he, she, it, they*; (as opposed to hic) *the former*. Hic refers to what is near the speaker, ille to what is comparatively remote.

illic [ille], adv., *there, in that place, yonder.*

illō, abl. of ille, adv., *thither, there, to that place.*

Illyricum, -i, N., *Illyria*, a country north and east of the Adriatic, one of Caesar's provinces; now *Istria and Dalmatia.*

imbēcillitās, -tātis [imbecillus, weak], F., *weakness, feebleness.*

imber, imbris, M., *rain, rain-storm.*

imitor, -ārī, -ātus, 1. v. dep., *copy, imitate.*

immānis, -e, adj., *monstrous, enormous, huge.*

immineō, -ēre, no perf., no p. p. [in-mineo], 2. v. n., *project over, overhang; threaten.*

immissus, -a, -um, p. p. of immitto.

immittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus [in-mitto], 3. v. a., *send into, send against, hurl, cast; let in, insert.*

immolō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [in-mola, meal], 1. v. a., *(sprinkle meal on a victim's head), sacrifice.*

immortalis, -e [in-mortālis], adj., *immortal, deathless, eternal.*

immūnis, -e [in-munus], *free from duty, free from taxes or tribute, unburdened.*

immūnitās, -tātis [immunis], F., *freedom from public burdens, exemption.*

imparātus, -a, -um [in-paratus], adj., *not ready, unprepared.*

impedimentum, -i [impedio], N., *hindrance*; plur., *impedimenta, -orum, heavy baggage, baggage-*

train (beasts and wagons included).

impediō, -ire, -ivi, -itus [in-pes], 4. v. a., *entangle, ensnare, hamper, embarrass, obstruct, hinder, make difficult*; impeditus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *entangled, embarrassed*; obstructed, *difficult, impassable* (road), *interrupted* (view).

impellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsus [in-pello], 3. v. a., *drive on or against, urge, move, incite, persuade, induce.*

impendeō, -ēre [in-pendeo, hang], 2. v. n., *overhang.*

impēnsus, -a, -um [p. p. of impendo, pay out], adj., *expensive, high* (price).

imperātor, -tōris [impero], M., *commander-in-chief, commander, general.*

imperātum, -i [impero], N. of p. p. as noun, *a command, order.*

imperitus, -a, -um [in-peritus, skilled], adj., *unskilled, unacquainted with, inexperienced in.*

imperium, -i [impero], N., *command, authority, rule, power* (especially military); *control, government*; *an order, a command.*

imperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1. v. a. and n., *demand, command, order to furnish something; levy; to command, order, rule.*

impetrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [in-patro, accomplish], 1. v. a., *obtain one's request, accomplish, get, procure, bring to pass.*

impetus, -tūs [in-peto], M., *attack, onset, rush, assault, force, fury.*

impīus, -a, -um [in-pius], adj., *wicked, impious.*

implicō, -āre, -āvi (-ui), -ātus (-itus) [in-plico, fold], 1. v. a., *in-fold, interweave, entangle, unite.*

implōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [in-ploro, cry], 1. v. a., *beseech, implore, invoke.*

impōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positus [in-pono], 3. v. a., *put on, place upon, mount, impose, lay upon.*

importō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in-porto],
I. v. a., *carry in, import.*

impositus, -a, -um, p. p. of **impono**.

improbus, -a, -um [in-probus, good], adj., *bad, wicked, shameless, unprincipled.*

imprōvisus, -a, -um [in-provisus, p. p. of provideo], adj., *unforeseen, unexpected*; (dē) **imprōvisō**, of a sudden, suddenly, unexpectedly.

imprūdēns, -entis [in-prudens, foreseeing], adj., *not foreseeing, not expecting, off one's guard, unaware.*

imprudentia, -ae [imprudens], F., *lack of foresight, thoughtlessness, indiscretion, ignorance.*

impūbēs, -eris (-is) [in-pubes], adj., *immature, youthful; unmarried.*

impūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in-pugno], I. v. a. and n., *attack, assail, charge, fight.*

impulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **impello**.
impulsus, -sūs [impello], M., *impulse; instigation, influence.*

impūnē [impunis, in-poena], adv., *without punishment, with impunity.*

impūnitās, -tātis [impunis, in-poena], F., *freedom from punishment, impunity.*

imus, -a, -um, superl. of **inferus**.

in- [cf. Eng. *in-, un-*], negative particle in composition.

in, prep. with acc. or abl.; (1) with acc., of motion, *into, to, toward, against, in, on, upon, among; for, to, till* (a certain time); *according to, in order to*. (2) with abl., of rest, *in, on, upon, among, at, within, in case of, during, in course of.*

inānis, -e, adj., *empty, vain, idle, fruitless, useless.*

incautē [incautus], adv., *carelessly, heedlessly.*

incautus, -a, -um [in-cautus, p. p. of caveo], adj., *careless, off one's guard.*

incendium, -ī [incendo], N., *burning, a fire, conflagration.*

incendō, -cendere, -cendi, -cēsus, 3. v. a., *set fire to, burn, kindle, rouse, excite.*

incēsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **incendo**.

inceptus, -a, -um, p. p. of **incipio**.

incertus, -a, -um [in-certus], adj., *uncertain, undecided, doubtful, indefinite, dubious, unreliable, untrustworthy, disordered* (ranks).

incidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cāsūrus [incado], 3. v. n., *fall upon; fall in with, meet; occur, happen, befall.*

incidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cīsus [in-caedo], 3. v. a., *cut into, cut partly through.*

incipiō, -cipere, -cēpti, -ceptus [incapio], 3. v. a., *begin, commence, undertake.*

incīsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **incido**.

incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [in-cito], I. v. a., *set in motion, urge on, drive, spur* (horses), *rouse, stir up; sē incitāre, rush.*

incōgnitus, -a, -um [in-cognitus], adj., *unknown.*

incolō, -colere, -colui, no p. p. [incolo], 3. v. a. and n., *inhabit, dwell in; live, dwell.*

incolumis, -e, adj., *safe, unhurt, unharmed, safe and sound.*

incommodē [incommodus], adj., *inconveniently, unfortunately.*

incommodus, -a, -um [in-commodus], adj., *inconvenient*; as noun, **incommodum**, -ī, N., *inconvenience, disadvantage, misfortune, injury, disaster, defeat.*

incrēdibilis, -e [in-credibilis, from credo], adj., *not to be believed, incredible, marvelous, extraordinary.*

increpitō, -āre, -āvī, -atus [freq. of increpo], *chide*, I. v. a., *reproach, taunt, revile.*

incumbō, -cumbere, -cubui, -cubitūrus [in-cumbo, lie], 3. v. n., *lie upon, bend to, apply one's self to, exert one's self.*

incursiō, -ōnis [cf. incurro, run upon], F., *invasion, inroad, attack.*

incursus, -sūs [cf. incurro, run upon], M., *attack, inroad.*

incūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [in-causa, cf. accuso], 1. v. a., *find fault with, chide, accuse*.
inde, adv., *from there, thence; then, after that, thereupon*.
indiciūm, -i [indico], N., *information, disclosure, evidence*.
indīcō, -dicere, -dixi, -dictus [indico, say], 3. v. a., *declare, proclaim, announce; appoint, fix*.
indictus, -a, -um, p. p. of **indico**.
indictus, -a, -um [in-(not) dictus], adj., *unsaid; unpleaded, untried, unheard*.
indignē [indignus], adv., *unworthily, dishonorably, shamefully*.
indignitās, -tātis [indignus], F., *unworthiness, disgrace, shame, ignominy*.
indignor, -ārī, -ātus [indignus], 1. v. dep., *consider shameful, be indignant at*.
indignus, -a, -um [in-dignus], adj., *unworthy*.
indiligēns, -entis [in-diligens, careful], adj., *careless, heedless, negligent*.
indiligenter [indiligens], adv., *carelessly, negligently*.
indiligentia, -ae [indiligens], F., *carelessness, negligence*.
indūcō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductus [indūcō], 3. v. a., *draw on, lead in; cover; lead on, induce*.
inductus, -a, -um, p. p. of **induco**.
indulgentia, -ae [indulgens, pres. p. of **indulgeo**], F., *kindness, favor*.
indulgeō, -dulgere, -dulsī, -dultus, 2. v. n., *favor, treat kindly*.
induō, -duere, -dūi, -dūtus [cf. **exuo**], 3. v. a., *put on; sē induere, impale themselves, fall upon*.
industriē [industrius, diligent], adv., *actively, promptly, energetically*.
indūtiāe [indūc-], -ārum, F. plur., *truce, armistice, cessation of hostilities*.
Indūtiomārus, -i, M., a chief of the Treveri, rival of Cingetorix.
ineō, -ire, -ivi (-ī), -itus [in-eo], irr. v. a., *go into, enter, enter upon,*

begin, form (a plan), make (a calculation, count, etc.), gain (favor).
inermis, -e (-us, -a, -um) [in-arma], adj., *unarmed*.
iners, -ertis [in-ars], adj., *shiftless, sluggish, indolent, unmanly*.
infāmia, -ae [infamis, in-fama], F., *disrepute, disgrace, dishonor*.
infāns, -antis [in-fans, pres. p. of **for, speak**], adj., *not speaking, without speech*; as noun, M. and F., *a child, young child, infant*.
infectus, -a, -um [in-factus, p. p. of **facio**], adj., *not done; rē infectā, without accomplishing one's purpose, without success*.
inferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus [in-fero], irr. v. a., *bring in, put or place upon; cause, inflict, bring upon; make (war) upon; assign, allege (a reason); signa inferre, advance, charge*.
inferus, -a, -um, adj., compar. **inferior**; superl. **infimus** (imus); *low; ab infimō, at the bottom*.
infestus, -a, -um [in-festus, fr. **fendo, strike**], adj., *hostile, threatening, dangerous; infestis signis, in hostile array*.
inficiō, -ficere, -feci, -fectus, 3. v. a., *dye, stain*.
infidēlis, -e [in-fidelis], adj., *unfaithful, treacherous*.
infigō, -figere, -fixi, -fixus [in-figo], 3. v. a., *fasten in, fix in*.
infimus, -a, -um, superl. of **inferus**.
infinitus, -a, -um [in-finitus, p. p. of **finio**], adj., *unbounded, unlimited, countless*.
infirmiās, -tātis [infirmus], F., *weakness, feebleness; unsteadiness, fickleness*.
infirmus, -a, -um [in-firmus], adj., *weak, feeble; depressed*.
infixus, -a, -um, p. p. of **infigo**.
inflectō, -flectere, -flexi, -flexus [in-flecto], 3. v. a., *bend, bend down; sē inflectere, become bent, bend*.
inflexus, -a, -um, p. p. of **inflecto**.
influo, -fluere, -fluxi, -fluxurus [in-fluo], 3. v. n., *flow into, empty into*.

infodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossus [in-fodio], 3. v. a., (*dig in*), *bury*.

infra, adv. and prep. with acc., *below, underneath, farther down, less than*.

ingēns, -entis, adj., *huge, vast, enormous, very large*.

ingrātus, -a, -um [in-gratus], adj., *unpleasing, unacceptable, not agreeable*.

ingredior, -gredi, -gressus [in-gradior, *step*], 3. v. dep., *walk into, march into, enter, enter upon, begin*.

iniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [in-iacio], 3. v. a., *throw into or upon; put in, put on board; inspire*.

iniectus, -a, -um, p. p. of *inicio*.

inimicitia, -ae [inimicus], F., *enmity, hostility*.

inimicus, -a, -um [in-amicus], adj., *unfriendly, hostile*; as noun, M. and F., *an enemy* (personal, *hostis* being a public enemy).

iniquitas, -tātis [iniquus], adj., *inequality, unevenness; unfairness, unfavorableness*.

iniquus, -a, -um [in-aequus], adj., *uneven, unequal, not level; unfair, unfavorable, disadvantageous*.

initium, -i [cf. *ineo*], N., *beginning, commencement, start*; plur., *first principles*.

iniungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūctus [in-iungo], 3. v. a., *fasten upon, attach, impose*.

iniūria, -ae [in-ius], F., *injustice, wrong, injury, outrage*.

iniūsū [in-iussu], adv., *without orders, without command*.

inlātus [ill-], -a, -um, p. p. of *infero*.

inligo [ill-], -āre, -āvi, -ātus, I. v. a., *bind on, tie on, fasten to*.

inlustris, -e, adj., *distinguished, famous, prominent*.

innāscor, -nāsci, -nātus [in-nascor], 3. v. dep., *be born in, be natural to*; innātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *inborn, natural*.

iātus, -a, -um, p. p. of *innascor*.

innitor, -niti, -nisus (-nixus) [in-nitor], 3. v. dep., *lean upon, support one's self with*.

innixus, -a, -um, p. p. of *innitor*. innocēns, -entis [in-nocens, pres. p. of *noceo*], adj., *harmless, innocent, guiltless*.

innocentia, -ae [innocens], F., *integrity, blamelessness*.

inopia, -ae [in-ops], F., *want, lack, need, destitution, privation, scarcity, dearth*.

inopināns, -antis [in-opinans, pres. p. of *opinor, think, suspect*], adj., *not suspecting, off one's guard, unawares*.

inquam, def. v. n., *say*.

inrideō (irr-), -ridēre, -risī, -risus [in-rideo, *laugh*], 2. v. n., *laugh at, jeer at*.

inridiculē (irr-) [in-ridiculus, *witty*], adv., *without wit*; nōn inridiculē, *humorously*.

inrumpō (irr-), -rumpere, -rūptī, -ruptus [in-rumpo], 3. v. n. and a., *break into, burst into, rush in, storm*.

inruptiō (irr-), -ōnis [cf. *inrumpo*], F., *breaking in, attack, raid*.

insciēns, -entis [in-sciens, pres. p. of *scio*], adj., *not knowing, unaware*; insciente Caesare, *without Caesar's knowledge*.

inscientia, -ae [insciens], F., *ignorance, lack of knowledge, lack of acquaintance*.

inscius, -a, -um [in-scio, cf. *conscius*], adj., *ignorant, not knowing, unaware*.

insecūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of *insequor*.

insequor, -sequi, -secūtus [in-sequor], 3. v. dep., *follow up, pursue*.

insero, -serere, -serui, -sertus [in-sero, *join*], 3. v. a., *fasten in, insert*.

insidia, -arum [in-sedeo, *sit*], F. plur., *ambush, snare, trap; trick, device, stratagem, plot, treachery*.

insidiōr, -āri, -ātus [insidiae], I. v. dep., *lie in wait*.

insignis, -e [in-signum], adj., *marked, remarkable, notable, signal*; as noun, *insigne, -is, N;*

sign, mark, badge; decoration (mark of honor).
insiliō, -sillire, -silui, -sultus [in-salio, leap], 4. v. a., *leap upon*.
insimulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [in-simulo], 1. v. a., *charge, accuse*.
insinuō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [in-sinuo, bend, wind], 1. v. a., *thrust in; sē insinuāre, make one's way into*.
insistō, -sistere, -stiti, no p. p. [insisto], 3. v. a. and n., *stand upon, set foot on, get a footing, keep one's footing; press on, pursue; apply or devote one's self to*.
insolenter [insolens, in-soleo], adv., *(in an unusual manner), haughtily, insolently*.
inspectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [inspecto], 1. v. a. and n., *look at, look on; inspectantibus nobis, before our eyes*.
instābilis, -e [in-stabilis, fr. sto, steady], adj., *unsteady; changeable*.
instar, N., indecl., *(image, likeness); with gen., like, in the likeness of*.
instigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1. v. a., *goad, spur on, urge, incite*.
instituo, -tuere, -tul, -tūtus [in-statuo], 3. v. a., *set up, establish, build, construct; set in order, array, draw up; provide, procure; set about, begin, undertake, adopt; train, teach, educate; institūtus, -a, -um, p. p., as noun institūtum, -i, N., practice, custom, usage, institution*.
institūtum, -i, N.; see instituo.
instō, -stāre, -stiti, no p. p. [instō], 1. v. n., *stand by, be near, be close, approach, press on, threaten*.
instrūctus, -a, -um, p. p. of instruo.
instrūmentum, -i [cf. instruo], N., *tool, utensil; in collective sense, equipment, stores, stock, furniture*.
instruō, -struere, -struxi, -strūctus [in-struo, build], 3. v. a., *build, construct; draw up (troops); fit out, equip*.
insuēfactus, -a, -um [insuesco (become accustomed) -facio], adj., *accustomed, trained*.

insuētus, -a, -um [in-suetus, p. p. of suesco, become accustomed], adj., *unaccustomed, unused*.
insula, -ae, F., *island*.
insuper [in-super, above], adv., *above, on top, from above, besides*.
integer, -gra, -grum [in-tag, root of tango], adj., *untouched, whole, unimpaired, unwearied, fresh; rē integrā, at the beginning, before committing one's self to any course of action*.
integō, -tegere, -tēxi, -tēctus [intego], 3. v. a., *cover, cover over*.
intelligō, -legere, -lēxi, -lēctus [inter-lego], 3. v. a., *(distinguish), understand, perceive, learn, discover*.
intendō, -tendere, -tendi, -tentus [in-tendo], 3. v. a., *stretch, strain; sē intendere, be intent, be eager; intentus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., attentive, intent, eager*.
inter, prep. with acc., *between, among; within, during; inter sē, each other, to, for, etc., each other*.
intercēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessurus [inter-cedo], 3. v. n., *come or go between, interpose, intervene, lie between, exist between, pass (of time), occur*.
interceptus, -a, -um, p. p. of interceptio.
intercipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus [inter-capio], 3. v. a., *intercept, cut off, capture*.
interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsi, -clūsus [inter-claudo], 3. v. a., *shut off, cut off, blockade, hinder*.
interdicō, -dicere, -dixi, -dictus [inter-dico], 3. v. a., *forbid, prohibit, enjoin, exclude by order; aquā et igni interdicere, to forbid the use of water and fire, to banish*.
interdiū [inter-diu, cf. dies], adv., *in the daytime, by day*.
interdum [inter-dum], adv., *sometimes, for a time*.
interea [inter-ea], adv., *meanwhile, in the meantime*.

interēō, -īre, -īvi (-īl), -ītūrus [inter-eō], irr. v. n., *perish, die, be killed, be destroyed, be lost.*

interfectus, -a, -um, p. p. of **interficio**.

interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [inter-facio], 3. v. a., *kill, put to death, slay.*

intericiō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [inter-icio], 3. v. a., *throw between, put between*; pass., *lie between, intervene.*

interiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of **intericio**.

interim, adv., *meanwhile, in the meantime.*

interior, -us [compar. of **interus**], adj., *inner, interior*; as noun, M. plur., *those living in the interior (of a country), those inside (a town).*

interitus, -tūs [interreo], M., *destruction, death, ruin.*

intermissus, -a, -um, p. p. of **intermitto**.

intermittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [inter-mitto], 3. v. a. and n., *leave an interval, interrupt, discontinue, suspend, leave off, stop; omit, let pass, neglect; delay, separate, leave vacant.*

interneciō, -ōnis [interneco, *kill*], F., *massacre, slaughter, extermination.*

interpellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [cf. **appello**, -are], 1. v. a., *interrupt, hinder, interfere with.*

interpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positus [inter-pono], 3. v. a., *put between, interpose; put forward, allege, urge; excite (suspicion); let pass (of time), allow to elapse; give (a promise).*

interpres, -pretis, M., *mediator, interpreter.*

interpreter, -ārī, -atus [interpres], 1. v. dep., *explain, interpret.*

interrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [inter-rogo], 1. v. a., *ask, question.*

interrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptus [inter-rumpo], 3. v. a., *break off, break down.*

interscindō, -scindere, -scidī, -scisus [inter-scindo], 3. v. a., *cut off, break down.*

intersum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus [inter-sum], irr. v. n., *be between, be among, be present at, take part in, be engaged in*; impers., *it concerns, it interests, it is important; it makes a difference, there is a difference.*

intervallum, -ī [inter-vallus], N., *(space between two stakes of a palisade); interval, distance apart, space.*

interveniō, -venīre, -vēmī, -ventūrus [inter-venio], 4. v. n., *come between, arrive.*

interventus, -tūs [intervenio], *coming between, interposition, intervention.*

intexō, -texere, -texuī, -textus [intexo], 3. v. a., *weave in, weave together.*

intextus, -a, -um, p. p. of **intexo**.

intoleranter [intolerans, *impatient, unbearable*], adv., *insufferably, immoderately, violently.*

intrā, adv. and prep. with acc., *within, inside, during.*

intritus, -a, -um [in-tritus, p. p. of **terō**, *wear away*], adj., *unworn, unwearied, not tired.*

intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1. v. a., *enter, go into.*

intrōdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus [intro (adv.) -ducere], 3. v. a., *lead into, bring into.*

introeō, -īre, -īvi (-īl), -itus [intro (adv.) -eō], irr. v. a. and n., *go into, go in, enter.*

introitus, -tūs [cf. **introeō**], M., *going in, entering; entrance, approach.*

intrōmissus, -a, -um, p. p. of **intrōmitto**.

intrōmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [intro (adv.) -mitto], 3. v. a., *send into, let in.*

intrōrsus [intro (adv.) -vorsus (versus)], adv., *into the interior, within, inside.*

intrōrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -rup-
tūrus [intro (adv.) -rumpo], 3.
v. n., *break in, burst in*.
intueor, -tuēri, -tuitus (-tūtus) [in-
tueor], 2. v. dep., *look upon, gaze at*.
intulī; see **infero**.
intus, adv., *within, on the inside*.
inūsītātus, -a, -um [in-usitatus],
p. p. of **usitor**, *use often*, adj.,
unusual, unwonted, strange.
inūtilis, -e [in-utilis], adj., *useless, unserviceable; disadvantageous, unfavorable*.
invenio, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventus [in-
venio], 4. v. a., *come upon, find, discover, learn*.
inventor, -tōris [invenio], M.,
finder, discoverer, inventor.
inventus, -a, -um, p. p. of **invenio**.
inveterāscō, -āscere, -āvi, -ātūrus
[in-veterasco, grow old], 1. v. n.,
grow old, become established or fixed.
invictus, -a, -um [in-victus, p. p. of
vinco], adj., *unconquered; unconquerable, invincible*.
invidia, -ae [invideo], F., *envy, jealousy*.
inviolātus, -a, -um [in-violatus,
p. p. of violō], adj., *inviolate; inviolable, sacred*.
invisus, -a, -um, p. p. of **invideo**.
invitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1. v. a.,
invite, request; entice, attract.
invitus, -a, -um, adj., *unwilling; against one's will*.
ipse, -a, -um, intens. demons. pron.,
self, himself, herself, itself, themselves; he, she, they (emphatic); the very one.
irācundia, -ae [iracundus], F.,
hasty temper, anger (as a permanent trait), wrath, passion.
irācundus, -a, -um [irā], adj.,
wrathful, passionate, irascible.
is, ea, id, demons. pron., *he, she, it, they; that, this, the, a, the one; such (before ut); et id, and that too; with comparatives, eō, the, all the (more, etc.)*.
iste, -a, -ud, demons. pron., *that, that of yours (often contemptuous)*.

ita, adv., *so, thus, in such a way, in this way, to such an extent; ita ut, just as; nōn ita, not so very*.
Itālia, -ae, F., *Italy*.
itaque [ita-que], adv., *and so, accordingly, therefore*.
item [cf. idem], adv., *likewise, in the same way, so also*.
iter, itineris [cf. eo], N., *way, road, route, journey, march; māgnum iter, forced march; iter dare, allow to pass*.
iterum, adv., *a second time, again*.
Itius, adj. (with portus), the harbor where Caesar embarked for Britain, probably *Wissant*; perhaps *Boulogne*.
iuba, -ae, F., *mane*.
iubeō, iubēre, iūssī, iūssus, 2. v. a., *command, order, bid, direct*.
iūdicium, -ī [iudex], N., *judgment, decision, award, opinion; trial, place of judgment*.
iūdicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [iudex], 1. v. a., *decide, judge, award, adjudge, be of opinion, think, consider, resolve*.
iugum, -ī [cf. iungo], N., *yoke; ridge, crest of hills or mountains*.
iūmentum, -ī [for iugmentum, fr. iungo], N., *(team), yoke animal, beast of burden or draught, horse, mule, pack-mule*.
iūnctūra, -ae [cf. iungo], F., *joining, joint, seam*.
iūnctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **iungo**.
iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūnctus, 3. v. a., *join, unite, attach, connect; sē iungere, join, attach one's self to*.
iūnior, comp. of **iuvenis**.
Iūnius, -ī, M., (1) *D. Iunius Brutus* (see **Brutus**); (2) *Q. Iunius*, a Spaniard in Caesar's army.
Iuppiter, Iovis, M., god of the heavens, chief of the Roman gods.
Iūra, -ae, M., a range of mountains between the Sequani and Helvetii.
iūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1. v. n., *swear, take an oath*.
iūs, iūris, N., *right, justice, law, authority; plur., rights, claims*.

iūs iurandum, iūris iurandi [ius-iurandum, gerundive of iuro], N., *oath*.

iūssū [abl. of iussus, from iubeo, not used in other cases], adv., *by command, by order*.

iūstitia, -ae [iustus], F., *justice, fair dealing, uprightness*.

iūstus, -a, -um [-ius], adj., *fair, just, right, lawful; proper, due, suitable; regular, complete, perfect*.

iuvenis, -e, adj., *young*; as noun, *a young man, a youth* (up to forty-five years).

iuventūs, -tūtis [cf. iuvenis], F., *youth*; collective, *young men, the youth*.

iuvō, iuvāre, iūvi, iūtus, I. v. a., *help, aid, assist*.

iuxtā, adv. and prep. with acc., *near, by, beside*.

K

Kal., for Kalendae in any case.

Kalendae (Cal-), -ārum, F. plur., *the Calends, the first day of the month*.

L

L., for Lucius.

L [ψ, for Greek letter ψ, a sign for 50], for quinquāgintā, *fifty*.

Laberius, -i, M.; see Durus.

Labienus, -i, M., *T. (Attius?) Labienus*, the most prominent of Caesar's lieutenants in Gaul. In the civil war he went over to the side of Caesar's enemies.

labor, -ōris, M., *toil, exertion, labor, trouble, hardship, fatigue*.

lābor, lābi, lapsus, 3. v. dep., *slip, fall; slip away, escape; fail, be disappointed, go astray*.

labōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [labor], I. v. n., *work, toil, labor, strive, make effort; be hard pressed, be in danger, be in trouble; animō labōrāre, be anxious*.

labrum, -i [lambo, lick], N., *lip; edge, rim*.

lac, lactis, N., *milk*.

laccessō, -cessere, -cessivi, -cessitus [lacio, entice], 3. v. a., *provoke, irritate, excite, arouse, harass, attack*.

lacrima, -ae, F., *a tear*.

lacrimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [lacrima], I. v. a. and n., *shed tears, weep*.

lacus, -ūs, M., *lake*.

laedō, laedere, laesi, laesus, 3. v. a., *injure, hurt; violate, break (a pledge)*.

laesus, -a, -um, p. p. of laedo.

laetitia, -ae [laetus], F., *joy, rejoicing, gladness, delight*.

laetus, -a, -um, adj., *joyful, glad, rejoicing, pleased*.

languidē [languidus], adv., *without energy, feebly*.

languidus, -a, -um [langueo, be weary], adj., *weary, weak, feeble, spiritless, listless, faint*.

languor, -ōris [langueo, be weary], M., *weariness, listlessness*.

lapis, -idis, M., *a stone*.

lapsus, -a, -um, p. p. of labor.

laqueus, -i [cf. lacio, entice], M., *noose, snare*.

largior, -iri, -itus [largus, abundant], 4. v. dep., *give bountifully, freely, bestow; give bribes*.

largiter [largus, abundant], adv., *lavishly; largiter posse, have great influence*.

largitiō, -ōnis [largior], F., *lavish giving, liberality; bribery*.

lassitūdō, -dinis [lassus, weary], F., *weariness, fatigue, faintness, exhaustion*.

lātē [latus], adv., *widely, far, extensively; longē lātēque, far and wide; lātius, too far*.

latebra, -ae [cf. lateo], F., *hiding-place, retreat*.

lateō, latere, latui, no p. p., 2. v. n., *lie hidden, be concealed, lurk*.

lātitudō, -dinis [latus], F., *breadth, width, extent*.

Latobrigi, -ōrum, M. plur., *a German tribe, neighbors of the Helvetii*.

latrō, -ōnis, M., *robber, brigand, bandit, freebooter*.

latrōcinium, -i [latro], N., *robbery, plundering, freebooting*.

lātus, -a, -um, adj., *broad, wide, extensive*.

lātus, -a, -um, p. p. of fero.

latus, -eris, N., *side, flank*; *latus apertum, exposed flank*; *ab latere, on the flank*.

laudō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, I. v. a., *praise, commend*.

laus, laudis, F., *praise, glory, fame, credit*.

lavō, lavāre (-ere), lavāvi (lavī), lavātus (lautus, lōtus), I. v. a., *wash, bathe*.

laxō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, I. v. a., *loosen, stretch, open, extend*.

lēgatiō, -ōnis [lego, *commission, dispatch, depute*], F., *embassy, deputation*.

lēgātus, -i [p. p. of lego, *despatch, depute*], M., *envoy, ambassador, deputy, lieutenant*.

legiō, -ōnis [lego, *select*], F., (*levy*), *legion*.

legionārius, -a, -um [legio], adj., *of a legion, legionary*, as opposed to the auxiliary forces.

Lemannus, -i, M., (with lacus), *the Lake of Geneva, Lac Lemman*.

Lemovices, -um, M. plur., a tribe between the Arverni and the Santoni; the name appears in the modern *Limoges*.

lēnis, -e, adj., *gentle, mild, smooth*.

lēnitās, -tātis [lenis], F., *gentleness, mildness, smoothness, slowness* (of a current).

lēniter [lenis], adv., *gently, softly, mildly*.

Lepontii, -ōrum, M. plur., a tribe in the Alps, north of *Lago Maggiore*.

lepus, -oris, M., *a hare*.

Leuci, -ōrum, M. plur., a tribe of Belgic Gaul, west of the *Vosges*.

Levaci, -ōrum, M. plur., a tribe of Belgic Gaul, dependents of the Nervii.

levis, -e, adj., *light, slight, trivial, unimportant*; *fickle, inconstant*; *baseless, unfounded* (report)

levitās, -tātis [levis], F., *lightness; instability, inconstancy, fickleness*.

levō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, I. v. a., *lighten, relieve, free from, aid, assist*.

lēx, lēgis, F., *law, statute, decree, ordinance*.

Lexovii, -ōrum, M. plur., a nation on the coast west of the Sequana (*Seine*).

libenter [libens, *willing*], adv., *willingly, gladly, with pleasure*.

liber, -era, -erum, adj., *free, independent, unrestrained*.

liberalitās, -tātis [liberalis, *generous*], F., *generosity, liberality, kindness*.

liberaliter [liberalis, *generous*], adv., *generously, kindly, courteously*.

liberē [liber], adv., *freely, frankly, boldly, openly*.

liberī, -ōrum [liber], M. plur., (the free members of the family opposed to the slaves), *children*.

liberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, I. v. a., *set free, deliver, liberate, release*.

libertās, -tātis [liber], F., *freedom, independence, liberty*.

librilis, -e [libra, *a pound*], adj., *weighing a pound*.

licentia, -ae [cf. licet], F., *lawlessness, lack of discipline, presumption*.

liceor, licēri, licitus, 2. v. dep., *bid* (at an auction).

licet, licēre, licuit (licitum est), 2. v. n., *be allowed, permitted, lawful*; *mihi licet, I may*; *per tē licet, you allow*; *petere ut liceat, to ask permission*; *licet vidēri, one may see*.

Liger, -eris, M., the Loire, one of the chief rivers of Gaul.

lignātiō, -ōnis [cf. lignum, *wood*], F., *getting wood*.

lignātor, -ōris [cf. lignum], M., *one sent to get wood, woodcutter*.

lilium, -i, N., *lily*; humorous name given to a kind of pitfall with a sharp stake in it.

linea, -ac, F., *a line*.

Lingones, -um, M. plur., a Gallic nation north of the Sequani.
lingua, -ae, F., *tongue, language*.
lingula, -ae [dimin. of *lingua*], F., *a little tongue* (of land), *a cape*.
linter, -tris, F. or M., (*trough*), *skiff, small boat*.
linum, -i, N., *flax, linen*.
lis, litis [for *stlis*, cf. Eng. *strife*], F., *a lawsuit; amount in dispute, damages*.
Liscus, -i, M., *a vergobret*, chief magistrate of the Haedui.
Litaviccus, -i, M., *a chief of the Haedui*.
littera, -ae, F., *letter* (of the alphabet), *character*; plur., *litterae*, -arum, *a letter* (epistle), *despatch; records*.
litus, -oris, N., *a shore, a coast, a beach*.
locus, -i [for *stlocus*], M. plur. loci, M., (not in Caesar), *loca*, N., *place, spot, ground, position, region; room, rank; loca, region* (often with sing. meaning).
locutus, -a, -um, p. p. of *loquor*.
longē [longus], adv., *far off, at a distance; by far, greatly, widely; longē lātēque, far and wide*.
longinquus, -a, -um [longus], adj., *long; far, distant, remote; long-continued*.
longitūdō, -dinis [longus], F., *length*.
longurius, -i [longus], M., *long pole*.
longus, -a, -um, adj., *long* (of time and space), *distant; longum est, it would take too long*.
loquor, loquī, locūtus, 3. v. dep., *speak, talk, say*.
lōrica, -ae [lorum, *strap*], F., *coat of mail, cuirass; breastwork* (on a wall).
Lūcānius, -i, M., *Q. Lucanius*, a centurion in Caesar's army.
Lūcius, -i [cf. *lux, lucis*], M., *a Roman praenomen*.
Lucterius, -i, M., *Lucterius Cadurcus*, a Gallic commander under Vercingetorix.

Lugotorix, -igis, M., *a British chief*.
lūna, -ae, M., *the moon*; personified, *Lūna*, the moon goddess.
Lutētia, -ae, F., chief town of the Parisii, on the island of the modern *Paris*.
lūx, lūcis, F., *light, daylight*; *primā lūce, lūce ortā, at dawn, at day-break*.
luxūria, -ae [luxus, *excess*], F., *luxury, extravagance, high living*.

M

M., for *Marcus*.
M [for CIO (originally Φ), sign for mille], *a thousand*.
māceria, -ae, F., *wall, enclosure*.
māchinātiō, -ōnis [machinor, *contrive*], F., *contrivance, mechanism, engine, machine*.
maestus, -a, -um [p. p. of *maereo, grieve*], adj., *sad, sorrowful, dejected, mournful*.
Magetobriga, -ae, F., *a town in Gaul, of uncertain position*.
magis [cf. *magnus*], adv., *more, rather; eō magis, all the more; superl., māximē, most, very, in the greatest degree; very greatly, exceedingly, chiefly, especially*.
magistrātus, -tūs [cf. *magister, master*], M., *magistracy, office; (one holding such office), a magistrate, public officer*.
māgnificus, -a, -um [magnus-*facio*], adj., *splendid*.
māgnitūdō, -dinis [magnus], F., *greatness, size, great size, extent, bulk*.
māgnopere (māgnō-opere) [magnus-opus], adv., *very earnestly, very much, very greatly, very, specially*.
māgnus, -a, -um, adj., *great* (in all senses), *large, important, powerful, extensive, heavy* (taxes), *loud* (voice), *high* (tide); *māgnī*, gen., *of great value, importance*.
māiestās, -tātis [maior], F., *grandeur, dignity, majesty*.
māior, compar. of *māgnus*; sc. *nātū*, *elder, older*; as noun, *mā-*

iōrēs, *forefathers, ancestors*; **mā-iōrēs nātū**, *elders, old men*.
malacia, -ae [Greek], F., *calm at sea, dead calm*.
male [malus, bad], adv., *ill, badly, unsuccessfully, unfortunately*.
malefīcium, -ī [maleficus, maleficio], N., *mischievous, harm, damage*.
mālō, mālī, mālūī, no p. p. [mag (magis) -volo], irr. v. a. and n., *prefer, wish rather, choose*.
malus, -a, -um, adj., *bad* (in all senses), *ill*; compar., *pēior*; superl., *peissimus*.
mālus, -ī, M., *mast, upright pole*.
mandātum, -ī [p. p. of mando], N., *a trust, message, instructions, commission, command*.
mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [manu-do], I. v. a., (*put into another's hands*), *entrust, commit, commission, instruct, command*; *sē fugae mandāre*, *betake one's self to flight*.
Mandubii, -ōrum, M. plur., *a nation north of the Haedui*.
Mandubracius, -ī, M., *a chief of the Trinovantes in Britain*.
māne, adv., *in the morning, early*.
maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, 2. v. n., *stay, remain*; stand by, *abide by*.
manipulāris, -e [manipulus], adj., *of a manipule*; as noun, *soldier of a manipule, fellow-soldier, comrade*.
manipulus, -ī [manus and the root of plenus], (*handful*), *maniple, company* (third of a cohort).
Manlius, -ī, M., *L. Manlius*, proconsul of Gaul, 78 B. C.
mānsuēfāciō, -fācere, -fēcī [mansues, tame, -fācio], 3. v. a., *tame*.
mānsuētūdō, -dīnis [mansuetus, tamed], F., *tameness, gentleness, mildness*.
manus, -ūs, F., *hand*; *company, band, troop, force*.
Marcomanni, -ōrum, M. plur., *a German tribe, in Ariovistus's army*.
Mārcus, -ī, M., *a Roman praenomen*; English *Mark*.
mare, -is, N., *sea*.

maritimus, -a, -um [mare], adj., *of the sea, by the sea, on the coast, maritime, naval*.
Marius, -ī, M., *C. Marius*, seven times consul, the conqueror of Jugurtha, and of the Cimbri and Teutones.
Mārs, Mārtis, M., *Mars*, god of war; *war, battle*; *aequō Mārte*, (*fighting*) *on equal terms*.
mās, maris, adj., *male*.
matara, -ae, F., *a Gallic javelin, spear, pike*.
māter, -tris, F., *a mother*; *mātrēs familiae*, *matrons*.
materia, -ae (-es, -ēī) [mater], F., *stuff, material*; esp. *timber, wood* (for building).
māterior, -ārī, -ātus [materia], I. v. dep., *get timber, bring wood*.
Maticō, -ōnis, F., *a town of the Haedui, now Mâcon*.
mātrīmōnium, -ī [mater], N., *marriage*; in *mātrīmōnium dūcere*, *marry*.
Matrona, -ae, F., *the Marne*, which runs into the Seine near Paris.
mātūrē [maturus], adv., *early*; *quam mātūrime*, *as early as possible*.
mātūrēscō, -tūrēscere, -tūrūī, no p. p. [maturus], 3. v. n., *ripen, get ripe*.
mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [maturus], I. v. a. and n., *hasten, make haste*.
mātūrus, -a, -um, adj., *ripe*; *early*.
māximē [maximus], adv., superl. of *magis*, which see.
Māximus, -ī, M.; see *Fabius*.
medeor, -ēri, no p. p., 2. v. dep., *heal, cure, remedy, relieve*.
mediocris, -cre [medius], adj., *moderate, middling, ordinary, tolerable*; *nōn mediocris*, *no great, no little*.
mediocriter [mediocriter], adv., *moderately, to some extent*.
Mediomatrici, -ōrum, M. plur., *a people of Belgic Gaul, south of the Treviri, about Metz*.
mediterrāneus, -a, -um [medius-terra], adj., *midland, inland, central, interior*.

- medius**, -a, -um, adj., *in the middle, in the midst or middle of, midway, half-way.*
- Meldi**, -ōrum, M., a tribe on the Marne, about the modern *Meaux*.
- melior**, compar. of bonus.
- melius**, adv., compar. of bene.
- Melodūnum**, -i, N., later name for *Metiosedum*, which in French became *Melun*.
- membrum**, -i, N., *limb, part of the body.*
- meminī**, -isse, def. v. a, *remember, recollect, bear in mind*; see grammar.
- memoria**, -ae [memor], F., *memory, recollection, remembrance*; the period of recollection.
- Menapii**, -ōrum, M. plur., a tribe near the coast, between the *Scaldis (Scheldt)* and the *Mosa (Maas)*.
- mendācium**, -i [mendax, lying], N., *lie, falsehood.*
- mēns**, mentis, F., *mind, intellect, reason, judgment*; disposition, state of mind.
- mēnsis**, -is, M., *a month.*
- mēnsūra**, -ae [metior], F., *measure*; **ex aquā**, *by the water-clock.*
- mentio**, -ōnis [cf. memini], F., *mention.*
- mercātor**, -tōris [mercor, trade], M., *trader, merchant.*
- mercātūra**, -ae [mercor, trade], F., *trade, traffic.*
- mercēs**, -ēdis [cf. merx, merchandise, mereo, earn], F., *wages, hire, pay.*
- Mercurius**, -i, M., *Mercury*, the Roman god of trade, eloquence, roads, messenger of the gods, conductor of souls to the lower world.
- mereor**, -ēri, -itus (or mereō, -ēre, -uī, -itus), 2. v. dep., *win, earn, deserve, be entitled to; serve (as a soldier).*
- meridiānus**, -a, -um [meridies], adj., *of mid-day, of noon.*
- meridiēs**, -ei [medius-dies], M., *mid-day, noon; the South.*
- meritum**, -i [p. p. of mereor], N., *desert, service, merit, kindness, benefit.*
- meritus**, -a, -um, p. p. of mereo or mereor.
- Messāla**, -ae, M., *M. Valerius Messala*, consul with M. Piso, 61 B. C.
- mētior**, mētrī, mēnsus, 4. v. dep., *measure, measure out, deal out.*
- Metiosēdum**, -i, N., a town of the Senones, afterward *Melodunum*, now *Melun*.
- Mētius**, -i, M., *M. Metius*, an envoy of Caesar to Ariovistus.
- metō**, metere, messul, messus, 3. v. a., *mow, reap, cut.*
- metus**, -tūs, M., *fear, dread, apprehension.*
- meus**, -a, -um, poss. adj. pron., *my, mine.*
- mibi**, dative of ego.
- miles**, -itis, M., *soldier, foot-soldier, private soldier, legionary.*
- militāris**, -e [miles], adj., *of soldiers, military*; **rēs militāris**, *the art of war, military operations.*
- militia**, -ae [miles], F., *service as a soldier, service in the army.*
- mille**, indecl.; plur. *millia (millia)*, -ium, adj. in sing., noun in plur., *a thousand.*
- mille passuum**, *a thousand (double) paces, a mile.*
- Minerva**, -ae, F., the Roman goddess of wisdom and the arts, identified with the Greek *Athene*.
- minimē** [minimus], adv., *least, very little, in the smallest degree, not at all, by no means.*
- minimus**, -a, -um [superl. of parvus], adj., *least, smallest, very little.*
- minor**, -us [compar. of parvus], adj., *smaller, less*; N., *minus*, noun and adv., *less, not much, not very*; **si minus**, *if not.*
- Minucius (Minut-)**, -i, M.; see *Basilus*.
- minuō**, -uere, -uī, -ūtus [cf. minus], 3. v. a. and n., *lessen, diminish, weaken, reduce*; **settles (disputes)**; (of the tide) *ebb.*
- mīrātus**, -a, -um, p. p. of miror, **mīror**, -āri, -ātus [mirus], 1. v. dep., *wonder, be surprised, wonder*

at; *mirātus*, -a, -um, p. p., *wondering, surprised*.
mirus, -a, -um, adj., *surprising, wonderful, marvelous, extraordinary*.
miser, -era, -erum, adj., *wretched, miserable, pitiable, unfortunate*.
misericordia, -ae [*misericors*, *compassionate*], F., *pity, compassion, mercy*.
miseror, -āri, -ātus [*miser*], I. v. dep., *pity, complain of, lament, bewail*.
missus, -a, -um, p. p. of *mitto*.
missus, -sūs [*mitto*], M., *sending*; *missū Caesaris*, *sent by Caesar*.
mitissimē [*superl. of mite, fr. mitis*], adv., *very gently, very mildly, very kindly*.
mitto, *mittere*, *misī*, *missus*, 3. v. a., *send, dispatch, let go, release*; *throw, cast, hurl, shoot*.
mōbilis, -e [*moveo*], adj., *movable, easily moved, fickle, changeable, hasty, excitable*.
mōbilitās, -tātis [*mobilis*], F., *quickness, activity, speed*; *fickleness, inconstancy*.
mōbiliter [*mobilis*], adv., *readily, easily*.
moderor, -āri, -ātus [*modus*], I. v. dep., *control, manage, restrain, govern, regulate*.
modestia, -ae [*modestus*, *self-controlled*], F., *self-control, temperateness, subordination to discipline*.
modō [*modus*], adv., *only, but, just, even, merely; lately, just now*; *nōn . . . modo*, *not . . . only*; *modo . . . modo*, *now . . . again, sometimes . . . sometimes*.
modus, -i, M., *measure, quantity, extent, limit*; *manner, method, mode, plan*; *ad modum*, *in (such) a way*; *modō*, *in the manner of*; *nūllō modō*, *by no means*.
moenia, -ium [*cf. munio*], N. plur., *walls of a city, fortifications*.
mōlēs, -is, F., *mass*; *dike, dam, mole*.
molestē [*molestus*, *troublesome*; *cf. moles*], adv., *heavily, severely*;

molestē ferre, *take to heart, be vexed at*.
mōlimentum, -i [*molior*, *strive*], N., *exertion, effort, difficulty*.
molitus, -a, -um, p. p. of *molo*.
molliō, -ire, -ivi, -itus [*molliis*], 4. v. a., *soften, make easy*.
molliis, -e, adj., *soft, yielding; gentle, easy; weak, feeble, not firm*.
molitiēs, -ēi (-a, -ae) [*molliis*], F., *softness; weakness, feebleness*.
mōlō, -ere, -ui, -itus, 3. v. a., *grind*; *molita cibāria*, *meal, ground grain*.
mōmentum, -i [*for movimentum (moveo)*], N., *movement*; (*cause of motion*), *influence*; *importance, moment, weight*.
Mona, -ae, F., *Anglesey*, an island on the coast of Wales; at other times the Isle of Man.
moneō, -ēre, -ui, -itus [*from same root as mens*], 2. v. a., *remind, advise, warn*.
mōns, *montis*, M., *mountain, high hill*; *summus mōns*, *the top of a mountain*.
mora, -ae, F., *delay, hindrance*.
morbus, -i, M., *sickness, disease*.
Morini, -ōrum, M. plur., a nation of Belgic Gaul, on the coast opposite Kent.
morior, *mori* (*moriri*), *mortuus*, *moritūrus* [*cf. mors*], 3. or 4. v. dep., *die*.
Moritasgus, -i, M., a chief of the Senones.
moror, -āri, -ātus [*mora*], I. v. dep., *linger, tarry, delay; retard, delay, detain, hinder*.
mors, *mortis* [*cf. morior*], F., *death*; *sibi mortem cōnasciscere*, *commit suicide*.
mortuus, -a, -um, p. p. of *morior*.
mōs, *mōris*, M., *habit, custom, usage, practice*; plur., *manners, customs, character*.
Mosa, -ae, M., the *Meuse* or *Maas*, a river of Belgic Gaul.
mōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of *moveo*.
mōtus, -tūs [*moveo*], M., *movement, motion, disturbance, uprising, insurrection*.

moveō, **movēre**, **mōvī**, **mōtus**, 2. v. a., *move, set in motion, remove; stir up, excite, influence; break (camp).*

mulier, -eris, F., *a woman.*

mūliō, -ōnis [mulus], M., *muleteer, mule-driver.*

multitūdō, -dinis [multus], F., *a large number, crowd, multitude; populace, common people.*

multō; see **multus**.

multō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [multa, *a fine*], 1. v. a., *punish (by a fine), fine, deprive of (as a penalty).*

multum; see **multus**.

multus, -a, -um; compar. **plūs**; superl. **plūrimus**; adj., *much*, plur., *many*; **multō diē**, *late in the day*; **multum**, acc. as adv., *much*; **plūs**, *more*, **plūrimum**, *most, very much*; **multō**, (*by*) *much, (by)* *far*.

mūlus, -ī, M., *a mule.*

Mūnātiūs, -ī, M., *L. Munatius Plancus*, a lieutenant of Caesar.

mundus, -ī, M., *world, universe.*

mūnimentum, -ī [munio], N., *fortification, defense.*

mūniō, -īre, -īvi (-īi), -ītus, 4. v. a. and n., *fortify, protect (by walls); make, construct (anything in the form of embankment, causeway, etc., e. g., a road).*

mūnitiō, -ōnis [munio], F., *fortification, works, defenses.*

mūnus, -eris [cf. **moenia** and **munio**], N., (*share of duty*), *duty, obligation; service, task, function, office; contribution, gift, favor.*

mūrālis, -e [murus], adj., *of a wall; falk, wall-hook; pilum, wall-javelin (to be thrown from a wall).*

mūrus, -ī, M., *wall (the general term).*

musculus, -ī [dimin. of **mus**, *mouse*], M., (*little mouse*), *a massive shed, used to shelter besiegers.*

mutilus, -a, -um, adj., *maimed, broken; mutilae cornibus, without horns, or with short, stumpy horns.*

N

nactus, -a, -um, p. p. of **nanciscor**.

nam [cf. **tam**, **quam**], conj., *for.*

Nammeius, -ī, M., *a Helvetian envoy sent to Caesar.*

Namnetes, -um, M. plur., *a Gallic people north of the mouth of the Loire, whose name appears in Nantes.*

namque [nam-que], conj., *for, more emphatic than nam.*

nanciscor, -cisci, **nactus** (**nactus**), 3. v. dep., *find, meet with, get, obtain, acquire.*

Nantuātes, -um, M. plur., *a tribe living probably south of the Lake of Geneva.*

Narbō, -ōnis, M., *a city in the Province, now Narbonne.*

nāscor, **nāsci**, **nātus** (**gnascor**, etc.), 3. v. dep., *be born, arise, be produced, spring up, start from, be found (of metals); nātus, -a, -um, p. p., *born, sprung.**

Nasua, -ae, *a leader of the Suebi.*

nātālis, -e [natus], adj., *of birth; diēs, birthday.*

nātiō, -ōnis [nascor], F., *race, stock, nation, tribe, a people.*

nātīvus, -a, -um [natus], adj., *natural, native.*

nātūra, -ae [nascor], F., *nature, character; natural features (of a country), form, organization, state.*

nātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **nascor**.

nātus, -ūs [nascor], M., *birth;*

māiōrēs nātū, *elders.*

nauta, -ae (**navita**), [navis], M., *sailor, seaman.*

nauticus, -a, -um [nauta], adj., *of sailors, nautical, naval.*

nāvālis, -e [navis], adj., *of ships, naval, sea.*

nāvicula, -ae [navis], F., *a small vessel, boat, skiff.*

nāvigātiō, -ōnis [navigo], F., *sailing, voyage, navigation.*

nāvigium, -ī [cf. **navigo**], N., *vesel, ship, craft, boat.*

nāvigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [navis], 1. v. n. and a., *sail.*

nāvis, -is, F., *ship, vessel*; **longa**, a galley; **onerāria**, ship of burden, transport; **actuāria**, a light, swift vessel.

nāvō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, I. v. a., *do zealously or vigorously*.

nē, adv. and conj., *not; lest, for fear that, that . . . not, in order that . . . not, not to (do), from (doing); nē quis, that no one; nē . . . quidem, not even*.

-ne, enclitic interrogative particle; generally not to be translated; in indirect questions, *whether*; **-ne . . . -ne, -ne . . . -an**, *whether . . . or*.

nec; see **neque**.

necessārius, -a, -um [**necesse**], adj., *necessary, needful, unavoidable, indispensable; closely related*; as noun, **necessārius**, -i, M., a kinsman; abl., **necessāriō**, as adv., *unavoidably, of necessity*.

necesse, indeclin. adj., *necessary, indispensable, unavoidable*; **necesse est**, *one must*.

necessitās, -tātis [**necesse**], F., *necessity, need, compulsion*.

necessitūdō, -dinis, F., *close relationship, intimacy, friendship*.

nece [**nec ne**], conj., *or not in double questions*.

necō, -āre, -āvi (-uī), -ātus (-tus) [**nex, death**], I. v. a., *kill, put to death*.

nēcubi [**ne-cubi** (= ubi)], conj., *that nowhere, lest anywhere, that . . . not . . . anywhere*.

nefārius, -a, -um [**nefas**], adj., *wicked, abominable, impious, execrable*.

nefās, N., indecl. noun and adj., *crime (against the gods), sin, wicked, unlawful*.

neglēgō (**nec**-), -legere, -lēxi, -lēctus [**nec-lego**], 3. v. a., *disregard, neglect, leave unnoticed, let go unpunished*.

negō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, I. v. a. and n., *say no, say . . . not, refuse, deny*.

negōtior, -āri, -ātus [**negotium**], I. v. dep., *carry on business, trade*.

negōtium, -i [**nec-otium, ease**], N., *business, occupation, employment; undertaking, matter, thing; difficulty, trouble*.

Nemetes, -um, M. plur., a German tribe on the Rhine.

nēmō, dat. **neminī** [for **nehemo, ne-homo**], M., *no one, nobody*; **nōn nēmō**, *some, many a man*.

nēquāquam [**ne-quaquam, anywhere**], adv., *not at all, by no means, in no way*.

neque (**nec**) [**ne-que**], adv., *and . . . not, nor, but not; neque . . . neque or nec . . . nec, neither . . . nor*.

nēquiquam [**ne quidquam, anything**], adv., *to no purpose, in vain, without reason*.

Nervicus, -a, -um [**Nervius**], adj., *Nervian, of the Nervii*.

Nervius, -a, -um, adj., *Nervian*; as noun, a *Nervian, one of the Nervii*, a warlike nation of Belgic Gaul.

nervus, -ī, M., *sinew*; plur., *strength, power, force*.

neu; see **neve**.

neuter, -tra, -trum [**ne-uter**], adj., *neither (of two)*; plur., *neither party*.

neve (**neu**) [**ne-ve**], conj., *or not, and not, nor (after ut or ne)*.

nex, **necis**, F., *death (by violence), execution, slaughter*.

nihil, N. indecl., or **nihilum**, -ī, N., *nothing*; **nihil**, acc. as adv., *not at all*.

nimius, -a, -um [cf. **nimis**, *too, too much*], adj., *too much, too great, excessive*.

nisi [**ne-si**], conj., *if not, unless, except*.

nisus, -a, -um, p. p. of **nitor**.

Nitiobroges, -um, M. plur., a nation on the Garonne.

nitor, **niti**, **nisus** (**nixus**), 3. v. dep., *support one's self upon, lean upon, rely upon, (strain against something), exert one's self, strive, struggle*.

nix, **nisivis**, F., *snow*.

nōbilis, -e, [nosco], adj., *well-known, famous, renowned, celebrated*; noble, well-born; plur. as noun, *the nobles, the notables*.
nōbilitās, -tātis [nobilis], F., *fame, renown*; noble birth; the nobility, the aristocracy.
nocēns, pres. p. of **noceo**.
noceō, nocēre, nocui, no p. p., 2. v. n., *harm, injure, hurt*; **nocēns**, -entis, pres. p. as adj., *hurtful, guilty*.
noctū [cf. **nox**], adv., *by night*.
nocturnus, -a, -um [nox; cf. diurnus], adj., *of the night, by night, in the night*.
nōdus, -i, M., *knot, joint* (as of a knobby shape).
nōlō, nōlle, nōlui [ne-volo], irr., v. a. and n., *be unwilling, not wish*; **nōlī**, nōlite, with infin., *do not*.
nōmen, -minis [nosco], N., (*that by which one is known*), *name, title; name, cause, behalf, account*; **nōmine**, with gen., *by way of, as*.
nōminātīm [nomen], adv., *by name, individually, expressly*.
nōminō, -āre, -avi, -ātus [nomen], i. v. a., *name, call by name, mention*.
nōn, adv., *not*.
nōnāgintā, indecl. num. adj., *ninety*.
nōndum [non dum], *not yet*.
nōn nihil, N. indecl., *something*.
nōn nullus, -a, -um, adj., *some*.
nōn numquam, adv., *sometimes*.
nōnus, -a, -um [cf. novem], num. adj., *ninth*.
Nōrēia, -ae, F., a town of the Norici, now *Neumarkt*, in Styria.
Nōricus, -a, -um, adj., *Norican*, of the Norici; as noun, *Nōrica*, F., a *Norican woman*.
nōs, plur. of **ego**.
nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtus, 3. v. a., *learn, get a knowledge of*; in perf. tenses, *know, be acquainted with*; **nōtus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *known, well-known, familiar*.
nōsmet; see **egomet**.
noster, -tra, -trum, poss. adj. pron., *our, ours, our own*; **nostrī**, -ōrum,

M. plur. as noun, *our men, our side*.
nōtitia, -ae [nosco, notus], F., *acquaintance, knowledge*.
nōtus, p. p. of **nosco**.
novem, indecl. num. adj., *nine*.
Noviodūnum, -i, N., the name of three towns in Gaul: (1) of the Haedui, on the Liger (Loire), now perhaps *Nevers*; (2) of the Bituriges, on the Liger (Loire); (3) of the Suessiones, on the Axona (Aisne), possibly now *Soissons*.
novitās, -tātis [novus], F., *newness, novelty, strangeness*.
novus, -a, -um, adj., *new, strange, fresh*; superl., *last, rearmost*; **novissimum agmen**, *rear-guard, rear of marching column*.
nox, noctis, F., *night*; **primā nocte**, *early in the night, in the evening, at evening*; **multā nocte**, *late at night*.
noxia, -ae [cf. noceo], F., *offense, crime, guilt*.
nūbō, nūbere, nūpsi, nūpta [cf. nubes, a cloud], 3. v. n., *veil one's self* (of a bride), *marry* (said of the woman alone).
nūdo, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [nudus], i. v. a., *make bare, strip; expose, leave unprotected, clear* (of defenders).
nūdus, -a, -um, adj., *naked, bared; unprotected, exposed*.
nūllus, -a, -um [ne-ullus], adj., *not any, no, none*; as noun, *no one*.
num [cf. tum], adv., interrog. particle implying a negative answer; the question may be put in the form, *It is not, is it?*
nūmen, -inis [nuo, nod], N., (*nod*), *will, power; divinity*.
numerus, -i, M., *number, amount, account*; **numerō** with gen., *in the quality of, as*.
Numida, -ae, M., a *Numidian*.
nummus, -i, M., a *coin*.
numquam [ne-numquam], adv., *never*.
nunc [num-ce], adv., *now*; etiam nunc (of past time), *even then*.

nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [nuntius],
I. v. a., *announce, report, bring
or send news, make known.*

nūntius, -i, N., *messenger, courier;
message, tidings, news.*

nūper [novi-per like parumper],
adv., *lately, recently.*

nūsquā [ne-usquā], adv., *now-
where.*

nūtus, -ūs [nuo], M., *nod, sign, beck,
bidding.*

O

ob, adv. in comp. and prep. with
acc., *on account of, for*; in comp.,
toward, to, against.

obae-rātus, -a, -um [ob-aerātus
(not used), aēs], adj., *indebted*;
as noun, *a debtor, a bondman* (for
debt).

obdūco, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus
[ob-duco], 3. v. n., *draw in
front of, extend before.*

obeo, -ire, -ii, -itus [ob-eo], irr. v.
a., *go to, go toward, go to meet*;
attend to, see to.

obiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [ob-
iatio], 3. v. a., *throw in the way
of, place in front, present, expose.*

obiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of obiciō.

obitus, -ūs [ob-eo], M., *(going to);
going to death, death, destruction.*

oblātus, -a, -um, p. p. of offero.

obliquē [obliquus], adv., *slanting,
on a slant, obliquely.*

obliquus, -a, -um, adj., *slanting,
crosswise.*

obliviscor, -livisci, -lītus, 3. v.
dep., *forget.*

obsecrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ob sa-
crum], I. v. a., *adjure, implore,
beseech, entreat.*

obsequentia, -ae [obsequor, com-
ply], F., *compliance, obsequious-
ness, deference.*

observō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ob-
servo], I. v. a., *watch, guard,
keep, maintain, observe, comply
with, celebrate.*

obses, -idis [cf. obsideo], M. and
F., *hostage.*

obsessiō, -ōnis [obsideo], F.,
blockade, siege.

obsessus, -a, -um, p. p. of obsideo.
obsideō, -sidere, -sēdī, -sessus [ob-
sedeo], 2. v. a., *beset, blockade,
besiege, invest.*

obsidiō, -ōnis [cf. obsideo and
obsessio], F., *siege, blockade,
oppression.*

obsignō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ob-sig-
no], I. v. a., *set a seal upon, seal,
seal up.*

obsistō -sistere, -stittī, no p. p.
[ob-sisto], 3. v. n., *oppose, with-
stand, resist.*

obstinātē [obstinatus, p. p. of
obstino, persist], adv., *persistent-
ly, stubbornly.*

obstrictus, -a, -um, p. p. of ob-
stringo.

obstringō, -stringere, -strinxī,
-strictus [ob-stringo], 3. v. a.,
*bind, tie; put under obligation,
pledge.*

obstructus, -a, -um, p. p. of ob-
struo.

obstruo, -struere, -struxī, -strūctus
[ob-struo, pile], 3. v. a., *built in
front of, against; block up, bar-
ricade.*

obtemperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus [ob-
tempero], I. v. n., *comply with,
submit, obey.*

obtestor, -ārī, -ātus [ob-testor, cf.
testis, a witness], I. v. dep., *call
to witness, adjure, implore, be-
seech, entreat.*

obteneō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus [ob-
teneo], 2. v. a., *hold against,
hold fast; retain, maintain, keep,
hold, occupy, possess.*

obtuli, perf. of offero.

obveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventūrus
[ob-venio], 4. v. n., *come in one's
way, fall to; fall in with, meet.*

obviam [ob-viam], adv., *in the
way, to meet.*

occāsiō, -ōnis [cf. occīdo], F., *op-
portunity.*

occāsus, -ūs [ob-casus, occīdo],
M., *falling, setting; the west.*

occidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cāsūrus [ob-
cado], 3. v. n., *fall, be slain,
perish; set; occidēns, -entis,
pres. p. as adj., setting.*

occidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cīsus [ob-
caedo], 3. v. a., *kill, slay*.

occisus, -a, -um, p. p. of **oc-
cido**.

occultātiō, -ōnis [occulto], F.,
concealment.

occultē [occultus], adv., *secretly*.

occultō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [freq. of
occulo, *hide*], 1. v. a., *hide, con-
ceal, keep secret*.

occultus, -a, -um [p. p. of **occulo**,
hide], adj., *concealed, hidden, se-
cret, in ambush*.

occupātiō, -ōnis [occupo], F., *em-
ployment, business, affairs, occu-
pation*.

occupō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [ob- stem
akin to **capiō**], 1. v. a., *take pos-
session of, lay hold of, seize, usurp, employ*.

occurrō, -currere, -curri (-cucurri),
-cursurus [ob-curro], 3. v. n., *run
toward, run to meet, encounter, fall
in with; occur; offset, oppose, baffle*.

Ōceanus, -ī [Greek], M., *the ocean*.

Ocelum, -ī, a town of the Graioceli,
in the Alps.

octāvus, -a, -um [octo], num. adj.,
eighth.

octingenti, -ae, -a [octo-centum],
num. adj., *eight hundred*.

octō, indecl. num. adj., *eight*.

octōdecim [octo-decem], indecl.
num. adj., *eighteen*.

Octodūrus, -ī [Celtic], M., a town of
the Veragri, now *Martigny*.

octōgēni, -ae, -a [octu], distrib.
num. adj., *eighty each*.

octōgintā [octo], indecl. num. adj.,
eighty.

octōni, -ae, -a [octo], adj., *eight
at a time, eight each, eight by
eight*.

oculus, -ī, M., *eye*.

ōdī, ōdisse, perf. with pres. sense
[akin to **odium**], irr. v. a., *hate, detest*.

odium, -ī, N., *hate, hatred*.

offendō, -fendere, -fendi, -fēsus
[ob-fendo, *strike*], 3. v. a. and n.,
strike against, hit against; hurt, shock, wound.

offensiō, -ōnis [offendo], F., *striking
against; offense, hurting, wounding*.

offerō, offerre, obtuli, oblātus [ob-
fero], irr. v. a., (*bring to*), *offer, bring
before, present, bestow, confer; expose, cast in the way of*.

officiū, -ī, N., *service, favor, kindness; duty, obligation; sense
of duty, allegiance, obedience; employment, business*.

Ollovicō, -ōnis, a king of the Nitio-
broges.

omittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus [ob-
mitto], 3. v. a., *let go, throw away, neglect, give up, lay aside*.

omniō [omnis], adv., *altogether, entirely, in all, altogether, only; after negatives, at all*.

omnis, -e, adj., *all, every, the whole, every kind of; omnia, everything*.

onerārius, -a, -um [onus], adj., *of
burden; nāvēs, transports, freight ships*.

onerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [onus], 1. v. a., *load, freight*.

onus, -eris, N., *load, burden, freight, cargo; weight*.

opera, -ae [cf. **opus**], F., *work, labor, pains, care, attention; aid, service, agency; operam dare, take pains*.

opiniō, -ōnis, F., *supposition, belief, expectation; notion, idea; impression; reputation*.

oportet, -ēre, -uit, no p. p., 2. v. impers., *it behooves, one ought, it is proper, needful*.

oppidānus, -a, -um [oppidum], adj., *belonging to a (the) town; as noun, M. plur., the townspeople*.

oppidum, -ī, N., (*fortified*) *town; stronghold, refuge*.

oppōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positus [ob-pono], 3. v. a., *set against, oppose; oppositus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *opposite, in the way, over against*.*

opportūnē [opportunus], adv., *seasonably, at a fit time*.

opportunitās, -tātis [opportunus], F., *timeliness, fitness, conven-*

ience, good luck, favorable moment, advantage.
opportūnus, -a, -um, *fit, suitable, favorable, timely, advantageous, lucky.*
oppositus, -a, -um, p. p. of **oppono**.
oppressus, -a, -um, p. p. of **opprimo**.
opprimō, -primere, -pressi, -pressus [ob-premo], 3. v. a., (*press against*), *crush, overwhelm, overpower, surprise.*
oppugnātiō, -ōnis [oppugno], F., *attack, assault, siege.*
oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ob-pugno], 1. v. a., *attack, assault, besiege.*
ops, opis, F., *help, aid*; plur., *resources, means, strength, wealth, influence.*
optātus, -a, -um [p. p. of **opto**, *wish*], adj., *desired, desirable, wished for, welcome.*
optimē, superl. of **bene**.
optimus, -a, -um, superl. of **bonus**.
opus, operis, N., *work, labor*; a *work, works* (of fortification).
opus, N. indecl., *need, necessity*; *opus est, it is necessary.*
ōra, -ae, F., *coast, shore.*
ōrātiō, -ōnis [oro], F., *speech, harangue, oration, address, talk, language, plea.*
ōrātor, -ōris [oro, *speak*], M., *speaker, pleader, orator, envoy.*
orbis, -is, M., *circle*; *orbis terrarum*, the world.
Orcynia, -ae, F., the same as **Hercynia**, which see.
ōrdō, -inis, M., *series, row, tier, rank, grade, course* (of masonry), *arrangement, plan, order.*
Orgetorix, -Igis, M., a chief of the Helvetii.
orior, oriri, ortus, 3. and 4. v. n., *rise, arise, spring up*; *start, begin, have its source*; **oriēns**, -entis, pres. p. as adj., *rising*; sc. **sōl**, *sunrise, the east.*
ōrnāmentum, -ī [orno], N., *decoration, distinction, honor.*
ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1. v. a., *furnish, equip, supply, adorn*; *honor.*

ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [ōs], 1. v. a. and n., *speak*; *beg, entreat, pray.*
ortus, -a, -um, p. p. of **orior**.
ortus, -tūs [orior], M., *rising*; *source, origin, birth.*
ōs, -ōris, N., *mouth, face.*
Osismi, -ōrum, M. plur., a tribe in the extreme northwest of Gaul.
ostendō, -tendere, -tendi, -tentus [obs (ob)-tendo], 3. v. a., (*stretch toward*), *show, point out, display, exhibit*; *tell, declare, make known.*
ostentātiō, -ōnis [ostento], F., *show, display, pride.*
ostentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [freq. of ostendo], 1. v. a., *show, display, show off.*
otium, -ī, N., *rest, quiet, leisure.*
ōvum, -ī, N., *egg.*

P

pābulātiō, -ōnis [pabulor], F., *foraging, getting fodder.*
pābulātor, -ōris [pabulor], M., a *forager.*
pābulor, -ārī, -ātus [pabulum], 1. v. dep., *forage, get fodder.*
pābulum, -ī, N., *fodder.*
paciscor, -isci, pactus (paciscō, -ere), 3. v. dep., *bargain, agree.*
pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [pax], 1. v. a., *make peaceful, subdue, pacify.*
pactum, -ī [N. p. p. of **paciscor**] N., *agreement, bargain, arrangement*; *method, manner.*
pactus, -a, -um, p. p. of **paciscor**.
Padus, -ī, M., the *Po*, chief river of N. Italy.
paene, adv., *nearly, almost.*
paenitet (poe-), -ēre, -uit, 2. v. a., *impers., it repents one* (person in the accusative), *one repents, one regrets.*
pāgus, -ī, M., *district, canton.*
palam [cf. clam], adv., *openly, publicly.*
palma, -ae [Greek], F., *the palm of the hand, the (open) hand.*
palūs, -ūdis, F., a *marsh, swamp, morass.*

- palūster**, -tris, -tre [palus], adj., *marshy, swampy*.
- pandō**, pandere, pandi, pāssus, 3. v. a., *spread out, stretch out; loosen, dishevel (hair)*.
- pār**, paris, adj., *like, alike, similar, equal, a match for*.
- parcē** [parcus, *sparing*], adv., *sparingly*.
- parcō**, parcere, peperci (parsi), parsūrus (parciturus), 3. v. n., *spare, use sparingly, economize; spare (life), save alive*.
- parēns**, -entis [pario], M. and F., *parent, father or mother*.
- parentō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1. v. n., *offer sacrifices in honor of the dead (especially one's parents and relatives); avenge (the death of any one)*.
- pārēō**, pārēre, pārui, pāritūrus, 2. v. n., *appear; obey, submit to*.
- pariō**, parere, peperī, partus (paritūrus), 3. v. a., *bring forth, bear, produce; gain, acquire, secure*.
- Parisii**, -orum, M., a tribe of Celtic Gaul, whose town, Lutetia, is now *Paris*.
- parō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1. v. a., *prepare, get ready, procure, provide, obtain, purchase, arrange, get ready for; parātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *ready, prepared, resolute*.*
- pars**, partis, F., *part, share, portion; region, direction, side; trēs partēs*, three fourths; **ex parte**, *in part*; **partim** (regular acc. **partem**), acc. as adv., *partly, in part*; **partim . . . partim**, *some . . . others*.
- partim**; see **pars**.
- partior**, -īrī, -ītus, 4. v. a., *divide; partitīs temporibus*, *by turns, alternately*.
- partus**, -a, -um, p. p. of **pario**.
- parum** [cf. **parvus**], adv., compar. **minus**; superl. **minimē**; *too little, little, not enough*.
- parvulus**, -a, -um [dimin. of **parvus**], adj., *very small, very little, very young; insignificant, trifling*.
- parvus**, -a, -um, adj., compar. **minor**; superl. **minimus**; *small, little, trifling, insignificant*.
- pāssim** [cf. **pando**], adv., *all about, here and there, in all directions*.
- pāssus**, -a, -um, p. p. of **pando**.
- passus**, -a, -um, p. p. of **patior**.
- passus**, -ūs [pando], M., *pace, step, stride*; as a measure of length, *a double pace = five feet*; **mille passuum**, 5,000 (Roman) feet, a (Roman) mile.
- patefaciō**, -facere, -fēci, -factus [pateo-facio], 3. v. a., *lay open, throw open, open; reveal, bring to light*.
- patefactus**, -a, -um, p. p. of **patefaciō**.
- patefiō**, pass. of **patefaciō**.
- pateō**, -ēre, -uī, no p. p., 2. v. n., *be open, lie open, extend, spread, stretch; be passable; patēns, -entis, pres. p. as adj., *open, exposed, passable*.*
- pater**, -tris, M., *father*; plur., *ancestors, forefathers*.
- patienter** [patiens, pres. p. of **patior**], adv., *patiently, submissively*.
- patientia**, -ae [patiens, pres. p. of **patior**], F., *endurance, forbearance*.
- patior**, pati, passus, 3. v. dep., *suffer, bear, endure, allow, permit*.
- patrius**, -a, -um [pater], adj., *of a father, of one's fathers, ancestral*.
- patrōnus**, -ī [pater], M., *protector, patron, defender*.
- patruus**, -ī [pater], M., *a father's brother, a paternal uncle*.
- paucitās**, -tātis [paucus], F., *fewness, small number*.
- paucus**, -a, -um, adj., *nearly always in plur., few, a few*.
- paulātim** [paulus], adv., *little by little, gradually, by degrees, a few or one at a time*.
- paulisper** [paulus], adv., *a little while, for a short time*.
- paulō** [abl. of paulus], adv., *by a little, a little, slightly, somewhat*.

paululum [paulus], adv., *a very little*.

paulum [neut. acc. of paulus], adv., *a little, somewhat, a short distance*.

pāx, pācis, F., *peace*.

peccō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, I. v. n., *do wrong, transgress*.

pectus, -oris, N., *the breast*.

pecūnia, -ae [pecus], F., *property; money*.

pecus, -oris, N., *cattle, a herd, a flock*, including domestic animals in general, especially sheep and goats; *flesh of cattle*.

pedālis, -ē [pes], adj., *of a foot* (in length, breadth, or thickness), *a foot thick*.

pedes, -itis [pes], M., *foot-soldier*; collective or plural, *infantry*.

pedester, -tris, -tre [pes], adj., *of infantry, of footmen*; iter, *journey on foot or on land, march*.

peditātus, -tus [pedes], M., *infantry; foot*.

Pedius, -i, M., *Q. Pedius*, grand-nephew of Caesar, one of his lieutenants in Gaul.

pēior, -us, compar. of malus.

pēius, compar. of male.

pellis, -is, F., *skin, hide*.

pellō, pellere, pepuli, pulsus, 3. v. a., *drive out, drive away, expel, rout, repulse, defeat, put to flight*.

pendō, pendere, pependi, pēnsus, 3. v. a., *hang, weigh, weigh out, pay (money); pay, i. e., suffer (a penalty)*.

penitus [akin to penes, *with, in the power of*], adv., *deeply, in (or into) the inmost part, entirely; all the way to*.

per, prep. with acc., *through, over, across; over, along; during, throughout, in the course of; through, by, by means of, by the hands of (an agent); by reason of, in the name of*; in many adverbial expressions, e. g., *per vim, forcibly*.

per, adv. in compos., *very, exceedingly, completely, thoroughly*.

perāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of per-ago.

peragō, -agere, -ēgi, -āctus [per-ago], 3. v. a., *carry through, go through with, finish, accomplish, end, close*.

perangustus, -a, -um [per-angustus], adj., *very narrow*.

perceptus, -a, -um, p. p. of percipio.

percipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus [per-capio], 3. v. a., *(take in fully), receive, acquire, obtain, gather, reap; perceive, learn, hear*.

percontātiō, -ōnis [per contor, inquire], F., *questioning, inquiry*.

percurrō, -currere, -cucurri (-curri), cursus [per-curro], 3. v. a., *run through; run along*.

percussus, -a, -um, p. p. of percutio.

percutiō, -cutere, -cussi, -cussus [per-quatio, shake], 3. v. a., *strike through, thrust through, run through*.

perdiscō, -discere, -didici, no p. p. [per-disco], 3. v. a., *learn thoroughly, learn by heart*.

perditus, -a, -um, p. p. of perdo.

perdō, perdere, peridi, perditus [per-do], 3. v. a., *destroy, ruin, abandon; perditus*, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *lost, abandoned, desperate, ruined*.

perducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductus [per-duco], 3. v. a., *lead through, bring along, bring over, bring; prolong, continue, persuade, win over; extend, construct, make*.

perductus, -a, -um, p. p. of perduco.

perendinus, -a, -um [perendie, day after to-morrow], adj., *after to-morrow*.

pereō, -ire, -ii (-ivi), -itūrus [per-eo, go], irr. v. n., *perish, be destroyed, be lost*.

perequitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [per-equito, ride a horse], I. v. a. and n., *ride over, ride around*.

perexiguus, -a, -um [per-exiguus], adj., *very small*.

perfacilis, -ē [per-facilis], adj., *very easy*.

perfectus, -a, -um, p. p. of **perficio**.

perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus [perfero], irr. v. a., *carry through, carry, convey, report; suffer (to the end), bear, endure*.

perficiō, -ficere, -fēct, -fectus [perfacio], 3. v. a., *accomplish, finish, complete, make, carry out; cause, effect, bring to pass*.

perfidia, -ae [perfidus, faithless], *treachery, bad faith*.

perfringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -fractus [perfrango], 3. v. a., *break through*.

perfuga, -ae [perfugio], M., *deserter, fugitive*.

perfugio, -fugere, -fūgī, no p. p. [per-fugio], 3. v. n., *run away, flee for refuge, escape; desert*.

perflugium, -ī [perfugio], N., *refuge, place of refuge*.

pergō, *pergere*, perrēxī, perrēctus [per-rego], 3. v. n., *continue, proceed, keep on, advance*.

periclitōr, -ārī, -ātus [periculum], 1. v. dep., *make trial of, try, hazard, venture, be in danger, be put in peril*.

periculōsus, -a, -um [periculum], adj., *full of danger, dangerous*.

periculum, -ī [old verb perior, try; cf. -per- in experior], N., *trial, test, experiment, attempt; risk, danger, peril*.

peritus, -a, -um [p. p. of old verb perior, try; cf. -peri- in experior], adj., (*tried*), *experienced, skilful*.

perlātus, -a, -um, p. p. of **perfero**.

perlēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **perlego**.

perlegō, -legere, -lēgī, -lēctus [perlego], 3. v. a., *read through*.

perluō, -luere, -luī, -lūtus [per-luo, wash], 3. v. a., *wash; pass., bathe*.

permāgnus, -a, -um [per, adv., -magnus], adj., *very great, very large*.

permaneo, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsūrus [per-maneo], 2. v. n., *remain (to the end), stay, continue*.

permisceō, -miscēre, -miscuī, -mixtus (-mistus) [per-misceo, mix], 2. v. a., *mix (thoroughly), mingle*.

permissus, -a, -um, p. p. of **permitto**.

permittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus [per-mitto], 3. v. a., *let go, give up, grant, yield, allow, permit, leave to, commit, entrust*.

permixtus, -a, -um, p. p. of **permisceo**.

permōtūs, -a, -um, p. p. of **permoveo**.

permoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus [per-moveo], 2. v. a., *move deeply, stir up, excite, influence, affect*.

permulceō, -mulcēre, -mulsi, -mulsus [per-mulceo, stroke], 2. v. a., *smooth over; soothe, appease, calm*.

perniciēs, -ēī, F., *destruction, ruin*.

perpaucus, -a, -um [per-paucus], adj., *very few*.

perpendiculum, -ī [per-pendo], N., *a plumb-line; ad perpendiculum, perpendicularly*.

perpetior, -peti, -pessus [per-patior], 3. v. dep., *suffer (to the end), bear patiently, endure*.

perpetuus, -a, -um, adj., *constant, uninterrupted, continuous, unbroken, entire, perpetual; in perpetuum, forever; perpetuō, abl. as adv., continually, constantly, without interruption, always*.

perquirō, -quīrere, -quīsi, -quīsitus [per-quaero], 3. v. a., *make (careful) search for, inquire (diligently) about, ascertain*.

perumpō, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptus [per-rumpo], 3. v. a. and n., *break through, force a passage through, break*.

perruptus, -a, -um, p. p. of **perumpo**.

perscribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptus [per-scribo], 3. v. a., *write out, report in writing*.

persequor, -sequi, -secutus [per-sequor], 3. v. dep., *follow up, pursue; punish, avenge; assail, attack, accomplish, perform*.

perseverō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [per-severus, strict], 1. v. n., *persist*.

persolvō, -solvere, -solvi, -solutus [per-solvo], 3. v. a., *pay* (in full), *discharge* (completely); *pay*, *suffer* (punishment).

perspectus, -a, -um, p. p. of **perspicio**.

perspiciō, -spicere, -spexi, -spectus [per-specio, look], 3. v. a., *see through*, *look through*, *examine*; *perceive*, *observe*, *learn*, *ascertain*.

perstō, -stāre, -stiti, -statūrus [persto], 1. v. n., *stand firm*, *persist*.

persuadeō, -suādēre, -suāsi, -suāsus [per-suadeo, advise], 2. v. a. and n., *persuade*, *induce*, *prevail upon*, *convince*, *make (some one) believe*.

perterreō, -terrēre, -terrui, -territus [per-terreo], 2. v. a., *frighten* (*thoroughly*), *terrify*, *alarm*.

pertinācia, -ae [pertinax, per-tenax (teneo)], F., *obstinacy*, *stubbornness*, *persistence*.

pertineō, -tinēre, -tinui, no p. p. [per-teneō], 3. v. n., *stretch toward*, *extend*, *tend*; *have to do with*, *concern*, *belong to*, *pertain to*, *relate to*.

perpuli; see **perfero**.

perturbatio, -ōnis [perturbo], F., *confusion*, *disorder*, *alarm*, *panic*.

perturbō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [perturbo, disturb], 1. v. a., *confuse*, *disorder*, *embarrass*, *alarm*.

pervagor, -ārī, -ātus [per-vagor, rove], 1. v. dep., *roam about*, *wander*, *scatter*.

pervenio, -venire, -vēni, -ventus [per-venio], 4. v. n., *come (to)*, *reach*, *arrive (at)*; *fall to*.

perventus, -a, -um, p. p. of **pervenio**.

pēs, pedis, M., *the foot*; *a foot* (as a measure) = .97 of an English foot; **pedem referre**, *retreat*, *fall back*.

petō, petere, petivi, petitus, 3. v. a. and n., *reach for*, *aim at*, *attack*, *assail*; *ask*, *seek*, *demand*; *strive for*; *go to or toward* (a place).

Petrocorii, -orum, M. plur., a nation north of the Garumna (Garonne), whose name appears in *Périgord* and *Périgueux*.

Petrōnius, -i, M., *M. Petronius*, a centurion in Caesar's army.

Petrosidius, -i, M., *L. Petrosidius*, a standard-bearer in Caesar's army.

phalanx, -angis [Greek], F., *phalanx*, array of troops in close order, eight or more ranks deep; any solid mass of troops.

Pictones, -um, M. plur., a nation south of the Liger (Loire), in the country now called *Poitou*.

pietās, -tātis [pius, dutiful], F., *dutiful conduct*, *loyal affection*, *patriotism*, *piety*, *devotion*.

pilum, -i, N., *javelin*, the heavy weapon of the Roman legionary.

pilus, -i, M., *a maniple of the triarii*—i. e., the first company in each cohort; see *Introduction*, page xxix.

pinna, -ae, F., *feather*; *battlement*, *parapet*.

Pirustae, -arum, M. plur., an Illyrian people.

piscis, -is, M., *a fish*.

Pisō, -ōnis, M., (1) *L. Calpurnius Piso*, a lieutenant of Cassius when he was defeated by the Helvetii in 107 B. C.; (2) *L. Calpurnius Piso*, grandson of No. (1), father of Caesar's wife Calpurnia; (3) *M. Pupius Piso Calpurnianus*, consul in 61 B. C.; (4) *Piso*, an Aquitanian.

pix, picis, F., *pitch*.

placeō, -ēre -ui, -itus, 2. v. n., *please*, *be agreeable to*, *satisfy*; *impers.*, *placet*, *it pleases*, *it is decided*, *resolved*, *voted*.

placidē [placidus, quiet (cf. placeo)], adv., *quietly*, *calmly*, *gently*.

plācō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [cf. placeo], 1. v. a., *appease*, *pacify*, *conciliate*.

Planus, -i, M.; see **Munatius**.

plānē [planus], adv., *clearly*, *distinctly*, *entirely*.

plānitēs, -ēi [planus], F., *flat surface*, *plain*, *level ground*.

plānus, -a, -um, adj., *flat*, *level*, *even*.

plēbs (plēbēs), -is (ēi) [cf. *plenus*], *F.*, *multitude, the common people, populace.*

plēnē [*plenus*], *adv.*, *fully, completely.*

plēnus, -a, -um [cf. *pleo, fill*], *adj.*, *full, complete, entire.*

plērumque; see *plērusque*.

plērusque, -aque, -umque [cf. *pleo, fill*], *adj.*, *seldom used in sing.*; *plur.*, **plērique**, -aeque, -aque; *many, very many, the most, the majority*; **plērumque**, *N. acc.* as *adv.*, *for the most part, mostly, generally.*

Pleumoxii, -ōrum, *M. plur.*, a tribe in Belgic Gaul, dependents of the Nervii.

plumbum, -i, *N.*, *lead*; **plumbum album**, *tin.*

plūrimus, *superl.* of *multus*.

plūs, *plūris*, *compar.* of *multus*, *more*; **plūrēs**, -ium, *several.*

pluteus, -i, *M.*, *mantelet, breast-work, movable or placed on the top of a rampart.*

pōculum, -i, *N.*, *drinking cup, goblet, bowl.*

poena, -ae [cf. *punio, punish*], *F.*, *penalty, compensation, fine*; *punishment, in general.*

pollex, -icis, *M.*, *thumb*; also *the great toe.*

polliceor, -licēri, -licitus [por-lice-or], 2. v. a., *promise, offer.*

pollicitatiō, -ōnis [polliceor], *F.*, *a promise, offer.*

pollicitus, -a, -um, *p. p.* of *polliceor*.

Pompēius, -i, *M.*, (1) *Cn. Pompeius Magnus*, the famous general, Caesar's rival, a member of the First Triumvirate; (2) *Cn. Pompeius*, interpreter of *Q. Titurius Sabinus*, probably an enfranchised Gaul.

pondus, -eris [cf. *pendo*], *N.*, *weight.*

pōnō, *pōnere, posuī, positus*, 3. v. a., *put, place, lay, set*; *pitch* (a camp); *build, erect, make*; *take off, lay aside, lay down*; *station, post*; *regard, consider*; *pass.*, *be situated, depend on.*

pōns, *pontis*, *M.*, *bridge.*

populatiō, -ōnis [populor], *F.*, *plundering, ravaging, laying waste.*

populor, -āri, -ātus, 1. v. dep., *ravage, lay waste, pillage.*

populus, -i, *M.*, *the people* (politically considered), *nation* (as opposed to individuals).

por-, *prep.* (obsolete), *in composition only, forth.*

porrēctus, -a, -um, *p. p.* of *porrigo*.

porrigō, -rigere, -rēxi, -rēctus [porrego], 3. v. a., *stretch forth*; *passive, extend, be extended.*

porrō [cf. *por*], *adv.*, *further, furthermore, moreover.*

porta, -ae, *F.*, *gate, entrance.*

portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1. v. a., *carry, transport, bring, take.*

portōrium, -i, *N.*, *duty, impost, toll.*

portus, -tūs, *M.*, *harbor, port, haven.*

poscō, *poscere, poposci*, *no p. p.*, 3. v. a., *demand, claim*; *require.*

positus, -a, -um, *p. p.* of *pono*.

possessiō, -ōnis [possideo], *F.*, *possession, occupation*; *in plur.*, *lands, possessions.*

possideō, -sidere, -sēdī, -sessus [por-sedeo, sit], 2. v. a., *occupy, hold, possess.*

possidō, -sidere, -sēdī, -sessus [por-sido, settle], 3. v. a., *take possession of.*

possum, *posse, potui* [pote (potis), able, -sum], *irr. v. n.*, *be able, one can*; *be powerful, have influence*; *fieri posse, be possible*; *quam maximum potest, as great as possible.*

post, *adv.* and *prep.* with *acc.*, *after, afterwards*; *behind, since.*

postea [post ea], *adv.*, *afterwards, later.*

posteaquam [postea quam], *conjunctive adv.*, *after, introducing a clause of time.*

(**posterus**), -a, -um [post], *adj.*, *compar. posterior*; *superl. postremus*; *the following, next, later*; *posterō diē (postridie)*, *the next day*; as *noun, posterī*,

- orum, M. plur., *descendants, posterity*; *postrēmus*, -a, -um, *last, final, rearmost, hindmost*.
- postpōnō*, -pōnere, -posui, -positus [*post-pono*], 3. v. a., *place after, esteem less, disregard, put aside, neglect*.
- postpositus*, -a, -um, p. p. of *post-pono*.
- postquam* [*post quam*], conjunctive adv., (*later than*), *after, introducing a clause of time*.
- postrēmō* [abl. of *postrēmus*], adv., *finally, lastly, at last*.
- postrēmus*, superl. of *posterus*.
- postridiē*, adv., the same as *posterō diē*; see *posterus*.
- postulātum*, -i [p. p. of *postulo*], N., *demand, claim*.
- postulō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, I. v. a., *claim, demand, ask, request, require, make necessary*.
- potēns*, -entis [pres. p. of *possum*], adj., *able, powerful, strong*.
- potentātus*, -tūs [*potens*], M., *power, supremacy, dominion*.
- potentia*, -ae [*potens*], F., *ability, power, might, authority, influence*.
- potestās*, -tātis [*potens* or *potis*, *able*], F., *power, might, authority, right; ability, opportunity, permission*.
- potior*, *potiri*, *potitus* [*potis*, *able*], 4. v. dep., *become master of, get control of, get possession of, obtain, secure, capture*.
- potior*, -us, gen. *potiōris* [compar. of *potis*, *able*], adj., *preferable*; *potius*, N. acc. as adv., *rather, preferably*.
- potitus*, -a, -um, p. p. of *potior*.
- prae*, adv. in compos. and prep. with abl., *before, in comparison with; for, on account of, by reason of; in compos., before, very*.
- praeacūtus*, -a, -um [*prae-acutus* (p. p. of *acuō*)], adj., *sharpened at the end, pointed*.
- praebeō*, *praebere*, *praeui*, *prae-bitus* [*prae-habeo*], 2. v. a., (*hold in front*), *show, exhibit, offer, present, furnish, supply, afford*.
- praecaveō*, -cavēre, -cāvī, -cautus [*prae-caveo*], 2. v. n., *take precaution, be on one's guard*.
- praecēdō*, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessus [*prae-cedo*], 3. v. a., *go before, excel, surpass*.
- praeceps*, -cipitis [*prae-caput*], adj., *head foremost, headlong; in haste, precipitate; precipitous, steep*.
- praeceptum*, -i [p. p. of *prae-cipio*], N., *order, instruction, command*.
- praeceptus*, -a, -um, p. p. of *prae-cipio*.
- praecipio*, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus [*prae-capio*], 3. v. a., *take beforehand, anticipate, suspect; give orders, command, direct, instruct, advise*.
- praecipitō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [*prae-ceps*], I. v. a., *throw headlong; with sē, plunge headlong*.
- praecipuē* [*praecipuus*], adv., *especially*.
- praecipuus*, -a, -um [*prae-capio*], adj., *particular, special*.
- praeclūdō*, -clūdere, -clūsi, -clūsus [*prae-claudio*], 3. v. a., *close (in front of some one), block up, shut off*.
- praecō*, -ōnis, M., *a herald, crier*.
- Praecōninus*, -i, M.; see *Valerius*.
- praecurrō*, -currere, -cucurri (-curri), -cursurus [*prae-curro*], 3. v. n., *run ahead of, get the start of, outstrip; surpass, excel*.
- praeda*, -ae, F., *booty, plunder, prey, spoil*.
- praedicō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, I. v. a., *make known, declare, publish; announce, say, tell, assert; boast*.
- praedor*, -ārī, -ātus [*praeda*], r. v. dep., *plunder, pillage, rob, take booty*.
- praedūcō*, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductus [*prae-duco*], 3. v. a., *lead before, draw in front of, draw around, build (a wall), dig (a ditch) in front of or around a town, etc.*
- praefectus*, -a, -um, p. p. of *praeficio*. As noun, see *praeficio*.

praefērō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus [praefero], irr. v. a., *put before, prefer, choose rather; sē, put one's self in front of.*

praeficiō, -ficere, -fēci, -fectus [prae-facio], 3. v. a., *set over, put in command of; praefectus*, -ī, p. p. as noun, *captain, officer, commander*, of cavalry or auxiliaries.

praefigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixus [prae-figo], 3. v. a., *fasten in front, drive (stakes) in front.*

praefixus, -a, -um, p. p. of **praefigo**.

praemetuō, -metuere, no perf., no p. p. [prae-metuo, fear], 3. v. a. and n., *fear beforehand; be anxious.*

praemittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus [prae-mitto], 3. v. a., *send ahead, send forward.*

praemium, -ī [prae-emo], N., *advantage, profit; reward, recompense, prize, distinction.*

praeeoccupō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [prae-occupō], 1. v. a., *seize beforehand, take possession of in advance.*

praeeoptō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [prae-optō], 1. v. a., *choose rather, prefer.*

praeparō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [prae-paro], 1. v. a., *get ready beforehand.*

praepōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positus [prae-pono], 3. v. a., *set before, put in command of.*

praerumpō, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptus [prae-rumpo], 3. v. a., *break off (in front or at the end).*

praeruptus, -a, -um, p. p. of **praerumpo**, as adj., *steep, precipitous.*

praesaepiō (-sēp-), -saepire, -saepsi, -saeptus [prae-saepio], 4. v. a., *fence off, hedge in, block up.*

praesaepius, -a, -um, p. p. of **praesaepio**.

praescribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptus [prae-scribo], 3. v. a., *(write beforehand), prescribe, command, direct, order.*

praescriptum, -ī [p. p. of **praescribo**], N., *an order, orders.*

praescriptus, -a, -um, p. p. of **praescribo**.

praesēns, -entis, pres. p. of **praesum**; N. plur., **praesentia**, *present circumstances; in praesentia, for the present.*

praesentia, -ae [praesens], F., *presence.*

praesentiō, -sentire, -sēnsi, -sēnsus [prae-sentio], 4. v. a., *perceive beforehand, foresee.*

praesertim, adv., *especially, chiefly.*
praesidium, -ī [prae-sedeo, sit], N., *sitting before, guard, garrison; protection, assistance; fort, post, station; intrā praecidia, within the lines.*

praestō, adv., *at hand, present, ready; praestō esse, appear, meet.*

praestō, -stāre, -stifi, -stātus (-stitus) [prae-sto], 1. v. n. and a., *stand before, excel; (set before), furnish, exhibit; discharge, perform; keep (faith); praestat, it is better.*

praesum, -esse, -fui [prae-sum], irr. v. n., *be before, be in command of, preside over, hold (an office); praesēns, -entis, pres. p. as adj., *present, immediate; in person.**

praeter, adv. and prep. with acc., *besides, except, beyond, by, past, contrary to.*

praetereā [praeter ea], adv., *besides, further, moreover.*

praetereō, -īre, -iī, -itus [praeter-eo], irr. v. a. and n., *go past, pass by, pass over, omit, neglect; praeteritus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *past; as noun, praeterita*, -ōrum, N., *the past.**

praeteritus, -a, -um, p. p. of **praetereō**.

praetermittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus [praeter-mitto], 3. v. a., *let go by, omit, pass over, neglect.*

praeterquam [praeter-quam], conjunctive adv., *except, besides, other than.*

praetor, -ōris [for prae-itor, fr. eo], M., *leader, commander, general;*

praetor, a Roman magistrate, next below a consul in rank; see Introduction, page xii, foot-note.
praetōrius, -a, -um [praetor], adj., of a praetor, of a general; **praetōria** cohors, the general's body-guard.
praeūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ūstus [praeuro], 3. v. a., burn at the point.
praeūstus, -a, -um, p. p. of **praeūrō**.
praevertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus [prae-vertō], 3. v. a., anticipate, attend to beforehand.
prāvus, -a, -um, adj., crooked; wrong, bad.
premo, premere, pressī, pressus, 3. v. a., press, crowd, harass, attack, oppress, pursue closely, burden, distress.
prēndō (prehendo), prēndere, prēndi, prēnsus, 3. v. a., seize, take, grasp.
pretium, -i, N., price, value, worth, cost.
prex, **precis** [used in sing. in dat., acc., and abl. only; usually used in plur.], F., prayers, entreaties.
pridiē, adv., on the day before, followed by the genitive.
primipilus, -i [primus-pilus], M., the first centurion of a legion; see Introduction, page xxix.
primō [abl. of primus], adv., at first, in the first place.
primum [acc. of primus], adv., first, at first, in the first place; cum **primum**, as soon as; **quam primum**, as soon as possible.
primus, -a, -um, adj., compar. **prior**; first, the first, front, the beginning of; in **primis**, especially.
princeps, -ipis [primus-capio], adj., (taking first place), chief, first, leading, foremost; as noun, leader, chief, head, prince.
principātus, -tūs [princeps], M., first place, leadership, headship, rule, dominion.
prior, -us, gen. -ōris, compar. adj.; superl. **primus**; former, previous, in advance; with infin., the first to, etc.; **priōrēs**, those in advance;

prius, N. as adv., before, sooner, earlier, previously.
pristinus, -a, -um, adj., former, early, ancient; **pristinus diēs**, the day before.
prius; see **prior**.
priusquam [prius quam], conjunctive adv., before, earlier than; **quam** is often separated from **prius** by intervening words.
privātīm [privatus], adv., as individuals, as private persons.
privātus, -a, -um [p. p. of privo], adj., (deprived); private, personal, individual.
pro, adv. in compos. and prep. with abl., before, in front of; for, in behalf of, instead of, by way of, as; in accordance with, considering, in view of, in proportion to, in comparison with, on account of; in compos., forth, before, away, down.
probō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [probus, good], I. v. a., try, test, prove; approve, recommend, adopt.
prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessus [pro-cedo], 3. v. n., go forth, go forward, advance, proceed.
Proculus, -i, M.; see **Valerius**.
prōclīnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [pro-clino (obsolete), incline], I. v. a., bend forward; pass., incline or tend to its ruin or fall or close.
prōcōsul, -ulis [pro consule], M., proconsul, ex-consul, general or governor with consular authority in his province.
procul, adv., at a distance, far off, from afar.
prōcumbō, -cumbere, -cubui, no p. p. [pro-cumbo, lie], 3. v. n., fall forward, fall prostrate, sink down, lie down (to rest); slope, lean.
prōcūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [pro-curo], I. v. a., take care of, attend to.
prōcurrō, -currere, -curri (-cucurri), -cursurus [pro-curro], 3. v. n., run forward, rush forth, charge.
prōdeō, -ire, -ivi (-ii), -itus [prō(d)-eo], irr. v. n., go forth or out, come forth or out, go forward, advance,

prōdesse; see prōsum.

prōditio, -ōnis [prodo], F., (*giving away*), *betrayal, treason, treachery*.

prōditor, -ōris [prodo], M., *betrayor, traitor*.

prōditus, -a, -um, p. p. of prodo.

prōdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus [pro-do], 3. v. a., *put forth, publish; transmit, hand down; surrender, betray, abandon*.

prōducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductus [pro-duco], 3. v. a., *lead forth or out, bring out, draw up; prolong, protract, extend*.

prōductus, -a, -um, p. p. of pro-duco.

proelior, -ārī, -ātus [proelium], 1. v. dep., *fight*.

proelium, -ī, N., *battle, fight, engagement, combat* (a general engagement or a skirmish); *proelium committere, to join battle, engage*.

profectiō, -ōnis [cf. proficiscor], F., *departure, setting out, start*.

prōfectus, -a, -um, p. p. of proficior.

profectus, -a, -um, p. p. of proficiscor.

prōferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus [pro-ferō], irr. v. a., *bring forth or out, produce*.

prōficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [pro-facio], 3. v. n. and a., (*get forward*), *make progress, gain, accomplish something, profit, be of use*.

proficiscor, -ficiscī, -fectus, 3. v. dep., *start, set out, depart, march, travel*.

profiteor, -fiterī, -fessus [pro-fateor, confess], 2. v. dep., *declare openly, avow, offer*.

prōfligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [pro-fligo, dash], 1. v. a., (*strike down*), *overthrow, defeat, rout, put to flight*.

prōfluō, -fluere, -flūxī, no p. p. [pro-fluo], 3. v. n., *flow forth, issue*.

profugio, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus [pro-fugio], 3. v. n., *flee forth, flee, escape*.

prōgnātus, -a, -um [pro-(g)natus, p. p. of nascor], adj., *sprung, descended*; as noun, *descendant*.

prōgredior, -gredi, -gressus [pro-grior], 3. v. dep., *step forward, march forward, advance, proceed*.

prōgressus, -a, -um, p. p. of progredior.

prohibeō, -hibēre, -hibuī, -hibitus [pro-habeo], 2. v. a., *hold off, restrain, prevent, hinder, forbid, stop, debar, protect, defend*.

prohibitus, -a, -um, p. p. of prohibeo.

prōiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [pro-iacio], 3. v. a., *throw away, abandon, reject; throw, cast; se prōicere, cast one's self, leap*.

proinde [pro-inde], adv., *hence, therefore, accordingly*.

prōminēns, -entis, pres. p. of promineo.

prōmineō, -minēre, -minuī, no p. p. [pro-mineo (not used), project], 2. v. n., *project, lean over, hang over*.

prōmiscuē [promiscuus, pro-misceo, mix], adv., *in common, indiscriminately*.

prōmissus, -a, -um, p. p. of promitto.

prōmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missus [pro-mitto], 3. v. a., (*let go forward*); (of hair) *let grow long; promise*.

prōmōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of promoveo.

prōmoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus [pro-moveo], 2. v. a., *move or push forward, advance*.

prōptus, -a, -um [p. p. of promoveo, bring forth], adj., *ready, quick*.

prōmunturium (-mont-), -ī [cf. promineo], N., *headland*.

prōnē [pronus, inclined forward], adv., *leaning, with a slope, at an incline*.

prōnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [pronuntio], 1. v. a., *make known, declare, proclaim, give (public) orders*.

prope, adv. and prep. with acc., *near*; *almost*, *nearly*; compar. *propius*, *nearer*; superl. *proximē*, *next*, *nearest*, *very near*; *late-ly*, *recently*, *last*.

prōpellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsus [pro-pello], 3. v. a., *drive off*, *put to flight*, *rout*.

properō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [properus, *quick*], 1. v. a. and n., *hurry*, *hasten*.

propinquitās, -tātis [propinquus], F., *nearness*; *relationship*, *nearness of kin*.

propinquus, -a, -um [cf. prope], adj., *near*, *neighboring*, *related* (by blood); as noun, *propinqui* (-ae), -ōrum (-ārum), M. and F. plur., *relatives*, *kinsfolk*.

propior, -us, gen. -ōris, compar. adj.; superl. *proximus* [no positive, cf. prope], *nearer*; *proximus*, -a, -um, *nearest*, *next*, (of time) *last*; like prep. prope, with acc., *proximī Rhēnum*, *those nearest the Rhine*; also with dat.

prōpōnō, -ponere, -posui, -positus [pro-pono], 3. v. a., *place before*, *put forward*, *set forth*, *expose to view*, *lay before*, *hang out* (a flag); *offer*, *present*, *make known*, *represent*.

prōpositus, -a, -um, p. p. of pro-pono.

proprius, -a, -um, adj., *one's own*, *special*, *peculiar*; *proprium*, -i, N., as noun, *peculiarity*, *characteristic*.

propter, adv. and prep. with acc., *near*, *hard by*; *on account of*, *because of*.

propterea [propter-ea], adv., *on this account*, *therefore*; with quod, *because*.

prōpugnātor, -tōris [pro-pugno], M., *defender*.

prōpugnō, -āre, -āvi, -āturus [pro-pugno], 1. v. n., *fight in front*, *sally out* (*fighting*).

prōpulsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [propulso, intens. of pello], 1. v. a., *drive off*, *keep back*, *repel*.

prōra, -ae [Greek], F., *pro*, *bow* of a vessel.

prōruō, -ruere, -rui, -rutus [pro-ruo], 3. v. a., *throw down*, *demolish*, *tear down*.

prōrutus, -a, -um, p. p. of proruo. prōsecūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of prosequor.

prōsequor, -sequi, -secūtus [prosequor], 3. v. dep., *pursue*, *follow*, *escort*; *address*, *irrat*.

prōspectus, -tūs [prospicio], M., *view*, *outlook*, *sight*.

prōspiciō, -spicere, -spexi, -spectus [pro-specio], 3. v. a. and n., *look forward*, *look out*; *provide for*, *look out for*.

prōsternō, -sternere, -strāvi, -strātus [pro-sterno], 3. v. a., *overthrow*, *destroy*, *cast down*.

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, prōfūturus [pro-sum], irr. v. n., *be useful*, *be of service*, *profit*, *help*, *avail*.

prōtegō, -tegere, -tēxi, -tēctus [pro-tego], 3. v. a., *cover*, *protect*, *defend*.

prōterreō, -terrere, -terrui, -territus [pro-terreo], 2. v. a., *frighten away*, *drive off*.

proterritus, -a, -um, p. p. of proterreo.

prōtinus [pro-tenus, as far as], adv., *straight on*, *forward*; *forthwith*, *at once*, *immediately*.

prōturbō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [proturbo, disturb], 1. v. a., *drive off in confusion*, *rout*, *repulse*.

prōvectus, -a, -um, p. p. of prōvehō.

prōvehō, -vehere, -vēxi, vectus [pro-veho], 3. v. a., *carry forward*; pass., (of ships) *put out* (to sea).

prōveniō, -venire, -vēni, -venturus [pro-venire], 4. v. n., *come forth*; *grow*.

prōventus, -tūs [provenio], M., (coming forth), *issue*, *result*, *outcome*, *success*.

prōvideō, -videre, -vidi, -visus [pro-video], 2. v. a., *foresee*, *take care for*, *arrange beforehand*, *provide for*.

prōvincia, -ae, F., *office, sphere of duty, function*; *province in charge of a Roman magistrate*; *the Province*, Roman Gaul.

prōvinciālis, -e [provincia], adj., *of a province, of the Province* (Roman Gaul).

provisus, -a, -um, p. p. of *providéo*.

prōvolō, -āre, -āvi, -āturus [provolō], I. v. n., *fly forth*; *rush out, dash forth*.

proximē; see *prope*.

proximus; see *propior*.

prudentia, -ae [prudens = providens, foreseeing], F., *foresight, sagacity, discretion, wisdom, prudence*.

Ptiānii, -ōrum, M. plur., a tribe in Aquitania.

pūbēs (pūber), -eris, adj., *grown up, adult*; as noun, *pūberēs*, -um, *grown men, adults*.

pūblicē [publicus], adv., *in behalf of the state, for the people, as a community*.

pūblicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [publicus], I. v. a., *(make something the property of the people), confiscate*.

pūblicus, -a, -um [populus], adj., *of the people* (i. e., the state or nation), *of the state, public*.

Pūblius, -i, M., a Roman praenomen.

puđet, *puđere*, *puđuit* (*puđitum est*), 2. v. impers., *it shames one* (person in the accusative), *one is ashamed*.

pudor, -ōris [cf. *puđet*], M., *shame, feeling of shame, sense of honor*.

puer, *puerī*, M., *a boy*; plur., *children*.

puerilis, -e [puer], adj., *of a child, of childhood*.

pūgna, -ae, F., *fight, fighting, battle*.

pūgnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [pugna], I. v. n., *fight, engage in battle*;

pūgnatum est, *the fight went on*.

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, adj., *beautiful, fine, noble*.

Pullō, -ōnis, M., *T. Pullo*, a brave centurion in Caesar's army.

pulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of *pello*.

pulsus, -ūs [pello], M., *stroke*.

pulvis, -eris, M., *dust*.

puppis, -is, F., *the stern*.

pūrgō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [for *purigo*, *purum-ago*], I. v. a., *make clean, clear*; *free from blame, etc.*; *excuse, exculpate, exonerate*.

putō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, I. v. a., *think, suppose, believe, consider, judge*.

Pyrēnaeus, -a, -um, adj., *with montēs, the Pyrenees mountains, between France and Spain*.

Q

Q., for *Quintus*.

quā [qui], adv., *by which, which way, where, on which side*.

quadrāgēni, -ae, -a [quadraginta], distrib. num. adj., *forty each, forty* (in each case).

quadrāgintā, indecl. num. adj., *forty*.

quadringenti, -ae, -a, num. adj., *four hundred*.

quaerō, *quaerere*, *quaesivī*, *quaesitus*, 3. v. a., *look for, seek, inquire about*; *ask, inquire, demand*.

quaestiō, -ōnis [quaero], F., *investigation, inquiry, examination*.

quaestor, -ōris [for *quaesitor* from *quaero*], M., *quaestor*, the state treasurer at Rome; in the army the quartermaster and paymaster, sometimes put in command of a legion.

quaestus, -tūs [quaero], M., *getting, gain*.

quālis, -e, interrog. adj., *of what sort?*

quam, adv. and conj., (1) interrog., *how?* (2) relative, *as, than*; with superlatives, e. g., *quam māximus*, *as great as possible*.

quam ob rem (often written *quam-obrem*), adv. phrase; (1) relative, (*on account of which thing*), *wherefore*; (2) interrogative, *why?*

quamquam [quisquis], conjunctive adv., *although*.

quamvis [quam-vis (volo)], adv., *as you please, however, however much, no matter how*.

quandō, adv., *at any time, ever.*

quantō; see quantus.

quantus, -a, -um, adj., (1) interrog., *how great, how much, how large*; (2) relative, *as great as, as large as, as much as*; after tantus, *as*; with comparatives, quantō . . . tantō, *the . . . the.*

quā rē or quārē, adv. phrase, interrog. or relative, *by which thing, on account of which thing, wherefore, why.*

quartus, -a, -um [quattuor], num. adj., *fourth.*

quasi [quam or quā-si], conj., *as if.*

quattuor, indecl. num. adj., *four.*

quattuordecim [quattuor-decem], indecl. num. adj., *fourteen.*

-que, conj., *and*; enclitic, appended to the word or one word of the phrase which it connects with a preceding word or phrase; -que . . . -que, -que . . . et, *both . . . and.*

quem ad modum (often written quemadmodum), adv. phrase, *how, as, just as.*

queror, queri, questus, 3. v. dep., *complain, complain of, lament, bewail.*

questus, -a, -um, p. p. of queror.

quī, quae, quod, relative pron., *who, which, that; he who, that which; and he, and they, etc.*; after idem, *as*; quō, abl. N., with comparatives, *the more, etc.*

quicquam; see quisquam.

quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque [qui-cumque], indef. relative pron., *whoever, whichever, whatever.*

quidam, quaedam, quoddam or quiddam, indef. pron., *a certain, a kind of; a certain one* (man, woman, thing).

quidem, adv., *indeed, at least, to be sure*; nē . . . quidem, *not even, nor . . . either*; the emphasized word stands between nē and quidem.

quies, -ētis, F., *rest, sleep.*

quiētus, -a, -um [p. p. of quiesco, *be at rest*], adj., *at rest, peaceful, quiet.*

quīn [quī + ne], conj., (1) interrog., *how not?* (2) relative, *by which . . . not, so that . . . not, but that, from* [doing, etc.], *without* (doing, etc.), *than that*; used especially after negative expressions of doubting and hindering.

quinam (quisnam), quaeam, quodnam (quidnam) [qui-nam], interrog. pron., *who? what (possible)? what, pray?*

quincūnx, -ūncis [quinque-uncia, ounce], F., the figure made by five dots on a die, ∴, *quincunx*; in quincūncem, *in quincuncial order, thus*:

quīndecim [quinque-decem], indecl. num. adj., *fifteen.*

quīngentī, -ae, -a [quinque-centum], num. adj., *five hundred.*

quīnī, -ae, -a [quinque], distrib. adj., *five at a time, five* (in each case).

quīnquāgintā [quinque], indecl. num. adj., *fifty.*

quinque, indecl. num. adj., *five.*

quīntus, -a, -um [quinque], num. adj., *fifth.*

Quintus, -I, M., a Roman praenomen.

quis (quī), quae (qua), quid (quod), adj. pron.; (1) interrog., *who? which? what?* (2) indefinite, *any, any one, anything, one*; nē quis, *that no one*; si quis, *if any one*; quid, constantly used with part. gen., *(anything of), any.*

quisnam; see quinam.

quispiam, quaequam, quidpiam (quodpiam), indefinite adj. pron., *any, any one, anything.*

quisquam, —, quidquam (quodquam), indefinite pron., *any one, anything*, used in sentences with negative expressed or implied; as adj., *any.*

quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque), indefinite adj. pron., *each, every*; as substantive, *each one,*

everybody, each thing; with superlatives, e. g., *optimus quisque, all good men*; with numerals, e. g., *decimus quisque, one in ten, every tenth man*.

quisquis, —, *quicquid (quidquid), indefinite relative pron., whoever, whichever, whatever. every one who*.

quivīs, quaevis, quidvis (quodvis) [qui-vis], indef. adj. pron., *any you please*; as substantive, *any one whatever, anything you please*.

quō, see **quī**; adv., (1) interrog., *whither?* (2) relative, *whither, into which*; (3) indefinite, *to any place, anywhere*.

quō, conj., *in order that, that (thereby)*; **quō minus**, *that not, from (doing, etc.)*.

quoā [**quo-ad**], conj., *as far as, as long as, until, till*.

quod [N. of **quī**], conj., *because, inasmuch as, since, as to the fact that, whereas, that*; **quod sī**, *now if, but if*; **quod nī**, *but if not*; **propterea quod**, *because*.

quō minus; see **quo**, conj.
quoniam [**quom(cum)-iam**], conj., *(since now), inasmuch as, seeing that, since, because*.

quoque, conj., *also, too*; follows the word it refers to.

quōque, abl. of **quisque**.

quōque [**quo** with enclitic -que], = **et quō**.

quōqueversus, also written separately **quōque versus** [**quisque-vertō**], adv., *(turned every way), in every direction, all about*.

quot, indecl. adj., (1) interrog., *how many?* (2) relative, *as many, as many as*.

quotannis [**quot-annis**], adv., *every year, yearly, annually*.

quotiēns [**quot**], adv., (1) interrog., *how many times? how often?* (2) relative, *as often as, as many times as*.

R

rādix, -icis, F., *root*; in plur., *the base or foot of a hill or mountain*.

rādō, rādere, rāsī, rāsus, 3. v. a., *shave, scrape*.

raeda (rhaeda, rēda), -ae, F., a four-wheeled wagon, traveling carriage.

rāmus, -ī, M., *branch, bough, limb; prong (of antlers)*.

rapiditās, -tātis [**rapidus**], F., *swiftness, speed, rapidity*.

rapīna, -ae [**rapio, seize**], F., *plundering, pillage, robbery*.

rārus, -a, -um, adj., *thin, scattered, far apart; in small parties, a few at a time*.

rāsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **rado**.

ratio, -ōnis [**reor, ratus, reckon**], F., *reckoning, account, calculation; reason, prudence, judgment, understanding, consideration; plan, method, conduct, measures; science, art, knowledge; reason, ground*.

ratis, -is, F., *raft*.

Rauraci, -ōrum, M. plur., a nation on the upper Rhine.

re-, red-, inseparable prep. used in composition, *again, back, re-, un-*.

rebelliō, -ōnis [**rebellis, re-bellum, or bello**], F., *renewal of war; revolt, rebellion*.

Rebilus, -ī, M.; see **Caninius**.

recedō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessūrus [**re-cedo**], 3. v. n., *go back, retire, retreat, withdraw*.

recēns, -entis, adj., *fresh, late, new, recent*.

recēnsēō, -cēnsēre, -cēnsuī, -cēnsus [**re-censeo, estimate**], 2. v. a., *review, inspect*.

receptāculum, -ī [**recepto**, freq. of **recipio**], N., *refuge, retreat, shelter*.

receptus, -a, -um, p. p. of **recipio**.
receptus, -tūs [**recipio**], M., *drawing back, retreat; place or way of retreat*.

recessus, -ūs [**re-cedo**], M., *going back, retreat; chance to withdraw*.
recidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cāsūrus [**re-cado**], 3. v. n., *fall again, fall upon (later), fall to (in turn)*.

recipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptus [**re-cipio**], 3. v. a., *take back, get*

- again, recover; receive, admit, allow, take; *sē recipere*, retreat, withdraw.
- recitō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [re-cito], read out, read aloud.
- reclinō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [re-clino, lean], I. v. a. and n., lean back, lean.
- rēctē** [rectus], adv., straight, rightly; safely.
- rēctus**, -a, -um [p. p. of rego], adj., straight, direct.
- recuperō** (-cip-), -āre, -āvi, -atus [recipio], I. v. a., recover, regain, get back.
- recūsō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [re-causa, cf. accuso], I. v. a. and n., refuse, reject, decline, object.
- redāctus**, -a, -um, p. p. of redigo.
- redditus**, -a, -um, p. p. of reddo.
- reddō**, -dere, -didī, -ditus [re(d)-do], 3. v. a., give back, return, restore, render, pay, offer; render, make.
- redēptus**, -a, -um, p. p. of redimo.
- redeō**, -īre, -īl (-īvi), -ītūrus [re(d)-eo], irr. v. n., go back, return; come; descend (again).
- redigō**, -īgere, -ēgi, -āctus [re(d)-ago], 3. v. a., drive or bring back, reduce; render, make.
- redimō**, -imere, -ēmī, -ēptus [re(d)-emo], 3. v. a., buy back, redeem, ransom; buy, farm (revenues).
- redintegrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [re(d)-integro, integer], I. v. a., make whole again, restore, renew, revive.
- reditiō**, -ōnis [radeo], F., going back, return.
- reditus**, -tūs [redeo], M., return.
- Redones**, -um, M., a tribe of Britany in the region about Rennes.
- redūcō**, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductus [re-duco], 3. v. a., lead back, bring back, draw back, extend back.
- refectus**, -a, -um, p. p. of reficio.
- referō**, -ferre, -tūlī, -lātus [re-fero], irr. v. a., bear back, bring back; convey, report, announce; restore, pay back; pedem referre, fall back, retreat, withdraw.
- reficiō**, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [re-facio], irr. v. a., make over, re-pair, rebuild; refresh, rest, cause to rest.
- refractus**, -a, -um, p. p. of refringo.
- refringō**, -fringere, -frēgi, -fractus [re-frango], 3. v. a., break, break down, break in.
- refugiō**, -fugere, -fūgi, -fugitūrus [re-fugio], 3. v. n., flee back, flee away, escape, retreat.
- Rēginus**, -ī, M.; see Antistius.
- regiō**, -ōnis [rego], F., direction, line; district, tract, country, region; ē regiōne, (in a line with), opposite; rēctā regiōne, in a straight line.
- regius**, -a, -um [rex], adj., royal, regal, kingly.
- rēgnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus [regnum], I. v. n., reign, rule.
- rēgnum**, -ī [rego], N., a kingdom, royal power, "throne."
- regō**, regere, rēxi, rēctus [cf. rex], 3. v. a., (make straight), direct, rule, manage, control, conduct.
- rēiciō**, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [re-iacio], 3. v. a., throw back, throw down or away, drive back or off, repulse, reject.
- reiectus**, -a, -um, p. p. of reicio.
- relanguescō**, -languescere, -languī, no p. p. [re-languesco, grow faint], 3. v. n., grow feeble or faint.
- relātus**, -a, -um, p. p. of refero.
- relēgō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [re-lēgo, depule], I. v. a., remove, send away, banish.
- relictus**, -a, -um, p. p. of relinquo.
- religiō**, -ōnis [re-ligo, bind], F., sense of obligation, religious scruple, reverence, piety, conscience, religious observance, rite, worship, religion, superstition; plur., matters of religion.
- relinquō**, -linquere, -liquī, -lictus [re-linquo, leave], 3. v. a., leave behind, leave, desert, abandon.
- reliquus**, -a, -um [cf. relinquo], adj., remaining, left; the rest, the other, other.

remaneo, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsūrus [re-maneo], 2. v. n., *stay behind, stay, remain*.

rēmex, -igis [remus], M., *rower, oarsman*.

Rēmi, -ōrum, M. plur., a nation of Belgic Gaul, whose chief town, Durocortorum, is now *Rheims* or *Reims*.

rēmigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus [remex], 1. v. n., *row*.

remigrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus [remigro, migrate], 1. v. n., *return, move back*.

reminiscor, -minisci [re, cf. mens, memini].

remissus, -a, -um, p. p. of *remitto*.

remittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus [re-mitto], 3. v. a., *send back, let go back, throw back; restore, relax, abate; give up, resign*.

remollēscō, -mollēscere, no perf., no p. p. [re-mollesco, grow soft], 3. v. n., *grow soft, grow weak, lose strength*.

remōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of *removeo*.

removeō, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtus [re-moveo], 2. v. a., *move back or away, send away, remove, dismiss; remōtus*, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *distant, far away, remote*.

remūneror, -āri, -ātus [re-munero], 1. v. dep., *repay, reward, recompense*.

Rēmus, -i, M., a *Reman*, one of the *Rēmi*.

rēmus, -i, M., an *oar*.

rēnō, -ōnis, M., *deer-skin, pelt of a reindeer*.

renovō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [re-novo], *make new*, 1. v. a., *renew, begin again*.

renūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [re-nuntio], 1. v. a., *bring back word, report, proclaim, declare elected*.

repellō, -pellere, -ppuli, -pulsus [re-pello], 3. v. a., *drive back, repel, repulse; disappoint*.

repente [abl. of *repens*, sudden], adv., *suddenly*.

repentinus, -a, -um [repens], adj., *sudden, unexpected, hasty*.

reperiō, reperire, repperi, repertus [re-pario], 4. v. a., *find out, find (by inquiring), discover, learn*.

repertus, -a, -um, p. p. of *reperio*. **repetō**, -petere, -petivi, -petitus [re-peto], 3. v. a., *seek again, try to recover, demand, exact*.

repleō, -plēre, -plēvi, -plētus [re-pleo], 2. v. a., *fill up, supply (fully)*.

replētus, -a, -um, p. p. of *repleo*. **reportō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [re-porto], 1. v. a., *carry back*.

reposcō, -poscere, no perf., no p. p. [re-posco], 3. v. a., *demand back, ask for (what is due)*.

repraesentō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [repraesento (fr. praesens), place before], 1. v. a., *do at once, hasten*.

reprehendō, -hendere, -hendi, -hēnsus [re-prehendo (prendo)], 3. v. a., *(catch back), check, restrain, find fault with, blame, rebuke*.

repressus, -a, -um, p. p. of *reprimō*.

reprimō, -primere, -pressi, -pressus [re-premo], 3. v. a., *check, restrain*.

repudiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1. v. a., *spurn, scorn, reject, refuse*.

repugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [re-pugno], 1. v. n., *fight against, resist, oppose*.

repulsus, -a, -um, p. p. of *repello*. **requirō**, -quirere, -quisivi, -quisitus [re-quaero], 3. v. a., *seek, demand, ask*.

rēs, rei, F., *matter, affair, thing; business, transaction, property; fact, circumstance, event; cause; object*; the meaning is so general that *rēs* may be translated by whatever English word suits the context; e. g., **rēs militāris**, *military science, the art of war*; **rēs pūblica**, *the state, public interest*; **rēs gestae**, *operations*; **quā ob rem**, *wherefore*.

rescindō, -scindere, -scidi, -scissus [re-scindo], 3. v. a., *cut down, tear down, destroy*.

resciscō, -sciscere, -scivī, -scītus [re-scisco, inquire], 3. v. a., *discover, find out, learn*.

rescribō, -scribere, -scripsī, -scriptus [re-scribo], 3. v. a., *write again, transfer (by writing) from one rank to another*.

reservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [re-servo], 1. v. a., *keep back, reserve*.

resideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, no p. p. [resedeo, sit], 2. v. n., (sit back), *remain behind, remain*.

residō, -sidere, -sēdī, no p. p. [resido, sit down], 3. v. n., *sink down, settle, subside*.

resistō, -sistere, -stītī, no p. p. [resisto, stand], 3. v. n., *remain behind, stand back, stop, halt; withstand, oppose, resist*.

respicō, -spicere, -spēxī, -spectus [re-specio, look], 3. v. a. and n., *look back, look back at, consider, have a care of, have regard for*.

respondeō, -spondēre, -spondī, -spōnsus [re-spondeo, promise], 2. v. n., *answer, reply*.

respondē, -ī [p. p. of respondeo], N., *a reply, an answer*.

rēs pūblica; see res.

respuō, -spuere, -spuī, no p. p. [respuo, spit], 3. v. a., *spit out; reject*.

restinctus, -a, -um, p. p. of restinguo.

restinguō, -stinguere, -stīnxī, -stīntus [re-stinguo, quench], 3. v. a., *extinguish, put out (a fire)*.

restituō, -stituire, -stitui, -stitūtus [re-statuo], 3. v. a., *set up again, restore, re-establish, replace, renew, rebuild, revive*.

restitūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of restituo.

retentus, -a, -um, p. p. of retineo.

retineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentus [reteneo], 2. v. a., *hold back, restrain; with quā, etc., from doing, etc., keep, detain, retain*.

retrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctus [re-traho], 3. v. a., *drag back, bring back (by force)*.

revellō, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsus [revello, pull], 3. v. a., *tear or pull away, pull up*.

reversus, -a, -um, p. p. of revertō.

revertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versus [re-vertō], 3. v. n., *turn back; only perf. tenses used in active; pass., return, come back, go back*.

revincio, -vincire, -vinxī, -vinctus [re-vincio], 4. v. a., *bind, fasten, tie*.

revinctus, -a, -um, p. p. of revincio.

revocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [re-voco], 1. v. a., *call back, call away, call off, recall*.

rēx, rēgis [cf. rego], M., *a king*.

Rhēnus, -ī, M., *the Rhine*.

Rhodanus, -ī, M., *the Rhone*.

ripa, -ae, F., *bank of a stream*.

rivus, -ī, M., *brook, stream (smaller than flumen)*.

rōbur, -oris, N., *oak (the wood, not the tree)*.

rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1. v. a., *ask, ask for, beg, request; sacramentō rogāre, (to administer the military oath), to enlist*.

Rōma, -ae, F., *Rome*.

Rōmānus, -a, -um [Roma], adj., *Roman; as noun, Rōmānus, -ī, M., a Roman*.

Rōscius, -ī, M., *L. Roscius, one of Caesar's lieutenants*.

rōstrum, -ī, N., *beak; beak of a ship, a projecting prow armed with metal, used as a ram*.

rota, -ae, F., *a wheel*.

rubus, -ī, M., *bramble-bush*.

Rūfus, -ī, M.; see Sulpicius.

rūmor, -ōris, M., *common talk, (confused) report, hearsay, rumor*.

rūpēs, -is [cf. rumpo, break], F., *cliff, rock*.

rūrsus [for reversus], adv., *back, back again, again, in turn*.

Rutēnī, -ōrum, M. plur., *a nation on the N. W. border of the "Province"*.

Rutilus, -ī, M.; see Sempromius.

S

Sabinus, -i, M.; see **Titurius**.

Sabis, -is, M., a river of Belgic Gaul, now the *Sambre*, a tributary of the Meuse or Maas.

sacerdōs, -ōtis [**sacer**, *holy*], M. and F., *priest, priestess*.

sacrāmentum, -i [**sacer**, *holy*], N., *oath*.

sacrificium, -i [**sacer**, *holy*, **facio**], N., *sacrifice, offering*.

saepe, adv., *often, frequently*; compar. **saepius**, *too often; repeatedly, many times*; minimē **saepe**, *very seldom*.

saepenumero [**saepe-numero**], adv., *oftentimes, many a time*.

saepēs, -is, F., *a hedge*.

saevio, -ire, -iī, -itūrus [**saevus**, *fierce*], 4. v. n., *rage, be furious*, (of the wind) *blow fiercely*.

sagitta, -ae, F., *arrow*.

sagittarius, -i [**sagitta**], M., *archer, bowman*.

sagulum, -i [dimin. of **sagum**, *cloak*], N., *a (soldier's) cloak*.

saltus, -tūs, M., *woody ravine, pass, defile, glen*.

salūs, -ūtis [cf. **salvus**], F., *health, safety, well-being, preservation, life*.

Samarobriva, -ae, F., a city of the Ambiani, now *Amiens*.

sancio, **sancire**, **sānxi**, **sānctus**, 4. v. a., *make sacred, make binding, ratify, confirm, establish* (legally); **sānctus**, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *sacred, inviolable, solemn*.

sānctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **sancio**.

sanguis, -inis, M., *blood*.

sāntas, -tātis [**sanus**], F., *health, soundness, esp. soundness of mind, good sense*.

sānō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [**sanus**], 1. v. a., *make sound, cure; repair, make good*.

Santones, -um (-ī, -ōrum), a people in the west of Gaul, whose chief town is now *Saintes*.

Santonī; see **Santones**.

sānus, -a, -um, adj., *sound, healthy* (in body or mind), *sane, reasonable, discreet*.

sapio, -ere, -iī (-ivī), no p. p., 3. v. a. and n., *taste; have sense, understand, be wise*.

sarcina, -ae [**sarcio**], F., *pack, bundle*; plur., *soldier's baggage, packs*, carried by individual soldiers.

sarcio, **sarcire**, **sarsi**, **sartus**, 4. v. a., *mend, patch, repair, make good*.

sarmentum, -i, N., *twigs, brush*; plur., *fagots, fascines*.

satis, adv., *enough, sufficiently, quite, tolerably, rather, very*; often with partitive gen. of a noun; **satis habere**, *consider it enough, be satisfied*.

satisfacio, -facere, -fēcī, -factūrus [**satis facio**], irr. v. a., *do enough for, satisfy, make amends, apologize*.

satisfactio, -ōnis [**satisfacio**], F., *apology, excuse, amends*.

satus, -a, -um, p. p. of **sero**.

saucius, -a, -um, adj., *wounded*; as noun, **saucius**, -i, *a wounded man*.

saxum, -i, N., *rock, (large) stone*.

scālae, -ārum, F. plur., *ladder, scaling ladder*.

Scaldis, -is, M., the *Scheldt*, a river of Belgic Gaul.

scapha, -ae [Greek], F., *a light boat, skiff*.

scelerātus, -a, -um [**scelus**, as if p. p. of a verb, **scelero**], adj., *wicked, villainous, accursed, impious, bad*.

scelus, -eris, N., *crime, wickedness, sin, guilt*.

scienter [**sciens**, pres. p. of **scio**], adv., *knowingly, wisely, skilfully*.

scientia, -ae [**sciens**, pres. p. of **scio**], F., *knowledge, acquaintance, skill, science*.

scindō, **scindere**, **scidi**, **scissus**, 3. v. a., *cut, split, tear; tear down, cut down, destroy*.

scio, **scire**, **scivi**, **scitus**, 4. v. a., *know, understand*.

scorpiō, -ōnis, M., *scorpion*, a machine for shooting darts; *the shot of a scorpion*.

scribō, scribere, scripsi, scriptus, 3. v. a. and n., *write, write down, write a letter*.

scrobis, -is, M. and F., *pit, pitfall, hole in the ground*.

scūtum, -i, N., *shield*, the oblong shield of the Roman legionary.

sē-, **sēd**-, old prep. with abl. and adv. in compos., *apart, away, without*.

sē, acc. and abl. of **suī**.

sebum, -i, N., *tallow*.

secō, secāre, secui, sectus, 1. v. a., *cut, mow, reap*.

sēcŕētō [abl. of **secretus**, p. p. of **secerno**, *separate*], adv., *apart, aside, secretly, in private*.

sectiō, -ōnis [secō], F., *cutting, lot or share of booty, spoils*.

sector, -āri, -ātus [freq. of **sequor**], 1. v. a., *follow, pursue, chase, try to obtain*.

sectūra, -ae [secō], F., *cutting, digging, excavation, shaft, mine, gallery*.

secundum; see **secundus**.

secundus, -a, -um [part. of **sequor**], adj., *following; second; favorable, fortunate, propitious, successful; rēs secundae, prosperity; secundō flūmine, downstream; secundum*, N. acc. as prep. with acc., *along, by the side of; in the direction of, according to; in addition to; immediately after*.

secūris, -is [secō], F., *axe*; plur., *the axes carried by the lictors of Roman magistrates as symbols of their authority over life and death; power, authority*.

secūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of **sequor**.

sed, conj., *but, yet*.

sēdecim [sex-decem], indecl. num. adj., *sixteen*.

sēdēs, -is [cf. **sedeo**, *sit*], F., *seat*; sing. and plur., *home, settlement, abode*.

sēditio, -ōnis [sēd-itio from **eo**], F., *(going apart), civil discord,*

strife, dissension, mutiny, revolt, insurrection, sedition.

sēditiosus, -a, -um [seditio], adj., *factionous, turbulent, mutinous, seditious*.

Sedulius, -i, M., a leader of the Lemovices.

Sedūni, -ōrum, M. plur., a tribe in the Alps.

Sedusii, -ōrum, M. plur., a German people.

seges, -etis, F., *(a growing) crop, field of grain*.

Sēgni, -ōrum, M. plur., a tribe of Belgic Gaul, whose name is preserved in *Segne*.

Segontiāci, -ōrum, M. plur., a tribe in southern Britain.

Segovax (-onax), -actis, M., a British king in Kent.

Segusiāvī (-ānti), -ōrum, M. plur., a people south of the Haedui, and tributary to them.

semel, adv., *once; ut semel, when once, as soon as; semel atque iterum, once and again, over and over, again and again*.

sēmentis, -is [sēmen, *seed*], F., *sowing*.

sēmita, -ae, F., *path, by-path, by-way*.

semper, adv., *always, ever, continually*.

Semprōnius, -i, M., *M. Sempronius Rutilus*, a cavalry officer under Caesar.

senātor, -tōris [cf. **senex**], M., *an old man, elder, senator, counselor*.

senātus, -tūs [cf. **senex**], M., *council of elders, senate*.

senex, -is, adj., compar. *senior; old, aged*; as noun, *old man*.

sēni, -ae, -a [sex], distrib. num. adj., *six at a time, six each, six (in each case)*.

Senones, -um, M. plur., a Gallic nation north of the Haedui, whose chief town, Agedincum, is now *Sens*.

sententia, -ae [sentio], F., *opinion, view, way of thinking, sentiment, feeling, judgment, plan, purpose, sentence, purport, effect*.

sentiō, sentire, sēnsī, sēnsus, 4. v. a., *perceive (by the senses), learn, know, think, feel*.
sentis, -is, M., *brier*.
sēparātim [separatus, p. p. of separo], adv., *separately, apart, privately*.
sēparō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [se-paro], 1. v. a., *separate, part, divide*.
septem, indecl. num. adj., *seven*.
septentrīō, -ōnis [septemtriones], M., properly used in plural, *the seven plow-oxen (the stars in the Great Bear), the north*.
septimus, -a, -um [septem], adj., *seventh*.
septingentī, -ae, -a [septem-centum], num. adj., *seven hundred*.
septuāgintā [septem], indecl. num. adj., *seventy*.
sepultūra, -ae [sepelio, bury], F., *burial*.
Sēquana, -ae, F., *the Seine river*.
Sēquanus, -a, -um, adj. *Sequanian*; M. plur. as noun, *the Sequani*, a Gallic nation, east of the Haedui.
sequor, sequi, secūtus, 3. v. dep., *follow, pursue, attend, accompany, aim at, attain*; *fidem sequi*, with gen., *to attach one's self to*.
Ser., for **Servius**.
sermō, -ōnis [sero, weave, twine], M., *discourse, talk, conversation, speech*.
serō, serere, sēvi, satus, 3. v. a., *plant, sow*.
sērō [abl. of serus, late], adv., *compare. sērius*; superl. *sērissimē*; *late, too late*.
Sertōrius, -i, M., *Q. Sertorius*, a partisan of Marius. After the latter's death he carried on war in Spain against the party of Sulla.
servilis, -e [servus], adj., *of slaves, servile*.
serviō, -īre, -īl (-īvi), -ītūrus, 4. v. n., *be a slave, serve*; *be the slave of, be devoted to, give heed to*.
servitūs, -tūtis [cf. servus and servio], F., *slavery, servitude*.
Servius, -i, M., a Roman praenomen.

servō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, 1. v. a., *watch over, guard, preserve, keep, maintain, observe, heed*.
servus, -i, M., *slave*.
sescentī (sex-), -ae, -a [sex-centum], num. adj., *six hundred*.
sēsē; see **sui**.
sēsquipedālis, -e [sesqui, one and a half, -pes], adj., *a foot and a half long, thick, wide, etc*.
sētius (secius) [compar. of secus, otherwise], adv.; *nihilō sētius*, *none the less, nevertheless*.
seu; see **sive**.
severitās, -tātis [severus, strict], F., *strictness, hardness, sternness, rigor*.
sēvocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [se-voco], 1. v. a., *call aside, call apart*.
sex, indecl. num. adj., *six*.
sexāgintā [sex], indecl. num. adj., *sixty*.
Sextius, -i, M., (1) *T. Sextius*, one of Caesar's lieutenants, (2) *P. Sextius Baculus*, a brave centurion.
sī, *if, in case*; *to see if, to see whether, whether*; *quod sī*, *but if*.
sibi; see **sui**.
Sibusātes, -um, M. plur., a tribe in Aquitania.
sic [si-co], adv., *so, thus, in this way, in such a manner*.
siccitās, -tātis [siccus, dry], F., *dryness, drought*.
sicut (sicuti) [sic-ut], adv., *just as, just as if, as, as it were*.
sidus, -eris, N., *heavenly body, constellation*.
signifer, -feri [signum fero], M., *standard-bearer*.
significātiō, -ōnis [significo], F., *making signs, signal, intimation, demeanor, meaning, sense, significance*.
significō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [signum-facio], 1. v. n., *make signs, make known, indicate, give information, show, declare*.
signum, -i, N., *sign, signal*; *standard*; *signa inferre*, *advance to the attack, charge*; *signa convertere*, *change front*; *ad signa*

- convenire, join the army; ad signa consistere, rally round the standards.
- Silānus, -i, M., *M. Silanus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.
- silentium, -i [silens, pres. p. of sileo, be silent], N., silence, stillness.
- Silius, -i, M., *T. Silius*, a tribune of the soldiers.
- silva, -ae, F., a wood, woods, a forest, forests.
- silvester (-tris), -tris, -tre [silva], adj., wooded, covered with woods or forests.
- similis, -e, adj., like, similar.
- similitūdō, -dinis [similis], F., likeness, resemblance, similarity.
- simul, adv., at the same time, at once, together, as soon as; simul atque, as soon as; simul . . . simul, both . . . and, partly . . . partly.
- simulācrum, -i [simulo], N., likeness, image, effigy.
- simulatio, -ōnis [simulo], F., pretense, deceit, false show.
- simulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [similis], I. v. a., (make like), pretend, feign, make a show of.
- simultās, -tātis [cf. simul and similis, like facultas fr. facilis], F., (likeness), rivalry, jealousy, enmity.
- sīn [si-ne], conj., but if, if however.
- sincērē [sincerus, genuine], adv., honestly, truly, frankly.
- sine, prep. with abl., without.
- singillatim [singuli], adv., one at a time, singly, individually.
- singulāris, -e [singuli], adj., single, one at a time, solitary; singular, extraordinary, unique.
- singuli, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., one at a time, one by one, one apiece, single, each, separate.
- sinister, -tra, -trum, adj., left, on the left hand; in F. sing., sc. manus or pars.
- sinistrōrsus [sinistro-versus], adv., to the left.
- situs, -tūs [sino, put, place], M., situation, position, site.
- sive (seu) [si-ve], conj., or if; sive . . . sive, either . . . or, if . . . or if, whether . . . or.
- socer, -erī, M., father-in-law.
- societās, -tātis [socius], F., alliance, partnership, league, confederacy.
- socius, -i, F., partner, associate, comrade; plur., allies.
- sōl, sōlis, M., the sun.
- sōlācium (sōlātium), -i [cf. consolator], N., comfort, consolation.
- soldurius, -i, M., retainer, follower.
- soleō, solēre, solitus, 2. v. n., be accustomed, be wont.
- sōlitūdō, -dinis [solus], F., loneliness; lonely place, wilderness.
- sollertia, -ae [sollers, adroit], F., ingenuity, skill, cleverness, adroitness.
- sollicitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, I. v. a., stir up, instigate, rouse, incite, tamper with, tempt, induce, persuade.
- sollicitūdō, -inis [sollicitus, anxious], F., anxiety, apprehension, disquiet.
- solum, -i, N., the soil, ground, bottom.
- sōlum [acc. N. of solus], adv., alone, only; nōn solum . . . sed etiam, not only . . . but also.
- sōlus, -a, -um, adj., alone, only.
- solūtus, -a, -um, p. p. of solvo.
- solvō, solvere, solvi, solūtus, 3. v. a., loose; with or without nāvem, nāvēs, set sail, weigh anchor.
- sonitus, -tūs [sono, sound], M., sound, noise.
- sonus, -i [cf. sono, sound], M., sound.
- soror, -ōris, F., sister; ex mātēre, on the mother's side, i. e., a half-sister.
- sors, sortis, F., lot, chance, fate.
- Sōtiātēs, -um, M. plur., a tribe in Aquitania.
- spatium, -i, N., space, extent, distance; space of time, interval, period, lapse of time.
- speciēs, -iēi [cf. specio, look], F., sight, appearance, show, pretense.

spectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [freq. of **specio**, look], I. v. a. and n., look at, regard, have in view, look toward, face, lie toward.

speculator, -tōris [speculor], M., scout, spy.

speculātōrius, -a, -um [speculator], of a scout, scouting, spying, reconnoitering, observing.

speculor, -ārī, -ātus [cf. **specio**, look; **specula**, watch-tower], I. v. dep., spy out, observe, reconnoiter.

spērō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [spes], I. v. a. and n., hope, hope for, expect.

spēs, -ei, F., hope, expectation.

spīritus, -tūs [spiro, breathe], M., breath; spīrit, pride, haughtiness, arrogance.

spoliō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [spolium, booty], I. v. a., strip, despoil, rob, deprive.

spontis (gen.), **sponte** (abl.), no other cases used; gen. not used in Caesar; F., of one's own accord, voluntarily, willingly; on one's own account, by one's own influence.

stabilio, -īre, -īvi (-īl), -ītus [stabilis, firm], 4. v. a., make firm, make stable, establish.

stabilitās, -tātis [stabilis, firm], F., firmness, steadiness, solidity.

statim [sto], adv., on the spot, at once, forthwith, immediately.

statio, -ōnis [sto], F., (standing), post, outpost, picket, guard, duty.

statuō, -uere, -ui, -ūtus [status], 3. v. a., set up; establish, determine, resolve, decide, judge, pass sentence; consider, hold, think.

statura, -ae [sto], F., stature, height of a man.

status, -iūs [sto], M., standing, position, situation, state, condition.

stimulus, -i, M., goad, spur, caltrop.

stipendiārius, -a, -um [stipendium], adj., tributary, subject to tribute; as noun, stipendiārii, -ōrum, M. plur., subjects, tributaries.

stipendium, -i [stips, offering, -pendō], F., tribute, tax.

stipes, stipitis, M., trunk of a tree, post, log.

stirps, stirpis, F. (sometimes M.), stock, stem, trunk; race, family, stock.

stō, stāre, stell, statūrus, I. v. n., stand, be posted; stand by, abide by.

stramentum, -i [stra-, root of sterno, straw], M., straw, thatch, pack-saddle.

strepitus, -tūs [strepo, make a noise], M., noise, confused sound, din, uproar.

studeō, studēre, studi, no p. p. [cf. studium], 2. v. n., be eager for, strive for, be devoted to, desire, cultivate, apply one's self to.

studiōse [studiōsus, zealous], adv., eagerly, zealously.

studium, -i [cf. studeo], N., zeal, eagerness, devotion, enthusiasm, fondness; pursuit, occupation.

stultitia, -ae [stultus, foolish], F., folly, foolishness.

sub, adv. in comp. and prep., (1) with acc., (of motion toward something) under, close to; (of time) just before, about; (2) with abl., under; before (the eyes); just at, at the foot of (a mountain); (3) in compos., under, from under, up, secretly, in succession, slightly.

subactus, -a, -um, p. p. of **sub-igo**.

subdolos, -a, -um [sub-dolus], adj., sly, cunning, wily, crafty.

subducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductus [sub-duco], 3. v. a., lead up, draw up, haul up (on shore); lead off, withdraw.

subductiō, -ōnis [subduco], F., hauling up (on shore), beaching.

subductus, -a, -um, p. p. of **subduco**.

subeō, -īre, -īl, -ītus [sub-eo], irr. v. a., go under; undergo, suffer; approach, go up to, encounter.

subfodiō (suff.), -fodere, -fōdi, -fossus [sub-fodio], 3. v. a., dig under, stab from below.

subfossus, -a, -um, p. p. of **subfodio**.

sūbiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [sub-iacio], 3. v. a., *throw under, throw from under; place under, subject, expose to; place near; subiectus*, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *situated near, near, adjacent*.

subiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of subicio.

subigō, -igere, -ēgi, -actus [sub-ago], 3. v. a., *bring under, subdue, subject, constrain*.

subitō; see **subitus**.

subitus, -a, -um [p. p. of subeo], adj., *(coming up secretly), sudden, unexpected; subitō*, abl. as adv., *suddenly*.

sublātus, -a, -um [sub-(t)latus], p. p. of **tollo**.

sublevō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [sub-levo], 1. v. a., *lift up, lighten, relieve, support, assist, aid*.

sublica, -ae, F., *pile*.

subluō, -luere, no perf., -lūtus [sub-luo], 3. v. a., *wash, flow at the foot of*.

subministrō (summ-), -āre, -āvi, -ātus [sub-ministro, *serve*], 1. v. a., *supply, furnish, provide*.

submittō (summ-), -mittere, -misi, -missus [sub-mitto], 3. v. a., *send up, send to help, send as reinforcements*.

submōtus, -a, -um, p. p. of **submoveo**.

submoveō (summ-), -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtus [sub-moveo], 2. v. a., *drive off, remove, dislodge*.

subruō, -ruere, -rui, -rutus [sub-ruo], 3. v. a., *undermine*.

subsequor, -sequi, -secutus [sub-sequor], 3. v. dep., *follow closely, follow up, succeed*.

subsidiūm, -i [sub-sedeo, *sit*], N., *(sitting near); reserve (troops), support, reinforcement, relief, assistance, help, remedy, resource*.

subsido, -sidere, -sēdi, sessūrus [sub-sido, *sit down*], 3. v. n., *stay behind, remain*.

subsistō, -sistere, -stiti, no p. p. [sub-sisto], 3. v. n., *stop, halt, make a stand, hold out, hold fast*.

subsum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus [sub-sum], irr. v. n., *be under, be near, be close at hand, approach*.

subtrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -trāctus [sub-traho], 3. v. a., *take away, draw off underneath, remove, esp. by stealth*.

subvectiō, -ōnis [subveho], 3. v. a., *bringing up, transportation*.

subvehō, -vehere, -vēxi, -vectus [sub-veho, *carry*], 3. v. a., *bring up*.

subveniō, -venire, -vēni, -ventūrus [sub-venio], 4. v. n., *come to help, come to support, assist, aid, relieve, succor*.

succedō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessūrus [sub-cedo], 3. v. n., *come up, advance, approach, succeed, take the place of; be successful, prosper, go on well*.

succendō, -cendere, -cendi, -cēnsus [sub-cando, not used; cf. **candeo**, *be hot*], 3. v. a., *kindle, set on fire (from below)*.

succēnsus, -a, -um, p. p. of **succendo**.

successus, -ūs [succedo], M., *coming up, approach*.

succidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cīsus [sub-caedo], 3. v. a., *cut at the bottom, cut down, mow, reap*.

succisus, -a, -um, p. p. of **succido**.

succumbo, -cumbere, -cubui, -cubitūrus [sub-cumbo, *lie down*], 3. v. n., *lie down under, sink under, yield, be overcome, give way*.

succurrō, -currere, -curri, -cursūrus [sub-curro], 3. v. n., *run to help, succor, aid, rescue*.

sudis, -is, F., *a stake*.

sūdor, -ōris, M., *sweat; effort, labor, toil*.

Suēba, -ae, F., *a Suebian woman*.

Suēbī (Suēvi), -ōrum, M. plur., *the Suebi (-vi), Swabians, a large and powerful German nation*.

Suēbus, -a, -um, adj., *Suebian, (Suevian), Swabian*.

Suessiōnes, -um, M. plur., *a nation of Belgic Gaul about the town now called Soissons*.

- sufficiō**, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectus [sub-facio], 3. v. a. and n., *provide, supply; suffice, hold out*.
- suffragium**, -ī, N., *vote*.
- Sugambri** (Sig-), -ōrum, M., a German tribe.
- suggestus**, -tūs [sub-gero], M., *mound of earth, raised platform, tribunal*.
- sui** [gen. N. of suus], sibi, sē or sēsē, no nom., *himself, herself, itself, themselves; he, she, they; with inter, each other; with cum, written sēcum; per sē, in or of himself, etc.*
- Sulla**, -ae, M., *L. Cornelius Sulla*, the great dictator, leader of the nobility and antagonist of Marius.
- Sulpicius**, -ī, M., (1) *P. Sulpicius Rufus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants; (2) *Servius Sulpicius Galba*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.
- sum**, esse, fui, futūrus, irr. v. n., *be; often to be translated there is, there are, etc.; with possess. gen., belong to, be characteristic of, be the duty of, etc.*
- summa**, -ae (F. of summus), F., (top), *total, sum, whole; general management, control; summa imperi, chief command*.
- summus**, -a, -um, superl. of superus.
- sūmō**, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptus [sub-emo, take], 3. v. a., *take, take to one's self, get; assume, undertake; expend, spend; inflict (punishment)*.
- sūmptuōsus**, -a, -um [sumptus], adj., *expensive, costly*.
- sūmptus**, -tūs [sumo], M., *expense*.
- super**, adv. in compos. and prep., *above, over, beyond, besides*.
- superbē** [superbus, proud], adv., *proudly, haughtily, arrogantly*.
- superior**; see superus.
- superō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [superus], 1. v. a. and n., *surpass, surmount, excel, overcome, conquer, defeat, subdue; survive, remain, be left over*.
- supersedeō**, -sedēre, -sēdī, -sessūrus [super-sedeo], 2. v. n., *sit above, be above; refrain from*.
- supersum**, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus [super-sum], irr. v. n., *be over and above, remain, survive*.
- superus**, -a, -um, adj., compar. superior; superl. suprēmus or summus; *upper, above, higher; superior, -ius, higher, upper, superior; former, earlier, previous; summus, -a, -um, highest, the top of, greatest, chief, most important, supreme; as noun, summum, -ī, top, end*.
- suppetō**, -petere, -petivī, -petitūrus [sub-peto], 3. v. n., *be at hand, be present, be supplied, be in store, hold out*.
- supplémentum**, -ī [suppleo, fill up], N., *supply, reinforcement*.
- supplex**, -icis, M. and F., *suppliant*.
- supplicatiō**, -ōnis [supplicio, entreat], F., *prayer; esp. (public) thanksgiving, decreed by the Roman Senate for victories*.
- suppliciter** [supplex], adv., *in the manner of suppliants, humbly*.
- supplicium**, -ī [supplex], N., *punishment, death penalty, execution*.
- supportō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [sub-porto], 1. v. a., *bring up, convey, furnish, supply*.
- suprā**, adv., and prep. with acc., *above, beyond, before, previously*.
- susceptus**, -a, -um, p. p. of suscipio.
- suscipiō**, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus [sub(s)-capio], 3. v. a., *take up, undertake, assume, commence, engage in*.
- suspectus**, -a, -um, p. p. of suspicio.
- suspiciō**, -spicere, -spēxī, -spectus [sub-specio, look], 3. v. a. and n., *look from below, look up at, look askance at, suspect; suspēctus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., suspected, mistrusted*.
- suspiciō**, -ōnis, F., *mistrust, suspicion, imputation, impression, indication*.
- suspisor**, -ārī, -ātus [cf. suspicio], 1. v. dep., *mistrust, suspect, surmise*.

sustentō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [sub(s)-tento, freq. of teneo], 1. v. a. and n., *hold up, sustain, hold out against, hold out.*

sustineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentus [sub(s)-teneo], 2. v. a. and n., *hold up, support, hold out against, endure, withstand, check, stop, pull up, rein in; hold out, make a stand.*

sustuli; see tollō.

suus, -a, -um, poss. adj. pron. (reflexive, i. e., referring to the subject of the sentence), *his, her, its, their; his own, etc., advantageous; his usual, characteristic*; as noun, *sui*, -ōrum, M. plur., *his own people, his own soldiers, his own side*; *sua*, -ōrum, N. plur., *his, etc., possessions.*

T

T., for Titus.

tabernāculum, -i [dimin. of tāber-na, hut], N., *tent.*

tabula, -ae, F., *a board, writing tablet, list, record, document.*

tabulātus, -a, -um [tabula], adj., *made of boards*; as noun, *tabulātum*, -i, N., *boarding, flooring, floor, story.*

taceō, tacēre, tacui, tacitus, 2. v. a. and n., *be silent; say nothing about, conceal, pass over in silence*; *tacitus*, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., *silent.*

tacitus, -a, -um, p. p. of taceo.

tālea, -ae, F., *rod, bar.*

tālis, -e, adj., *such, of such a kind.*

tam [cf. quam, nam, etc.], adv., *so, so much, so very.*

tamen, adv., *nevertheless, yet, still, notwithstanding, however, at least.*

Tamesis, -is, M., *the Thames river.*

tametsi [tamen-etsi], adv., *although, though.*

tandem [tam-dem, like idem], adv., *at length, at last*; (in questions) *pray, pray now.*

tangō, tangere, tetigi, tāctus, 3. v. a., *touch, border on.*

tantopere (often written tanto opere), adv., *so earnestly, so greatly, so very much.*

tantulus, -a, -um [dimin. of tantus], adj., *so small, so trifling, so little, so slight.*

tantum; see tantus.

tantummodo [tantum-modo], adv., *(so much only), only, merely.*

tantundem [tantum-dem, like idem], adv., *just so much, just so far.*

tantus, -a, -um, adj., *so much, so great, so important, so small, etc.*; *tanti*, of so great value, worth so much; so much (and no more), only so much; *tantum*, N. acc. as adv., *only, merely, only so much.*

Tarbelli, -ōrum, M. plur., a tribe in Aquitania, whose name is preserved in *Tarbes*.

tardē [tardus], adv., *slowly, late*; *paulō tardius*, rather slowly.

tardō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [tardus], 1. v. a., *delay, check, hinder.*

tardus, -a, -um, adj., *slow, not active, sluggish.*

Tarusātes, -ium, M. plur., a tribe in Aquitania, whose name is preserved in *Tartas*.

Tasgetius, -i, M., a chief of the Carnutes.

taurus, -i, M., *bull.*

Taximagulus, -i, M., a British chief in Kent.

taxus, -i, F., *yew-tree*; *yew*, the poison made from the berries.

Tectosages, -um, M. plur., a branch of the Volcae; their chief town was Tolosa, now *Toulouse*.

tēctum, -i [N. p. p. of tego], N., *roof, house.*

tēctus, -a, -um, p. p. of tego.

tegimentum (tegu-), -i [tego], N., *covering.*

tegō, tegere, tēxi, tēctus, 3. v. a., *cover, thatch, hide, protect.*

tēlum, -i, N., *missile, weapon, dart, javelin, spear.*

temerārius, -a, -um [temere], adj., *rash, reckless, hasty, heedless.*

temerē, adv., *blindly, recklessly, heedlessly, rashly, without good reason.*

temeritās, -tātis [temere], F., *rashness, heedlessness, recklessness, thoughtlessness.*

tēmō, -ōnis, M., *pole (of a wagon or chariot).*

temperantia, -ae [temperans, pres. p. of tempero], F., *self-control, moderation, sobriety, discreetness.*

temperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1. v. a., *control, control one's self; refrain, forbear, abstain from.*

tempestat, -tātis [cf. tempus], F., *weather, esp. bad weather; storm.*

temptō (tentō), -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *try, test, tempt, attempt; assail, attack.*

tempus, -oris, N., *period of time, time; season, occasion, fitting time; circumstances; reliquum tempus, the future.*

Tencterī, -ōrum, M. plur., *a branch of the Usipetes, on the lower Rhine.*

tendō, tendere, tetendī, tēnsus, 3. v. a., *stretch, extend; pitch a tent, be encamped.*

tenebrae, -arum, F. plur., *darkness, "shades."*

teneō, tenēre, tenui, tentus, 2. v. a., *hold, keep, have possession of, occupy, seize; restrain, hold back, detain, bind; sē tenēre, remain.*

tener, -era, -erum, adj., *delicate, tender, young.*

tenuis, -e, adj., *thin, delicate, slight, feeble, poor, mean.*

tenuitās, -tātis [tenuis], F., *thinness, weakness, poverty.*

tenuiter [tenuis], adv., *thinly.*

ter, num. adv., *thrice, three times.*

teres, -etis [tero, rub], adj., *well-turned, smooth, round, tapering.*

tergum, -i, N., *back; terga vertere, turn and flee; ā tergō, behind, in the rear.*

terni, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., *three by three, three at a time, three each.*

terra, -ae [torreo, dry up], F., *earth, land; a land, region;*

ground, soil; orbis terrarum, the world.

Terrasidius, -i, M., *T. Terrasidius, a tribune of the soldiers under Caesar.*

terrēnus, -a, -um [terra], adj., *of earth.*

terreō, terrēre, terrui, territus, 2. v. a., *frighten, alarm, terrify, deter (with quo minus).*

territō, -āre, no perf., no p. p. [freq. of terreō], 1. v. a., *frighten greatly, alarm, terrify.*

terror, -ōris [terreo], M., *fear, alarm, dread, terror, apprehension.*

tertius, -a, -um, num. adj., *third; tertia pars, one third.*

testāmentum, -i [testor, bear witness], N., *will, testament.*

testimōnium, -i [testis], N., *evidence, witness, proof, testimony.*

testis, -is, M. and F., *a witness.*

testūdō, -īnis, F., *tortoise; column of assault with the shields of the soldiers forming a roof over their heads; a kind of shed used to shelter besiegers.*

Teutomatus, -i, M., *a king of the Nitiobroges.*

Teutoni, -ōrum (-es, -um), M. plur., *the great German nation which, together with the Cimbri, overran Gaul a little before 100 B. C.*

tignum, -i, N., *beam, timber, pile, log.*

Tigurīnus, -a, -um, adj., *of the Tigurini; as noun, Tigurini, -ōrum, the Tigurini, a division of the Helvetii.*

timeō, -ēre, -ui, no p. p., 2. v. a. and n., *be afraid, be afraid of, fear, be anxious for or about;*

timēns, -entis, pres. p. as adj., *timid, fearful; as noun, M. plur., the fearful.*

timidē [timidus], adv., *timidly, with fear.*

timor, -ōris [timeo], M., *fear, dread, apprehension, alarm.*

Titūrius, -i, M., *Q. Titurius Sabinus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.*

Titus, -i, M., a Roman praenomen.

tolerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [cf. tollo], I. v. a., *bear, endure, support, maintain, nourish; hold out.*

tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus, 3. v. a., *lift up, raise, carry off, remove, destroy, break off, take on board; sublātus, -a, -um, p. p. as adj., lifted up, elated.*

Tolōsa, -ae, F., now Toulouse, chief town of the Volcae Tectosages.

Tolōsātēs, -ium [Tolosa], M. plur., *the people of Toulouse.*

tormentum, -i [torqueo, twist], N., *(means of twisting), windlass; engine for hurling missiles; shot or missile of an engine; instrument of torture, rack; torture, pain.*

torreō, torrere, torruī, tostus, 2. v. a., *burn, scorch.*

tot, indecl. adj., *so many.*

totidem [toti(tot)-dem], indecl. adj., *just as many, the same number.*

tōtus, -a, -um, adj., *whole, entire, the whole of; often to be translated by an adverb, wholly, entirely.*

trabs (trabēs), trabis, F., *beam, timber.*

trāctus, -a, -um, p. p. of traho.

trādītus, -a, -um, p. p. of trado.

trādō, trādere, trādidi, trādītus [trans-do], 3. v. a., *hand over, give up, deliver, yield, surrender; entrust, command, recommend; pass on, hand down, teach, transmit.*

trādūcō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductus [trāns-ducō], 3. v. a., *lead over, lead across, bring across, lead through, win over, transfer, transport.*

trāgula, -ae, F., a Gallic javelin.

trahō, trahere, trāxī, trāctus, 3. v. a., *draw, drag, drag along, drag away.*

trāiciō, -icere, -ieci, -iectus [trans-iaciō], 3. v. a., *throw across or over; strike through, pierce.*

trāiectus, -a, -um, p. p. of trai-cio.

trāiectus, -tūs [traicio], M., *crossing over; passage across, passage.*

trānō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [trans-no, swim], I. v. a. and n., *swim across.*

tranquillitās, -tātis [tranquillus, calm], F., *quiet, stillness, calmness, calm.*

trāns, adv. in comp. and prep. with acc., *across, over, on the other side of, beyond, through.*

Trānsalpinus, -a, -um [trans-Alpes], adj., *Transalpine, lying on the other side of the Alps from Italy.*

trāscendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scēnsūrus [trans-scando, climb], 3. v. n., *climb over, climb across, board (ships).*

trānsducō; see traduco.

trāseō, -ire, -ii, -itus [trans-eo], irr. v. a. and n., *go across, pass over, pass, pass through, pass by, march through, pass away, elapse.*

trānsferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus [trans-fero], irr. v. a., *carry over, bring or carry across, transfer.*

trānsfigō, -figere, -fixi, -fixus [trans-figo, fix], 3. v. a., *pierce through, thrust through, transfix.*

trānsfodiō, -fodere, -fodi, -fossus [trans-fodio], 3. v. a., *dig through, pierce through, stab, run through.*

trānsgridior, -gredi, -gressus [trans-gridior, walk], 3. v. dep., *step across or over, cross.*

trānsgressus, -a, -um, p. p. of transgridior.

trānsitus, -tūs [transeo], M., *crossing, passing over.*

trānslātus, -a, -um, p. p. of trans-fero.

trānsmarinus, -a, -um [trāns-mare], adj., *across the sea, beyond the sea.*

trānsmissus, -ūs [transmitto], M., *crossing; passage across, distance across.*

trānsmissus, -a, -um, p. p. of transmitto.

trānsmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missus [trans-mitto], 3. v. a., *send across or over.*

trānsportō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [transporto], I. v. a., *bring over, carry over, transport.*

Trānsrhēnānus, -a, -um [trans-Rhenum], adj., *across the Rhine* —i. e., from Gaul; as noun, **Trānsrhēnāni**, -ōrum, M. plur., *the dwellers beyond the Rhine.*

trānstrum, -ī, N., *thwart; cross-timber.*

trānsversus, -a, -um [p. p. of transverto], as adj., *crosswise, athwart, oblique.*

Trebius, -ī, M., *M. Trebius Gallus*, an officer in Caesar's army.

Trebōnius, -ī, M., (1) *C. Trebonius*, tribune of the plebs in 55 B. C., afterward one of Caesar's lieutenants; (2) *C. Trebonius*, a Roman knight.

trecenti, -ae, -a [tres-centum], num. adj., *three hundred.*

tredecim [tres-decem], indecl. num. adj., *thirteen.*

trepidō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, I. v. n., *hurry, bustle, be agitated, be alarmed, be in confusion.*

trēs, tria, gen. trium, num. adj., *three.*

Trēveri (-virī), -ōrum, M. plur., *the Treviri*, an important nation of Belgic Gaul, on both sides of the Mosel; their chief town is now *Trèves* or *Trier*.

Tribocī, -ōrum, M. plur., a German tribe on the Rhine.

tribūnus, -ī [tribus, a tribe], M., *tribune*; **tribūnus militum**, a *military tribune*, of whom each legion had six.

tribuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtus [tribus, a tribe], 3. v. a., *assign, allot, distribute, grant, render, pay, have regard for.*

tribūtum, -ī [N. p. p. of tribuo], N., *tribute, tax.*

triduum, -ī [tres, tri-dies, cf. biduum], N., *three days' time, three days.*

triennium, -ī [tri-annus], N., *period of three years, three years' time.*

trigintā, indecl. num. adj., *thirty.*

trīni, -ae, -a [tres, tri-], distrib. num. adj., *three at a time, three each.*

Trinovantes, -um, M. plur., a tribe in the southeastern part of Britain; their chief town, *Camalodunum*, is now *Colchester*.

tripertītus (tripart-), -a, -um [tripartitus, p. p. of partio, divide], adj., *divided into three parts*; **tripertitō**, N., abl. as adv., *in three divisions.*

triplex, -icis [tri-plex (plico, fold)], adj., *threefold, triple.*

triquetrus, -a, -um, adj., *three-cornered, triangular.*

tristis, -e, adj., *sad, gloomy, sorrowful, dejected.*

tristitia, -ae [tristis], F., *sadness, dejection.*

truncus, -ī, M., *trunk* (of a tree). **tū**, tui, plur. vōs, pers. pron., *thou, you.*

tuba, -ae, F., *trumpet* (long and straight).

tueor, tuērī, tūtus (tuitus), 2. v. dep., *see, look, gaze at, behold; watch, guard, protect, defend, maintain, preserve.*

tulī, perf. of *fero*.

Tulingī, -ōrum, M. plur., a German tribe north of the Helvetii.

Tullius, -ī, M.; see *Cicero*.

Tullus, -ī, M.; see *Volcaci*.

tum, adv., *then, at that time, thereupon, moreover, next*; **cum** . . . **tum**, *both . . . and*; **tum maxīmē**, *especially at that time, just then.*

tumultuor, -āri, -ātus [tumultus], I. v. dep., *make an uproar*; impersonal, *there is an uproar.*

tumultuōsē [tumultuosus, disorderly], adv., *noisily, with disorder or confusion.*

tumultus, -tūs [cf. tumeo, swell], M., *uproar, confusion, noise, bustle; insurrection.*

tumulus, -ī [cf. tumeo, swell], M., *mound, hillock, hill.*

tunc [tum-ce], adv., *then, just then, at that time.*

turma, -ae [cf. *turba*, *throng*], F., *troop* (of cavalry).
Turonī, -ōrum (-es, -um), M. plur., a people in central Gaul, whose name is preserved in *Tours*.
turpis, -e, adj., *ugly*; *base*, *shameful*, *disgraceful*.
turpiter [**turpis**], adv., *basely*, *shamefully*.
turpitūdō, -inis [**turpis**], F., *baseness*, *dishonor*, *shame*, *disgrace*.
turris, -is, F., a tower; **turris ambulatōria**, a wooden tower on rollers.
tūtē [**tutus**], adv., *safely*; compar. **tūtius**, with greater safety.
tūtus, -a, -um [p. p. of *tueor*], adj., *protected*, *safe*, *secure*; *nihil tūtum*, no safety; **tūtō**, N. abl. as adv., *safely*.
tuus, -a, -um [**tu**], possess. adj. pron., *thy*, *thine*, *your*, *yours*.

U

ubi [for *cubi* (*quobi*)], adv., *where*, *when*; **ubi primum**, as soon as.
Ubii, -ōrum, M. plur., a German nation on the lower Rhine.
ubique [**ubi-que**], adv., *everywhere*, *anywhere*.
ulciscor, **ulciscī**, ultus, 3. v. dep., *punish*, *avenge*, *take vengeance*.
ūllus, -a, -um, gen. -ius, adj., *any*; as noun, *anybody*, *any one*.
ulterior, -us; gen. -ōris [**ultra**], compar. adj., *farther*, *beyond*, *more distant* or *remote*; **ultimus**, -a, -um, superl., *farthest*, *last*, *rearmost*.
ultrā, adv. and prep. with acc., *beyond*, *on the farther side*.
ultrō, adv., *to the farther side*, *beyond*; **ultrō citrōque**, *back and forth*, *to and fro*; *besides*, *moreover*; *of one's own accord*, *voluntarily*.
ultus, -a, -um, p. p. of *ulciscor*.
ululātus, -tūs [**ululo**, *howl*], M., *howling*, *yelling*; *loud cry*, *shout*, *yell*.
umerus (*hum-*), -ī, M., *shoulder*.

umquam (*unquam*), adv., *ever* (with a negative).
ūnā [**unus**], adv., *together*, *at the same time*, *in company*.
unde [for *cunde*; cf. *inde*], adv., *whence*, *from which*; often = *ē quō*, *quibus*.
undecim [**unus-decem**], indecl. num. adj., *eleven*.
undecimus, -a, -um [**undecim**], num. adj., *eleventh*.
undique [**unde-que**], adv., *from every side*, *on all sides*, *everywhere*.
ūniversus, -a, -um [**unus-versus**], adj., *all together*, *all in a body*, *the whole of*, *entire*.
ūnus, -a, -um; gen. -ius, adj., *one*; *a single*, *alone*, *only*, *sole*; *ad ūnum*, *to a man*.
urbānus, -a, -um [**urbs**], adj., *of a city*, *of the city* (Rome).
urbs, *urbis*, F., *a city*; esp. *the city* (Rome).
urgeō (*urgueō*), **urgere**, *ursi*, no p. p., *press*, *press hard*, *oppress*.
ūrus, -ī, M., *a wild ox*, *urochs*.
Ūsipetēs, -um, M. plur., a German tribe which migrated to the lower Rhine.
usitātus, -a, -um [p. p. of *ūsitor*, freq. of *utor*], adj., *usual*, *customary*.
ūsque, adv., *all the way to*, *as far as*, *even to*, *up to*, *until*; **ūsque eō**, *even to that degree* or *extent*.
ūsus, -a, -um, p. p. of *utor*.
ūsus, -ūs [**utor**], M., *use*, *practice*, *habit*, *wont*; *exercise*, *employment*, *experience*, *skill*; *profit*, *advantage*; *need*, *necessity*; **ūsus est**, *it is necessary*, *there is need of* (with abl.); **ūsū venire**, *come to pass*, *happen*.
ut (*utī*), adv. and conj.: (1) Interrog. adv., *how?* (2) Relative adv., *as*, *just as*, *inasmuch as*, *seeing that*, *as if*. (3) Conj. (a) with indic., *when*, *as*, *as soon as*; (b) with subjunc., of purpose, *that*, *in order that*, *in order to*; of result, *that*, *so that*; of concession, *though*, *although*.

uter, -tra, -trum; gen. -trius, pronominal adj. relative or interrog., *which* (of two)? *whichever* (of two), *the one who* or *whichever*; utrum, N. acc. as adv., *whether*.

uterque, utraque, utrumque; gen. utriusque [uter-que], *both, each*.

utī; see ut.

ūtilis, -e [cf. utor], adj., *useful, profitable, favorable, advantageous, serviceable*.

ūtilitās, -tātis [utilis], F., *usefulness, benefit, service, advantage*.

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus, 3. v. dep., *make use of, use, employ, adopt, exercise, practise, enjoy, show, manifest*.

utrumque [uter-que], adv., *from or on both sides*.

utrum; see uter.

uxor, -ōris, F., *wife*.

V

V, for *quinque, five*.

Vacalus, -ī, M., *the Waal*, an arm of the Rhine, which flows into the Maas.

vacātiō, -ōnis [vaco], F., *exemption, freedom* (from something).

vacō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus [cf. vacuus], 1. v. n., *be unoccupied, be free; lie waste, uncultivated*.

vacuus, -a, -um [cf. vaco], adj., *unoccupied, empty, free from, vacant, destitute of*.

vadum, -ī [cf. vado, go, walk], N., *ford, fording*; plur., *fords, shallows, shoals*.

vāgīna, -ae, F., *sheath, scabbard*.

vagor, -āri, -ātus, 1. v. dep., *wander, rove, roam*.

valeō, valēre, valui, valitūrus, 2. v. n., *be strong, powerful, able; have power or influence; have weight*.

Valerius, -ī, M., (1) *C. Valerius Flaccus*, governor of Gaul, 83 B. C.; (2) *L. Valerius Praeconinus*, legatus of some proconsul of Gaul, killed in Aquitania before 56 B. C.; (3) *C. Valerius Caburus*, a Gaul who had received Ro-

man citizenship; (4) *C. Valerius Procillus* and (5) *C. Valerius Domnotaurus*, sons of No. (3).

Valetiācus, -ī, M., a Haeduan noble, brother of Cotus.

valētūdō, -inis [valeo], F., *state of health, health; ill health*.

vallēs, -is, F., *valley*.

vāllum, -ī [vallus], N., *palisade* (of stakes), *rampart, wall, entrenchment*.

vāllus, -ī, M., *stake, rampart-stake*.

Vangionēs, -um, plur., a German tribe east of the Treviri.

varietās, -tātis [varius], F., *diversity, variety*.

varius, -a, -um, adj., *diverse, different, various*.

vāstō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [vastus], 1. v. a., *lay waste, ravage*.

vāstus, -a, -um, adj., *waste, desolate; immense, vast*.

vāticinātiō, -ōnis [vaticinor, predict; vates, a soothsayer], F., *prediction, prophecy, foretelling*.

-ve, conj. enclitic, *or*.

vectigal, -ālis, N., *tax, tribute, impost; revenue, income*.

vectigālis, -e, adj., *tax-paying, tribute-paying, tributary*.

vectōrius, -a, -um [vector, veho, carry], adj., *carrying, transport* (ships).

vehementer [vehemens, impetuous], adv., *violently, hotly, severely*.

vel [volo], conj., *or*; vel . . . vel, *either . . . or; adv., even*.

Velānius, -ī, M., *Q. Velanius*, an officer in Caesar's army.

Veliocassēs, -ium (-ī, -ōrum), M. plur., a small tribe about the neighborhood of Rouen.

Vellaunodūnum, -ī, N., a town of the Senones.

Vellāvī, -ōrum, M. plur., a tribe in the Cevennes mountains, tributary to the Arverni.

vēlōcitās, -tātis [velox], F., *swiftness, speed, rapidity*.

vēlōciter [velox], adv., *swiftly, rapidly*.

vēlōx, -ōcis, adj., *swift, rapid, speedy, quick*.

vēlum, -i, N., *veil, curtain, sail*.
velut [vel ut], adv., *even as, as, just as; velut si, as if, just as if*.
venātiō, -ōnis [venor, hunt], F., *hunting, the chase*.
venātor, -tōris [venor, hunt], M., *hunter*.
vendō, -dere, -didī, -ditus [venum do], 3. v. a., *offer for sale, sell*.
Venelli (Unelli), -ōrum, M. plur., a tribe on the northern coast of Gaul.
Veneti, -ōrum, M. plur., a nation of northwestern Gaul.
Venetia, -ae, F., the country of the Veneti, part of what is now Brittany.
Veneticus, -a, -um, adj., *of the Veneti*.
venia, -ae, F., *pardon, favor, indulgence, permission*.
veniō, venire, vēni, ventūrus, 4. v. n., *come; ūsū venire, come to pass, occur*.
ventitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus [freq. of vento, freq. of venio], 1. v. n., *come often, keep coming*.
ventus, -i, M., *wind*.
vēr, vēris, N., *spring; primō vēre, at the beginning of spring*.
Veragri, -ōrum, M. plur., a tribe in the Alps.
Verbigenus, -i, M., the name of a canton of the Helvetii.
verbum, -i, N., *word; plur., words, language, speech, conversation*.
Vercassivelaunus, -i, M., one of the Arverni, uncle of Vercingetorix.
Vercingetorix, -igis, M., a noble Arvernian, commander-in-chief of the Gauls in their great revolt against the Romans in 52 B. C.
vereor, -erī, -itus, 2. v. dep., *fear, be afraid of, dread; veritus, -a, -um, p. p., *fearing*.
vergō, -ere, no perf., no p. p., 3. v. n., *incline, slope, tend, turn toward; lie toward, be situated in the direction of*.
vergobretus, -i, M., *vergobret*, title of the chief magistrate of certain Gallic nations.*

vērisimilis, -e (or, separately written, vēri similis), adj., *like the truth, probable, likely*.
veritus, -a, -um, p. p. of vereor.
vērō [verus], adv., *in truth, in fact, truly, certainly; but, but indeed, however*.
versō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus [freq. of verto], 1. v. a., *turn often, turn this way and that; deal with; pass, turn one's self about, move about; dwell, live; be engaged, employed, occupied*.
versus, -a, -um, p. p. of verto.
versus (versum) [p. p. of verto], adv. and prep. with acc. after a noun with ad or in, *toward, in the direction of; quōque versus, in every direction*.
versus, -ūs [verto], M., *turning; line, verse*.
Verticō, -ōnis, M., a noble Nervian.
vertō, vertere, verti, versus, 3. v. a., *turn, turn around, change; terga vertere, turn and flee*.
Verudoctius, -i, M., a Helvetian noble.
vērus, -a, -um, adj., *true; right, proper; as noun, vērum, -i, N., *the truth; vēri similis, probable, likely*.
verūtum, -i [veru, a spit], N., *dart, javelin, light spear*.
Vesontiō, -ōnis, M., a town of the Sequani, now Besançon.
vesper, -erī and -eris, M., *evening*.
vester, -tra, -trum, poss. adj. pron., *your, yours*.
vestigium, -i, N., *footstep, step; footprint, track; trace; spot, place, point, moment; ē vestigiō, on the spot, immediately*.
vestiō, -īre, -ivī (-iī), -itus [vestis], 4. v. a., *clothe, dress, cover*.
vestis, -is, F., *clothing, clothes, garments*.
vestitus, -tūs [vestio], M., *clothing, dress*.
veterānus, -a, -um [cf. vetus], adj., *old, veteran* (long in the service).
vetō, vetāre, vetui, vetitus, 1. v. a., *forbid*.*

vetus, -eris, adj., *old, of long standing, ancient, former.*

vexillum, -i, N., *a flag*; the ensign of separate detachments of troops, or the banner displayed by the general as a signal for action; sub **vexillō**, *in a detachment*, not in the regular body with the *signum*.

vexō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [freq. of **veho**], I. v. a., *(carry this way and that), harass, annoy, trouble, vex*; *ravage, overrun.*

via, -ae, F., *way, route, road*; *march, journey*; *street of a camp.*

viātor, -ōris [via], M., *wayfarer, traveler.*

vicēni, -ae, -a [cf. **viginti**], distrib. num. adj., *twenty each, twenty apiece.*

vicēsīmus, -a, -um [cf. **viginti**], num. adj., *twentieth.*

vicīēs (-ēns) [cf. **viginti**], num. adv., *twenty times.*

vicinitās, -tātis [vicinus, *neighboring*], F., *nearness, neighborhood*; *the neighbors* (people of the neighborhood).

vicis, gen. (nom. not found), *succession, turn*; *in vicem*, *in turn*, *turn about, alternately.*

victima, -ae, F., *victim, sacrifice.*

victor, -ōris [vinco], M., *conqueror, victor*; often as adj., *triumphant, victorious.*

victōria, -ae [victor], F., *victory.*

victus, -a, -um, p. p. of **vinco**.

victus, -tūs [vivō], M., *living, mode of life*; *means of living, food, victuals, provisions.*

vicus, -i, M., *village.*

videō, vidēre, vidī, visus, 2. v. a., *see*; *perceive, observe, look at*; *understand, learn*; pass., **videor**, -ēri, visus, *be seen, seem, appear*; *seem good, seem best.*

Vienna, -ae, F., a town of the Allobroges, on the Rhone, now *Vienne.*

vigilia, -ae [vigil, *awake*], F., *being awake*; *watching*; *sleeplessness*; *watch*, one fourth of the night.

vigintī, indecl. num. adj., *twenty.*

vimen, -inis [vico, *bind, twine*], N., *twig, osier, withé.*

vinciō, vincire, vinxī, victus, 4. v. a., *bind*—i. e., *put in fetters.*

vincō, vincere, vici, victus, 3. v. a. and n., *conquer, vanquish, overcome, defeat, outdo*; *prevail, be victorious.*

vinctus, -a, -um, p. p. of **vincio**.

vinculum (vinculum), -i [vincio], N., *chain, fetter*; plur., *bonds, imprisonment, prison.*

vindicō, -āre, -āvi, -atus [vindex], I. v. a., *claim, demand as one's right, defend, restore* (to liberty), *establish* (the liberty of some one); with in and accus., *punish.*

vīnea, -ae [vinum], F., *vineyard, arbor for vines*; *shed* (to shelter a besieging party).

vinum, -i, N., *wine.*

violō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, I. v. a., *do violence to, abuse, violate, injure, lay waste.*

vir, viri, M., *man, husband.*

virēs; see **vis**.

virgō, -inis, F., *maid, virgin.*

virgultum, -i [virgula, *braga, twig*], N., *brushwood, brush, thicket.*

Viridomārus, -i, M., a Haeduan noble.

Viridovix, -icis, M., a chief of the Venelli.

viritīm [vir], adv., *man by man, to each individual.*

Viromandui, -ōrum, M. plur., a tribe in Belgic Gaul, south of the Nervii.

virtūs, -tūtis [vir], F., *manliness, bravery, courage, valor*; *merit, worth, virtue*; *energy, vigor*; plur., *good qualities, virtues.*

vis, vis, F., *force, violence*; plur., **virēs**, -ium, *strength, powers, vigor.*

visus, -a, -um, p. p. of **video**.

vita, -ae [vivō], F., *life.*

vitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, I. v. a., *shun, avoid, escape, dodge.*

vitrum, -i, N., *woad, a blue dye.*

vivō, vivere, vixi, victus, 3. v. n., *live, live on* (with abl.).

vīvus, -a, -um [cf. **vivo**], adj., *living, alive*.
vix, adv., *hardly, scarcely, barely, with difficulty*.
Vocātes, -ium, M. plur., a small tribe in northwestern Aquitania.
Vocciō, -ōnis, M., a king of the Norici.
vocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus [cf. **vox**], I. v. a., *call, summon, invite, name*.
Vocontii, -ōrum, M. plur., a tribe in the Province, south of the Allobroges.
Volcae, -ārum, M. plur., a nation of the Province, found in two divisions; see Tectosages and Arecomici.
Volcācius, -i, M., *C. Volcaci* Tullus, an officer left to guard the Rhine bridge in 54 B. C.
volō, velle, volul, irr. v. a. and n., *be willing, wish, desire*; sibi velle, *want, mean; intend, purpose*; with two accusatives, *want something of somebody, want somebody for something*.
voluntārius, -a, -um [volō], adj., *willing, voluntary*; as noun, **voluntārius**, -i, M., *a volunteer*.
voluntās, -tātis [volō], F., *willingness, wish, desire, good-will, approval, inclination*.
voluptās, -tātis [akin to volō], F., *pleasure, enjoyment, delight*.
Volusēnus, -i, M., *C. Volusenus*, military tribune and afterward

commander of cavalry in Caesar's army.
Vorēnus, -i, M., *L. Vorenus*, a centurion, rival of Pullo.
vōs; see tu.
Vosegus, -i, M., *the Vosges Mountains*, a range in the eastern part of Gaul, parallel to the Rhine.
voveō, vovēre, vōvi, vōtus, 2. v. a., *vow*.
vōx, vōcis, F., *voice, sound, cry, call, word*; **magna vōx**, *a loud voice*; plur., *words, expressions, language, talk*.
Vulcānus (Vol-), -i, M., *Vulcan*, god of fire and of working in metals.
vulgus (volgus), -i, N., *crowd, mass, common people*; in **vulgus efferri**, *be spread abroad*; **vulgō**, abl. as adv., *commonly, generally, universally, everywhere*.
vulnerō (voln-), -āre, -āvi, -ātus [vulnus], I. v. a., *wound, injure, hurt*.
vulnus, -eris, N., *wound*.
vultus (volt-), -tūs, M., *look, countenance, face, expression*; **vultum ferre**, *dare look in the face*; **vultum componere**, *compose (assume) an expression, conceal one's feelings*.

X

X, for decem, *ten*; also for decimus, -a, -um, *tenth*.
XX, for viginti, *twenty*.

(1)



This book should be returned to
the Library on or before the last date
stamped below.

A fine of five cents a day is incurred
by retaining it beyond the specified
time.

Please return promptly.

DUE SEP 25 '39

